



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

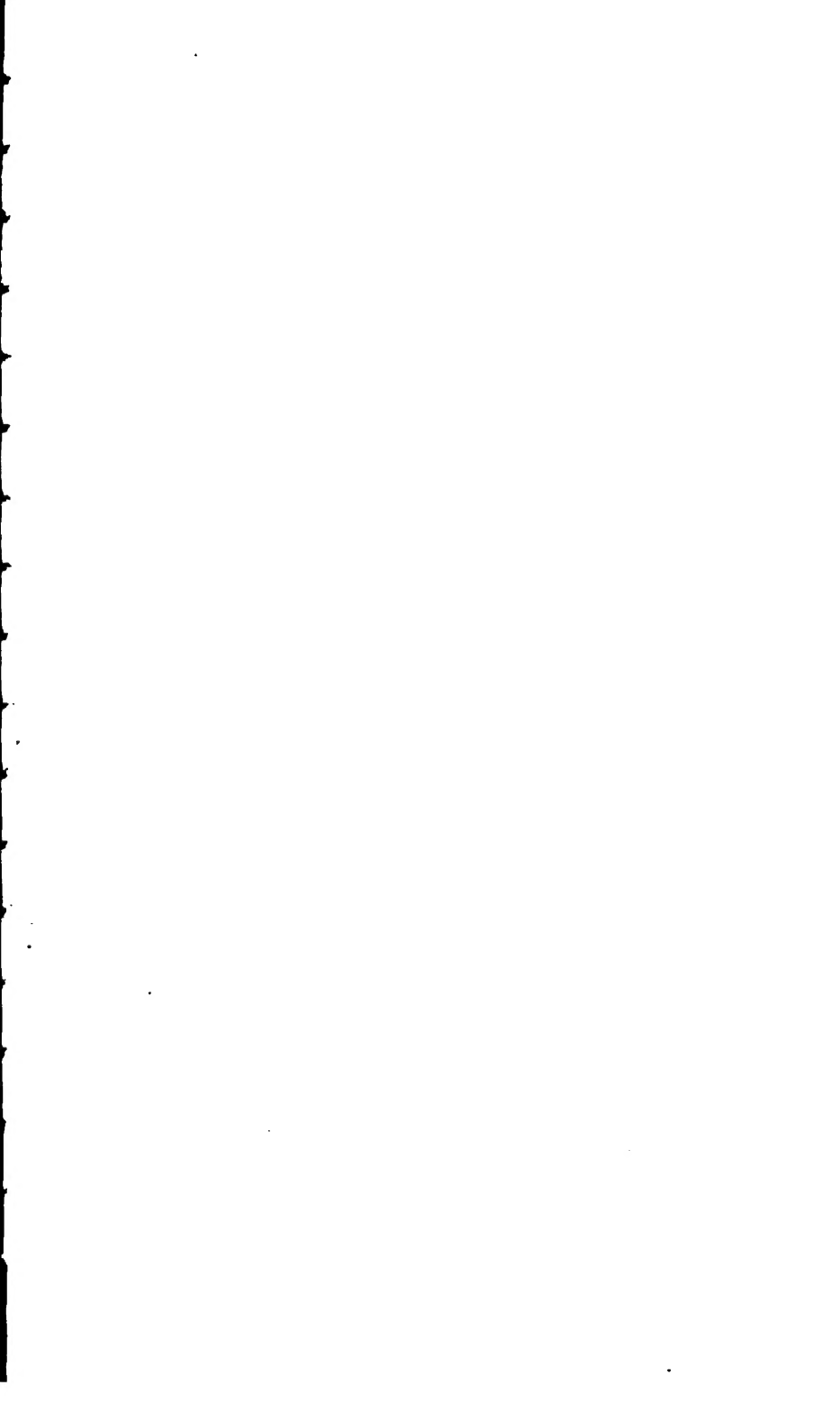


3 3433 07586836 8













x

H  
withdrawn

THE  
HISTORY  
OF THE  
ANGLO-SAXONS:

COMPRISING THE  
**History of England**

FROM  
THE EARLIEST PERIOD TO THE  
NORMAN CONQUEST.

==  
BY SHARON TURNER, F.A.S.  
==

IN THREE VOLUMES

VOL. III.

==  
THE FOURTH EDITION.  
==

LONDON:

PRINTED FOR  
LONGMAN, HURST, REES, ORME, AND BROWN,  
PATERNOSTER-ROW.

1823.



23884B

LONDON :  
Printed by A. & R. Spottiswoode,  
New-Street-Square.

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

TO

## THE THIRD VOLUME.

### BOOK VII.

ON THE MANNERS OF THE ANGLO-SAXONS AFTER THEIR  
OCCUPATION OF ENGLAND.

#### CHAP. I.

*On their Infancy, Childhood, and Names.*

A. C.	Page
BENEFIT of the invasions of the German tribes -	2
Anglo-Saxons improved by conquering Britain -	5
Care of their infancy - - - -	6
Occupations of their youth - - - -	7
Their names - - - - -	8
On their surnames - - - - -	10

#### CHAP. II.

*On their Education.*

Their schools and preceptors - - -	13
Their youth or cnihthade - - -	16
Employment of lads in monasteries - - -	17
Alcuin's exhortations - - -	18

39 X 4 6 9

## CONTENTS.

## CHAP. III.

*On their Food.*

A. C.	Page
Their animal food - - - - -	21
The fish used at their tables - - - - -	22
Horse-flesh forbidden - - - - -	24
Their bread - - - - -	25
Their fruit - - - - -	26
Their salted provisions - - - - -	27
Their meals - - - - -	28

## CHAP. IV.

*Their Drinks and Cookery.*

Their three sorts of ale - - - - -	30
Their wines - - - - -	31
Anglo-Saxon description of a feast - - - - -	ib.
Their cookery. - - - - -	33

## CHAP. V.

*Their Dress.*

Their female dress - - - - -	37
Dress of the men - - - - -	40
Their beards - - - - -	42
Dresses on the Bayeux tapestry - - - - -	43
Dresses depicted in MSS. - - - - -	45

## CHAP. VI.

*Their Houses, Furniture, and Luxuries.*

Their houses mean - - - - -	55
Their furniture - - - - -	49
Their beds - - - - -	51
Their plate - - - - -	52
Glass vessels little used - - - - -	53
Their spices - - - - -	55
Their hot-baths - - - - -	56

# CONTENTS.

## CHAP. VII.

### *Their Conviviality and Amusements.*

A. C.	Page
Their gleemen - - - - -	58
Their military dance - - - - -	60
The tæft-stone-game - - - - -	61
Their hunting - - - - -	ib.
Hawking and falconry - - - - -	63

## CHAP. VIII.

### *Their Marriages.*

Privileges of the Anglo-Saxon ladies - -	66
Their marriage-contracts - - - - -	67
An Anglo-Saxon lady's marriage-settlement - -	69
Their morgen-gift - - - - -	ib.
The female right of disposing of property -	71
Protection of their persons - - - - -	72
Buying of Anglo-Saxon wives - - - - -	73
Punishment of unchastity - - - - -	75

## CHAP. IX.

### *Their Classes and Conditions of Society.*

Advantages that have resulted from the in- equality of society - - - - -	76
Anglo-Saxons had dignity from birth - - -	78
A nobility from landed property - - - -	81
Official dignities - - - - -	83
Anglo-Saxon freemen - - - - -	84
Their slaves - - - - -	87
Prices of their slaves - - - - -	89
Instances of emancipation - - - - -	92

## CHAP. X.

### *Their Gilds, or Clubs.*

A gild-scipe at Exeter - - - - -	96
Ditto at Cambridge - - - - -	97

## CONTENTS.

A. C.		Page
	Gilds noticed in the laws - - -	99
	Their guild-hall - - -	100

## CHAP. XI.

*Their Trades, Mechanical Arts, and Foreign Commerce.*

State of the Anglo-Saxon tradesmen - -	101
Artificers and burghers - - -	104
Their gradual improvement - - -	107
The Anglo-Saxon smith - - -	108
Carpenter and other trades - - -	109
Glass-making - - -	110
Weaving, embroidering, and dyeing - -	111
Their jewellers and goldsmiths - - -	112
Their taverns - - -	ib.
Merchants - - -	119
Their public markets and tolls - - -	114
Their travelling - - -	117

## CHAP. XII.

*Their Chivalry.*

Anglo-Saxon knighthood - - -	118
Actions of Hereward - - -	ib.
Its difference from Norman knighthood - -	121
Their use of the word cniht - - -	123
Tournaments in 994 - - -	128

## CHAP. XIII.

*Their Superstitions.*

Magic and witchcraft in Greece and Rome -	130
Witch described by Apuleius - - -	131
Magical powers ascribed to Simon Magus -	132
Anglo-Saxon withcraft - - -	133
----- charms - - -	135
----- prognostics - - -	136

# CONTENTS.

vii

## CHAP. XIV.

### *Their Funerals.*

A.C.		Page
	Their coffins - - - -	139
	Their last rites - - - -	141
	Their saul-sceat - - - -	142

## BOOK VIII.

### ON THE GOVERNMENT AND CONSTITUTION OF THE ANGLO-SAXONS.

#### CHAP. I.

##### *The Kings' Election and Coronation.*

Anglo-Saxon kings elected - -	144
Hereditary succession not adhered to - -	146
Yet generally followed - -	ib.
Ceremony of their coronation from an ancient MS. - - - -	147

#### CHAP. II.

##### *The Royal Family and Officers.*

The Anglo-Saxon queen - - -	153
The king's sons and officers - - -	154

#### CHAP. III.

##### *The Dignity and Prerogatives of the ANGLO-SAXON Cyning.*

Five descriptions of kings in the world -	155
The Anglo-Saxon king - - -	156
His personal veneration - - -	157
His subordination to the law - - -	ib.
His dignity and prerogatives - - -	161
His titles - - - -	166
His duties - - - -	168
His command of the military force - - -	171

## CONTENTS.

## CHAP. IV.

*The Witena-Gemot, or ANGLO-SAXON Parliament, and of whom composed.*

A. C.	Page
General view of the Anglo-Saxon witena-gemot	173
Denominations of its members - - -	179
Its similarity to our present parliament -	180
The popular part of our representation im- memorial - - - -	181
The bulk of the Anglo-Saxon population with- out constitutional rights - - -	182
The freemen only represented - - -	ib.
Knights and burgesses in the witena-gemot	184
Thegns and milites in it, and others without a descriptive title - - - -	187
Extracts from the charters proving this -	ib.
Some were there who had no land - -	194
Greater and less barons distinguished -	196
Other intimations that burgesses attended it	201
Dr. Brady's assertions not supported - -	204
Forty hides of land a qualification for some of its members - - - -	206

## CHAP. V.

*Witena-gemot. — How convened. — Its Times and Places of Meeting. — Its Business and Power.*

Convened by the king - - - -	207
Times of meeting - - - -	ib.
Places of meeting - - - -	208
King's speech to it - - - -	209
Its business - - - -	ib.

## CHAP. VI.

Some general principles of the Anglo-Saxon constitution and laws - - -	217
---	-----



## CONTENTS.

A. C.	Page
Population of Leicestershire	247
Lincolnshire	ib.
Middlesex	ib.
Norfolk	248
Northamptonshire	ib.
Nottinghamshire	ib.
Rutlandshire	ib.
Oxfordshire	ib.
Shropshire	249
Somersetshire	ib.
Staffordshire	ib.
Suffolk	250
Surrey	ib.
Sussex	ib.
Warwickshire	ib.
Wiltshire	251
Worcestershire	ib.
Yorkshire	ib.
General total	ib.
Counties omitted in Domesday	253
Persons and classes not inserted	ib.
Freemen in the Danish counties	255

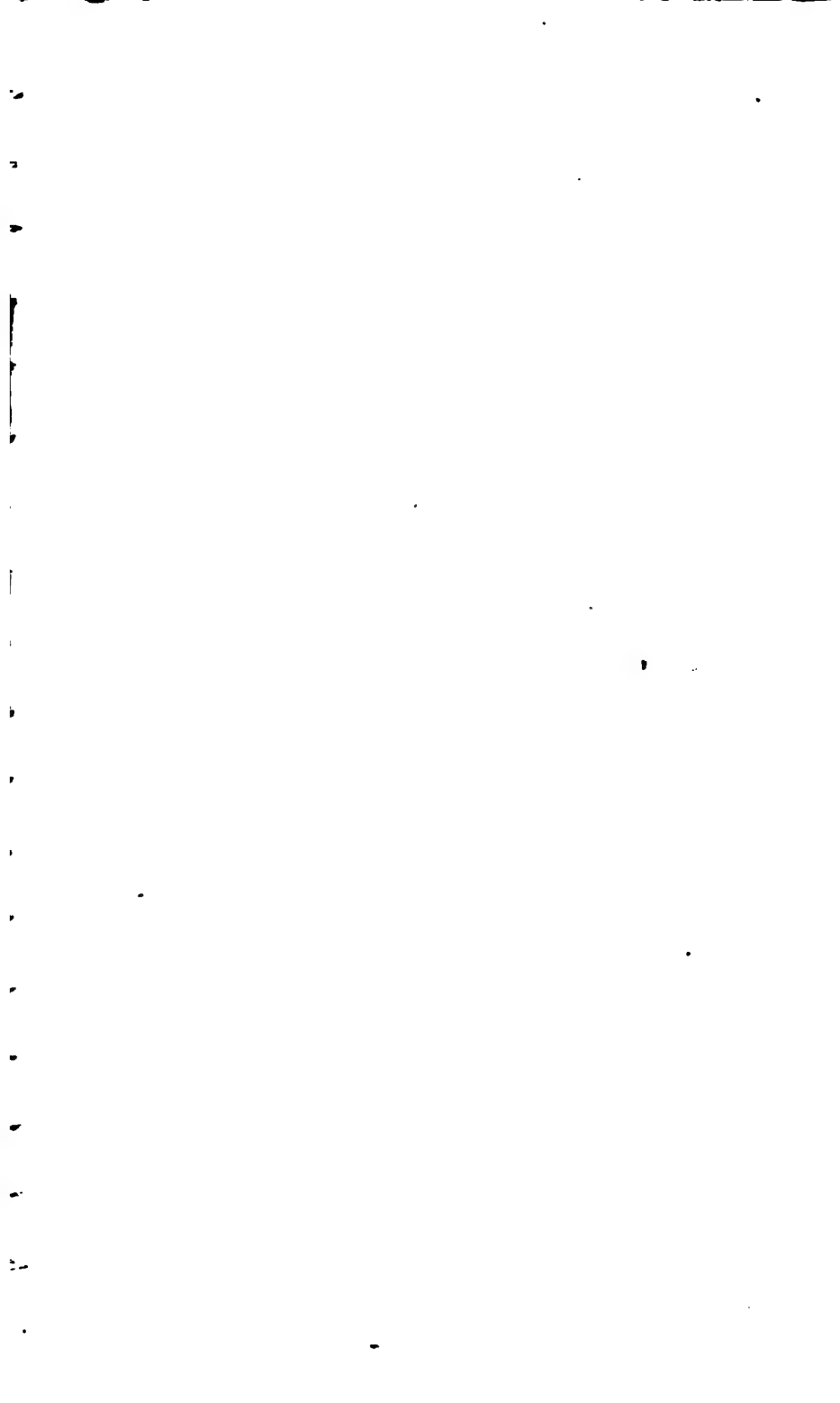
## BOOK IX.

THEIR POETRY, LITERATURE, ARTS, AND SCIENCES.

## CHAP. I.

*Their Native or Vernacular Poetry.*

Anglo-Saxon native poetry	257
Their periphrasis	260
Metaphors	262
Omission of particles	ib.
Short phrases	263
Inversions and transitions	ib.
Progress and character of the Anglo-Saxon poetry	265
The Saxon ballads	271
The song on Ethelstan's victory	274
Ditto on Edgar's death	276



## CONTENTS.

A. C.	Page
BEDE's Latin poetry	349
BONIFACE's	353
LEOBGITHA's	354
CENA's	355
ETHELWALD's	ib.
ALCUIN's	357
His Latin Sonnets	ib.
address to his cell	359

## CHAP. VI.

*Of the GENERAL LITERATURE of the ANGLO-SAXONS.*

	Saxons an active, but not literary people	363
	Their literature began with their Christianity	365
	Theodore and Adrian	370
	Egbert the archbishop	372
	Library at York	ib.
	Studies cultivated there	373
	ALDHELM's education	375
709.	His death	376
	His Latin alliteration	377
	His treatise on virginity	ib.
	Specimens of his violent metaphors	379
	———— of continued figures	ib.
673.	BEDE's life narrated by himself	381
	——— works, ditto	ib.
	Remarks on them	382
735.	His death described by his pupil	384
	BONIFACE the German missionary	386
754.	——— killed in East Friesland	387
	EDDIUS, biographer of Wilfrid	ib.
	ALCUIN or ALBINUS	388
804.	His death	389
	IRISH ecclesiastics at this period	390
	JOANNES ERIGENA	ib.
	His works	392
	His wit	394
	His violent death	395
	Causes of the decline of literature	396
	General subject of the Anglo-Saxon MSS.	398
	Elfric Bata	399

# CONTENTS.

xiii

A. C.

	Page
Elfric the Abbot, his scholar	400
His Heptateuch	ib.
Anglo-Saxon Romance of Apollonius	401

## CHAP. VII.

### *On the SCIENCES of the ANGLO-SAXONS.*

Anglo-Saxon arithmetic	402
Bede's Natural Philosophy	403
—— Astronomy	407
Their Geography	ib.
Alcuin's Physics	410
His dialogue with Prince Pepin	411
Elfric's Astronomy	414
Their art of gold-writing	415
Their secret writing	416
Their medicinal charms	ib.
Cild's Medical Treatise	419
MSS. of Medical Botany	ib.
Their Surgery	ib.
Their medicine for consumption	421
—— for gout	ib.

## CHAP. VIII.

### *On the ANGLO-SAXON METAPHYSICS.*

Bede's metaphysical remarks	423
Alcuin on the soul	424
Erigena on the division of nature	426

## CHAP. IX.

### *On the ARTS of the ANGLO-SAXONS.*

Their music	428
The organ described by Aldhelm	430
Ditto by Bede	431
Their church singing	433
Their painting	434
Their preparation of parchment	435
Their gilding their skins	ib.
Their architecture	436

# CONTENTS.

## BOOK X.

### THEIR RELIGION.

#### CHAP. I.

*Utility and Decline of SAXON Paganism. — The Introduction of Christianity among the ANGLO-SAXONS. — Its general Effect.*

A. C.	Page
State of religion in Britain on their arrival	444
Temporary utility of Paganism	446
Benefits of Christianity to the Anglo-Saxons	454

#### CHAP. II.

*ANGLO-SAXONS become Missionaries to other Nations.*

Willebrod to Heligoland	459
Boniface to Germany	ib.
Lebuin and Adelbert, a prince	ib.
Alcuin's instructions to missionaries	460

#### CHAP. III.

*View of the Form of Christianity introduced among the ANGLO-SAXONS — and of some of their Religious Rites and Notions.*

The form imperfect, but the best then known	461
Augustin's questions to Gregory	462
Anglo-Saxon monasteries	463
Bede's complaint of their decay	466
Account of the formation of one in Edgar's reign	467
Form of their hierarchy	469
Their reading of the Scriptures	470
Their ideas on transubstantiation	472
Their relics	ib.
Their use of the cross	473
Moral duties of their clergy	ib.
Duties enjoined by law to their priests	474

# CONTENTS.

xv

A. C.	Page
Elfric's statement of these	475
An Anglo-Saxon sermon	ib.
Their ideas of Heaven	478
Paraphrases of the Lord's prayer and Creed	479
Their confessions	ib.
Proclamation for an Anglo-Saxon fast	ib.
Their penitentiary injunctions	480
Liberty to buy off penance	ib.
Their saints	481
Their views of Antichrist	483

## CHAP. IV.

### *The ANGLO-SAXON Te Deum ; Jubilate ; Magnificat, and Specimens of their Prayer.*

The Te Deum	485
Jubilate, and Magnificat	486
Their poetical prayers	487
Prayers in prose	489

---

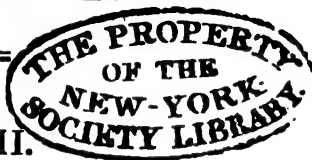
A VINDICATION of the genuineness of the ancient British Poems of Aneurin, Taliesin, Llywarch Hen, and Merdhin, with specimens of the poems	493
--	-----

ESSAY on the Antiquity of Rime in Europe	647
--	-----

1871

THE  
HISTORY  
OF THE  
ANGLO-SAXONS.

BOOK VII.



*Of the MANNERS of the ANGLO-SAXONS after their OCCUPATION  
of ENGLAND.*

CHAP. I.

*On their Infancy, Childhood, and Names.*

**I**N the Appendix to the first volume of this history, we have described the Saxons as they were on the Continent, before they possessed themselves of the south part of Britain, during the fifth and sixth centuries; and we may remark, that the human character has seldom displayed qualities more inauspicious to the improvement of intellect or of moral character. When they first landed, they were bands of fierce, ignorant, idolatrous, and superstitious pirates, enthusiastically courageous, but habitually cruel. Yet from such ancestors a nation has, in the course of twelve centuries, been formed, which, inferior to none in every moral and intellectual merit, is superior to every other in the love and possession of useful liberty: a nation which cultivates with equal success the elegancies of art,

CHAP.  
I.

**B O O K** the ingenious labours of industry, the energies of  
**VII.** war, the researches of science, and the richest productions of genius.

THIS improved state has been slowly attained under the discipline of very diversified events. The first gradation of the happy progress was effected during that period, which it is the object of this work to elucidate.

THE destruction of the Roman Empire of the West by the German nations has been usually lamented as a barbarization of the human mind; a period of misery, darkness, and ruin; as a replunging of society into the savage chaos from which it had so slowly escaped, and from which through increased evils and obstacles, it had again to emerge. This view of the political and moral phenomena of this remarkable epoch is not correct. It suits neither the true incidents that preceded or accompanied, nor those which followed this mighty revolution. And our notions of the course of human affairs have been made more confused and unscientific by this exaggerated declamation, and by the inaccurate perceptions which have occasioned it.

THE conquest and partition of the Western Roman Empire by the Nomadic nations of Germany was, in fact, a new and beneficial re-casting of human society in all its classes, functions, manners, and pursuits. The civilisation of mankind had been carried in the previous Roman world to the fullest extent to which the then existing means of human improvement could be urged. That this had long been stationary, and for some time retrograding, the philosophical examiner into the government, literature, religion, public habits, and

private morals of the Roman Empire, will, if he make his researches sufficiently minute and extensive, be satisfactorily convinced. Hence, either the progress of mankind must have been stopped, and their corrupting civilisation have stagnated or feebly rolled on towards its own barbarization, or some extensive revolution must have broken up the existing system of universal degeneracy, and began a new career of moral agency and social melioration. The fact is incontestable that this latter state has been the result of the irruptions and established kingdoms of the Teutonic tribes; and this visible consequence of their great movement should terminate our dark and querulous descriptions of this momentous period, which suit rather the age and mind of a doleful Gildas than of an enlightened student of history of the nineteenth century.

THAT the invasions of the Roman Empire by the warlike tribes of the North was attended with great sufferings to mankind at the time of their occurrence is strictly true; but these calamities were not greater than those which all the wars of the ancient world had produced to almost every people in whose territory they had been waged. The hostilities of Rome against Carthage, against Gaul under Cæsar, and against Germany from the time of Drusus to the days of Stilicho, not to mention many others, had been as fatal to the Carthaginians, Gauls, and Germans, as those of the fierce invaders of the fourth and fifth centuries were to the then population of the debased Western Empire. The destruction of human life and comfort in the regions attacked were the same when the Romans invaded the barbarians, as when the latter retaliated their

B O O K

VII.

aggressions. War itself must cease, from the increasing wisdom and virtue of mankind, before such calamities will disappear; but it is consolatory to human reason to observe, that, while the moral imperfections of the world operate to continue it, a benevolent order of things compels even its mischiefs to produce good; and, if this view of such periods be not taken, we shall never attain the discernment of the true philosophy of the moral government of the world.

THAT the settlements of the German kingdoms in the Roman Empire were not so calamitous to the world as so many have supposed, is most forcibly implied by the intimations, before mentioned, from Salvian, that many Romans emigrated from their parental empire to place themselves under the barbaric governments, that they might escape the oppressions of the Roman collectors of the imperial taxations. The barbaric establishments were a new order of things in Europe, but cannot have been so prolific of misery to mankind as we have hitherto too gratuitously assumed; when, notwithstanding the discouragement of new languages and institutions, and ruder habits, they were preferred by many to the country which was their birth-place, which had been so long consecrated by deserved fame, and whose feelings, mind, and social manners, were congenial to their own.

THE invasions of the German nations destroyed the ancient governments, and political and legal systems of the Roman Empire in the provinces in which they established themselves; and dispossessed the former proprietors of their territorial property. A new set of land-owners was diffused over every country, with new forms of government, new prin-

ciples, and new laws, new religious disciplines and hierarchies, with many new tenets and practices. A new literature, and new manners, all productive of great improvements, in every part superseded the old, and gave to Europe a new face, and to every class of society a new life and spirit. In the Anglo-Saxon settlements in Britain we see all these effects displayed with the most beneficial consequences ; and proceed to delineate them as clearly as the distance of time, and the imperfections of our remaining documents, will permit us to discern them.

C H A P.  
 I.

THE Anglo-Saxons must have been materially improved in their manners and mental associations by the civilisation to which Britain had attained at the time of their invasion, from the Roman government and intercourse, and which has been alluded to in the former part of this work.

THE first great change in the Anglo-Saxons appeared in the discontinuance of their piracies. They ceased to be the ferocious spoilers of the ocean and its coasts ; they became land-owners, agriculturists, and industrious citizens ; they seized and divided the acquisitions of British affluence, and made the commonalty of the island their slaves. Their war-leaders became territorial chiefs ; and the conflicts of capricious and sanguinary robbery were exchanged for the possession and inheritance of property in its various sorts ; for trades and manufactures, for useful luxuries, peaceful industry, and domestic comfort.

WE will proceed to consider them as they displayed their manners and customs during their occupation of England, and before the Norman conquest introduced new institutions.

**B O O K**  
**VII.**

THEIR tenderest and most helpless years were under the care of females. The gratitude of Edgar to his nurse appears, from his rewarding with grants of land the noble lady, wife of an ealdorman, who had nursed and educated him with maternal attention.<sup>1</sup> This was not unusual: Ethelstan, an Anglo-Saxon ætheling, says, in his will, "I give to Alfswythe, my foster-mother, for her great deservingness, the lands of Wertune, that I bought of my father for two hundred and fifty mancusa of gold by weight."<sup>2</sup>

THEY had infant baptism: hence the Saxon homily says, "though the cild for youth may not speak when men baptize it."<sup>3</sup> They were enjoined to baptize their children within thirty days after birth.<sup>4</sup> They baptized by immersion; for when Ethelred was plunged in, the royal infant disgraced himself. They used the cradle.<sup>5</sup> It is mentioned in the laws, of a person of the dignity of a gesithcund man, that when he travelled he might have with him his gerefas, his smith, and his child's nurse.<sup>6</sup> Kings sometimes stood as godfathers; and their laws so venerated this relationship, as to establish peculiar provisions to punish the man who slew another's godson or godfather.<sup>7</sup> On the death of the father, the children were ordered to remain under the care of the mother, who was to provide them with sustenance; for this she was to be allowed six shillings, a cow in summer, and an ox in winter; but his relations were to occupy the

<sup>1</sup> Hist. Rames. 3 Gale, x. Script. 387. 405.

<sup>2</sup> Sax. Dict. App.

<sup>3</sup> Wanley, Catal. Sax. p. 196.

<sup>4</sup> Wilkins, Leg. Anglo-Sax. p. 14.

<sup>5</sup> Tha cild the læg on tham cneabele ibid. p. 145.

<sup>6</sup> Wilkins, p. 25.

<sup>7</sup> Ibid. p. 26.

frum-stol, the head seat, until the boy became of age. <sup>8</sup> C H A P.  
I.

THE Northmen were in the habit of exposing their children. The Anglo-Saxons seem not to have been unacquainted with this inhumanity; as one of the laws of Ina provides, that for the fostering of a foundling six shillings should be allowed the first year, twelve the next, thirty the third, and afterwards according to his wlite, or his personal appearance and beauty. <sup>9</sup>

BEDE mentions, that their period of infancy ended with the seventh year, and that the first year of their childhood began with the eighth. <sup>10</sup> In the early stage, he exhibits the person of whom he speaks as amusing himself with his play-fellows in the tricks and sports of his age, but as excelling in his dexterity, and in his power of pursuing them without fatigue. <sup>11</sup> It is hardly worth a line to remark, that the Anglo-Saxon child must have resembled every other: restless activity without an object, sport without reasoning, grief without impression, and caprice without affectation, are the usual characteristics of our earliest years in every age and climate.

As the Anglo-Saxons were not a literary people, it is natural that their childish occupations should be the exercises of muscular agility. Leaping, running, wrestling, and every contention and con-

<sup>8</sup> Wilkins, p. 20.

<sup>9</sup> Ibid. p. 19. \*

<sup>10</sup> Bede Vit. Cuthb. c. i. p. 229.

<sup>11</sup> Bede, *ibid.*

---

\* At Repton, where the kings of Mercia had a palace, and in the monastery of which place many were buried, a stone coffin was found, containing a skeleton nine feet long. It was surrounded with an hundred other skeletons of a common size. Phil. Trans. v. 35. art. 9.

**BOOK**  
**VII.**

tortion of limb which love of play or emulation could excite, were their favourite sports. Bede describes his hero as boasting of his superior dexterity, and as joining with no small crowd of boys in their accustomed wrestlings in a field; where, as usual, he says, they writhed their limbs in various but unnatural flexures.<sup>12</sup>

THE names of the Anglo-Saxons were imposed, as with us, in their infancy, by their parents. In several charters it is mentioned, that the persons therein alluded to, had been called from their cradles by the names expressed; and which they had received, "not from accident," but from the will of "their parents."<sup>13</sup>

THEIR names seem to have been frequently compound words, rather expressive of caprice than of appropriate meaning. The appellation of Mucil, "large," which Alfred's wife's father bore<sup>14</sup>, may have been suggested by the size of the new-born infant; as hwithyse, "the white boy," or Egbert, "bright eye," might have been imposed from some peculiar appearance. But the following names, when considered as applied first in infancy, appear to be as fantastic, and as much the effusions of vanity, as the lofty names so dear to modern parents:

Æthelwulf,	the noble wolf.
Berhtwulf,	the illustrious wolf.
Eadwulf,	the prosperous wolf.
Ealdwulf,	the old wolf.
Æthelwyn,	noble in battle, or the noble joy.
Eadric,	happy and rich.

<sup>12</sup> Bede Vit. Cuthb. c. i. p. 230.

<sup>13</sup> MS. Claud. B. vi. p. 34. et 62., &c.

<sup>14</sup> Asser, p. 19.

Ælfred,	an elf in council.
Hundberht,	the illustrious hound.
Heardberht,	the illustrious protector.
Æthelheard,	the noble protector.
Sigered,	victorious counsel.
Sigeric,	victorious and rich.
Æthelred,	noble in council.
Eadmund,	the prosperous patron.
Eadwin,	prosperous in battle.
Ælfheag,	tall as an elf.
Dunstan,	the mountain-stone.
Æthelbald,	noble and bold.
Wulfric,	powerful as a wolf.
Eadward,	the prosperous guardian.
Ethelstan,	the noble rock.
Ethelbert,	noble and illustrious.

OF the female names, the meaning is more applicable, and sometimes displays better taste. We give the following as specimens, taken as they occurred :

Æthelswytha,	very noble.
Selethrytha,	a good threatener.
Editha,	the blessed gift.
Elf hild,	the elf of battle.
Beage,	the bracelet.
Ethelfritha,	noble and powerful.
Adeleve,	the noble wife.
Eadburh,	the happy pledge.
Hesburge,	tall as a castle.
Eadfred,	the happy pregnancy.
Adelfeda,	the noble pregnancy.
Ælfgiva,	the elf favor.
Eadgifa,	the happy gift.
Æthelgifa,	the noble gift.
Wynfreda,	the peace of man.
Æthelhild,	the noble war-goddess.
Ælfthrythe,	threatening as an elf.

WE will subjoin a few specimens of the names prevailing in the same families :

**BOOK**  
**VII.**

**A father and three daughters :**

Dudda,	the family stem.
Deorwyn,	dear to man, or the precious joy.
Deorswythe,	very dear.
Golde,	golden. <sup>15</sup>

**A father and his four sons :**

Æthelwyn,	the noble joy.
Æthelwold,	the noble governor.
Alfwold,	the ruling elf.
Athelsin,	always noble.
Æthelwyn.	

**A brother and two sisters :**

Leonric,	the lion of the kingdom.
Adelfled.	
Adeleve,	the noble wife.

**A husband, wife, and daughter :**

Ridda,	the horseman.
Bugega,	nimble as a hind.
Heaburge.	

To which we may add,

**Ethelwulph and his four sons :**

Ethelbald,
Ethelbert,
Ethelred,
Alfred.

It has been a subject of discussion, whether the Anglo-Saxons used surnames. There can be no question that many were distinguished by appellations added to their original, or Christian names. Thus we find a person called Wulfsic se blaca, or the pale ; Thurceles hwitan, or the white ; others

<sup>15</sup> The state of this family is thus mentioned in a Saxon MS. " Dudda was a husbandman in Hæthfelda ; and he had three daughters : one was called Deorwyn ; the other Deorswythe ; and the third Golde. Wullaf, in Hæthfelda, hath Deorwyn for his wife ; and Ælfstan, at Kingawyrth, hath Deorwythe ; and Ealhstan, the brother of Ælfstan, married Golde." Cott. MS. Tib. B. 5.

Æthelwerde Stameran, and Godwine Dreflan. Sometimes a person is designated from his habitation, as Ælfric at Bertune; Leonmære at Biggrafan. Very often the addition expresses the name of his father, as Ælf gare Ælfan suna, Æl mæ r Ælfrices suna, Sired Ælfrides suna, Godwine Wolfnothes suna, or more shortly Wulfrig Madding; Badenoth Beotting. The office, trade, affinity, or possession, is frequently applied to distinguish the individuals mentioned in the charters: as Leofwine Ealdorman, Sweigen Scyldwirtha, Eadwig his mæg, Ægelpig munuc, Oswald preost, Leowine se Canon, Heording gerefa, and such like.<sup>16</sup> But although it is certain that such additional appellations were occasionally used by the Anglo-Saxons, yet they appear to have been but personal distinctions, and not to have been appropriated by them as family names, in the manner of surnames with us. In the progress of civilisation, the convenience of a permanent family denomination was so generally felt as to occasion the adoption of the custom. It is probable that the first permanent surnames were the appellations of the places of birth, or residence, or a favourite ancestor. To these, the caprice of individual choice or popular fancy, the hereditary pursuit of peculiar trades, and the continued possession of certain offices, added many others, especially in towns. But this custom of appropriating a permanent appellation to particular families, became established in the period which succeeded the Norman conquest.<sup>17</sup>

<sup>16</sup> See Hickee's Dissert. Epist. p. 22—25.

<sup>17</sup> And yet one Saxon MS. seems to express an actual surname, Hatte. Thus, "Hwita *Hatte* was a keeper of bees in

BOOK  
VII.

THE power of the Anglo-Saxon parent over his child was limited ; or at least the clergy, as soon as Christianity was introduced, began to confine it. Theodore, the second archbishop of Canterbury, in 668, allowed that a father, if compelled by necessity, might deliver up his son to a state of servitude, that is, slavery, without the child's consent. But he declared that a boy of fifteen might make himself a monk, and a girl of sixteen or seventeen might choose a religious life. Up to the age of fifteen the father might marry his daughter as he pleased ; but after fifteen, he was forbidden to dispose of her against her will.<sup>18</sup>

---

Hæthfelda ; and Tate *Hatte*, his daughter, was the mother of Wulfsige, the shooter ; and Lulle *Hatte*, the sister of Wulfsige, Hehstan had for his wife in Wealadene. Wifus, and Dunne, and Seoloce, were born in Hæthfelda.

“ Duding *Hatte*, the son of Wifus, is settled at Wealadene ; and Ceolmund *Hatte*, the son of Dunne, is also settled there ; and Ætheleah *Hatte*, the son of Seoloce, is also there ; and Tate *Hatte*, the sister of Cenwald, Mæg hath for his wife at Weligan ; and Ealdelm, the son of Herethrythe, married the daughter of Tate. Werlaf *Hatte*, the father of Werstan, was the rightful possessor of Hæthfelda,” &c. Cott. MS. Tib. B. 6.

— The above is a literal translation.

<sup>18</sup> Cæpitula Theodore ap. D'Acheri Spicel. vol. i. p. 489.

## CHAP. II.

*Their Education.*

**WE** cannot detail the particular course of education by which the Anglo-Saxons conducted their children to maturity, but some information may be gleaned. Their society was divided into two orders of men, laymen and ecclesiastics. Among the latter as much provision was made for intellectual improvement, as the general darkness of the period would allow. The laity were more contented with ignorance; and neglecting the mind, of whose powers and nature they knew nothing, they laboured to increase the hardihood and agility of the body, and the intrepidity, perhaps the fierceness, of the spirit.

CHAP.  
II.

SOME men, rising above the level of their age, endeavoured to recommend the use of schools. Thus Sigebert, in the seventh century, having enlarged his mind during his exile in France, as soon as he regained the East Anglian throne, established a school in his dominions for youth to be instructed in learning.<sup>1</sup> So we find in Alfred's time, and under his improving auspices, most of the noble, and many of the inferior orders, were put under the care of masters, with whom they learnt both Latin and Saxon books, and also writing, that "before they cultivated the arts adapted to manly strength, like hunting, and such others as suited the noble, they might make themselves acquainted with liberal knowledge." Hence Edward and

<sup>1</sup> Bede.

## BOOK

## VII.

Ælfhrythe are stated by Asser to have studiously learnt Psalms and Saxon books, and chiefly Saxon poetry.<sup>2</sup> But among the laity, these were transient gleams of intellectual sunshine, neither general nor permanent. The great and powerful undervalued knowledge; hence Alfred's brothers did not offer to attain the faculty of reading which he was tempted to acquire.<sup>3</sup> Hence, even kings state in their charters, that they signed with the cross, because they were unable to write<sup>4</sup>; and hence so many of Alfred's earls, gerefas, and thegns, who had been illiterate all their lives, were compelled by his wise severity to learn in their mature age, that they might not discharge their duties with such shameful insufficiency. It is mentioned on this occasion, that those who from age or want of capacity could not learn to read themselves, were obliged to have their son, kinsman, or, if they had none, one of their servants taught, that they might at least be read to, and be rescued from the total ignorance with which they had so long been satisfied. Asser expresses the great lamentations of these well-born, but untaught men, that they had not studied such things in their youth.<sup>5</sup> Nothing can more strongly display the general want of even that degree of education which our poorest charity-children receive, than these circumstances.

THE clergy were the preceptors of those who sought to learn; and though Alfred tells us how few even of these could read, yet our history of the

<sup>2</sup> Asser.

<sup>3</sup> Ibid.

<sup>4</sup> In a MS. charter of Wihtred, in the possession of the late Mr. Astle, to the king's mark was added, "*ad cujus confirmationem pro ignorantia literarum.*"

<sup>5</sup> Asser.

Anglo-Saxon literature will show some very brilliant exceptions. Such as they were, however, to them the moral and intellectual education of the age was entrusted. Thus Aldhelm's father, a prince, put him under the tuition of the Abbot Adrian.<sup>6</sup> Thus the Irish monk Maildulf, who settled at Malmsbury, and was well skilled in Greek and Latin, took scholars to earn subsistence.<sup>7</sup> From a passage in the biographer of Wilfrid, we learn that children, who afterwards pursued the paths of ambition, received, in the first part of their lives, instruction from ecclesiastics. He says of Wilfrid, a bishop in the eighth century, "Princes and noblemen sent their children to him to be brought up, that they might be dedicated to God, if they should choose it; or that, when full grown, he might present them in armour to the king, if they preferred it."<sup>8</sup>

WHEN they reached the age of fourteen, the aspiring, or the better conditioned, prepared themselves for arms. It was after completing his thirteenth year that Wilfrid, who had not then decided on a religious life, began to think of quitting the paternal roof. He obtained such arms, horses, and garments for himself and his boys, as were necessary to enable him to present himself to the royal notice. With these he travelled till he reached the queen of the province. He met there some of the nobles at her court, whom he had attended at his father's house. They praised him, and introduced him to the queen, by whom he was graciously received. As he afterwards chose the path of devotion, she recommended him to one of the nobles who accompanied the king, but who was induced,

<sup>6</sup> Malmsb. 3 Gale, 338.<sup>7</sup> Ibid.<sup>8</sup> Eddius, p. 62.

**B O O K** by the pressure of a paralytic disease, to exchange  
 VII. the court for the cloister. <sup>9</sup>

THE Anglo-Saxons distinguished the period between childhood and manhood by the term *cniht*ade, knighthood. It is stated in Ina's laws, "that a *cniht* of ten winters old might give evidence <sup>10</sup>;" and Bede's expression, of a boy about eight years old, is translated by Alfred, "*pær eahta pīntpa cniht*." <sup>11</sup> A king also mentions of a circumstance, that he saw it *cniht* wesende, being a *cniht*, or while a boy. <sup>12</sup> It will be considered in another place how far the term bore the meaning of chivalry among the Anglo-Saxons. A daughter was under the power of her parents till the age of thirteen or fourteen, when she had the disposal of her person herself; at fifteen, a son had the right of choosing his path of life, and might then become a monk, but not before. <sup>13</sup>

IN this season of *cniht*hood, or youth, we find them striving to excel each other at a horse-race. A person in Bede describes himself as one of a party, who on their journey came to a spacious plain, adapted to a horse-course. The young men were desirous to prove their horses in the greater course, or, as the Saxon translator expresses it, that we might run and try which had the swiftest horse. The individual spoken of at last joined them; but his animated horse, attempting to clear a concavity in the way, by a violent leap, the youth was thrown senseless against a stone, and with difficulty brought to life. <sup>14</sup>

<sup>9</sup> Eddius, p. 44.

<sup>10</sup> Wilkins, Leg. p. 16.

<sup>11</sup> Bede, lib. v. c. 18. Alf. Transl. 635.

<sup>12</sup> Bede. Alf. Transl. p. 518.

<sup>13</sup> 1 Wilk. Concil. 130.

<sup>14</sup> Bede, lib. v. c. 6.

THE Saxon youth seem to have been accustomed to habits of docility and obedience. The word *cniht* was also used to express a servant<sup>15</sup>; and Wilfrid is characterised as having in his youth attentively ministered to all his father's visitors, whether royal attendants or their servants.<sup>16</sup>

THE education of the Saxons was much assisted by the emigrations or visits of Irish ecclesiastics. We have mentioned Maildulf at Malmsbury; it is also intimated, in Dunstan's life, that some Irishmen had settled at Glastonbury, whose books Dunstan diligently studied. This great, but ambitious man, was arraigned in his youth for studying the vain songs of his Pagan ancestors, and the frivolous charms of histories.<sup>17</sup>

AFTER the prevalence of Christianity, a portion of the youth was taken into the monasteries. We have a description, in Saxon, of the employment of the boys there. One of these, in answer to the question, 'What have you done to-day?' says,

"Many things. When I heard the knell, I rose from my bed and went to church, and sang the song for before-day with the brethren, and afterwards of All Saints, and, at the dawn of day, the song of praise. After these, I said the first and seventh Psalms, with the litany and first mass. Afterwards, before noon, we did the mass for the day, and after this, at mid-day, we sang, and ate, and drank, and slept, and again we rose and sang the noon, and now we are here before thee, ready to hear what thou shalt say to us."

THE interrogation proceeds:

'When will ye sing the evening or the night song?' "When it is time."—"Wert thou flogged to-day?" "No."—"No?" "Every one knows whether he has been flogged to-day or not."

<sup>15</sup> Gen. xxiv. 65. Luke, xii. 45.

<sup>16</sup> Eddius, p. 44.

<sup>17</sup> MS. Cleop. B. 13.

**B O O K** — ‘Where do you sleep?’ “In the sleeping room with the brethren.” — ‘Who rouses you to the song before day?’  
**VII.** { “Sometimes I hear the knell and rise; sometimes my master wakes me, sternly, with his rod.”

ON being questioned why they learnt so industriously, he is made to reply,

“Because we would not be like the stupid animals, who know nothing but their grass and water.”<sup>18</sup>

THAT they used personal castigation in their education is frequently intimated.<sup>19</sup> Alcuin, in the preface to his *Dialectica*, adds a warm exhortation to his young contemporaries to improve themselves by education. “O ye, who enjoy the youthful age, so fitted for your lessons! Learn. Be docile. Lose not the day in idle things. The passing hour, like the wave, never returns again. Let your early years flourish with the study of the virtues, that your age may shine with great honours. Use these happy days. Learn, while young, the art of eloquence, that you may be a safeguard and defender of those whom you value. Acquire the conduct and manners so beautiful in youth, and your name will become celebrated through the world. But as I wish you not to be sluggish; so neither be proud. I worship the recesses of the devout and humble breast.” Oper. p. 1353.

WE have a short sketch of the better kind of in-

<sup>18</sup> MS. Tib. A. 3.

<sup>19</sup> Thus Alcuin: — “As scourges teach children to learn the ornament of wisdom, and to accustom themselves to good manners.” p. 1631. He says to the brethren of York Minster, where he was educated: “You cherished the weak mind of my infancy with maternal affection. You sustained my wanton day of childhood with pious patience. You brought me to the perfect age of manhood by the *disciplines of paternal castigation*, and confirmed my mind by the *erudition of sacred instruction*.” p. 1627.

tellectual education in Alcuin's description of the studies which, after he was invited from England by Charlemagne, he superintended at Tours. It is not expressed in the best taste, but it shows the studies that were valued in the eighth century. He writes to the emperor : —

C H A P.  
II.

"According to your exhortations and kind wish, I endeavour to administer, in the schools of St Martin, to some the honey of the Sacred Writings: I try to inebriate others with the wine of the ancient classics. I begin to nourish some with the apples of Grammatical subtlety. I strive to illuminate many by the arrangement of the Stars, as from the painted roof of a lofty palace."

"But," he adds, "I want those more exquisite books of scholastic erudition which I had in my own country. — May it then please your wisdom, that I send some of our youths to procure what we need; and to convey into France the flowers of Britain, that they may not be locked up in York only, but that 'their fragrance and fruit may adorn, at Tours, the gardens and streams of the Loire.' " <sup>20</sup>

SOME of the Anglo-Saxons, if we may judge from Alcuin, had a high and just idea of the efficacy of literary education in meliorating the temper, and in forming a noble character; and it appears that the sentiments of Charlemagne were as enlightened as those of his preceptor. Alcuin says to him : —

"Yet as you wish that the *fierceness* of your youths should be mitigated by the sweetness of all kinds of poetry, you have provided for this with the wisest counsel. Sometimes the asperity of the mind does not feel the effects of sagacious advice, and sometimes the continued gentleness of the temper tends to enervate the spirit. But among these diseases the prudent temperament will arise from the middle path; now softening the swelling fury of the soul, and now rousing its slothfulness. This kind of virtue is peculiarly necessary to warriors. We read in ancient history, that a wise command of temper ought to guide and govern every thing that is done." <sup>21</sup>

<sup>20</sup> Alc. Ep. p. 1463.

<sup>21</sup> Alc. Ep. p. 1473.

## BOOK

## VII.

In another place he expatiates ardently on the benefit of lettered education.

“ Nothing tends to acquire more nobly a happy life ; nothing is more pleasant for our recreation, nor more powerful against vice ; nothing is more laudable in the highest ranks, nor more necessary for the due government of a state ; nothing is more efficacious in forming life to the most becoming manners, than Wisdom, Study, and Knowledge !” — He adds, “ Exhort, O King ! all the noble youths in your palace to acquire and possess these advantages by their daily studies, that their blooming spring may so profit from them as to lead them to an honoured old age, and a blessed immortality.”<sup>22</sup>

<sup>22</sup> Ibid. p. 1464.

## CHAP. III.

*Their Food.*CHAP.  
III.

**T**HEIR food was that mixture of animal and vegetable diet which always attends the progress of civilisation. They reared various sorts of corn in inclosed and cultivated lands, and they fed domesticated cattle for the uses of their table.

For their animal food they had oxen, sheep, and great abundance of swine; they used likewise, fowls, deer, goats, and hares; but though the horned cattle are not unfrequently mentioned in their grants and wills, and were often the subjects of exchange, yet the animals most numerously stated are the swine. The country in all parts abounded with wood; and woods are not often particularized without some notice of the swine which they contained, or were capable of maintaining. They also frequently appear in wills. Thus Alfred, a nobleman, gives to his relations an hide of land with one hundred swine; and he directs one hundred swine to be given for his soul to one minister, and the same number to another; and to his two daughters he gives two thousand swine.<sup>1</sup> So Elfhelm gives land to St. Peter's at Westminster, on the express condition that they feed two hundred of these animals for his wife.<sup>2</sup>

THEY ate various kinds of fish; but, of this description of their animal food, the species which is most profusely noticed is the eel. They used eels as abundantly as swine. Two grants are men-

<sup>1</sup> 1 Will. in App. Sax. Dict.<sup>2</sup> Ibid.

B O O K  
VII.

tioned, each yielding one thousand eels<sup>3</sup>, and by another two thousand were received as an annual rent. Four thousand eels were a yearly present from the monks of Ramsay to those of Peterborough.<sup>4</sup> We read of two places purchased for twenty-one pounds, wherein sixteen thousand of these fish were caught<sup>5</sup> every year; and, in one charta, twenty fishermen are stated, who furnished, during the same period, sixty thousand eels to the monastery.<sup>6</sup> Eel dikes are often mentioned in the boundaries of their lands.

IN the dialogues composed by Elfric to instruct the Anglo-Saxon youths in the Latin language, which are yet preserved to us<sup>7</sup>, we have some curious information concerning the manners and trades of our ancestors. In one colloquy the fisherman is asked, ‘What gettest thou by thine art?’ “Big loaves, clothing, and money.”—‘How do you take them?’ “I ascend my ship, and cast my net into the river; I also throw in a hook, a bait, and a rod.”—‘Suppose the fishes are unclean?’ “I throw the unclean out, and take the clean for food.”—‘Where do you sell your fish?’ “In the city.”—‘Who buys them?’ “The citizens; I cannot take so many as I can sell.”—‘What fishes do you take?’ “Eels, haddocks, minnows, and eel-pouts, skate, and lampreys<sup>8</sup>, and whatever swims in the river.”—‘Why do you not fish in the sea?’ “Sometimes I do; but rarely, because a great ship is necessary there.”—‘What do you

<sup>3</sup> 3 Gale, 477.

<sup>4</sup> Ibid. 456.

<sup>5</sup> Dugdale Mon. p. 244.

<sup>6</sup> Ibid. p. 235.

<sup>7</sup> In the Cotton Library, MS. Tib. A. 3.

<sup>8</sup> The Saxon names for these are, *ælar*, *hacobar*, *mynar*, *ǵ æleputan*, *ƿceotan*, *ǵ lamppeban*. MS. Tib. A. 3.

take in the sea?" "Herrings and salmons, porpoises, sturgeons, oysters, and crabs, muscles, winkles, cockles, flounders, plaice, lobsters<sup>9</sup>, and such like." — 'Can you take a whale?' "No, it is dangerous to take a whale; it is safer for me to go to the river with my ship than to go with many ships to hunt whales." — 'Why?' "Because it is more pleasant to me to take fish which I can kill with one blow; yet many take whales without danger, and then they get a great price, but I dare not, from the fearfulness of my mind."

C H A P.  
III.

THIS extract shows the uniformity of human taste on the main articles of food. Fish was such a favourite diet, that the supply never equalled the demand, and the same fishes were then in request which we select, though our taste has declined for the porpoises. The porpoise is mentioned in a convention between an archbishop and the clergy at Bath, which enumerates six of them under the name of mere-swine, or the sea-swine, and thirty thousand herrings.<sup>10</sup>

IN the earlier periods of the Anglo-Saxon colonisation, their use of fish was more limited: for we read in Bede, that Wilfrid rescued the people of Sussex from famine in the eighth century by teaching them to catch fish: "For though the sea and their rivers abounded with fish, they had no more skill in the art than to take eels. The servants of Wilfrid threw into the sea nets made out of those by which they had obtained eels, and thus directed them to a new source of plenty."<sup>11</sup> It may account

<sup>9</sup> *Deþincgar 7 leaxar, mepeppyn 7 scipian, ortnean 7 cnabban, muflan, pine pinclan, 7æ coccar, fæge, floc, lopýrtan.* MS. ib.

<sup>10</sup> MS. CCC. apud Cantab. Miscell. G. p. 73.

<sup>11</sup> Bede, lib. iv. c. 13.

**B O O K** for Wilfrid's superior knowledge, to remark, that **e**  
 { **VIL** } had travelled over the continent to Rome.

It is an article in the Penitential of Egbert, that fish might be bought though dead.<sup>12</sup> The same treatise allows herrings to be eaten, and states, that when boiled they are salutary in fever and diarrhoea, and that their gall mixed with pepper is good for a sore mouth!<sup>13</sup>

**HORSE-FLESH**, which our delicacy rejects with aversion, appears to have been used, though it became unfashionable as their civilisation advanced. The Penitential says, "Horse-flesh is not prohibited, though many families will not buy it."<sup>14</sup> But in the council held in 785, in Northumbria, before Alfwold, and in Mercia, before Offa, it was dis-  
 countenanced. "Many among you eat horses, which is not done by any Christians in the East. Avoid this."<sup>15</sup>

BUT though animal food was in much use among our ancestors, it was, as it is with us, and perhaps will be in every country in which agriculture has become habitual, and population much increased, rather the food of the wealthier part of the community than of the lower orders.

THAT it could not be afforded by all, is clear, from the incident of a king and queen visiting a monastery, and enquiring, when they saw the boys eating only bread, if they were allowed nothing else. The answer returned was, that the scanty means of the society could afford no better. The queen then petitioned the king to enable them to provide additional food.<sup>16</sup>

<sup>12</sup> 1 Wilkins Conc. p. 123.

<sup>13</sup> Ibid.

<sup>14</sup> Ibid.

<sup>15</sup> Ibid. p. 151.

<sup>16</sup> MS. Cotton Claud. C. 9. p. 128.

THEY had wheat and barley in general use, but their prices were different; wheat, like meat, was a dearer article, and therefore less universal. It is said of the abbey of St. Edmund, that the young monks eat barley-bread, because the income of the establishment would not admit of their feeding twice or thrice a-day on wheaten bread.<sup>17</sup> Their corn was thrashed with a flail like our own, and ground by the simple mechanism of mills, of which great numbers are particularised in the Domesday Survey. In their most ancient law, we read of a king's grinding-servant<sup>18</sup>; but both water-mills and wind-mills occur very frequently in their conveyances after that time.

THEY used warm bread.<sup>19</sup> The life of St. Neot states, that the peasant's wife placed on her oven "the loaves which some call loudas."<sup>20</sup> In the agreement of one of their social gilds, a broad loaf well besewon and well gesyfled is noticed.<sup>21</sup> In one grant of land we find six hundred loaves reserved as a rent<sup>22</sup>, and oftentimes cheeses. They were allowed to use milk, cheese, and eggs, on their fast-days.<sup>23</sup> Some individual devotees chose to be very rigorous. In 735, a lady is mentioned, in Oxford, of a noble family, who mortified herself by lying on the bare ground, and subsisting on broth made of the poorest herbs, and on a small quantity of barley-bread.<sup>24</sup> In the same century,

C H A P.  
'III.

<sup>17</sup> Dugd. Mon. p. 296.

<sup>18</sup> Wilkins's Leg. Sax. p. 2.

<sup>19</sup> Bede, ed. Smith, p. 234.

<sup>20</sup> MS. Cott. Claud. A. 5. p. 157.

<sup>21</sup> Dugd. Mon. p. 278.

<sup>22</sup> Sax. Chron. 75.

<sup>23</sup> Wilk. Leg. Sax. p. 194.

<sup>24</sup> Dugd. Mon. 173.

B O O K  
VII.

Boniface, the Anglo-Saxon missionary, complained of some priests, that they did not eat of the meats which God had given, and that others fed on milk and honey, rejecting animal food.<sup>25</sup>

ABSTINENCE too rigorous was not, however, a general fault of the Anglo-Saxon monks. On the contrary, whenever the interior of a well-endowed monastery is opened to our view, we meet with an abundance which precluded mortification.<sup>26</sup>

ORCHARDS were cultivated<sup>27</sup>, and we find figs, grapes, nuts, almonds, pears, and apples mentioned.<sup>28</sup> Lac acidum, perhaps butter-milk or whey, was used in a monastery in very handsome vessels, called creches, from Hokeday to Michaelmas, and lac dulce from Michaelmas to Martinmas. In the same place, placentas were allowed in the Easter and Whitsun weeks, and on some other festivals, and broth or soups every day.<sup>29</sup> In another monastery, we find land given to provide beans, salt, and honey for the brothers.<sup>30</sup> From the panegyric of Aldhelm, we may infer that honey was a favourite diet; for he says, that it excels all the dishes of delicacies and peppered broths.<sup>31</sup>

IN the MS. before mentioned, a colloquy occurs with the baker (bæcere). ‘Of what use is your art? we can live long without you.’ “You may

<sup>25</sup> Bon. Ep. Mag. Bib. Pal. xvi. p. 50.

<sup>26</sup> The allowances of the Abingdon monastery may be taken as a specimen. See them in Dugd. Mon. p. 104.

<sup>27</sup> 3 Gale Script. 490.

<sup>28</sup> Ingulf, p. 50.

<sup>29</sup> Dugd. Mon. p. 104. The creche contained septem pollices ad profunditatem a summitate unius usque ad profundum lateris ulterius. Ibid.

<sup>30</sup> 3 Gale Script. 445.

<sup>31</sup> Ald. de Laud. Virg. p. 296.

live through some space without my art, but not long, nor so well; for without my craft every table would seem empty, and without bread (hlafe) all meat would become nauseous. I strengthen the heart of man, and little ones could not do without me.”<sup>32</sup> C H A P.  
III.

IN the same MS. the food of children is thus mentioned: ‘What do you eat to-day?’ “As yet I feed on flesh-meat, because I am a child living under the rod.” — ‘What more do you eat?’ “Herbs, eggs, fish, cheese, butter, and beans, and all clean things I eat with many thanks.”<sup>33</sup>

THEY appear to have used great quantities of salt, from the numerous grants of land which specify salt-pans as important articles. In the end of autumn they killed and salted much meat for their winter consumption. It is probable that their provision of winter fodder for their cattle was very imperfect, and that salted meat was in a great measure their food till the spring re-clothed the fields with verdure. One part of the dialogue above alluded to is on the salter.

‘Salter! what does your craft profit us?’ “Much: none of you can enjoy pleasure in your dinner or supper, unless my art be propitious to him.” — ‘How?’ “Which of you can enjoy savoury meats without the smack of salt? Who could sell the contents of his cellar or his store-houses without my craft? Lo! all butter (buter gethwear) and cheese (cys gerun) would perish, unless you used me.”<sup>34</sup>

THE Anglo-Saxon ladies were not excluded from the society of the male sex at their meals.

<sup>32</sup> MS. Cott. Tib. A. 3.

<sup>33</sup> Ibid.

<sup>34</sup> MS. Cott. Tib. A. 3.

**BOOK VII.** It was at dinner that the king's mother urged Dunstan to accept the vacant bishopric<sup>35</sup>, and it appears from many passages in Saxon writings, and from the drawings in their MSS., that both sexes were together at their seasons of refreshment.

WE have an account of Ethelstan's dining with his relation Ethelfleda. The royal providers, it says, knowing that the king had promised her the visit, came the day before to see if every preparation was ready and suitable. Having inspected all, they told her, "You have plenty of every thing, provided your mead holds out." The king came with a great number of attendants at the appointed time, and, after hearing mass, entered joyfully in the dinner apartment; but unfortunately in the first salutation, their copious draughts exhausted the mead vessel. Dunstan's sagacity had foreseen the event, and provided against it; and though "the cup-bearers, as is the custom at royal feasts, were *all the day* serving it up in cut horns, and other vessels of various sizes," the liquor was not found to be deficient. This, of course, very much delighted his majesty and his companions; and, as Dunstan chose to give it a miraculous appearance, it procured him infinite credit.<sup>36</sup>

AN historian of the twelfth century contrasts, with much regret, the fashion, introduced by the Normans at court, of only one entertainment a day, with the custom of one of our preceding kings, who feasted his courtiers daily with four ample banquets. He contends that parsimony produced the direful change, though it was ascribed to

<sup>35</sup> MS. Cott. Cleop. B. 13. and Nero, C. 7.

<sup>36</sup> Cleop. B. 13. p. 67., and Acta Sanct. 29th May, p. 349, 350.

dignity.<sup>37</sup> Many good customs have originated from selfish causes; but no one will now dispute, that both mental and moral refinement must have been much advanced by this diminution of the incitements and the opportunities of gluttony and inebriety. We may remember of the king Hardicannute, so celebrated for his conviviality, that he died at a feast.

C H A P.  
III.

A FEW circumstances may be added of their fasting. It is mentioned in Edgar's regulations, as a part of the penance of a rich man, that he should fast on bread, green herbs, and water.<sup>38</sup> It is expressed in another part, that a layman during his penitence should eat no flesh, nor drink any thing that might inebriate.<sup>39</sup> The law of Wihtræd severely punished the non-observance of fast-days. If any man gave meat to his servants on these days, he was declared liable to the pillory, or literally the neck-catch, heels-fang. If the servant ate it of his own accord, he was fined six shillings, or was to suffer in his hide.<sup>40</sup>

<sup>37</sup> Hen. Hunt. lib. vi. p. 365. Malmsbury remarks, that the profusion of the English feasts was increased after the Danish visits, p. 248.

<sup>38</sup> Wilk. Leg. Sax. 97.

<sup>39</sup> Ibid. 94.

<sup>40</sup> Ibid. 11.

## CHAP. IV.

*Their Drinks and Cookery.*

**A**LE and mead were their favourite drinks, and wine was an occasional luxury. Of the ale, three sorts were noticed. In a charter, two tons of clear ale, and ten mittan or measures of Welsh ale, are reserved.<sup>1</sup> In another, a cumb full of lithes, or mild ale.<sup>2</sup> Warm wine is also mentioned.<sup>3</sup>

THE answer of the lad, in the Saxon colloquy, to the question, what he drank, was, "Ale if I have it, or water if I have not." On being asked why he does not drink wine, he says, "I am not so rich that I can buy me wine, and wine is not the drink of children or the weak-minded, but of the elders and the wise."<sup>4</sup>

IN the ancient calendar of the eleventh century, there are various figures pictured, to accompany the different months. In April, three persons appear sitting and drinking: one person is pouring out liquor into a horn; another is holding a horn to his mouth.<sup>5</sup>

WE have the list of the liquors used at a great Anglo-Saxon feast, in a passage of Henry of Huntingdon, which describes an atrocious catastrophe:—

AT a feast in the king's hall at Windsor, Harold,

<sup>1</sup> Sax. Chron. 75.

<sup>2</sup> Two tuns full of hlutres aloth, a cumb full of lithes aloth, and a cumb full of welisces aloth, are the gafol reserved in a grant of Offa. Dugd. Mon. p. 126.

<sup>3</sup> Bede, 257.

<sup>4</sup> MS. Tib. A. 3.

<sup>5</sup> MS. Tib. B. 5.

the son of Godwin, was serving the Confessor with wine, when Tosti, his brother, stimulated by envy at his possessing a larger portion of the royal favour than himself, seized Harold by the hair in the king's presence. In a rage, Tosti left the company, and went to Hereford, where his brother had ordered a great royal banquet to be prepared. There he seized his brother's attendants, and cutting off their heads and limbs, he placed them in the vessels of wine, mead, ale, pigment, morat, and cider. He then sent to the king a message, that he was going to his farm, where he should find plenty of salt meat, but had taken care to carry some with him.<sup>6</sup> The pigment was a sweet and odoriferous liquor, made of honey, wine, and spice-ries of various kinds. The morat was made of honey, diluted with the juice of mulberries.<sup>7</sup>

As the canons were severe on drunkenness, though the manners of society made all their regulations ineffectual, it was thought necessary to define what was considered to be improper and penal intoxication. "This is drunkenness, when the state of the mind is changed, the tongue stammers, the eyes are disturbed, the head is giddy, the belly is swelled, and pain follows." To atone for this, fasts, proportioned in duration to the quality of the offender, were enjoined.<sup>8</sup>

It will not be uninteresting to add the description of a feast, as given in Judith by an Anglo-Saxon poet :

Then was Holofernes  
Enchanted with the wine of men :

<sup>6</sup> Hen. Hunt. lib. vi. p. 367.

<sup>7</sup> Du Cange in voc. and Henry's History of England, iv. p. 396.

<sup>8</sup> Spelm. Concilia, 286.

B O O K  
VII.

In the hall of the guests  
 He laughed and shouted,  
 He roared and dinned,  
 That the children of men might hear afar,  
 How the sturdy one  
 Stormed and clamoured,  
 Animated and elated with wine.  
 He admonished amply  
 Those sitting on the bench  
 That they should bear it well.  
 So was the wicked one all day,  
 The lord and his men,  
 Drunk with wine;  
 The stern dispenser of wealth;  
 Till that they swimming lay  
 Over drunk,  
 All his nobility  
 As they were death slain,  
 Their property poured about.  
 So commanded the lord of men  
 To fill to those sitting at the feast,  
 Till the dark night  
 Approached the children of men.<sup>9</sup>

WE have a glance of their customs, as to drinking, in this short passage: "When all were satisfied with their dinner, and the tables were removed, they continued drinking till the evening."<sup>10</sup>

THEY seem to have had places like taverns or ale-houses, where liquors were sold; for a priest was forbidden by a law to eat or drink at *ceapealethelum*, literally, places where ale was sold.<sup>11</sup>

ETHELWOLD allowed his monastery a great bowl, from which the *obbæ* of the monks were filled twice a day for their dinner and supper. On their festivals he allowed them at dinner a *sex-tarium* of mead between six, and the same quantity

<sup>9</sup> Frag. Judith.<sup>10</sup> Gale Scrip. iii. p. 441.<sup>11</sup> Wilk. Leg. Sax. 180. So Egbert exhorts. Spel. Conc.

at supper between twelve of the brothers. On certain of the great high feasts of the year, he gave them a measure of wine.<sup>12</sup> C H A P.  
IV.

THEY boiled, baked, and broiled their victuals. We read of their meat dressed in a boiling vessel<sup>13</sup>, of their fish having been broiled<sup>14</sup>, and of an oven heated for baking loaves.<sup>15</sup> The term *abacan* is also applied to meat. In the rule of St. Benedict, two *sanda*, or dishes of sodden *syffian*, or soup *bouilli*, are mentioned.<sup>16</sup> Bede mentions a goose that hung on the wall taken down to be boiled.<sup>17</sup> The word *seathan*, to boil, deserves notice, because the noun, *seath*, from which it is derivable, implies a pit. As we read in the South Sea islands of the natives dressing their victuals in little pits lined with stones, the expression may have been originally derived from a similar practice. A cook appears as an appendix to every monastery, and it was a character important enough to be inserted in the laws. In the cloisters it was a male office; elsewhere it was chiefly assumed by the female sex. In the dialogue already cited, the cook says, "If you expel me from your society, you would eat your herbs green, and your flesh raw." He is answered, "We can ourselves seethe what is to be seethed, and broil what things are to be broiled."<sup>18</sup>

THEY seem to have attended to cookery, not merely as a matter of taste, but of indispensable decorum. It was one of their regulations, that if a person ate any thing half dressed, ignorantly, he should fast three days; if knowingly, four days.

<sup>12</sup> Dugd. Mon. 104.<sup>13</sup> Bede, p. 255.<sup>14</sup> Ibid. 238.<sup>15</sup> MS. Vesp. D. 14. p. 146.<sup>16</sup> MS. Tib. A. 3.<sup>17</sup> Bede, 255.<sup>18</sup> MS. Tib.

B O O K

VII.

Perhaps, as the uncivilized Northmen were, in their pagan state, addicted to eat raw flesh, the clergy of the Anglo-Saxons were anxious to keep their improved countrymen from relapsing into such barbarous customs.<sup>19</sup>

IN the drawings which accompany some Anglo-Saxon manuscripts, we have some delineation of their customs at table.<sup>20</sup> In one drawing, a party is at table, seated, with the females by the side of the men, in this order: a man, a lady; a man, a lady; two men, and another lady. The two first are looking towards each other, as if talking together; the three in the middle are engaged with each other, and so are the two last; each have a cup or horn in their hand. The table is oblong, and covered with a table-cloth that hangs low down from the table; a knife, a horn, a bowl, a dish, and some loaves appear. The men are uncovered; the women have their usual head-dress.<sup>21</sup>

<sup>19</sup> Spelm. Concil. 287. The same principle perhaps led them to add these regulations: "For eating or drinking what a cat or dog has spoiled, he shall sing an hundred psalms, or fast a day. For giving another any liquor in which a mouse or a weasel shall be found dead, a layman shall do penance for four days; a monk shall sing three hundred psalms." Spelm. Concil. p. 287.

<sup>20</sup> The industrious and useful Strutt has copied these drawings in the first volume of his *Horda Angelcynnan*. Nothing can more satisfactorily illustrate the manners of our ancestors, than such publications of their ornamental drawings; for, as Strutt truly observes in his preface, "though these pictures do not bear the least resemblance of the things they were originally intended to represent, yet they nevertheless are the undoubted characteristics of the customs of that period in which each illuminator or designer lived."

<sup>21</sup> This is in Strutt's work, plate xvi. fig. 2., and is taken from the Cotton MS. Claud. B. 4. The MS. consists of excerpts from the Pentateuch and the book of Joshua, which are adorned with historical figures, some of which are those above alluded to.

IN another drawing, the table is a sharp oval, also covered with an ample cloth; upon it, besides a knife and a spoon, there are a bowl, with a fish, some loaves of bread, and two other dishes. Some part of the costume is more like the manners of Homer's heroes than of modern times. At the angles of the tables two attendants are upon their knees, with a dish in one hand, and each holding up a spit with the other, from which the persons feasting are about to cut something. One of these persons, to whom the servants minister with so much respect, is holding a whole fish with one hand, and a knife in the other.<sup>22</sup>

O H A P.  
IV.

IN the drawing which accompanies Lot feasting the angels, the table is oblong, rounded at the ends, and covered with a cloth. Upon it is a bowl, with an animal's head like a pig's; another bowl is full of some round things like apples. These, with loaves or cakes of bread, seem to constitute the repast. There are two horns upon the table, and one of the angels has a knife.<sup>23</sup> As no forks appear in any of the plates, and are not mentioned elsewhere, we may presume that our ancestors used their hands instead.

THERE is one drawing of men killing and dressing meat. One man is holding a sheep by his horns, while a lad strikes at its neck with an axe; behind him is a young man severing an animal's head from his body with an axe. Another has put

<sup>22</sup> See Strutt, plate xvi. fig. 1.

<sup>23</sup> Strutt, plate xvi. fig. 3., and Claud. B. 4. Forks are supposed to have been introduced into England, from Italy, by Tom Coriate, in James the First's time; yet, I think, I have seen them mentioned as in use before his time.

**BOOK** a long stick, with a hook attached to it, into a  
**VIL.** cauldron, as if to pull up meat. The cauldron is  
upon a trivet of four legs, as high as the servant's  
knee, within which the fire is made, and blazing  
up to the cauldron.<sup>24</sup>

<sup>24</sup> Strutt, plate xvii. fig. 2., and from Claud. B. 4. The  
tapestry of Bayeux is as useful in showing the cookery and  
feasting of the Normans.

# CHAP. V.

## *Their Dress.*

**T**HE Anglo-Saxons had become so much acquainted with the conveniences of civilised life, as to have both variety and vanity of dress. Some change took place in their apparel after their conversion to Christianity, which rendered their former customs disreputable; for, at a council held in 785, it is said, "You put on your garments in the manner of the Pagans, whom your fathers expelled from the world; an astonishing thing, that you imitate those whose life you always hated!"<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
V.

It is difficult, at this distance of time, to apprehend with precision the meaning of the terms of their dress which time has permitted to reach us, and to state them with that order and illustration which will enable the reader to conceive justly of their costume. The imperfections of our attempt must be excused by its difficulty. We will begin with what we have been able to collect of an Anglo-Saxon lady's dress.

THE wife, described by Aldhelm, has necklaces and bracelets, and also rings with gems on her fingers. Her hair was dressed artificially; he mentions the twisted hairs delicately curled with the iron of those adorning her.

IN this part of her dress she was a contrast to the religious virgin, whose hair was entirely neglected.<sup>2</sup> Their hair was highly valuable and re-

<sup>1</sup> Concil. Calchut. Spelm. Conc. p. 300.

<sup>2</sup> Aldhelm de Laud. Virg. p. 307.

**B O O K** putable among the Saxon ladies. Judith is perpetually mentioned with epithets allusive to her hair. Her twisted locks are more than once noticed :

VII.

The maid of the Creator,  
With twisted locks,  
Took then a sharp sword.

—  
She with the twisted locks  
Then struck her hateful enemy,  
Meditating ill,  
With the ruddy sword.

—  
The most illustrious virgin  
Conducted and led them,  
Resplendent with her twisted locks,  
To the bright city of Bethulia.<sup>3</sup>

THE laws mention a free woman, loc bore, wearing her locks as a distinguishing circumstance.<sup>4</sup> Judith is also described with her ornaments :

The prudent one, adorned with gold,  
Ordered her maidens —  
Then commanded he  
The blessed virgin  
With speed to fetch  
To his bed rest,  
With bracelets laden,  
With rings adorned.<sup>5</sup>

ALDHELM also describes the wife as loving to paint her cheeks with the red colour of stibium.<sup>6</sup> The art of painting the face is not the creature of refinement; the most barbarous nations seem to be the most liberal in their use of this fancied ornament.

<sup>3</sup> Frag. Judith, ed. Thwaite.

<sup>5</sup> Frag. Jud.

<sup>4</sup> Wilk. Leg. Sax. p. 6.

<sup>6</sup> Aldhelm. p. 307.

THE will of Wynflæd makes us acquainted with several articles of the dress and ornaments of an Anglo-Saxon lady. She gives to Ethelflœda, one of her daughters, her engraved beah, or bracelet, and her covering mantle (mentel). To Eadgyfa, another of her daughters, she leaves her best dun tunic, and her better mantle, and her covering garment. She also mentions her pale tunics, her torn cyrtel, and other linen, web, or garment. She likewise notices her white cyrtel, and the cuffs and ribband (cuffian and bindan).<sup>7</sup>

AMONG the ornaments mentioned in the Anglo-Saxon documents, we read of a golden fly, beautifully adorned with gems<sup>8</sup>; of golden vermiculated necklaces<sup>9</sup>; of a bulla that had belonged to the grandmother of the lady spoken of<sup>10</sup>; of golden head-bands<sup>11</sup>, and of a neck-cross.<sup>12</sup>

THE ladies had also gowns; for a bishop of Winchester sends, as a present, "a short gown (gunna) sewed in our manner."<sup>13</sup> Thus we find the mantle, the kirtle, and the gown, mentioned by these names among the Saxons, and even the ornament of cuffs.

IN the drawings on the manuscripts of these times, the women appear with a long loose robe, reaching down to the ground, and large loose sleeves. Upon their head is a hood or veil, which, falling down before, was wrapped round the neck

<sup>7</sup> Our Saxon scholar, Hickes, has given a transcript of this will, in his preface to his *Gram. Anglo-Sax.* p. 22.

<sup>8</sup> Dugd. Man. 240.

<sup>9</sup> Ibid. 263.

<sup>10</sup> Ibid. 268.

<sup>11</sup> Thorp. Reg. Roffen. 26., and Mag. Bib. xvi. p. 7.

<sup>12</sup> In the Archbishop's Will. Cott. Lib. MS. Tib. A. 3.

<sup>13</sup> 16 Mag. Bib. 82. A gown made of otter's skin is mentioned, p. 88.

B O O K  
VII.

and breast.<sup>14</sup> All the ladies in the drawing have their necks, from the chin, closely wrapped in this manner; and in none of them is a fine waist attempted to be displayed, nor have their heads any other covering than their hood.

IN the dress of the men, the province of female taste was intruded upon by the ornaments they used. They had sometimes gold and precious stones round their necks<sup>15</sup>, and the men of consequence or wealth usually had expensive bracelets on their arms, and rings on their fingers. It is singular, that the bracelets of the male sex were more costly than those allotted to the fair. In an Anglo-Saxon will, the testator bequeaths to his lord a beah, or bracelet, of eighty gold mancusa, and to his lady one of thirty. He had two neck bracelets, one of forty, and another of eighty gold mancusa, and two golden bands.<sup>16</sup> We read of two golden bracelets, and five gold ornaments, called sylas, sent by an Anglo-Saxon to her friend.<sup>17</sup> Their rings are frequently mentioned: an archbishop bequeaths one in his will<sup>18</sup>; and a king sent a gold ring, with twelve sagi, as a present to a bishop.<sup>19</sup> The ring appears to have been worn on the finger next to the little finger, and on the right hand, for a Saxon law calls that the gold finger;

<sup>14</sup> Strutt's Horda Angelcynn. i. p. 47.

<sup>15</sup> Bede, p. 332. Malmsbury mentions the Angles as having heavy gold bracelets on their arms, and with pictured impressions, "picturatis stigmatibus," a kind of tattooing, on their skin, p. 102.

<sup>16</sup> See the will of Byrhtic in Thorpe's Reg. Roffen. p. 25.; also in Hickes's Thes.

<sup>17</sup> Mag. Bib. Pat. xvi. p. 92. Wynflæda, in her will, leaves a man a wooden cup adorned with gold, that he might augment his beah with the gold. Hickes's Pref.

<sup>18</sup> Cott. MS. Claud. C. 125.

<sup>19</sup> Mag. Bib. xvi. p. 89.

and we find a right hand was once cut off on account of this ornament.

C H A P.

V.

IN some of the stately apparel of the male sex, we see that fondness for gorgeous finery which their sturdier character might have been expected to have disdained. We read of silk garments woven with golden eagles<sup>20</sup>: so a king's coronation garment was of silk, woven with gold flowers<sup>21</sup>; and his cloak is mentioned, distinguished by its costly workmanship, and its gold and gems.<sup>22</sup> Such was the avidity for these distinctions, that Elfric, in his canons, found it necessary to exhort the clergy not to be ranc, that is, proud, with their rings, and not to have their garments made too ranlike.<sup>23</sup>

THEY had silk, linen, and woollen garments. A bishop gave, in the eighth century, as a present to one abroad, a woollen tunic, and another of linen, adding, "as it was the custom of the Anglo-Saxons to wear it."<sup>24</sup> The use of linen was not uncommon; for it is remarked, as a peculiarity of a nun, that she rarely wore linen, but chiefly woollen garments.<sup>25</sup>

SILK, from its cost, cannot have been common; but it was often used by the great and wealthy. Ethelbert, king of Kent, gave a silken part of dress, called an armilcasia.<sup>26</sup> Bede mentions two silken pallia of incomparable workmanship.<sup>27</sup> His own

<sup>20</sup> Ingulf, p. 61.

<sup>21</sup> Ibid. p. 61.

<sup>22</sup> 3 Gale Script. 494.

<sup>23</sup> Wilk. Leg. Sax. 158. Ranc and ranlike originally meant proud and gorgeous. The words have now become appropriated to express dignity of situation.

<sup>24</sup> 16 Mag. Bib. p. 82.

<sup>25</sup> Bede, lib. iv. c. 19. The interior tunic of St. Neot is described to have been ex panno villosa, in the Irish manner. Dugd. Mon. 368.

<sup>26</sup> Dugd. Mon. 24.

<sup>27</sup> Bede, p. 297. A pallia holoserica is mentioned as a present, in Mag. Bib. xvi. p. 97.

**B O O K** remains were inclosed in silk.<sup>28</sup> It often adorned the  
 { VII. altars of the church; and we read of a present to a  
 West-Saxon bishop, of a casula, expressed to be not  
 entirely of silk, but mixed with goats' wool.<sup>29</sup>

THE delineations of the Saxon manuscripts almost universally represent the hair of the men as divided from the crown to the forehead, and combed down the sides of the head in waving ringlets. Their beards were continuations of their whiskers on each side, meeting the hair from the chin, but there dividing, and ending in two forked points. Young men usually, and sometimes servants, are represented without beards. The heads of the soldiers are covered; but workmen, and even nobles, are frequently represented, as in the open air, without any hats or caps.<sup>30</sup>

To have a beard was forbidden to the clergy.<sup>31</sup> But the historian of Malmsbury informs us, that in the time of Harold the Second, the English laity shaved their beards, but allowed the hair of their upper lip a full growth.<sup>32</sup> The tapestry of Bayeux displays this costume: Harold, and most of the figures, have their mustachios, but no beards; King Edward, however, has his full beard. In the drawings of the Evangelists, in the fine Cotton MS.<sup>33</sup>, Mark and John have neither beards nor mustachios, but Matthew and Luke have both.

THEY had shoes, or scoh, with thongs. Bede's account of Cuthbert is curious: he says, when the saint had washed the feet of those who came to him, they compelled him to take off his own shoes, that his feet might also be made clean; for so little

<sup>28</sup> Mag. Bib. xvi. p. 88.

<sup>29</sup> Ibid. p. 50.

<sup>30</sup> See the plates in Strutt's Hord. Angel.

<sup>31</sup> Will. Leg. Sax. p. 85.

<sup>32</sup> Malmsb. lib. iii.

<sup>33</sup> Nero, D. 4.

did he attend to his bodily appearance, that he often kept his shoes, which were of leather, on his feet for several months together, frequently from Easter to Easter, without taking them off.<sup>24</sup> From this anecdote we may infer, that they had not stockings. Sometimes, however, the legs of the men appear in the drawings as covered half way up with a kind of bandage wound round, or else with a tight stocking reaching above the knee.<sup>25</sup>

THE Anglo-Saxons, represented in the Bayeux tapestry, are dressed in this manner; both the great and their inferiors have caps or bonnets on their heads, which are kept on even in the presence of the king, sitting with his sceptre on the throne. The steersman of one of the ships has a hat on, with a projecting flap turning upwards. Most of the figures have close coats, with sleeves to the wrists.<sup>26</sup> They are girded round them with a belt, and have loose skirts like kelts, but not reaching quite to the knee. Harold on horseback, with his falcon, has breeches which do not cover his knee, and a cloak flowing behind him. His knights have breeches covering the knees, and cloaks, which, like Harold's, are buttoned on the right shoulder.<sup>27</sup> One of those standing before the king has a cloak, or sagum, which falls down to its full

<sup>24</sup> Bede Vit. Cuthb. p. 243. In the life of St. Neot, he is said to have lost his scab: he saw a fox having the thwanges of his shoe in his mouth. Vesp. D. xiv. p. 144.

<sup>25</sup> Strutt, Hord. Ang. p. 47. In Saint Benedict's rule, MS. Tib. A. 3. socks (*soccas*) and stockings (*hosan*) are mentioned; also two other coverings for the legs and feet, called *meon* and *fian* and *reaf fota*, and the *earn alife* for the upper part of the body.

<sup>26</sup> Strutt has given a complete drawing of a Saxon close coat, in Tab. 15. It appears to have been put over the head like a shirt.

<sup>27</sup> For a description of this clasp or button, see Strutt, p. 46.

**B O O K** length, and reaches just below the bend of the  
**VII.** knee.<sup>38</sup> Harold, when he is about to go into the  
 ship, wears a sort of jacket with small flaps. In  
 the ship he appears with his cloak and the sur-  
 rounding skirts, which are exhibited with a border;  
 but when he takes the oath to William, he has a  
 cloak or robe reaching nearly to his heels, and but-  
 toned on the breast. They have always belts on.  
 Most of them have shoes, which seem close round  
 the ankle; others, even the great men, sometimes  
 have none.<sup>39</sup>

IN the history of the Lombards, the Anglo-Saxon  
 garments are stated to have been loose and flowing,  
 and chiefly made of linen, adorned with broad bor-  
 ders, woven or embroidered with various colours.<sup>40</sup>  
 In the MSS. of the Saxon Gospels, Nero, D. 4., the  
 four Evangelists are drawn in colours, and the gar-  
 ments in which they are represented may be con-  
 sidered as specimens of the Anglo-Saxon dress.

<sup>38</sup> It was probably of cloaks like these, that Charlemagne ex-  
 claimed, "Of what use are these little cloaks? We cannot be  
 covered by them in bed: When I am on horseback they can-  
 not defend me from the wind and rain; and when we retire for  
 other occasions, I am starved with cold in my legs." St. Gall.  
 ap. Bouquet Recueil, tom. vii.

<sup>39</sup> Strutt remarks, from the drawings, that the kings and  
 nobles, when in their state dress, were habited in a loose coat,  
 which reached down to the ankles, and had over that a long  
 robe, fastened, over both shoulders, on the middle of the breast,  
 with a clasp or buckle. He adds, that the edges and bottoms  
 of their coats, as well as of their robes, were often trimmed  
 with a broad gold edging, or else flowered with different co-  
 lours. The soldiers and common people wore close coats,  
 reaching only to the knee, and a short cloak over their left  
 shoulder, which buckled on the right. The kings and nobles  
 were habited in common in a dress similar to this, but richer  
 and more elegant. Strutt, Hord. Ang. i. p. 46.

<sup>40</sup> See before.

**MATTHEW** has a purple under-gown, or vest, rather close, coming down to the wrists, with a yellow border at the neck, wrists, and the bottom. His upper robe is green, with red stripes, much looser than the other. His feet have no shoes, but a lacing, as for sandals. There is a brown curtain, with rings, and a yellow bottom. His stool has a brown cushion, but no back. He writes on his knee.

CHAP.  
V.

**MARK** wears a purple robe, striped with blue, buttoned at the neck, where it opens, and shows an under garment of light blue, striped with red. His cushion is blue: he has a footstool and a small round table.

**LUKE's** under-dress is a sort of lilac, with light green stripes; over this is a purple robe with red stripes. The arm is of the color of the vest, and comes through the robe. His wrist and neck have a border.

**JOHN's** under-garment is a pea-green with red stripes; his upper robe is purple with blue stripes; this is very loose, and, opening at the breast, shows the dress beneath. These pictures show, what many passages also imply, that our ancestors were fond of many colours.<sup>41</sup> The council in 785 ordered the clergy not to wear the tintured colours of India, nor precious garments.<sup>42</sup> The clergy, whose garments were thus compulsorily simplified, endeavoured to extend their fashion to

<sup>41</sup> Bede mentions, that in Saint Cuthbert's monastery they used clothing of the natural wool, and not of varied or precious colours, p. 242. Two cloaks are mentioned among the letters of Boniface, one of which is said to be of very artful workmanship, the other of a tintured colour.

<sup>42</sup> Spel. Concil. p. 294.

**B O O K** those of the laity. Boniface, the Anglo-Saxon  
**VII.** missionary, in his letter to the archbishop of Canterbury, inveighs against luxuries of dress, and declares, that those garments which are adorned with very broad studs, and images of worms, announce the coming of Anti-Christ.<sup>43</sup> In the same spirit, at the council of Cloveshoe, the nuns were exhorted to pass their time rather in reading books and singing hymns, than in weaving and working garments of empty pride in diversified colours.<sup>44</sup> That they lined their garments with furs made from sables, beavers, and foxes, or, when they wished to be least expensive, with the skins of lambs or cats, we learn from the life of Wulstan.<sup>45</sup>

<sup>43</sup> Spel. Concil. p. 241.

<sup>44</sup> Ibid. 256.

<sup>45</sup> Anglia Sacra, vol. ii. p. 259. Our Henry, whose remarks on the dress of our ancestors are well worth reading, has given a translation of the passage in his History, vol. iv. p. 289.

## CHAP. VI.

*Their Houses, Furniture, and Luxuries.*

**I**N their ecclesiastical buildings the Anglo-Saxons were expensive and magnificent ; their dwelling-houses seem to have been small and inconvenient. <sup>1</sup> Domestic architecture is one of the things that most conspicuously displays and attends the progress of national wealth and taste. The more we recede into the antiquities of every state, we invariably find the habitations of the people ruder and less commodious.

C H A P.  
VI.

THEIR furniture we can only know as it happens to be mentioned, and sometimes imperfectly described, in some of their writings. They may have had many things which we have, but we must conceive of all we find enumerated, that it was heavy, rude, and unworkmanlike. It is in a polished age, and among industrious and wealthy nations, that the mechanical arts attain excellence ; and that every convenience of domestic life combines always finished neatness, and frequently elegance and taste, with economy of materials, and utility.

THE Anglo-Saxons had many conveniences and luxuries, which men so recently emerging from the barbarian state could not have derived from their own invention. They were indebted for these to their conversion to Christianity. When the Gothic nations exchanged their idolatry for the Christian

<sup>1</sup> Strutt has copied a Saxon house from the MS. Cleop. C. 8. in his fig. 3. of Plate I. The building of the tower of Babel, in his sixth plate, from MS. Claud. B. 4., may be considered as another specimen of their domestic architecture.

**BOOK**  
**VII.**

faith, hierarchies arose in every converted state, which maintained a close and perpetual intercourse with Rome and with each other. From the letters of Pope Gregory, of our Boniface, and many others, we perceive that an intercourse of personal civilities, visits, messages, and presents, was perpetually taking place. Whatever was rare, curious, or valuable, which one person possessed, he communicated, and not unfrequently gave to his acquaintance. This is very remarkable in the letters of Boniface and his friends<sup>2</sup>, of whom some were in England, some in France, some in Germany, and elsewhere. The most cordial phrases of urbanity and affection are usually followed by a present of apparel, the aromatic productions of the East, little articles of furniture and domestic comfort, books, and whatever else promised to be acceptable to the person addressed. This reciprocity of liberality, and the perpetual visits which all ranks of the state were in the habit of making to Rome, the seat and centre of all the arts, science, wealth, and industry of the day, occasioned a general diffusion and use of the known conveniences and approved inventions which had then appeared.

Among the furniture of their rooms, we find hangings, to be suspended on the walls, most of them silken, some with the figures of golden birds in needle-work, some woven, and some plain.<sup>3</sup> At another time, a veil or piece of hanging is mentioned, on which was sewed the destruction of Troy.<sup>4</sup> These were royal presents. We also read of the curtain of a lady, on which was woven the

<sup>2</sup> These are in the sixteenth volume of the *Magna Bibliotheca Patrum*.

<sup>3</sup> Ingulf, p. 53.

<sup>4</sup> *Ibid.* p. 9.

actions of her husband, in memory of his probity.<sup>5</sup> C H A P.  
VI.  
 These articles of manufacture for domestic use are obviously alluded to by Aldhelm in his simile, in which he mentions the texture of hangings or curtains, their being stained with purple and different varieties of colours, and their images, embroidery, and weaving. Their love of gaudy colouring was as apparent in these as in their dress; for he says, "If finished of one colour, uniform, they would not seem beautiful to the eye."<sup>6</sup> Curtains and hangings are very often mentioned; sometimes in Latin phrases, *pallia* or *cortinas*<sup>7</sup>; sometimes in the Saxon term *wahrift*. Thus *Wynfleda* bequeaths a long *heall wahrift* and a short one, and *Wulfur* bequeaths an *heall wahrifta*; the same testator also leaves a *heall reafes*.<sup>8</sup> Whether this is another expression for a hanging to the hall, or whether it alludes to any thing like a carpet, the expression itself will not decide. The probability is, that it expresses a part of the hangings. We can perceive the reasons why hangings were used in such early times: their carpenters were not exact and perfect joiners; their buildings were full of crevices, and hangings were therefore rather a necessity than a luxury, as they kept out the wind from the inhabitants. Nothing can more strongly prove their necessity, than that *Alfred*, to preserve his lights from the wind, even in the royal palaces, was obliged to have recourse to *lanthorns*.<sup>9</sup> Their hangings, we find, were not

<sup>5</sup> 3 Gale Script. 495.

<sup>6</sup> Aldhelm de Laud. Virg. 283.

<sup>7</sup> Dugd. 130. 3 Gale, 418. and 495. Ingulf, 53.

<sup>8</sup> Hickes Præf. and Diss. Ep. 54.

<sup>9</sup> See vol. ii. of this work.

**BOOK VII.** cheap enough to be used perpetually; and therefore when the king gave them to the monastery, he adds the injunction to the one gift, that it should be suspended on his anniversary, and to another, that it should be used on festivals.<sup>10</sup>

**BENCHES**<sup>11</sup> and seats, and their coverings, are also mentioned. In one gift, seven setl hrægel, or seat coverings<sup>12</sup>, occur. Wynfleda bequeaths three setl hrægl.<sup>13</sup> Their footstools appear to have been much ornamented. Ingulf mentions two great pedalas with lions interwoven, and two smaller ones sprinkled with flowers.<sup>14</sup> Some of their seats or benches represented in the drawings, have animals' heads and legs at their extremities.<sup>15</sup> Their seats seem to have been benches and stools.

**THEIR** tables are sometimes very costly: we read of two tables made of silver and gold.<sup>16</sup> Æthelwold, in Edgar's reign, is said to have made a silver table worth three hundred pounds.<sup>17</sup> We also read of a wooden table for an altar, which was adorned with ample and solid plates of silver, and with gems various in colour and species.<sup>18</sup>

**CANDLESTICKS** of various sorts are mentioned; two large candlesticks of bone (gebonede candelsticcan), and six smaller of the same kind, are enumerated<sup>19</sup>, as are also two silver candelabra, gilt<sup>20</sup>, and two candelabra well and honourably

<sup>10</sup> Ingulf, 53.

<sup>12</sup> Dugd. 216.

<sup>14</sup> Ingulf, 53.

<sup>16</sup> Dugd. Mon. 40.

<sup>18</sup> 3 Gale Script. 420.

<sup>20</sup> Dugd. Mon. 40.

<sup>11</sup> Dugd. Mon. 130.

<sup>13</sup> Hickes ubi sup.

<sup>15</sup> See Strutt, tab. 10.

<sup>17</sup> Ibid. 104.

<sup>19</sup> Dugd. Mon. 221.

made.<sup>21</sup> Bede once mentions that two candles were lighted.<sup>22</sup> C H A P.  
VI.

HAND-BELLS also appear. At one time twelve are stated to have been used in a monastery.<sup>23</sup> A disciple of Bede sends to Lullus, in France, "the bell which I have at my hand."<sup>24</sup> A silver mirror is also once mentioned.<sup>25</sup>

OF bed-furniture, we find in an Anglo-Saxon's will bed-clothes (*beddreafe*), with a curtain (*hryfte*), and sheet (*hoppscytan*), and all that thereto belongs; to his son he gives the *bedreafe* and all the clothes that appertain to it.<sup>26</sup> An Anglo-Saxon lady gives to one of her children two chests and their contents, her best bed-curtain, linen, and all the clothes belonging to it. To another child she leaves two chests, and "all the bed-clothes that to one bed belong." She also mentions her red tent<sup>27</sup> (*giteld*). On another occasion we read of a pillow of straw.<sup>28</sup> A goat-skin bed-covering was sent to an Anglo-Saxon abbot.<sup>29</sup> In *Judith* we read of the gilded fly-net hung about the leader's bed.<sup>30</sup> Bear-skins are sometimes noticed as if a part of bed-furniture. There is a drawing of a Saxon bed and curtain in *Claud. B. 4.*, which may be seen in *Strutt, Horda Angelcynn*, pl. xiii. fig. 2. The head and the bottom of the bed seem to be both boarded, and the pillows look as if made of platted straw. Not to go into a bed, but to lie on the floor, was occasionally enjoined as a penance.<sup>31</sup>

<sup>21</sup> Dugd. 130. *Candelabris ex argento ductilibus*. Ib. 104.

<sup>22</sup> Bede, 259.

<sup>23</sup> Dugd. Mon. 221.

<sup>24</sup> 16 Mag. Bib. 88.

<sup>25</sup> Dugd. 24.

<sup>26</sup> Hickee Diss. Ep. 54.

<sup>27</sup> Hickee Præf.

<sup>28</sup> 3 Gale Script. 418.

<sup>29</sup> 16 Mag. Bib. 52.

<sup>30</sup> Frag. Jud.

<sup>31</sup> Wilk. Leg. Anglo-Sax. p. 97.

**BOOK**  
**VII.**

FOR their food and conviviality they used many expensive articles. It was indeed in these that their abundant use of the precious metals principally appeared. We perpetually read of silver cups, and sometimes of silver gilt. Byrhtic, in his will, bequeaths three silver cups.<sup>32</sup> Wulfur bequeaths four cups, two of which he describes as of four pounds' value.<sup>33</sup> Wynfleda gives, besides four silver cups, a cup with a fringed edge, a wooden cup variegated with gold, a wooden knobbed cup, and two smicere scencing cuppan, or very handsome drinking cups.<sup>34</sup> In other places we read of a golden cup, with a golden dish<sup>35</sup>; a gold cup of immense weight<sup>36</sup>; a dish adorned with gold, and another with Grecian workmanship.<sup>37</sup> A lady gave a golden cup, weighing four marks and a half.<sup>38</sup> The king of Kent sent to Boniface, the Anglo-Saxon missionary in Germany, a silver bason, gilt within, weighing three pounds and a half.<sup>39</sup> On another occasion, a great silver dish of excellent workmanship, and of great value, is noticed.<sup>40</sup> Two silver cups, weighing twelve marks, were used by the monks in a refectory, to serve their drink.<sup>41</sup> Two silver basons were given by a lady to a monastery.<sup>42</sup> A king, in 833, gave his gilt cup, engraved without with vine-dressers fighting dragons, which he called his cross-bowl, because it had a cross marked within, and it had four angles projecting like a similar figure<sup>43</sup>; two silver cups, with covers, in one place<sup>44</sup>;

<sup>32</sup> Thorp. Reg. Roff. 30.

<sup>34</sup> Hickes Præf. p. 22.

<sup>36</sup> Dugd. Mon. 104.

<sup>38</sup> Ibid. 240.

<sup>40</sup> Dugd. 123.

<sup>42</sup> 3 Gale Script. 418.

<sup>44</sup> Dugd. 40.

<sup>33</sup> Hickes Diss. Ep. 54.

<sup>35</sup> Dugd. Mon. 21.

<sup>37</sup> Ibid. 40.

<sup>39</sup> 16 Mag. Bib. p. 64.

<sup>41</sup> 3 Gale Script. 406.

<sup>43</sup> Ingulf, p. 9.

five silver cups in another <sup>45</sup>; and such like notices, sufficiently prove to us that the rich and great among the Anglo-Saxons had no want of plate. At other times we meet with cups of bone <sup>46</sup>, brazen dishes <sup>47</sup>, and a coffer made of bones. <sup>48</sup> We may infer that the less affluent used vessels of wood and horn. A council ordered that no cup or dish made of horn should be used in the sacred offices. <sup>49</sup>

Horns were much used at table. Two buffalo horns are in Wynfleda's will. <sup>50</sup> Four horns are noticed in the list of a monastery's effects. <sup>51</sup> Three horns worked with gold and silver occur <sup>52</sup>; and the Mercian king gave to Croyland monastery the horn of his table, "that the elder monks may drink thereout on festivals, and in their benedictions remember sometimes the soul of the donor, Witlaf." <sup>53</sup> The curiously carved horn which is still preserved in York cathedral was made in the Anglo-Saxon times, and deserves the notice of the inquisitive, for its magnitude and workmanship.

GLASS vessels, which are among the most valuable of our present comforts, were little used in the time of Bede and Boniface. A disciple of Bede asked Lullus, in France, if there were any man in his parish who could make glass vessels well; if such a man lived there, he desired that he might be persuaded to come to England, because, adds he, "we are ignorant and helpless in this art." <sup>54</sup> Bede mentions lamps of glass, and vessels for many

<sup>45</sup> Dugd. 221.<sup>46</sup> Ibid. 221.<sup>47</sup> Bede, lib. ii. c. 16.<sup>48</sup> 16 Mag. Bib. 93.<sup>49</sup> Spelm. Conc. 295.<sup>50</sup> Hickes Præf.<sup>51</sup> Dugd. 221.<sup>52</sup> Dugd. 40.<sup>53</sup> Ingulf, 9.<sup>54</sup> 16 Mag. Bib. 88.

**B O O K** uses.<sup>55</sup> Glass became more used in the conveni-  
 {  
 VII. ences of domestic life towards the period of the  
 } Norman conquest.

**GOLD** and silver were also applied to adorn their sword-hilts, their saddles and bridles, and their banners.<sup>56</sup> Their gold rings contained gems; and even their garments, saddles, and bridles, were sometimes jewelled.<sup>57</sup>

**THE** presents which the father of Alfred took with him to Rome deserve enumeration, from their value, and because they show the supply of the precious metals which the Anglo-Saxons possessed; we derive the knowledge of them from Anastasius, a contemporary: a crown of the purest gold, weighing four pounds; two basons of the purest gold, weighing \* \* \* \* \* pounds; a sword, bound with purest gold; two small images of the purest gold; four dishes of silver gilt; two palls of silk, with golden clasps; with other silk dresses, and gold clasps, and hangings. To the bishops, priests, deacons, and other clergy, and to the great at Rome, he distributed gold, and among the people, small silver.<sup>58</sup> A few years afterwards, we learn from the same author, that the English then at Rome presented to the oratory in the pontifical palace, at Frescati, a silver table, weighing several pounds.<sup>59</sup> In the age before this, we read of gold and silver vessels sent presents to Rome.<sup>60</sup>

**GOLD** and silver rods, or crosses and crucifixes,

<sup>55</sup> Bede, p. 295.

<sup>56</sup> Dugd. Mon. 266. ib. 24. Bede, iii. 11.

<sup>57</sup> Aldhelm de Laud. Virg. 307. Eddius, 60. 62. 3 Gale Script. 494. Dugd. Mon. 24.

<sup>58</sup> Anastasius Bibliot. de Vit. Pontif. p. 403. ed. Rom. 1718.

<sup>59</sup> Ibid. 418.

<sup>60</sup> Bede, iv. c. 1.

are frequently mentioned<sup>61</sup>; also a silver graphium, or pen.<sup>62</sup> The crown of the Anglo-Saxon kings is described by the contemporary biographer of Dunstan, as made of gold and silver, and set with various gems.<sup>63</sup> They used iron very commonly, and often tin.

C H A P.  
VI

THE Anglo-Saxons seem to have been acquainted with the precious stones. In the MSS. Tib. A. 3., twelve sorts of them are thus described :

“ The first gem kind is black and green, which are both mingled together ; and this is called *giaspis*. The other is *saphyrus* ; this is like the sun, and in it appear like golden stars. The third is *calcedonius* ; this is like a burning candle. *Smaragdus* is very green. *Sardonix* is likest blood. *Onichinus* is brown and yellow. *Sardius* is like clear blood. *Berillus* is like water. *Crisoprassus* is like a green leek, and green stars seem to shine from it. *Topazius* is like gold ; and *carbunculus* is like burning fire.”

THE odoriferous productions of India, and the East, were known to our ancestors, and highly valued. They frequently formed part of their presents. Boniface sent to an abbeſs a little frankincense, pepper, and cinnamon<sup>64</sup>, to another person, some storax and cinnamon.<sup>65</sup> So he received from an archdeacon cinnamon, pepper, and costus.<sup>66</sup> A deacon, at Rome, once sent him four ounces of cinnamon, two ounces of costus, two pounds of pepper, and one pound of *cozombri*.<sup>67</sup>

THE Anglo-Saxons used the luxury of hot baths. Their use seems to have been common ; for a nun is mentioned, who, as an act of voluntary mortifi-

<sup>61</sup> Wulf. Will. ap. Hickes Diss. Ep. 54. Ingulf, 9. Dugd. 233.

<sup>62</sup> Mag. Bib. xvi. p. 51.

<sup>63</sup> MS. Cleop. B. 13.

<sup>64</sup> Mag. Bib. xvi. p. 50.

<sup>65</sup> Ibid. 51.

<sup>66</sup> Ibid. 119.

<sup>67</sup> Ibid. 120. Costus, a kind of shrub growing in Arabia and Persia, and having a root of a pleasant spicy smell.

BOOK  
VII.

cation, washed in them only on festivals.<sup>68</sup> Not to go to warm baths, nor to a soft bed, was a part of a severe penance.<sup>69</sup> The general practice of this kind of bath may be also inferred, from its being urged by the canons, as a charitable duty, to give to the poor, meat, mund, fire, fodder, bed, bathing, and clothes.<sup>70</sup> But while warm bathing was in this use and estimation, we find cold bathing so little valued as to be mentioned as a penitentiary punishment.<sup>71</sup>

THE washing of the feet in warm water, especially after travelling, is often mentioned.<sup>72</sup> It was a part of indispensable hospitality to offer this refreshment to a visitor; and this politeness will lead us to suppose, that shoes and stockings, though worn in social life, were little used in travelling. The custom of walking without these coverings in the country, and of putting them on when the traveller approached towns, has existed among the commonalty in North Britain even in the present reign. Among the gifts of Boniface to an Anglo-Saxon prelate, was a shaggy or woolly present, to dry the feet after being washed.<sup>73</sup> To wash the feet of the poor was one of the acts of penance to be performed by the rich.<sup>74</sup>

<sup>68</sup> Bede, iv. c. 19.

<sup>69</sup> Wilk. Leg. Anglo-Sax. 94.

<sup>70</sup> Wilk. Leg. Anglo-Sax. p. 95.

<sup>71</sup> Ibid. 95.

<sup>72</sup> Bede, 234. 251. 257.

<sup>73</sup> 16 Mag. Bib. 52. & ib.

<sup>74</sup> Wilk. Leg. Anglo-Sax. 97.

## CHAP. VII.

*Their Conviviality and Amusements.*

**I**N the ruder states of society, melancholy is the prevailing feature of the mind ; the stern or dismal countenances of savages are every where remarkable. Usually the prey of want or passion, they are seldom cheerful till they can riot in excess. Their mirth is then violent and transient ; and they soon relapse into their habitual gloom.

C H A P.  
VII.

As the agricultural state advances, and the comforts of civilisation accumulate, provident industry secures regular supplies ; the removal of want diminishes care, and introduces leisure ; the softer affections then appear with increasing fervour ; the human temper is rendered milder ; mirth and joy become habitual ; mankind are delighted to indulge their social feelings, and a large portion of time is devoted to amusement.

THE Anglo-Saxons were in this happy state of social improvement ; they loved the pleasures of the table, but they had the wisdom to unite with them more intellectual diversions. At their cheerful meetings it was the practice for all to sing in turn ; and Bede mentions an instance in which, for this purpose, the harp was sent round.<sup>1</sup> The musicians of the day, the wild flowers of their poetry, and the ludicrous jokes and tricks of their buffas, were such essential additions to their conviviality, that the council of Cloveshoe, which thought that more solemn man-

<sup>1</sup> Bede, lib. iv. p. 170.

B O O K  
VII.

ners were better suited to the ecclesiastic, forbade the monks to suffer their mansions to be the receptacle of the "sportive arts; that is, of poets, harpers, musicians, and buffoons."<sup>2</sup> A previous council, aiming to produce the same effect, had decreed, that no ecclesiastic should have harpers, or any music, nor should permit any jokes or plays in their presence.<sup>3</sup> In Edgar's speech on the expulsion of the clergy, the histriones, or gleemen, are noticed as frequenting the monasteries: "There are the dice, there are dancing and singing, even to the very middle of the night."<sup>4</sup> Among the canons made in the same king's reign, a priest was forbidden to be an eala-scop, or an ale-poet, or to any wise gliwige, or play the gleeman with himself, or with others.<sup>5</sup> Strutt has given some drawings of the Saxon gleeman from some ancient MSS. I will add his description of the figures.<sup>6</sup>

"We there see a man throwing three balls and three knives alternately into the air, and catching them one by one as they fall, but returning them again in rotation. To give the greater appearance of difficulty to this part, it is accompanied with the music of an instrument resembling the modern violin. It is necessary to add, that these two figures, as well as those dancing, previously mentioned, form a part only of two larger paintings, which, in their original state, are placed as frontispieces to the Psalms of David; in both, the artists have represented that monarch seated upon his throne, in the act of playing upon the harp or lyre, and surrounded by the masters of sacred music. In addition to the four figures upon the middle of the plate, and exclusive of the king, there are four more, all of them instrumental performers; one playing upon the horn, another upon the trumpet, and the other two upon a kind of

<sup>2</sup> Spel. Concil. 256.

<sup>3</sup> Spel. Concil. 159.

<sup>4</sup> Ethel. Ab. Riev. p. 360.

<sup>5</sup> Ibid. 455.

<sup>6</sup> Strutt's Sports and Pastimes, 132, 133. This book was the last publication of this worthy and industrious man.

labor or drum, which, however, is beaten with a single drumstick. The manuscript in which this illumination is preserved, was written as early as the eighth century. The second painting, which is more modern than the former by two full centuries, contains four figures besides the royal psalmist: the two not engraved are musicians; the one is blowing a long trumpet, supported by a staff he holds in his left hand, and the other is winding a crooked horn. In a short prologue immediately preceding the Psalms, we read as follows: David, filius Jesse, in regno suo quatuor elegit qui Psalmos fecerunt, id est Asaph, Æman, Æthan, et Iduthan; which may be thus translated literally: David, the son of Jesse, in his reign, elected four persons who composed psalms; that is to say, Asaph, Æman, Æthan, and Iduthan. In the painting, these four names are separately appropriated, one to each of the four personages there represented. The player upon the violin is called Iduthan, and Æthan is tossing up the knives and balls."<sup>7</sup>

C H A P.  
VII.

ANOTHER passage may be cited from the same industrious and worthy author.

"One part of the gleeman's profession, as early as the tenth century, was teaching animals to dance, to tumble, and to put themselves into variety of attitudes at the command of their masters. Upon the twenty-second plate we see the curious though rude delineation, being little more than an outline, which exhibits a specimen of this pastime. The principal jocular appears in the front, holding a knotted switch in one hand, and a line attached to the bear in the other; the animal is lying down in obedience to his command; and behind them are two more figures, the one playing upon two flutes or flageolets, and elevating his left leg while he stands upon his right, supported by a staff that passes under his arm-pit; the other dancing. This performance takes place upon an eminence resembling a stage, made with earth; and in the original a vast concourse are standing round it in a semicircle as spectators of the sport, but they are so exceedingly ill drawn, and withal so indistinct, that I did not think it worth the pains to copy them. The dancing, if I may so call it, of the flute-player, is repeated twice in the same manuscript. I have thence selected two other figures, and placed them upon the seventeenth plate, where we

---

<sup>7</sup> Strutt's Sports and Pastimes, p. 134.

B O O K  
VII.

see a youth playing upon a harp with only four strings, and apparently singing at the same time; while an elderly man is performing the part of a buffoon, or posture-master, holding up one of his legs, and hopping upon the other to the music.”<sup>8</sup>

IN a Latin MS. of Prudentius, with Saxon notes, there is a drawing which seems to represent a sort of military dance exhibited for public amusement.

“Two men equipped in martial habits, and each of them armed with a sword and shield, are engaged in a combat; the performance is enlivened by the sound of a horn; the musician acts in a double capacity, and is, together with a female assistant, dancing round them to the cadence of the music, and probably the actions of the combatants were also regulated by the same measure.”<sup>9</sup>

WE may remark, that the word commonly used in Anglo-Saxon to express dancing, is the verb *tumbian*. The Anglo-Saxon version of the Gospels mentions that the daughter of Herodias *tumbede* before Herod; and the Anglo-Saxon word for dancer is *tumbepe*. It is probable that their mode of dancing included much tumbling.

WE may infer that bear-baiting was an amusement of some importance to our ancestors, as it is stated in Domesday-book, among the annual payments from Norwich, that it should provide one bear, and six dogs for the bear.

It was in the character of a gleeman, or, as it

<sup>8</sup> Strutt's *Sports and Pastimes*, p. 134. He adds in a note, that “both these drawings occur in a MS. Psalter, written in Latin, and apparently about the middle of the tenth century. It contains many drawings, all of them exceedingly rude, and most of them merely outlines. It is preserved in the Harleian library, and marked 603.” His twenty-second plate is in the 182d page of his work; his seventeenth plate in p. 132., to which we refer the reader.

<sup>9</sup> Strutt's *Sports and Pastimes*, p. 166. His plate of it is p. 162. The MS. is in the Cotton Lib. Cleop. C. 8.

was expressed in the Latin term, jocolator, that C H A P.  
VII. Alfred visited the Danish encampment. That these persons were not only valued, but well rewarded in their day, we learn from a curious fact : Edmund, the son of Ethelred, gave a villa to his gleeman, or jocolator, whose name was Hitard. This gleeman, in the decline of life, went on a visit of devotion to Rome, and previous to his journey gave the land to the church at Canterbury.<sup>10</sup> In Domesday-book, Berdic, a jocolator of the king, is stated to have possessed three villas in Gloucestershire.

THE Anglo-Saxons used a game at hazard, which they called *tæþl*. The *tæþl-ŕtan*, or *tæþl-ŕtone*, was the die. The canons of Edgar forbid priests to be *tæþlepe*, or players at the *tæþl*.<sup>11</sup> There is a passage which may be noticed on this subject concerning Canute : A bishop having made a lucrative bargain with a drunken Dane, rode in the night to the king to borrow money to fulfil his contract : it says, " he found the king alleviating the tedium of a long night by the play of *tesserarum*, or *scaccorum* <sup>12</sup>;" he was successful in his application. Whether this play was the *tæþl*, or any other game more resembling chess, is not clear.

ONE of their principal diversions was hunting. This is frequently mentioned. A king is exhibited by Bede as standing at the fire with his attendants, and warming himself after hunting.<sup>13</sup> Alfred is praised by his friend Asser for his incomparable skill and assiduity in the arts of the chase.<sup>14</sup> He is stated to have gone as far as Cornwall to enjoy

<sup>10</sup> Dugdale Mon. p. 21.

<sup>11</sup> Spelm. Concil. p. 455.

<sup>12</sup> Hist. Rames. 3 Gale, p. 442.

<sup>13</sup> Bede, iii. 14.

<sup>14</sup> Asser, p. 16.

**B O O K** it.<sup>15</sup> The hunt of Edmund, the grandson of Alfred, at Ceoddri, is thus described by a contemporary:  
**VII.**

“ When they reached the woods, they took various directions among the woody avenues ; and lo, from the varied noise of the horns and the barking of the dogs, many stags began to fly about. From these, the king, with his pack of hounds, selected one for his own hunting, and pursued it long through devious ways with great agility on his horse, and with the dogs following. In the vicinity of Ceoddri were several abrupt and lofty precipices hanging over profound declivities. To one of these the stag came in his flight, and dashed himself down the immense depth with headlong ruin, all the dogs following and perishing with him. The king, pursuing the animal and the hounds with equal energy, was rushing onwards to the precipice : he saw his danger, and struggled violently to stop his courser ; the horse disobeyed awhile his rein : he gave up the hope of life, he recommended himself to God and his saint, and was carried to the very brink of destruction before the speed of the animal could be checked. The horse’s feet were trembling on the last turf of the precipice, when he stopped.”<sup>16</sup>

IN the Saxon dialogues above mentioned, we have this conversation on hunting : “ I am a hunter to one of the kings.” — “ How do you exercise your art ? ” “ I spread my nets, and set them in a fit place, and instruct my hounds to pursue the wild deer till they come to the nets unexpectedly, and so are entangled ; and I slay them in the nets.” — “ Cannot you hunt without nets ? ” “ Yes ; with swift hounds I follow the wild deer.” — “ What wild deer do you chiefly take ? ” “ Harts, boars, and rein-deer (rana), and goats, and sometimes hares.” — “ Did you hunt to-day ? ” “ No, because it was Sunday ; but yesterday I did. I took two harts and one boar.” — “ How ? ” “ The harts in

<sup>15</sup> Asser, p. 40.

<sup>16</sup> Life of Dunstan. Cott. MSS. Cleop. B. 13.

nets, the boar I slew." — "How dared you slay him?" "The hounds drove him to me, and I, standing opposite, pierced him." — "You was bold." "A hunter should not be fearful, because various wild deer live in the woods." — "What do you do with your hunting?" "I give the king what I take, because I am his huntsman." — "What does he give thee?" "He clothes me well, and feeds me, and sometimes gives me a horse or a bracelet, that I may follow my art more lustily."

C H A P.  
VII.

WE have a little information about the royal hunting in Doomsday-book. (When the king went to Shrewsbury to hunt, the most respectable burghers who had horses served as his guard, with arms; and the sheriffs sent thirty-six men on foot, to be stationed at the hunt while the king was there. In Hereford, every house sent a man, to be stationed in the wood whenever the king hunted.

AMONG the drawings in the Saxon calendar in the Cotton library, Tib. B. 5., the month of September represents a boar-hunt: a wood appears, containing boars; a man is on foot with a spear; another appears with a horn slung and applied to his mouth; he has also a spear, and dogs are following.

HUNTING was forbidden by Canute on a Sunday.<sup>17</sup> Every man was allowed to hunt in the woods, and in the fields that were his own, but not to interfere with the king's hunting.<sup>18</sup>

HAWKS and falcons were also favourite subjects of amusement, and valuable presents in those days, when, the country being much overrun with wood, every species of the feathered race must have

<sup>17</sup> Wilkin's Leg. Sax. 130.

<sup>18</sup> Ibid. 146.

**B O O K**  
**VII**

abounded. A king of Kent begged of a friend abroad two falcons of such skill and courage as to attack cranes willingly, and, seizing them, to throw them to the ground. He says, he makes this request, because there were few hawks of that kind in Kent who produced good offspring, and who could be made agile and courageous enough in this art of warfare.<sup>19</sup> Our Boniface sent, among some other presents, a hawk and two falcons to a friend<sup>20</sup>; and we may infer the common use of the diversion from his forbidding his monks to hunt in the woods with dogs, and from having hawks and falcons.<sup>21</sup> An Anglo-Saxon, by his will gives two hawks (*hafocar*), and all his stag-hounds (*heabop hunbar*), to his natural lord.<sup>22</sup> The sportsmen in the train of the great were so onerous on lands, as to make the exemption of their visit a valuable privilege. Hence a king liberates some lands from those who carry with them hawks or falcons, horses or dogs.<sup>23</sup> The Saxon calendar, in its drawings, represents hawking in the month of October.

HUNTING and hawking were for many ages favourite diversions in this island. In the tapestry of Bayeux, Harold appears with his hawk upon his hand. Ethelstan made North Wales furnish him with as many dogs as he chose, "whose scent-pursuing noses might explore the haunts and coverts of the deer;" and he also exacted birds, "who knew how to hunt others along the atmosphere."<sup>24</sup> A nobleman is mentioned, who frequented his estates near woods and marshes,

<sup>19</sup> Mag. Bib. xvi. p. 65.

<sup>20</sup> Ibid. p. 53.

<sup>21</sup> Ibid. p. 94.

<sup>22</sup> Thorpe's Reg. Roff. p. 24.

<sup>23</sup> Cott. MS. Claud. C. 9. p. 104.

<sup>24</sup> Malmsb. lib. ii. p. 50.

because it was convenient for hunting and hawking.<sup>25</sup> This was the fashion of the times ; and even the meek and impassive Edward the Confessor is exhibited as pursuing his deer when he was thwarted by a rustic whom he desired to punish, but that his simple mind knew not that he had the power.<sup>26</sup> The chief delights of this king were, the coursing of swift hounds, whose clamour during the sport he was eager to cheer, and the flights of birds whose nature it is to pursue their kindred prey. Every day, after his morning devotions, he indulged in these exercises.<sup>27</sup>

THE Saxon dialogues thus speak of the fowler :  
 ‘ How do you deceive fowls ?’ “ Many ways ; sometimes with nets, sometimes with gins, sometimes with lime, sometimes whistling, sometimes with hawks, sometimes with traps.” — ‘ Have you a hawk ?’ “ I have.” — ‘ Can you tame them ?’ “ I can ; what use would they be to me, if I could not tame them ?” — ‘ Give me a hawk.’ “ I will give it willingly, if you will give me a swift hound ; which hawk will you have, the greater or the less ?” — ‘ The greater ; how do you feed them ?’ “ They feed themselves and me in winter, and in spring I let them fly to the woods. I take for myself young ones in harvest, and tame them.” — ‘ And why do you let them fly from you when tamed ?’ “ Because I will not feed them in summer, as they eat too much.” — ‘ But many feed and keep them tame through the summer, that they may again have them ready.’ “ So they do, but I will not have that trouble about them, as I can take many others.”<sup>28</sup>

<sup>25</sup> Hist. Ram. 3 Gale Scrip. p. 404.

<sup>26</sup> Malmsh. lib. ii. c. 13. p. 79.

<sup>27</sup> Ibid. p. 91.

<sup>28</sup> Cotton MS. Tib. A. 3.

## CHAP. VIII.

*Their Marriages.*BOOK  
VII.

**I**T is well known that the female sex were much more highly valued, and more respectfully treated, by the barbarous Gothic nations, than by the more polished states of the East. Among the Anglo-Saxons, they occupied the same important and independent rank in society which they now enjoy. They were allowed to possess, to inherit, and to transmit landed property; they shared in all the social festivities; they were present at the witenagemot and the shire gemot; they were permitted to sue and be sued in the courts of justice; their persons, their safety, their liberty, and their property, were protected by express laws; and they possessed all that sweet influence which, while the human heart is responsive to the touch of love, they will ever retain in those countries which have the wisdom and the urbanity to treat them as equal, intelligent, and independent beings.

THE earliest institutions respecting the Anglo-Saxon marriages occur in the laws of Ethelbert. According to these, a man might purchase a woman, if the agreement was made without fraud; but if deceit was detected, she was to be taken back to her house, and his money was to be restored to him. It was also enjoined, that if a wife brought forth children alive, and survived her husband, she was to have half his property. She was allowed the same privilege, if she chose, to live with her children; but if she was childless,

his paternal relations were to have his possessions, and the morgen gift.<sup>1</sup>

C H A P.  
VIII.

THE customary forms attendant upon their marriage contracts are more clearly displayed to us in the laws of Edmund; the consent of the lady and her friends was to be first obtained; the bridegroom<sup>2</sup> was then to give his promise, and his pledge, to the person who spoke for her, that he desired her, that he might keep her, according to the law of God, as a man ought to keep his wife. Nor was this promise trusted to his own honour or interest: the female sex were so much under the protection of the law, that the bridegroom was compelled to produce friends who gave their security for his due observance of his covenant.

THE parties being thus betrothed, the next step was to settle to whom the foster lean, the money requisite for the nourishing the children, should be applied. The bridegroom was then required to pledge himself to this, and his friends became responsible for him.

THIS matter being arranged, he was then to signify what he meant to give her for choosing to be his wife, and what he should give her in case she survived him. I consider the first gift to be a de-

<sup>1</sup> Wilk. Leg. Sax. p. 7.

<sup>2</sup> The Saxon word is *brýð-guma*. *Guma* means a man, which we have perverted into groom; *brýð* implies marriage. The Welsh for marriage is *priodas*; *priodvab* is a bridegroom; *priodi*, to marry; all these in composition change into an initial *b*. No one can suspect that such a term as this can by either nation have been derived from the other. But the Welsh has preserved the rationale of the word, which implies appropriation, or proprietorship.

**B O O K**  
**VII**

signation of his intended morgen gift. This was the present which the Anglo-Saxon wives received from their husbands on the day after their nuptials, as it is expressed in the law. It seems to have been intended as a compliment to the ladies for honouring a suitor with their preference, and for submitting to the duties of wedlock. The law adds, that, if it be so agreed, it is right that she should halve the property, or have the whole if they had children together, unless she chose again another husband. This was an improvement on the ancient law, which, in the event of no issue, had directed the morgen gift to be returned.

THE bridegroom was then required to confirm with his pledge all that he had promised, and his friends were to become responsible for its due performance.

THESE preliminaries being settled, they proceeded to the marriage. Her relations then took and wedded her to wife, and to a right life, with him who desired her; and the person appointed to keep the pledges that had been given, took the security for them. For the more complete assurance of the lady's personal safety and comfort, in those days wherein a multiplicity of jurisdictions gave often impunity to crime, the friends who took the pledges were authorized to become guarantee to her, that if her husband carried her into another thane's land, he would do her no injury; and that, if she did wrong, they would be ready to answer the compensation, if she had nothing from which she could pay it.

THE law proceeds to direct, that the mass-priest should be present at the marriage, and should consecrate their union with the divine blessing to

every happiness and prosperity.<sup>3</sup> There is an article in one of the collections of ecclesiastical canons, "How man shall bless the bridegroom and the bride."<sup>4</sup>

C H A P.  
VIII.

THE Anglo-Saxon remains will furnish us with some illustrations of the pecuniary contracts which attended their marriages. We will give one document at length, as it may be called an Anglo-Saxon lady's marriage-settlement.

"There appears in this writing the compact which Wulfric and the archbishop made when he obtained the archbishop's sister for his wife. It is, that he promised her the land at Ealretune and at Rebbedforda for her life, and promised her the land at Cnihte-wica; that he would obtain it for her for the lives of three men from the monastery at Wincelcumbe; and he gave her the land at Eanulfin-tune to give and to grant to those that were dearest to her during life, and after her life to those that were dearest to her; and he promised her fifty mances of gold, and thirty men and thirty horses. Now of this were to witness Wulfstan the archbishop, and Leofwin the ealdorman, and Æthelstan bishop, and Ælford abbot, and Bri-teh monk, and many good men in addition to them, both ecclesiastics and laymen, that this compact was thus made. Now of this compact there are two writings; one with the archbishop at Wigere ceaster, and another with Æthelstan, the bishop at Herford."<sup>5</sup>

WITHOUT deviating into an exposition of the customs of other nations as to the morgen<sup>6</sup> gift, we will state a few circumstances concerning it from our own documents. It is frequently men-

<sup>3</sup> Wilk. Leg. Sax. p. 75, 76.

<sup>4</sup> MS. CCC. Cantab. S. xii. c. 71.

<sup>5</sup> This may be seen in Wanley's Catalogue, p. 302., and Hickee's Diss. Ep. 76. Wulstan died 1023.

<sup>6</sup> Henry's observations on the marriage of our ancestors are very discursive, and relate rather to other nations than to the Anglo-Saxons. See his vol. iii. p. 393., &c. The reader of Henry will frequently have occasion to recollect this.

B O O K

VII.

tioned in ladies' wills : thus Wynfleda, bequeathing some land at Faccancumb, calls it her morgen gifu.<sup>7</sup> So Elfleda, in her will, says, " Rettendun that was my morgen gyfu<sup>8</sup> ;" and Elfhelm, in his will, has this passage : " And I declare what I gave to my wife for her morgen give ; that is, Beadewan, and Burge stede, and Strætford, and the three hides at Hean-healem." The same testator notices an additional present that he had made his wife on her nuptials : " And I gave to her when we two first came together, the two hides at Wilburgeham, and at Hrægenan, and that thereto lieth."<sup>9</sup> The morgen gift was therefore a settlement on the lady very similar to a modern jointure. It was bargained for before marriage, but was not actually vested in the wife till afterwards. Our conception of the thing will be probably simplified and assisted by recollecting the language of our modern settlements. The land or property conveyed by them is given in trust for the person who grants it " until the said marriage shall take effect ; and from and immediately after the solemnization thereof," it is then granted to the uses agreed upon. So the morgen gift was settled before the nuptials, but was not actually given away until the morning afterwards, or until the marriage was completed.

Nothing could be more calculated to produce a very striking dissimilarity, between the Gothic nations and the Oriental states, than this exaltation of the female sex to that honour, consequence,

<sup>7</sup> See her will. Hickee's Pref. xxii.

<sup>8</sup> See Lye, Sax. Dict. voc. morgen gife.

<sup>9</sup> See his will at length, from Mr. Astle's collection, in the second appendix to the Saxon Dictionary.

and independence, which European laws studied to uphold. As the education of youth will always rest principally with women, in the most ductile part of life, it is of the greatest importance that the fair sex should possess high estimation in society; and nothing could more certainly tend to perpetuate this feeling, than the privilege of possessing property in their own right, and at their own disposal.

C H A P.  
VII.

THAT the Anglo-Saxon ladies both inherited and disposed of property as they pleased, appears from many instances: a wife is mentioned who devised land by her will, with the consent of her husband in his life-time.<sup>10</sup> We read also of land which a wife had sold in her husband's life.<sup>11</sup> We frequently find wives the parties to a sale of land<sup>12</sup>; and still oftener we read of estates given to women, or devised by men of affluence to their wives.<sup>13</sup> Widows selling property is also a common<sup>14</sup> occurrence; so is the incident of women devising it.<sup>15</sup> That they inherited land is also clear, for a case is mentioned wherein, there being no male heir, the estate went to a female.<sup>16</sup> Women appear as tenants in capite in Domesday.

THERE are many instances of land being granted to both husband and wife.<sup>17</sup> The queens frequently

<sup>10</sup> Hist. Ram. 3 Gale, 460.

<sup>11</sup> Ibid. 466.

<sup>12</sup> Ibid. 472. 474, 475. 408.

<sup>13</sup> 3 Gale, 441. 407, 408.; and see the wills of Ælfred Dux, and of Elfhelm, in Sax. Dict. App. 2. and several Saxon grants.

<sup>14</sup> 3 Gale, 468.

<sup>15</sup> Ibid. 471. See the charta of Eadgifa in Sax. Dict. App. and of Wynfleda ap. Hickes.

<sup>16</sup> Ingulf, p. 59.

<sup>17</sup> As in Claud. B. 6. p. 38. So Offa gives land to his minister and his sister. Astle, No. 7. ib. 8.

**B O O K** join in the charters with the kings <sup>18</sup>; and it is once  
 VII. mentioned, that a widow and the heirs were sued  
 for her husband's debts. <sup>19</sup> Indeed, the instances  
 of women having property transferred to them,  
 and also of their transmitting it to others, surround  
 us on all sides. To name only a few: a king's  
 mother gave five hides to a noble matron, which  
 she gave to a monastery. <sup>20</sup> When a bishop had  
 bought some lands of an husband and a wife, he  
 fixed a day when she should come and surrender  
 them, because she had the greater right to the  
 land by a former husband. <sup>21</sup> A mother bequeathed  
 property to two of her daughters; and to her third  
 daughter, Leosware, she gave an estate at Wed-  
 dreringesete, on the reproachful condition, that  
 she should keep herself chaste, or marry, that she  
 and her progeny might not be branded with the  
 infamy of the contagion of prostitution. <sup>22</sup>

In the oldest Anglo-Saxon law, widows were  
 protected by an express regulation. Four ranks  
 are mentioned: an eorlcund's widow, another sort,  
 a third and fourth sort. Their tranquillity in-  
 vaded was to be punished by fines adapted to their  
 quality, as fifty shillings, twenty, twelve, and six  
 shillings. <sup>23</sup>

THEY were also guarded from personal violence.  
 If any took a widow without her consent, he was  
 to be fined a double mulct. <sup>24</sup> It was also expressly  
 forbidden to any one to marry a woman if she was  
 unwilling. <sup>25</sup>

<sup>18</sup> Astle's Charters, 48.; and Heming, p. 9., &c.

<sup>19</sup> 3 Gale, 468.

<sup>20</sup> Ibid. 481.

<sup>21</sup> Ibid. 472.

<sup>22</sup> Ibid. 507. So Alfred in his will gives estates to his three daughters, and also money.

<sup>23</sup> Wilk. Leg. Sax. 7.

<sup>24</sup> Ibid.

<sup>25</sup> Ibid. 145.

THE morgen gift was not left optional to the husband to give or withhold after the marriage. One of the laws of Ina expressly provides, that if a man bargained for a woman, and the gyft was not duly forthcoming, he should actually pay the money, and also a penalty and a compensation to her sureties for breaking his troth.<sup>26</sup> The morgen gift was also the means by which they punished widows who married too early. Twelve months was the legal term prescribed for widowhood. By Ethelred's law, every widow who kept herself in the peace of God and of the king, and who remained twelve months without a husband, might choose afterwards as she pleased.<sup>27</sup> But by a subsequent law, if she married within the year, she lost her morgen gift, and all the property which she derived from her first husband.<sup>28</sup>

THESE pecuniary bargains which were made on the Anglo-Saxon marriages do not breathe much of the spirit of affectionate romance. The men, however, cannot be called mercenary suitors, as they appear to have been the paymasters. These contracts give occasion to the Saxon legislators to express the fact of treating for a marriage by the terms of buying a wife. Hence our oldest law says, if a man buys a maiden, the bargain shall stand if there be no deceit; otherwise, she should be restored to her home, and his money shall be returned to him.<sup>29</sup> So, in the penalty before mentioned annexed to the non-payment of the morgen gift, the expression used is, if a man buys a wife.<sup>30</sup> In this kind of marriage-bargains it was a necessary protection extended to the lover, that

<sup>26</sup> Wilk. Leg. Sax. 20.<sup>27</sup> Ibid. 109. 122.<sup>28</sup> Ibid. 145.<sup>29</sup> Ibid. 7.<sup>30</sup> Ibid. 19.

**B O O K** VII. the same law which forbade the compelling a woman to marry the man she disliked, also, as an impartial counterpart of justice, directed that a man should not be forced to give his money, unless he was desirous to bestow it of his own free <sup>31</sup> will. There is another passage which tends to express, that marriage was considered as the purchase of the lady. "If a freeman cohabit with the wife of a freeman, he must pay the were, and obtain another woman with his own money, and lead her to the other."<sup>32</sup> In this point, we have greatly improved on the customs, or at least the language of our ancestors. Pecuniary considerations and arrangements are still important formulas preceding marriages; but ladies frequently bring their husband property, instead of receiving it; and if they do not, their affection and attentions are his dearest treasure. They are not now either bought or sold, unless where interest counterfeits affection.

AFTER adding that marriages were forbidden within certain degrees of consanguinity<sup>33</sup>, we have only the unpleasing task remaining of mentioning the penalties which were attached to the violation of female chastity.

If a slave committed a rape on a female slave, he was punished with a corporal mutilation. If any one compelled an immature maiden, he was to abide the same punishment. Whoever violated a ceorl's wife, was to pay him five shillings, and be fined sixty shillings.<sup>34</sup>

For adultery with the wife of a twelve hundred man, the offender was to pay one hundred and twenty shillings; and one hundred shillings for the

<sup>31</sup> Wilk. Leg. Sax. 145.

<sup>33</sup> Ibid. 52. 129.

<sup>32</sup> Ibid. 4.

<sup>34</sup> Ibid. 40.

wife of a six hundred man, and forty shillings for a ceorl's wife. This might be paid in live property, and no man might sell another for it. For the degrees of intimacy with a ceorl's wife, which are specified, various fines were exacted.<sup>35</sup> C H A P.  
VIII.

THE earliest Saxon laws were attentive to this vice: in those of Ethelred fifty shillings were the appointed penalty for intimacy with the king's maiden, half that sum with his grinding servant, and twelve shillings with another, or with an earl's cup-bearer. The chastity of a ceorl's attendant was guarded by six shillings, and of inferior servants by the diminished penalty of fifty and thirty scættas.<sup>36</sup>

By the same laws, for a rape on a servile woman, the offender was to pay her owner fifty shillings, and then to buy her at the will of her owner. If she was pregnant, he was to pay thirty-five shillings, and fifteen shillings to the king, and twenty shillings if betrothed to another.<sup>37</sup>

THEIR high estimation and rigorous exaction of female virtue, even among the servile, is strongly implied in this passage of one of Bede's works:

In the courts of princes there are certain men and women moving continually in more splendid vestments, and retaining a greater familiarity with their lord and lady. There it is studiously provided, that none of the women there who are in an enslaved state should remain with any stain of unchastity; but if by chance she should turn to the eyes of men with an immodest aspect, she is immediately chided with severity. There some are deputed to the interior, some to the exterior offices, all of whom carefully observe the duties committed to them, that they may claim nothing but what is so entrusted. V. 8. p. 1067.

<sup>35</sup> Wilk. Leg. Sax. p. 37.

<sup>36</sup> Ibid. p. 3.

<sup>37</sup> Ibid. p. 7.

## CHAP. IX.

*Classes and Condition of Society.*B O O K  
VII.

**E**VERY man in the Anglo-Saxon society beneath the cyning and his family was in one of these classes. He was either in high estimation from his birth; or he was in a state of dignity from office, or from property; or he was a free-man; or a freed-man; or he was in one of the servile classes. Thus inequality was as much the character of the Anglo-Saxon society as of our own superior civilisation.

THE inequality of society is the source of perpetual discontent, both against government and Providence; and yet from this inequality have arisen all the comforts that cause us to be displeased with it. In natural birth, in natural powers, in natural merit, in the womb and in the grave, we are all equal; but it is in nature an equality of destitution and want; of capability and desire; of the necessity of exertion; of destiny and hope. Mankind began their mortal race alike both in privation and in power. Nature extended her riches impartially before all. She favoured neither of her first-born sons. The materials of all the conveniences of life, which civilisation has since acquired, were present to every eye, and attainable by every hand.

BUT the very freedom of mind and action with which nature has blessed mankind, and the impulse of the privations amid which we originated,

soon terminated this equality of want, and began the acquisition of comforts and abundance. No man has from nature any advantages above his fellows: no one comes into life with four arms, or twenty eyes: none leap into birth armed and full-formed Minervas; but all being free to use their capabilities as they please, the exertion of this liberty produced inevitable inequality in anterior times, as in every subsequent age. It is not merely that the industrious will amass more conveniences than the idle, the provident more than the careless, the economist than the profuse; but the different tastes and feelings of men throw them into different social positions both of rank and property. The hunter and the fowler will not raise stores of corn like the husbandman, nor can he acquire the riches and commodities of the merchant. The warrior, abandoning the paths which the preceding characters prefer, cannot therefore, of himself, obtain the comforts which they value and pursue, but gains an estimation and consequence in the social talk, which gratifies him more than the shiploads of foreign commerce, or the replenished granaries of the agriculturist. The artisan, attached to his humble but cherished tranquillity, neither feels nor envies the dangerous honours of the soldier, nor the risks and sufferings of the trading navigator. Thus mankind, obeying the tendency of their various dispositions, fill social life with inequality, and, by pursuing such diversified roads, are for ever multiplying the conveniences and enjoyments of life, though the dissimilar acquisition of these, from the exertion of individual liberty of will and action, is perpetually augmenting the inequality complained of. The

BOOK

VII.

truth is, that, by these various pursuits, the comforts of every class, even of the lowest, are inconceivably increased. Our common farmers now fare better than the thegns and knights of the Anglo-Saxon days; and the cottages of our day-labourers have many more conveniences, and their life fewer privations, than most of the Anglo-Saxon classes of society enjoyed below the baron, the thegn, and the knight, and some even which the latter of these had not: to instance only one circumstance — the comforts of a chimney and its cleanliness. Most of our early ancestors lived at home amid smoke and dirt, with one of which, at least, life would, to the poorest among us, seem intolerable; yet Alcuin, the Anglo-Saxon abbot who was reproached for having ten thousand slaves or vassal peasantry at his command, lived in an habitation sordid with smoke, and affecting his eyes, which he refused to quit for the gilded arched roofs of Italy<sup>1</sup>, the remains of Roman luxury, to which the emperor invited him.

It is the glory of civilised life, for the more successful possessor of its advantages to diffuse them, from his own stores, as far as he is able, wherever he observes them to be painfully deficient.

Dignity  
by birth;

THERE was certainly among our Anglo-Saxon ancestors a personal distinction arising from birth. Individuals are described in these times as noble by descent.<sup>2</sup> The expression *ethelboren*, or noble

<sup>1</sup> He writes to the emperor, who had urged him to visit Rome: "You blame me for preferring the houses of Tours, sordid with smoke, to the gilded arches of the Romans; I would say, with your leave, that iron (swords) hurts the eyes more than smoke. Contented with the smoky houses, I remain here in peace." Ep. xiii. p. 1507.

<sup>2</sup> 3 Gale Script. 395. 417, 418.

born, occurs several times, even in the laws.<sup>3</sup> A very forcible passage on this subject appears in the life of St. Guthlac: "There was a noble (ethela) man in the high nation of the Mercians; he was of the oldest race, and the noblest (æthelstan) that was named Iclingas."<sup>4</sup> The sense of this cannot be mistaken: a family is expressly distinguished from the rest by an appropriated name "Iclingas." We may recollect here that Iornandes says of the Goths, that they had a noble race called the Balthæ, from whence Alaric sprung.<sup>5</sup> In the canons of Edgar another decisive passage attests, that superiority of birth was felt to convey superior consequence; for it was found necessary to require, "that no forth-born priest despise one that is less born, because, if men think rightly, all men are of one origin."<sup>6</sup> No peculiar titles, as with us, seem to have distinguished the nobly born; they were rather marked out to their fellows by that name of the family which had become illustrious, as the Fabii and Cornelii of the Romans. Their title was formed by the addition of *ing* to the name of the ancestor whose fame produced their glory. Thus from Uffa his posterity was called 'Uffingas. So Beowulf, the hero of an Anglo-Saxon poem, was one of the Scyldingas.

Beowulf was illustrious;  
The fruit wide sprang  
Of the posterity of the Scylde.

---

<sup>3</sup> MS. Vesp. D. 14. p. 36. 120. and Wilk. Leg. Sax. 37.

<sup>4</sup> MS. Vesp. D. 21. p. 19.      <sup>5</sup> See vol. i. of this work.

<sup>6</sup> Wilk. Leg. Sax. 83.

<sup>7</sup> Polych. Higd. 3 Gale, p. 224.

B O O K  
VII.

Then was in the burghs  
Beowulf, the Scyldinga,  
The dear king of his people.

With them the Scyld  
Departed to the ship,  
While many were prone to go  
In the path of their lord.  
They him then bore  
To the journey of the ocean  
As his companions,  
He himself commanded ;  
Whence with words they governed  
The Scyldinga of battle.<sup>8</sup>

THE birth that was thought illustrious conferred personal honour, but no political rank or power. No title was attached to it which descended by heirship and gave a perpetuity of political privileges. That was a later improvement. In theoretical reasoning, and in the eye of religion, the distinction of birth seems to be an unjust prejudice ; we have all, as our Great Alfred and Boetius sang, one common ancestor, and the same Creator, Protector, and Judge ; but the morality and merit of society is the product of very complicated and diversified motives, and is never so superabundant as to suffer uninjured the loss of any one of its incentives and supports. The fame of an applauded ancestor has stimulated many to perform noble actions, or to preserve an honourable character, and will continue so to operate while human nature exists. It creates a sentiment of honour, a dread of disgrace, an useful pride of name, which, though not universally efficient, will frequently check the vicious propensities of

<sup>8</sup> MS. Cott. Lib. Vit. A. 15. p. 129, 130.

passion or selfishness, when reason or religion has exhorted in vain. The distinction of birth may be therefore added to the exaltation of the female sex, as another of those peculiarities which have tended to extract from the barbarism of the Gothic nations a far nobler character than any that the rich climates of the East could rear.

By property;

THAT there was a nobility from landed property, distinct from that of birth, attainable by every one, and possessing (what noble birth had not of itself) political rank and immunities, is clear, from several passages. It is mentioned in the laws, as an incentive to proper actions, that through God's gift a servile thræl may become a thane, and a ceorl an eorl, just as a singer may become a priest, and a bocere (a writer) a bishop.<sup>9</sup> In the time of Ethelstan it is expressly declared, that if a ceorl have the full proprietorship of five hides of his own land, a church, and kitchen, a bell-house, a burghate-seat, and an appropriate office in the king's hall, he shall thenceforth be a thegn, or thane, by right.<sup>10</sup> The same laws provide that a thegn may arrive at the dignity of an eorl, and that a massere, or merchant, who went three times over sea with his own craft, might become a thegn.<sup>11</sup> But the most curious passage on this subject is that which attests, that without the possession of a certain quantity of landed property, the dignity of sitting in the witenagemot could not be enjoyed, not even though the person was noble already. An abbot of Ely had a brother who was courting the daughter of a great man; but the lady refused him, be-

<sup>9</sup> Wilk. Leg. Sax. 112.

<sup>10</sup> Ibid. 70.

<sup>11</sup> Ibid.

**B O O K** cause, although noble, he had not the lordship of  
**VII.** forty hides, and therefore could not be numbered among the proceres or witenas. To enable him to gratify his love and her ambition, the abbot conveyed to him certain lands belonging to his monastery. The nuptials took place, and the fraud was for some time undiscovered.<sup>12</sup>

THE principle of distinguishing men by their property is also established in the laws. Thus we read of twyhyndum, of syxhyndum, and of twelfhyndum men.<sup>13</sup> A twyhynde man was level in his were with a ceorl<sup>14</sup>, and a twelfhynde with a thegn<sup>15</sup>; and yet Canute calls both these classes his thegns.<sup>16</sup> But though property might confer distinction, yet it was the possession of landed property which raised a man to those titles which might be called ennobling. Hence it is mentioned, that though a ceorl should attain to a helmet, mail, and a gold-hilted sword, yet if he had no land he must still remain a ceorl.<sup>17</sup>

THE species of nobility which was gained by official dignities appears to have appertained to the ealdorman, the eorl, the heretoch, and the thegn, when he was a king's thegn. A certain portion of rank was also conceded to the gerefa and the scir-reve. There was a still inferior degree of consequence derived from being ealdor of an hundred, and such-like minor offices, which the laws sometimes recognise.<sup>18</sup>

<sup>12</sup> Hist. Eliens. 3 Gale, Scrip. 513.

<sup>13</sup> Wilk. Leg. Sax. 25. 33.

<sup>14</sup> Ibid. 64., and 3 Gale, 423.

<sup>15</sup> Leg. Sax. 16.

<sup>16</sup> "I Cnut, king, greet Lyfing, archbishop; and Æthelwine, shire-man, and all my thegns, twelfhynde and twi-hynde friendlily." Wanley, Cott. MSS. p. 181.

<sup>17</sup> Leg. Sax. 71.

<sup>18</sup> As in the ealdor of the hundred. Leg. Sax. 81.

THE dignity from office conferred some beneficial distinction on the family of the person possessing it; for the laws speak of an eorlcunde widow, and defend her by exacting compensations, for wrongs committed against her, much superior to those of other women.<sup>19</sup>

C H A P.  
IX.  
By office.

OFFICIAL dignities were conferred by the king, and were liable to be taken away by him on illegal conduct. This is the language with which, according to Asser, Alfred addressed his great men: "I wonder at your audacity, that by the gift of God, and by my gift, you have assumed the ministry and the degree of the wise men, and yet have neglected the study and labour of wisdom. Therefore I command, either that you lay aside the ministry of earthly power which you enjoy, or that you study wisdom more attentively."<sup>20</sup> In the laws we find an ealdorman threatened with the loss of his shire, unless the king pardon him, for conniving at the escape of a thief.<sup>21</sup> So a thegn is threatened with the perpetual loss of his thegnship for an unjust judgment, unless he prove by oath that he knew not how to give a better decision. But the king in this case also had the option of restoring him.<sup>22</sup> In the same manner the gerefas are menaced with the deprivation of their post of honour, on committing the offences described in the law.<sup>23</sup> The exact nature and duties of these dignified officers will be considered more minutely under the head of government.<sup>24</sup>

<sup>19</sup> Leg. Sax. 7.

<sup>20</sup> Asser, Vit. Ælf. 71.

<sup>21</sup> Leges Inæ, p. 20.

<sup>22</sup> Leges Edgari, p. 78., et Cnuti, p. 135.

<sup>23</sup> Leg. Sax. 69.

<sup>24</sup> A curious privilege allowed to the great may be here noticed. This was, that his friends might do penance for him.

**B O O K**  
**VII.**

THE rest of the Anglo-Saxon society consisted of three descriptions of men; the free, the freed, and the servile.

**Freemen.**

IN talking of the Anglo-Saxon freemen, we must not let our minds expatiate on an ideal character which eloquence and hope have invested with charms almost magical. No utopian state, no paradise of such a pure republic as reason can conceive, but as human nature can neither establish nor support, is about to shine around us when we describe the Anglo-Saxon freeman. A freeman among our ancestors was not that dignified independent being, "lord of the lion heart and eagle eye," which our poets fancy under this appellation; he was rather an Anglo-Saxon not in the servile state; not property attached to the land as the slaves were; he was freed from the oppression of arbitrary bondage; he was often a servant, and a master, but he had the liberty to quit the service of one lord and choose another.

THAT the Anglo-Saxon freemen were frequently servants, and had their masters, may be proved by a variety of passages in our ancient remains: "If

---

The laws of Edgar state that "a mighty man, if rich in friends, may thus with their aid lighten his penance." He was first to make his confession, and begin his penance with much groaning. "Let him then lay aside his arms and his idle apparel, and put on hair-cloth, and take a staff in his hand, and go barefoot, and not enter a bed, but lie in his court-yard." If this penance was imposed for seven years, he might take to his aid twelve men, and fast three days on bread, green herbs, and water. He might then get seven times one hundred and twenty men, whomsoever he could, who should all fast three days, and thus make up as many days of penance as there are days in seven years, p. 97. Thus a penance of seven years might be got through in a week.

any give flesh to his servants on fast-days, whether they be free or servile, he must compensate for the pillory.”<sup>25</sup> So, in the laws of Ina, “If a freeman work on a Sunday without his lord’s orders, he shall lose his liberty, or pay sixty shillings.”<sup>26</sup> That freemen were in laborious and subordinate conditions, is also strongly implied by a law of Alfred, which says, “These days are forgiven to all freemen, excepting servants and working slaves.” The days were, twelve days at Christmas, Passion week, and Easter week, and a few others.<sup>27</sup> An Anglo-Saxon, in a charter, says, with all my men, both servile and freemen.<sup>28</sup>

THEIR state of freedom had great benefits and some inconveniences: a slave being the property of another, his master was responsible for his delinquencies; but a freeman, not having a lord to pay for him, was obliged to be under perpetual bail or sureties, who engaged to produce him whenever he should be accused.<sup>29</sup> Being of more personal consideration in society, his mulcts were proportionably greater. If he stole from the king, he was obliged to pay a ninefold compensation<sup>30</sup>; if a freeman stole from a freeman, he was to compensate three-fold, and all his goods and the penalty were to go to the king.<sup>31</sup> The principle of greater compensation from the free than the servile pervades our ancient laws.

BUT the benefits of freedom are at all times incalculable, and have been happily progressive. If they had been no more than the power of changing

<sup>25</sup> Leg. Wihtrædi, 11.

<sup>27</sup> Leg. Ælf. 44.

<sup>29</sup> Leg. Ethelr. 102.

<sup>31</sup> Ibid.

<sup>26</sup> Leg. Inæ, 15.

<sup>28</sup> Thorpe, Reg. Roff. 357.

<sup>30</sup> Leg. Ethelb. 2.

**B O O K** VII. their master at their own pleasure, as our present domestic servants do, even this was a most valuable privilege; and this they exercised. We have an instance of a certain huntsman mentioned, who left the lordship of his master and his land, and chose himself another lord.<sup>32</sup>

THEY had many other advantages; their persons were frequently respected in their punishments: thus a theow who broke an appointed fast might be whipped, but a freeman was to pay a mulct.<sup>33</sup> It was no small benefit that the king was their legal lord and patron: "If any kill a freeman, the king shall receive fifty shillings for lordship."<sup>34</sup> Upon the same principle, if a freeman were taken with a theft in his hand, the king had a choice of the punishment to be inflicted on him; he might kill him, he might sell him over sea, or receive his wære.<sup>35</sup> That they were valued and protected by our ancient legislation, is evident from the provision made for their personal liberty: whoever put a freeman into bonds, was to forfeit twenty shillings.<sup>36</sup>

THIS happy state of freedom might, however, be lost: the degradation from liberty to slavery was one of the punishments attached to the free. We have mentioned already, that one offence which incurred it was violating the Sabbath. A freeman reduced to slavery by the penalties of law was called a wite theow<sup>37</sup>, a penal slave. Under this

<sup>32</sup> MS. Charters of the late Mr. Astle, 28.

<sup>33</sup> Leg. Sax. p. 53.

<sup>34</sup> Ibid. p. 2.

<sup>35</sup> Ibid. p. 12.

<sup>36</sup> Ibid. p. 3.

<sup>37</sup> Ibid. p. 22. Hence the will of archbishop Elfric says, "If any one according to the custom of England shall have

denomination he occurs in the laws, and is frequently mentioned in wills. Thus Wynflæda, directing the emancipation of some slaves, extends the same benevolence to her wite theow, if there be any.<sup>38</sup> So an archbishop directs all such to be freed who in his time had been mulcted of their liberty.<sup>39</sup> A freeman so reduced to slavery became again subject to corporal punishment; for it was ordered, that one who had stolen while free, might receive stripes from his prosecutor. It was also ordered, that if, while a wite theow, he stole, he was to be hanged.<sup>40</sup>

It is well known that a large proportion of the Anglo-Saxon population was in a state of slavery. This unfortunate class of men, who were called theow thræl, men, and esne, are frequently mentioned in our ancient laws and charters, and are exhibited in the servile condition of being another's property, without any political existence or social consideration. Slaves.

THEY were bought and sold with land, and were conveyed in the grants of it promiscuously with the cattle and other property upon it. Thus, in an enumeration of property on an estate, it is said there were a hundred sheep, fifty-five swine, two men, and five yoked oxen.<sup>41</sup> At another time we find some land given up without injury to any thing belonging it, whether men, cattle, or food.<sup>42</sup> So one bought land for thirty pounds, and gave seven

---

incurred the penalty of any slavery," he ordered him to be freed. Cott. MSS. Claud. c. ix. p. 126.

<sup>38</sup> Hickes, Pref. Gram.

<sup>39</sup> MS. Claud. c. ix. p. 125.

<sup>40</sup> Leg. Sax. 22. and p. 18. <sup>41</sup> 3 Gale, Script. 481.

<sup>42</sup> Heming. Chartul. p. 166.

**B O O K** pounds more for all the things on it, as men, stock,  
**VII.** and corn.<sup>43</sup>

IN the Anglo-Saxon wills these wretched beings are given away precisely as we now dispose of our plate, our furniture, or our money. An archbishop bequeaths some land to an abbey, with ten oxen and two men.<sup>44</sup> Ælfhelm bequeaths his chief mansion at Gyrstingthorpe, with all the property that stood thereon, both provisions and men.<sup>45</sup> Wynfleda, in her will, gives to her daughter the land at Ebbelesburn, and those men, the property, and all that thereon be; afterwards she gives "to Eadmær as much property and as many men as to him had been bequeathed before at Hafene."<sup>46</sup> In another part of her will she says, "Of those theowan men at Cinnuc, she bequeaths to Eadwold, Ceolstan the son of Elstan, and the son of Effa, and Burwhyn Mærtin; and she bequeaths to Eadgyfu, Ælfsige the cook, and Tefl the daughter of Wareburga, and Herestan and his wife, and Ecelm and his wife and their child, and Cynestan, and Wynsige, and the son of Bryhtric, and Edwyn, and the son of Bunel, and the daughter of Ælfwer." Wulfgar in his will says, "I give to Ælfere abbot the lands at Ferscesford, with the provisions, and with the men, and with all the produce as it is cultivated." This will contains several bequests of this sort.<sup>47</sup>

THEIR servile state was attended with all the horrors of slavery, descending on the posterity of the

<sup>43</sup> 3 Gale, 478.; and see the letter of Lullius, Bib. Mag. Pat. vol. xvi. p. 92.

<sup>44</sup> MS. Cott. c. ix. p. 125.; and see 1 Dug. M. 306.

<sup>45</sup> Test. Elfhelmi. App. Sax. Dict.

<sup>46</sup> Test. Wynfl. Hickes, Pref.

<sup>47</sup> Test. Wulf. Hickes, Diss. Ep. 54.

subjected individuals. A duke in Mercia added to a donation "six men, who formerly belonged to the royal villa in Berhtanwellan, with all their offspring and their family, that they may always belong to the land of the aforesaid church in perpetual inheritance." To this gift is added the names of the slaves. "These are the names of those men that are in this writing, with their offspring, and their family that come from them in perpetual heritage: Alh-mund, Tidulf, Tidheh, Lull, Lull, Eadwulf."<sup>48</sup> That whole families were in a state of slavery appears most satisfactorily from the instruments of manumission which remain to us. In them we find a man, his wife, and their offspring, frequently redeemed together; and in Wynfleda's will the wives and daughters of some slaves the names are directed to be emancipated. Ethelstan, after stating that he freed Eadelm, because he had become king, adds, "and I give to the children the same benefit as I give to the father."

SOME of the prices of slaves appear in the written contracts of their purchase which have survived.

"Here is declared in this book, that Ediwic, the widow of Sæwgels, bought Gladu at Colewin for half a pound, for the price and the toll; and Ælword, the port gerefa, took the toll; and thereto was witness Leowin, brother of Leoword, and Ælwi blaca, and Ælwin the king, and Landbiriht, and Alca, and Sæwerd; and may he have God's curse for ever that this ever undoes. Amen."

So Egelsig bought Wynric of an abbot for an yre of gold; another was bought for three man-

<sup>48</sup> Heming. Chart. Wig. p. 61, 62.; and for the next paragraphs see Hickes, Diss. Ep. p. 12., and his Preface; and Wanley's Catalogue, p. 181.

**B O O K** *cusæ.*"<sup>40</sup> The tolls mentioned in some of the contracts for slaves may be illustrated out of Doomsday-book. In the burgh of Lewis it says, that at every purchase and sale, money was paid to the *gerefa*: for an ox, a farthing was collected; for a man, four pennies.

VII.

THAT the Anglo-Saxons were sold at Rome we learn from the well-known anecdote mentioned by Bede, of Pope Gregory seeing them in the markets there. We also read of one being sold in London to a Frisian<sup>50</sup>; and of a person in France relieving many from slavery, especially Saxons, probably continental Saxons, who then abounded in that country.<sup>51</sup> It was expressly enjoined in one of the later laws, that no Christians, or innocent man, should be sold from the land.<sup>52</sup> They appear to have

<sup>40</sup> Hickes, Diss. p.12.; and App. Sax. Dict. In the act of purchase, by which Hunnifloh bought Wulfgytha, it is added, "and the brown beadle took the toll." Cott. MSS. Tib. B.5. As specimens of prices we may add, that Sydefleda was sold for five shillings and some pence; Sæthrytha for three mancusæ; Alfgytha and Gunnilda, each for half of a pound. MSS. C. C. C. Cant. Wanley, Cat. p.116.

<sup>50</sup> Bede, 166.

<sup>51</sup> Bouquet's Recueil des Historiens, tom. iii. p. 553.

<sup>52</sup> Wilk. Leg. Sax. p.107. "Some young men were exported from Northumberland to be sold, according to a custom which seems to be natural to the people of that country, of selling their nearest relations for their own advantage."—Malmsh. lib. i. c.3. "There is a sea-port town, called Bristol, opposite to Ireland, into which its inhabitants make frequent voyages on account of trade. Wulfstan cured the people of this town of a most odious and inveterate custom, which they derived from their ancestors, of buying men and women in all parts of England, and exporting them to Ireland for the sake of gain. The young women they commonly got with child, and carried them to market in their pregnancy, that they might bring a better price. You might have seen, with sorrow, long ranks of young persons of both sexes, and of the greatest

been very numerous. It is mentioned that there were two hundred and fifty slaves, men and women, in the lands given by the king to Wilfrid.<sup>53</sup> But to have a just idea of their number, we must inspect their enumeration in Domesday-book. No portion of land scarcely is there mentioned without some.

WHEN we consider the condition of the servile, as it appears in the Saxon laws, we shall find it to have been very degraded indeed. They were allowed to be put into bonds, and to be<sup>54</sup> whipped. They might be branded<sup>55</sup>; and on one occasion they are spoken of as if actually yoked: "Let every man know his teams of men, of horses, and oxen."<sup>56</sup>

They were allowed to accumulate some property of their own. We infer this from the laws having subjected them to pecuniary punishments, and from their frequently purchasing their own freedom. If an *esne* did theow-work against his lord's command, on Sunday evening after sun-set and before the moon set, he was to pay eighty shillings to his lord.<sup>57</sup> If a theow gave offerings to idols, or eat flesh willingly on a fast-day, he was mulcted six

---

beauty, tied together with ropes, and daily exposed to sale: nor were these men ashamed, O horrid wickedness! to give up their nearest relations, nay, their own children, to slavery. Wulfstan, knowing the obstinacy of these people, sometimes stayed two months among them, preaching every Lord's day; by which, in process of time, he had made so great an impression upon their minds, that they abandoned that wicked trade, and set an example to all the rest of England to do the same." Henry's Hist. vol. iv. p. 238.

<sup>53</sup> Bede, iv. c. 13.

<sup>54</sup> Wilk. Leg. Sax. 15. 22. 52, 53. 59.

<sup>55</sup> Ibid. p. 103. 139.

<sup>56</sup> Ibid. p. 47.

<sup>57</sup> Ibid. p. 11.

**B O O K** shillings, or had to suffer in his hide.<sup>58</sup> If an esne  
 { **VII.** killed another esne, who was in no act of offence,  
 he forfeited all he was worth; but if he killed a  
 freeman, his geld was to be one hundred shillings :  
 he was to be given up by his owner, who was to add  
 the price of another man.”<sup>59</sup>

A FATHER, if very poor, was allowed to give his son up to slavery for seven years, if the child consented to it.<sup>60</sup>

**Freed-  
men.**

If the mass of the Anglo-Saxon population had continued in this servile state, the progress of the nation in the improvements of society would have been very small. But a better destiny awaited them : the custom of manumission began; and the diffusion of Christianity, by mildly attempering the feelings of the individual, and by compelling him to cultivate acts of benevolence as a religious duty, increased the prevalence of the practice.

WE have many instances of the emancipation of slaves. A landholder, in Edgar’s time, who had thirty men on his grounds, directed that out of these thirteen should be liberated as lot should decide; so that, placed in the highway, they might go wherever they pleased.<sup>61</sup> It seems to have been an exercise of philanthropy, not uncommon in wills, to give freedom to some of this pitiable class of human kind. Wynfleda displays the compassionate feelings of her sex very strikingly, by directing the emancipation of several of her slaves : —

“ Let Wulfware be freed, and follow whomsoever he likes best; and let Wulfæde be freed, on the condition that she follow Æthelfleda and Eadgifa (her daughters); and let Gerburg

<sup>58</sup> Wilk. Leg. Sax. p. 11.

<sup>60</sup> 1 Wilk. Conc. 130.

<sup>59</sup> Ibid. p. 8.

<sup>61</sup> 3 Gale, Script. 407.

be freed, and Miscin, and the daughter of Burhulf at Cinnuc; and Ælfsige, and his wife, and his eldest daughter, and Ceolstane's wife; and at Ceorlatune let Pifus be freed, and Edwin, and ———'s wife; and at Saccuncumbe let Ædelm be freed, and man, and Johannan, and Spror and his wife, and Enefette, and Gersand, and Snel; and at Colleshylle let Æthelgythe be freed, and Bicca's wife, and Æffa, and Beda, and Gurhan's wife, and let Bryhsig's wife, the sister of Wulfar, be freed; and ——— the workman, and Wulfgythe the daughter of Ælfswythe." <sup>62</sup>

C H A P.  
IX.

WE have many instruments of manumission extant, from which we learn some of the causes which produced it.

SOMETIMES individuals, from their benevolence, gave them their freedom. Thus Halwun Noce, of Exeter, freed Hagel, his family woman <sup>63</sup>; and so Lifgith and his two children were declared free. <sup>64</sup> Sometimes the charitable kindness of others redeemed them: —

"Here appeareth in this Christ's book, that Siwine the son of Leofwie, at Lincumb, hath bought Sydelflæda out with five shillings and \* \* \* \* pennies, to perpetual freedom, of John the bishop and all the family at Bath; and hereto witness is Godric Ladda, and Sæwold, and his two sons, Scirewold and Brihtwold." <sup>65</sup>

So Æilgyfu the Good redeemed Hig and Dunna, and their offspring, for thirteen mancson. <sup>66</sup> We will give another specimen of these benevolent actions: —

"Here it is stated in this writing, that Aluric, the canon of Exeter, redeemed Reinold and his children, and all their offspring, of Herberdi, for two shillings; and Aluric called them free and sac-less, in town and from town, for God's love; and the witness to this is," &c. <sup>67</sup>

<sup>62</sup> Hickes, Pref. xxii.

<sup>64</sup> Sax. Dict. App.

<sup>66</sup> Hickes, Diss. Ep. 12.

<sup>63</sup> Hickes, Diss. Ep. 12.

<sup>65</sup> Ibid.

<sup>67</sup> Wanley, Catal. 152.

## B O O K

## VII.

SOMETIMES piety procured a manumission. Thus two Irishmen were freed for the sake of an abbot's soul.<sup>68</sup> But the most interesting kind of emancipation appears in those writings which announce to us that the slaves had purchased their own liberty, or that of their family. Thus Edric bought the perpetual freedom of Sægýfa, his daughter, and all her offspring. So, for one pound, Elfwig the Red purchased his own liberty; and Sæwi Hagg bought out his two sons.<sup>69</sup> Godwin the Pale is also notified to have liberated himself, his wife, and children, for fifteen shillings. Brightmær bought the perpetual freedom of himself, his wife Ælgyfu, their children and grandchildren, for two pounds. Leofenoth redeemed himself and his offspring for five oran and twelve sheep; and Ægelsig bought his son's liberty for sixty pennies.<sup>70</sup>

The Anglo-Saxon laws recognised the liberation of slaves, and placed them under legal protection. In one of them it is declared, that if any of them freed his slave at the altar, the theow should become folk-free, or free among the people; but his former owner was to possess his property, his weregeld, and his mund.<sup>71</sup> It was enjoined by the synod, held in 816, that at the death of a bishop, his English slaves, who had been reduced to slavery in his lifetime, should be freed.<sup>72</sup>

THE liberal feelings of our ancestors towards their enslaved domestics appear in the generous gifts which they made to them. The grants of land from masters to their servants are very common.

<sup>68</sup> Sax. Dict. App.

<sup>69</sup> See all these emancipations in the Appendix to the Saxon Dictionary.

<sup>70</sup> Hickee, Diss. Ep. 13. 9, 10.

<sup>71</sup> Wilk. Leg. Sax. 11.

<sup>72</sup> Spel. Conc. 330.

OUR wise and benevolent Alfred directed one of his laws to lessen the number of the enslaved. He could not emancipate those who were then in servitude, nor their future families, without a violent convulsion of the rights of property which then subsisted; and the general resistance would have made the romantic attempt not only ineffectual, but pernicious, both to those he wished to benefit and to the society at large. But what he could do safely he performed. He procured it to be enacted, by the witenagemot, that if any one should in future buy a Christian slave, the time of his servitude should be limited to six years; and that on the seventh he should be free, without any payment, and depart with the wife and the clothes he had at first. But if the lord had given him the wife, both she and her children were to remain. If he chose to continue a slave, he might determine to do so.<sup>73</sup> This law struck a decisive blow at slavery in England; it checked their future multiplication; it discouraged their sale and purchase; it established a system of legal emancipation; and gave the masters a deep interest in the kind treatment of the slaves then belonging to them, in order to preserve the race. From this provision every year added something to the numbers of the free.

THE servile class was more numerous in England than the free. This is the usual case in all countries where slavery prevails: the laborious class always out-numbers the proprietary body.

<sup>73</sup> Wilk. Leg. 29.

## CHAP. X.

*Their Gilds, or Clubs.*

BOOK  
VII.

**T**HE gilds, or social confederations, in which many of the Anglo-Saxons chose to arrange themselves, deserve our peculiar attention; we will describe them as they appear to us from some MSS. of their instruments of association which are yet in being. They are remarkable for the social and combining spirit which they display.

ONE of these is a gild-scipe, composed of eighteen members, at Exeter, whose names are mentioned in it, and to which the bishop and canons are stated to have acceded. It recites, that they have undertaken the association in mutual fraternity: the objects of their union appear to have been, that every hearth, or family, should, at Easter in every year, pay one penny; and on the death of every member of the gild one penny, whether man or woman, for the soul's scot. The canons were to have this soul's scot, and to perform the necessary rites.<sup>1</sup> This gild-scipe somewhat resembles one of our benefit societies, in which the members make small stated payments, and are buried at the expences of the fund so raised.

ANOTHER gild-scipe at Exeter purports to have been made for God's love, and their soul's need, and to have agreed that their meetings should be thrice a year; viz. at Michaelmas, at Mary's Mass, over Midwinter, and at the holy days after Easter.

<sup>1</sup> Our illustrious Hickes has printed this gild-scipe agreement, with others, in his Dissert. Epist. p. 18.

Every member was to bring a certain portion of malt, and every cniht was to add a less quantity and some honey. The mass-priest was to sing a mass for their living friends, and another for their dead friends, and every brother two psalms. At the death of every member, six psalms were to be chanted; and every man at the jub-jope was to pay five pennies, and at a house-burning one penny. If any man neglected the appointed days, he was to be fined the first time in three masses, the second in five, and the third time no man was to share with him, unless sickness or the compulsion of the lord occasioned his absence. If any one neglected his payments at the appointed time, he was to pay double; and if any member misgreeted another, he was to forfeit thirty pence. It concludes thus: — “We pray for the love of God that every man hold this meeting rightly, so as we have rightly agreed it should be. May God assist us in this.”<sup>2</sup>

THERE is an instrument made on the establishment of a gild of thegns at Cambridge. By this every member was to take an oath of true fidelity to each other, and the gild was always to assist him who had the most just claim. If any of the gild died, all the gild-scipe was to carry him wherever he desired; and if any neglected to attend on this occasion, he was fined a syster of honey; and the gild-scipe was to furnish half of the provisions at the interment, and every one was to pay two-pence for alms, and what was suitable was to be taken to St. Etheldrytha. If any of the gild should need

<sup>2</sup> Hickes, Dissert. Epist. p. 21, 22.

## BOOK

## VII.

the assistance of his companions, and it was mentioned to the gerefafa nearest the gild, then if the gerefafa neglected him, unless the gild itself was near, he was to pay one pound. If the lord neglected it, he was to forfeit the same sum, unless his superior claims compelled him to the inattention, or sickness prevented. If any killed one of a gild, eight pounds were to be the compensation; and if the homicide did not pay it, all the gildship were to avenge their member, and to support the consequences: if one did it, all were to bear alike. If any of the gild killed any other person, and was in distress, and had to pay for the wrong, and the slain were a twelfhinde person, every one of the gild must help with half a mark. If the slain be a ceorl, let each pay two ora, or one ora if a Welshman. If the gild-man kills any one wilfully or foolishly, he must bear himself what he should do; and if he should kill any of the gild by his own folly, he and his relations must abide the consequence, and pay eight pounds for the gild, or else lose its society and friendship. If any of the gild eat or drink with the homicide, unless before the king, or the lord bishop, or the ealdorman, he must pay a pound, unless, with two persons sitting, he can prove that he did not know it. If any of the gild misgreet another, let him pay a syster of honey, unless with two friends he can clear himself. If a cniht draw a weapon, let him pay his lord a pound, and let the lord have it where he may; and all the gild-scipe shall help him to get it. If the cniht wound another, let the lord avenge it. If the cniht sits within the path, let him pay a syster of honey; and if he has a foot-seat, let him do the same. If any of the gild die, or fall sick, out of the district,

let the gild fetch him, and bring him as he wished, either dead or alive, under the penalty before mentioned. If he die at home, and the gild seek not the body, nor his morgen spæce, let a syster of honey be forfeited.<sup>3</sup>

THESE gilds are sometimes alluded to in the laws. If a man without paternal relations should fight and kill another, then his maternal kinsmen were ordered to pay one-third of the were, his gild a third, and for the other part his gild was to escape.<sup>4</sup> In London there appear to have been free gilds: "This is the council that the bishops and gerefas that belong to London borough have pronounced, and with pledges confirmed in our free gilds."<sup>5</sup> In a charter concerning Canterbury, the three companies of the citizens within the walls, and those without, are mentioned.<sup>6</sup> Domesday-book likewise notices a gild of the clergy in the same city.<sup>7</sup> They seem, on the whole, to have been friendly associations made for mutual aid and contribution, to meet the pecuniary exigencies which were perpetually arising from burials, legal exactions, penal mulcts, and other payments or compensations. That much good fellowship was connected with them can be doubted by no one. The fines of their own imposition imply that the materials of conviviality were not forgotten.—

<sup>3</sup> Hickes, Dissert. Epist. p. 20.

<sup>4</sup> Wilkins, Leg. Sax. p. 41.; and see the laws, p. 18.

<sup>5</sup> Wilkins, Leg. Sax. p. 65.

<sup>6</sup> MS. Chart. penes the late Mr. Astle "tha chpso gerefapap inne buphpapa and utan buphpapa." No. 28.

<sup>7</sup> "32 inauguras quas tenent clerici de villa in gildam suam." Domesday, f. 3.

**BOOK** These associations may be called the Anglo-Saxon  
**VII.** clubs.

THAT in mercantile towns and sea-ports there were also gilds, or fraternities of men constituted for the purpose of carrying on more successful enterprises in commerce, even in the Anglo-Saxon times, appears to be a fact. Domesday-book mentions the gihalla, or guildhall, of the burghers of Dover.<sup>8</sup>

<sup>8</sup> "In quibus erat gihalla burgensium." Domesday, f. 1.

## CHAP. XI.

*Their Trades, Mechanical Arts, and Foreign Commerce.*

**T**WO things become essential to the peace and comfort of all social unions of mankind; — one, that each should have the means of acquiring the property he needs for his subsistence and welfare; and the other, that he should be accustomed to some employments or amusements, in which his activity and time may be consumed without detriment to others or weariness to himself. C H A P.  
XI.

IN our age of the world, so many trades, arts, professions, and objects, and channels of occupation exist, that, in the ordinary course of life, every member of our population may obtain, without a crime, if he seek with moderate assiduity, the supplies that are necessary both to his wants and his pleasures. It was not so in the Anglo-Saxon times. The trades and arts were few, and foreign commerce was inconsiderable. Invention had not found out conveniences of life sufficient to employ many mechanics or manufacturers, or to give much diversity of employment. The land and its produce were in the hands of a few, and it was difficult for the rest to get any property by honourable or peaceful means. Our Alfred intimates this, for he says, “Now thou canst not obtain money unless thou steal it, or plunder it, or discover some hidden treasure; and thus when you acquire it to yourself you lessen it to others.”<sup>1</sup> Violence and rapine

<sup>1</sup> Alf. Boet. p. 69.

**B O O K** eager, but not illiberal competition; or to have  
**VII.** those accomplished artificers and manufacturers,  
whose taste in execution equals that of the most elegant fancy in its inventions. Neither the workmen nor their customers, however elevated in society, had those faculties of taste and imagination which now accompany the fabrication of every luxury, and almost of every comfort with which mechanical labour surrounds us. Utility, glaring gaudiness, and material value were the chief criterions of the general estimation. The delicacy and ingenuity of the workmanship were not yet allowed to be able to surpass the substantial worth. No commendation called them into existence; none sought to acquire them; none seemed to anticipate the possibility of their attainment. Hence all were satisfied with the coarse and clumsy, if it had that show which strikes an indiscriminating eye, that sterling value which announced the wealth of its possessor, and that serviceableness for which alone he required it. The Anglo-Saxon artificers and manufacturers were therefore for some time no more than what real necessity put in action. Their productions were few, inartificial, and unvaried. They lived and died poor, unhonoured, and unimproved. But, by degrees, the manumission of slaves increased the numbers of the independent part of the lower orders. Some of the emancipated became agricultural labourers, and took land of the clergy and the great, paying them an annual gafol, or rent; but many went to the burgs and towns, and as the king was the lord of the free, they resided in these under his protection, and became free burghers or burgesses. In these burgs and towns they appear to have occupied houses, paying him

rent, or other occasional compensations, and sometimes performing servces for him. Thus, in Canterbury, Edward had fifty-one burghers paying him gafol, or rent, and over two hundred and twelve others he had the legal jurisdiction.<sup>5</sup> In Bath, the king had sixty-four burghers, who yielded four pounds.<sup>6</sup> In Exeter, the king had two hundred and eighty-five houses, paying eighteen pounds a year.<sup>7</sup> In some other places we find such compensations as these mentioned: "Twelve sheep and lambs, and one bloom of iron, from every free man."<sup>8</sup> These individuals and all such were so many men released from the tyranny of the great. For toll, gafol, and all customs, Oxford paid the king twenty pounds a year, and six sextaria of honey.<sup>9</sup> At Dover, when the king's messenger arrived, the burghers had to pay three-pence for transporting his horse in winter, and two-pence in summer. They also provided a steersman and helper.<sup>10</sup>

In the burgs, some of the inhabitants were still under other lords. Thus in Romenel twenty-five burghers belonged to the archbishop. In Bath, after the king's burghers are mentioned, it is said that ninety burghers of other men yielded sixty shillings. In the same place, the church of Saint Peter had thirty-four burghers, who paid twenty shillings.<sup>11</sup> At Romenel, besides those who were under the archbishop, one Robert is stated to have had fifty burghers, of whom the king had every service; but they were freed, on account of their

<sup>5</sup> Domesday-book, fo. 2.<sup>6</sup> Ibid. p. 87.<sup>7</sup> Ibid. p. 100.<sup>8</sup> Ibid. fo. 87. 92. 94.<sup>9</sup> Ibid. Com. Oxf.<sup>10</sup> Ibid. fo. 1.<sup>11</sup> Ibid. fo. 10.

**B O O K** service at sea, from every custom, except robbery,  
**VII.** breach of the peace, and forestel.<sup>12</sup>

IN these places, the services and charges were sometimes most rigorously exacted. It is stated of Hereford, that if any one wished to retire from the city, he might, with leave of the gerefa, sell his house, if he found a purchaser who was willing to perform in his stead the accustomed services; and in this event the gerefa had the third penny of the sale. But if any one, from his poverty, could not do the regular service, he was compelled to abandon his house to the gerefa without any consideration. The gerefa had then to take care that the house did not remain empty, that the king might not lose his dues.<sup>13</sup>

IN some burgs, the members had been so wealthy as to have acquired themselves a property in the burg. Thus, at Canterbury, the burghers had forty-five mansuras without the city, of which they took the gafol and the custom, while the king retained the legal jurisdiction. They also held of the king thirty-three acres of land in their gild.<sup>14</sup>

BUT this state of subjection to gafols, customs, and services, under which the people of the burgs and towns continued, had this great advantage over the condition of the servile, that the exacted burthens were definite and certain, and though sometimes expensive, were never oppressive. Such a state was indeed an independence, compared with the degradation of a theow; and we probably see

<sup>12</sup> Domesday-book, fo. 87.

<sup>13</sup> These customs are excerpted by Gale out of Domesday-book. Hist. iii. p. 768.

<sup>14</sup> Domesday-book, fo. 2.

in these burghers the condition of the free part of the community, who were not actually freeholders of land, or who, though freed, had not wholly left the domestic service of their masters. C H A P. XI.

By slow degrees the increasing numbers of society, or their augmented activity, produced a surplus property beyond the daily consumption, which acquired a permanent state in the country in some form or other, and then constituted its wealth. Every house began to have some article of lasting furniture or convenience which it had not before ; as well as every tradesman goods laid in store, and every farmer corn, or cattle, or implements of tillage more numerous than he once possessed. When this stage of surplus produce occurs, property begins to multiply ; the bonds of stern necessity relax ; civilisation emerges ; leisure increases, and a great number share it. Other employments than those of subsistence are sought for. Amusement begins to be a study, and to desire a class of society to provide it. The grosser gratifications then verge towards the refinements of future luxury. The mind awakens from the lethargy of sense, and a new spirit, and new objects of industry, invention, and pursuit gradually arise in the advancing population. All these successions of improvement become slowly visible to the antiquarian observer as he approaches the latter periods of the Anglo-Saxon dynasty. But they were not the accompaniments of its first state ; or, if they at all existed, they were confined to the court, the castle, and the monastery ; and were not indeed to be found among the inferior thegns or the poorer cloisters. Some of these had so little property that they could not afford to allow meat, and others not wheaten bread, as an

**B O O K** article of their food. In such miserable abodes the  
**VII.** comforts of surplus property could not be obtained;  
 and where these are not general, the nation is poor. This epithet was long applicable to the Anglo-Saxon octarchy.

BOTH war and agriculture want the smith. Hence one of the most important trades of the Anglo-Saxons was the smith, who is very frequently mentioned. Aldhelm takes the trouble to describe the "convenience of the anvil, the rigid hardness of the beating hammer, and the tenacity of the glowing tongs;" and to remark, that "the gem-bearing belts, and diadems of kings, and various instruments of glory, were made from the tools of iron."<sup>15</sup> The smiths who worked in iron were called isern-smithas. They had also the goldsmith, the seolfer-smith (silversmith), and the arsmith or coppersmith. In the dialogues before quoted, the smith says, "Whence the share to the ploughman, or the goad, but from my art? whence to the fisherman an angle, or to the shoe-wyrhta an awl, or to the sempstress a needle, but from my art?" The other replies, "Those in thy smithery only give us iron fire-sparks, the noise of beating hammers, and blowing bellows."<sup>16</sup> Smiths are frequently mentioned in Domesday. In the city of Hereford there were six smiths, who paid each one penny for his forge, and who made one hundred and twenty pieces of iron from the king's ore. To each of them, three-pence was paid as a custom, and they were freed from all other services.<sup>17</sup> In a district of Somerset, it is twice stated, that a mill yielded two plumbas of iron.<sup>18</sup> Gloucester paid to the

<sup>15</sup> Aldhelm de Laud. Virg. 298.

<sup>16</sup> MS. Tib. A. 3.

<sup>17</sup> Domesday-book, in loc.

<sup>18</sup> Ibid. fo. 94.

king thirty-six dicras of iron, and one hundred ductile rods, to make nails for the king's ships. <sup>19</sup> C H A P.  
XI.

THE treow-wyrhta, literally tree or wood-workman; or, in modern phrase, the carpenter, was an occupation as important as the smith's. In the dialogues above mentioned, he says he makes houses, and various vessels and ships.

THE shoemaker and salter appear also in the dialogues: the sceowyrhta, or shoemaker, seems to have been a comprehensive trade, and to have united some that are now very distinct businesses. He says, "My craft is very useful and necessary to you. I buy hides and skins, and prepare them by my art, and make of them shoes of various kinds; and none of you can winter without my craft." He subjoins a list of the articles which he fabricates: viz.

Ankle leathers,	Bridle thongs,	Leather neck-pieces,
Shoes,	Trappings,	Halters,
Leather hose,	Flasks,	Wallets,
Bottles,	Boiling vessels,	Pouches.

THE salter, baker, cook, and fisherman have been described before.

BESIDES the persons who made those trades their business, some of the clergy, as we advance to the age preceding the Norman conquest, appear to us as labouring to excel in the mechanical arts. Thus Dunstan, besides being competent to draw and paint the patterns for a lady's robe, was also a smith, and worked on all the metals. Among other labours of his industry, he made two great bells for the church at Abingdon. His friend Ethelwold, the bishop, made two other bells for the same

<sup>19</sup> Domesday-book, in loc.

**B O O K** place, of a smaller size ; and a wheel full of small  
 { **VII.** bells, much gilt, to be turned round for its music, on feast-days. He also displayed much art in the fabrication of a large silver-table of curious workmanship.<sup>20</sup> Stigand, the bishop of Winchester, made two images and a crucifix, and gilt and placed them in the cathedral of his diocese.<sup>21</sup> One of our kings made a monk, who was a skilful goldsmith, an abbot.<sup>22</sup> It was even exacted by law that the clergy should pursue these occupations; for Edgar says, " We command that every priest, to increase knowledge, diligently learn some handicraft."<sup>23</sup> It was at this period that it began to be felt that skill could add value to the material on which it operated ; and as the increasing wealth of society enabled some to pay for its additional cost, a taste for ornament as well as massy value now emerged.

THE art of glass-making was unknown in England in the seventh century, when Benedict, the abbot of Weremouth, procured men from France, who not only glazed the windows of his church and monastery, but taught the Anglo-Saxons the art of making glass for windows, lamps, drinking-vessels, and for other uses.<sup>24</sup> Our progress in the art was slow ; for we find the disciple of Bede thus addressing a bishop of France on this subject in the next century : " If there be any man in your district who can make glass vessels well, when time permits, condescend to send him to me ; or if there is any one out of your diocese, in the power of others, I beg your fraternity will persuade him to

<sup>20</sup> Dugd. Mon. 104.

<sup>21</sup> Anglia Sacra, i. p. 293.

<sup>22</sup> MS. Claud. C. 9.

<sup>23</sup> Wilk. Leg. Anglo-Sax. 83.

<sup>24</sup> Bede, Hist. Abb. Wer. 225.

come to us, for we are ignorant and helpless in this art: and if it should happen that any of the glass-makers should, by your diligence and with the divine pleasure, be suffered to come to us, be assured that if I am alive I will receive him with kind courtesy.”<sup>26</sup> C H A P.  
XI.

THE fortunate connection which Christianity established between the clergy of Europe, favoured the advancement of all the mechanical arts. We read perpetually of presents of the productions of human labour and skill passing from the more civilised countries to those more rude. We read of a church having a patine made with Greek workmanship<sup>26</sup>; and also of a bishop in England who was a Greek by birth.<sup>27</sup>

THEY had the arts of weaving, embroidering, and dying. Aldhelm intimates these: “We do not negligently despise the woollen stamina of threads worked by the woof and the shuttles, even though the purple robe and silken pomp of emperors shine.” Again, “The shuttles, not filled with purple only but with various colours, are moved here and there among the thick spreading of the threads, and by the embroidering art they adorn all the woven work with various groupings of images.”<sup>28</sup> Edward the Elder had his daughters taught to exercise their needle and their distaff.<sup>29</sup> Indeed, the Anglo-Saxon ladies were so much accustomed to spinning, that just as we in legal phrase, and by a reference to former habits now obsolete, term unmarried ladies spinsters, so Alfred in his will, with true application, called the female part of his family

<sup>26</sup> 16 Mag. Bib. Pat. 88.

<sup>26</sup> Dugd. Mon. p. 40.

<sup>27</sup> 3 Gale, x. Script. 464.

<sup>28</sup> Aldhelm de Laud. Virg. 298. 305. He also mentions the *fucorum muneribus*. Ibid.

<sup>29</sup> Malmsb. lib. ii. c. 5. p. 47.

**B O O K** the spindle side. The Norman historian remarks  
**VII.** of our ancient countrywomen, that they excelled  
 with the needle, and in gold embroidery.<sup>30</sup> Aldhelm's robe is described to have been made of a most delicate thread of a purple ground, and that within black circles the figures of peacocks were worked among them of ample size.<sup>31</sup>

BEDE alludes to their jewellers and goldsmiths: "A rich and skilful gold-worker, wishing to do some admirable work, collects, wherever he can, remarkable and precious stones to be placed among the gold and silver, as well to show his skill, as for the beauty of his work. Those precious stones are chiefly of a ruddy or aerial colour."<sup>32</sup> From the custom of the kings making presents of rich garments, vases, bracelets, and rings to their witenagemot and courtiers, and of great lords doing the same to their knights, the trades for making these must have had much employment. The gemots often met three times a year. The lords frequently held their imitative courts.

ONE of their trades seems to have been the tavern, or the public house: for a priest is forbidden to drink "at the wine tuns."<sup>33</sup> An ale-house and ale-shop are also mentioned in the laws.<sup>34</sup>

THE external commerce of these ancient times was confined, because their imperfect civilisation, and the poverty of the great body of their population, prevented an extensive demand for foreign

<sup>30</sup> Gesta Norman. ap. Du Chesne, 211.

<sup>31</sup> 3 Gale, x. Script. 351. <sup>32</sup> Bede's Op. viii. p. 1068.

<sup>33</sup> Wilk. Leg. 157.

<sup>34</sup> A penalty was inflicted if a man was killed in an eala-huse, *ibid.* p. 117. A priest was forbidden to be in a eala-scop, *ibid.* p. 100.

commodities. But the habit of visiting distant parts for the purposes of traffic had already begun. Ohther's voyage proves, that men went to the North, both for the purposes of traffic and of discovery : he says, they pursued whales for their teeth, and made ropes of their hides.<sup>35</sup> We read of merchants from Ireland landing at Cambridge with cloths, and exposing their merchandize to sale.<sup>36</sup> London, even in the seventh century, is mentioned as a port which ships frequented<sup>37</sup>; and we find merchants' ships sailing to Rome.<sup>38</sup> The trading vessels sometimes joined together, and went out armed for their mutual protection<sup>39</sup>; but we may suppose, that while piracy lasted navigation was unfrequent.

C H A P.  
XL

IN the Saxon dialogues, the merchant (mancgere) is introduced : " I say that I am useful to the king, and to ealdormen, and to the rich, and to all people. I ascend my ship with my merchandise, and sail over the sea-like places, and sell my things, and buy dear things which are not produced in this land, and I bring them to you here with great danger over the sea ; and sometimes I suffer shipwreck, with the loss of all my things, scarcely escaping myself." ' What do you bring to us ?' " Skins, silks, costly gems, and gold ; various garments, pigment, wine, oil, ivory, and orichalcus, copper, and tin, silver, glass, and such-like." ' Will you sell your things here as you bought them there ?' " I will not, because what would my labour benefit me ? I will sell them here

<sup>35</sup> See Alfred's account of this voyage in the second volume of this work.

<sup>36</sup> 3 Gale, 482.

<sup>38</sup> Bede, 294.

<sup>37</sup> Dugd. Mon. 76.

<sup>39</sup> Hist. Wilkin.

**BOOK** dearer than I bought them there, that I may get  
**VII.** some profit, to feed me, my wife, and children.”<sup>40</sup>

THAT public markets were established in various parts of England in this period, we learn from many documents. It is clear from Domesday-book that these markets paid a toll. In Bedfordshire, a toll *de mercato* is mentioned, which yielded seven pounds. The market at Taunton paid fifty shillings.<sup>41</sup> A market was established at Peterborough, with the privilege that no other was to be allowed within certain limits in its vicinity.<sup>42</sup>

WE shall state concisely a few customs as to our commercial navigation. At Chester, if ships should come there, or depart from it, without the king's leave, the king and Comes were to have forty shillings for every man in the ship. If they came in violation of the king's peace, or against his prohibition, the ships, mariners, and their property, were forfeited to the king and Comes. With the royal permission they might sell quietly what they had brought, but they were to pay to the king and his Comes four-pence for every last. If the king's governor should order those having the skins of martens not to sell them before he had seen them, none were to disobey him, under a penalty of forty shillings. This port yielded forty-five pounds, and three timbres of marten-skins. In the same place false measure incurred a fine of four shillings; and for bad ale the offender paid as such, or else was placed on a dunghill.<sup>43</sup>

AT Southwark, no one took any toll on the strand, or the water, but the king. At Arundel, a particular person is named who took the custom

<sup>40</sup> MS. Tib. A. 3.

<sup>42</sup> Ingulf, 46.

<sup>41</sup> Domesday, in loc.

<sup>43</sup> Domesday, in loc.

paid by foreigners.<sup>44</sup> At Canterbury, a prepositus is stated to have taken the custom from foreign merchants, in certain lands there, which another ought to have received. At Lewes, it is mentioned, that whoever either bought or sold, gave the governor a piece of money.<sup>45</sup>

CHAPTER  
XI.

PARTICULAR laws were made by the Anglo-Saxon government to regulate the manner of buying and selling. These laws had two objects in view: to prevent or detect theft; and to secure the due payment of the tax or toll which became due on such occasions.<sup>46</sup>

WHEN the produce of the labour and fertility of a country begins to exceed its consumption, and no calamity obstructs its natural progress, the amount of its surplus accumulations increases in every generation, till the whole community becomes furnished with permanent goods, and some individuals with peculiar abundance. The Anglo-Saxons had reached this state in the reign of Ethelred. A considerable quantity of bullion, coined and uncoined, had then become diffused in the nation, and they were enabled to pay those heavy taxations, which were so often imposed, with such impolitic weakness, to buy off the Danish invasions. These unwise payments vexed but did not exhaust the nation. It became wealthy again under the peaceful reign of the Confessor. Both the taste for lux-

<sup>44</sup> Domesday in loc.

<sup>45</sup> Ibid.

<sup>46</sup> Several facts concerning the commerce of our ancestors have been occasionally mentioned in the preceding volume; as the intercourse between Offa and Charlemagne; Alfred's embassy to India; Æthelstan's connections with Europe; and Canute's letter, explaining the business which he had transacted with the Pope.

**B O O K** uries, and the spirit of increased production, were  
 VII. then pervading the country, and the national affluence was visibly increasing when the Norman armament landed on its coasts.

IN the ninth and tenth centuries, the Northmen were very enterprising in their navigation. They discovered Iceland and Greenland, and a more distant country, which they called Vinland, and which has been considered, not unjustly, to have been some part of the North American continent.<sup>47</sup>

A REMARK may be added on their travelling and hospitality. It would seem that they travelled armed. We read of one journeying with his horse and spear; when he alighted, he gave his spear to his attendants.<sup>48</sup>

THEIR hospitality was kind: on the arrival of a stranger he was welcomed; they brought him water to wash his hands; they washed his feet, and for this purpose warm water was used; they wiped them with a cloth, and the host in one case cherished them in his bosom. We also read of warm wine administered to the new guest.<sup>49</sup>

HOSPITALITY was, however, dangerous in some degree, from its responsibility: if any one entertained a guest (cuman, literally a come-one) three nights in his own house, whether a trader, or any other person that had come over the boundary, and fed him with victuals, and the guest did any thing wrong, the host was to bring him to justice, or to

<sup>47</sup> One of the voyages may be seen in Snorre, tom. i. p. 303. 308. Torfæus has discussed this subject in a book on Winland. Mallet has given an interesting chapter on the maritime discoveries of the Northmen, in his *Northern Antiquities*, vol. i. c. 11. p. 268. of the translation edited by Dr. Percy.

<sup>48</sup> Bede, p. 233.

<sup>49</sup> Ibid. p. 234. 251. 257.

answer for it.<sup>50</sup> By another law, a guest, after two nights' residence, was reckoned part of the family, and the owner of it was to be answerable for his actions.<sup>51</sup>

C H A P.  
XI.

If a shorn man travelled steerless, or vagrantly, hospitality might be given to him once, but he was to have leave of absence before he could be longer maintained.<sup>52</sup>

TRAVELLING was attended with some penal regulations: if a stranger in any part went out of the road, or through woods, it was a law that he should either shout aloud, or blow with a horn, on pain of being deemed a thief, and suffering as such.<sup>53</sup>

It was the habit of depredation that made every traveller an object of legal suspicion at this period. From the peril of the roads, want of communication, the poverty of the middling and lower classes, and the distance, violence, and rapacity of the barons and knights, travelling for the purposes of traffic was very rare, and became more so when the Northman invaders were in the island, and while their unsettled emigrants were continually moving over it. Hence few men left their towns or burghs but for pillage or revenge; and this occasioned that jealous mistrust of the law which operated so long to discourage even mercantile journeys.

<sup>50</sup> Wilkins, Leg. Sax. p. 9.

<sup>51</sup> Ibid. p. 18.

<sup>52</sup> Ibid. p. 4.

<sup>53</sup> Ibid. p. 12.

## CHAP. XII.

*Their Chivalry.*

BOOK  
VII.

**T**HERE is no evidence that the refined and enthusiastic spirit of gallantry which accompanied chivalry in its perfect stage, prevailed among the Anglo-Saxons; but that chivalry, in a less polished form, and considered as a military investiture, conferred with religious ceremonies, by putting on the belt and sword, and giving the knight a peculiar dignity among his countrymen; — that this kind of chivalry existed in England before the Norman conquest, the authorities adduced in this chapter will sufficiently ascertain.

In the reign of Edward the Confessor, Hereward, a noble Anglo-Saxon youth, distinguished himself by his daring valour and eccentricity. As his character is highly romantic, and affords a remarkable instance of the Anglo-Saxon chivalry, I will state the main incidents of his life, from the plain and temperate narration of his contemporary, who was the Conqueror's secretary.

“ His father was Leofric, lord of Brunne, in Lincolnshire, a nobleman who had become very illustrious for his warlike exploits. He was a relation of the great earl of Hereford, who had married the king's sister.

“ Hereward was the son of this Leofric and his wife Ediva. He was tall and handsome, but too warlike, and of an immoderate fierceness of mind. In his juvenile plays and wrestlings he was so ungovernable, that his hand was often raised against every one, and every one's hand against him. When the youths of his age went to wrestling and such other sports, unless he triumphed over all, and his playfellows conceded to

him the laurel of victory, he very often extorted by his sword what he could not gain by his muscular strength. C H A P.  
XII.

“The youths of his neighbourhood complaining of this conduct, his father’s anger was excited against him. Leofric stated to king Edward the many intolerable tricks that had been practised even upon himself, and his excessive violence towards others. Upon this representation, the Confessor ordered him into banishment.

“Hereward, thus exiled, went fearlessly to Northumbria, thence to Cornwall, thence to Ireland, and afterwards to Flanders; and every where most bravely carrying himself, he soon obtained a glorious and magnificent reputation.

“In every danger intrepidly pressing forward, and happily escaping; in every military conflict always throwing himself on the bravest, and boldly conquering; it was doubtful whether he was more fortunate or brave. His victories over all his enemies were complete, and he escaped harmless from the greatest battles.

“Becoming so illustrious by his military successes, his valiant deeds became known in England, and were sung through the country. The dislike of his parent, relatives, and friends, was changed into the most ardent affection.

“In Flanders he married a noble lady, Turfrida, and had by her a daughter, who lately married (I am transcribing Ingulf) an illustrious knight, a great friend to our monastery, and lord of Depyng and the paternal inheritance of Brunne and its appurtenances.

“The mother of Turfrida coming to England with her husband, with his permission forsook all earthly pomp, and became a nun in our monastery of Croyland.

“Hereward returning to his native soil with his wife, after great battles, and a thousand dangers frequently dared and bravely terminated, as well against the king of England as the earls, barons, prefects, and presidents, which are yet sung in our streets (says Ingulf), and having avenged his mother with his powerful right hand, at length, with the king’s pardon, obtained his paternal inheritance, and ended his days in peace, and was very lately buried near his wife in our monastery.”<sup>1</sup>

It is obvious, from the connection of this singular character with Croyland monastery, that no

<sup>1</sup> Ingulf, p. 67, 68.

**B O O K** one could furnish us with more authentic particulars of him than Ingulf, who lived at the time, and was a monk in the same place. I will add a few more circumstances, which the same writer has recorded concerning him.

**VII.**

It was in Flanders that Hereward heard that the Normans had conquered England; that his father was dead; that the Conqueror had given his inheritance to a Norman; and that his mother's widowhood was afflicted by many injuries and distresses. Transported with grief at the account, he hastened with his wife to England, and, collecting a body of her relations, he thundered on the oppressors of his mother, and drove them from her territory.

At this period of the narration, the important passage<sup>2</sup> occurs, which gives such complete evidence to the Anglo-Saxon chivalry.

“Considering then, that he was at the head of very brave men, and commanded some *militēs*, and had not yet been legally bound with the belt, according to the military custom, he took with him a very few tyros of his cohort, to be legitimately consociated with himself to warfare, and went to his uncle, the abbot of Peterborough, named Brand, a very religious man (as I have heard from my predecessor, my lord Ulketul, abbot, and many others), much given to charity, and adorned with all the virtues; and having first of all made a confession of his sins, and received absolution, he very urgently prayed that he might be made a legitimate *miles*. For it was the custom of the English, that every one that was to be consecrated to the legitimate *militia*, should, on the evening preceding the day of his consecration, with contrition and compunction, make a confession of all his sins to a bishop, an abbot, a monk, or some priest; and, devoted wholly to prayers, devotions, and mortifications, should pass the night in the church; in the next morning should hear mass, should offer his sword on the altar, and after the Gospel had been read, the priest having blessed

---

<sup>2</sup> Ingulf, p. 70.

the sword, should place it on the neck of the miles, with his benediction. Having communicated at the same mass with the sacred mysteries, he would afterwards remain a legitimate miles." C H A P.  
XII.

He adds, that the Normans regarded this custom of consecrating a miles as abomination, and did not hold such a one a legitimate miles, but reckoned him a slothful equitem and degenerate quiritem.

FROM the preceding account we collect these things:—

1st, THAT a man might take up arms, head warriors, fight with them, and gain much military celebrity, and yet not thereby become a legitimate miles.

2d, THAT he could not reputably head milites, without being a legitimate miles.

3d, THAT to be a legitimate miles was an honorary distinction, worthy the ambition of a man who had previously been of such great military celebrity as Hereward.

4th, THAT to be a miles, an express ceremony of consecration was requisite.

5th, THAT the ceremony consisted of a confession and absolution of sins, on the day preceding the consecration; of watching in the church, all the previous night, with prayers and humiliations; of hearing mass next morning; of offering his sword on the altar; of its being blessed by the priest; of its being then placed on his neck; and of his afterwards communicating. He was then declared a legitimate miles.

6th, THE mode above described, was the Anglo-Saxon mode; but there was another mode in existence after the Conquests: for it is expressly men-

**B O O K** tioned, that the Normans did not use, but detested,  
**VII.** the custom of religious consecration.

7th, THAT a legitimate miles was invested with a belt and a sword.

ANOTHER passage, which alludes to the Anglo-Saxon chivalry is in Malmsbury, in which he expressly declares, that Alfred made Athelstan a miles. He says, that Alfred, seeing Athelstan to be an elegant youth, prematurely made him a miles, investing him with a purple garment, a belt set with gems, and a Saxon sword, with a golden sheath.<sup>3</sup>

THE investiture of the belt, alluded to in the account of Hereward, and in Malmsbury's account of Athelstan's knighthood, is also mentioned by Ingulf, on another occasion. Speaking of the famous Saxon chancellor Turketul, who died in 975, he says, that he had, among other relics, the thumb of St. Bartholomew, with which he used to cross himself in danger, tempest, and lightning. A dux Beneventanus gave this to the emperor, when he girded him with the first military belt.<sup>4</sup> The emperor gave it to the chancellor. An author who died in 1004, says, "Whoever uses the belt of his knighthood (*militiæ*), is considered as a knight (*miles*) of his dignity."<sup>5</sup>

THAT there was a military dignity among the Saxons, which they who wrote in Latin expressed by the term miles, is, I think, very clear, from other numerous passages. There are many grants of kings and others extant to their *militibus*. Thus Edred, "*cuidam meo ministro ac militi,*" "*meo*

<sup>3</sup> Malmsbury, p. 49.

<sup>4</sup> Ingulf, p. 51.

<sup>5</sup> Abb. Flor. in Can. c. 51. *Quisquis militiæ suæ cingulo utitor, dignitatis suæ miles adscribitur.*

fideli ministro ac militi," "cuidam meo militi." <sup>6</sup> C H A P.  
XII.  
The word miles cannot here mean simply a soldier. So to many charters we find the signatures of several persons characterised by this title.<sup>7</sup> Bede frequently uses the term in passages and with connections which show that he meant to express dignity by it. We are at least certain that his royal Anglo-Saxon translator believed this, because he has always interpreted the expression, when it has this signification, by a Saxon word of peculiar dignity.<sup>8</sup> Ingulf mentions several great men, in the Anglo-Saxon times, with the addition of miles as an augmentation of their consequence; and once introduces a king styling a miles his magister.<sup>9</sup>—Domesday-book mentions several milites as holding lands.

BUT although the Anglo-Saxons had a military dignity which their Latin writers called miles, I do not think that the word *cniht* was applied by them

<sup>6</sup> MS. Claud. B. 6. So an archbishop gives land, Heming. Chart. 191. 210. 234.

<sup>7</sup> To a charta of Edward Confessor, five sign with the addition of miles. MS. Claud. B. 6. Eleven sign with miles to a charta of Ethelwulph. Text. Roff.

<sup>8</sup> *Bede* :

*Alfred* :

alium de militibus,  
cum his — militibus,  
milite sibi fidelissimo,  
prefato milite,  
comitibus ac militibus,  
de militia ejus juvenis,

ocheþne cýninges thegn,  
mib hýr thegnum,  
hýr thegne — getreowepte,  
forþerþeceanan hýr thegne,  
hýr gefopum, cýninges thegnum,  
rum æonð thor cýninges thegn.

P. 511. 525. 539. 551. 590.

<sup>9</sup> Ingulf, p. 6. 14. 20. 25. 63. This use of the word miles is one of Hickes's reasons for his attack on Ingulf; an attack which is clearly ill-founded. I feel every gratitude to Hickes for his labours on the Northern languages; but I cannot conceal that I think him mistaken on several very important points of the Saxon antiquities.

**BOOK** VII. to express it; at least, not till the latter periods of their dynasty.

It has been shown, in the chapter on their infancy and education, that a youth was called a *cniht*. By the same term they also denoted an attendant.<sup>10</sup> In Cedmon it occurs a few times; but it seems to have been used to mean youths. Speaking of Nabochodonossor, he says,

He commanded his gerefas,  
out of the miserable relics of the Israelites,  
to seek some of the youth  
that were most skilled  
in the instruction of books.  
He would, that the *cnihtas*  
should learn the craft  
to interpret dreams.<sup>11</sup>

Then they there found  
for their sagacious lord  
noble *cnihtas*.<sup>12</sup>

**SPEAKING** of the adoration of the image of Dara, he says,

The *cnihtas* of a good race  
acted with discretion,  
that they the idol  
would not as their god  
hold and have.<sup>13</sup>

Then was wrath  
the king in his mind.  
He commanded an oven to heat  
to the destruction of the lives of the *cnihtas*.<sup>14</sup>

THE word has no military distinction in these passages.

ÆLFRIC, in his glossary, interprets *cniht*-had by *pueritia*, *pubes*; and to *oth cniht-hade* he puts *pube tenus*.

<sup>10</sup> Gen. xxi. 65. Luke, vii. 7. and xii. 45.

<sup>11</sup> Cedmon, p. 77.

<sup>12</sup> Ibid.

<sup>13</sup> Ibid. p. 79.

<sup>14</sup> Ibid. p. 80.

THERE are, however, instances of grants to *cnihtas*, which imply, that after Alfred's reign, and those of his immediate descendants, the word was gradually advancing, from the expression of a youth or an attendant, to signify a more dignified sort of dependent. A Saxon will has, "Let men give my *cnihtas* and my *stewardas* *witas* forty *punda*." Ælfhelm, in his will, says, "I give to my wife and my daughter half the land at Cunnington, to be divided, except the four hides that I give to Æthelric and Alfwold, and the half hide that I give to Os-mær, my *cniht*." Æthelstan Ætheling, in his will, expresses, "I give my father, king Æthelræd, the land at Cealh-tun, except the eight hides that I have given to Ælmor, my *cniht*." — "And I give to Æthelwin, my *cniht*, the sword that he before gave me."<sup>15</sup> There are three grants of land from Oswald, archbishop, to *cnihts*; and it is important to observe, he does not call them his *cnihts*, or any other person's *cnihts*, but he calls them *sumum cnihte*, some *cniht*, or a *cniht*, as if *cniht* had been a definite and well-known character. His words are, "One hide at Hymeltun to *sumum cniht*, whose name is *Wulfgeat*;" — "two hides, all but sixty acres, to *sumum cniht*, whose name is Æthelwold;" — "—— hides to *sumum cniht*, whose name is *Osulf*, for God's love, and for our peace."<sup>16</sup>

<sup>15</sup> See these wills in the appendix to the Saxon dictionary. I perceive from Osfred's Franco-theotise Paraphrase of the Gospels, that the word knight, or knechto, was used by the Franks, in the ninth century, to express the meaning of miles; for he says,

Ein thepo knechto thiȝ ȝyrah. "Unus militum hoc videt." Lib. iv. 53, 54. See also another citation in Schilter's Glossary, p. 518.

<sup>16</sup> Heming. Chart.

BOOK  
VII.

IN the admonitions to different orders of men, printed with the Anglo-Saxon laws, there is a passage which gives *cniht* and *cniht*hood in a meaning rather different from those which have been stated: "That will be a rightlike life, that a *cniht* continues in his *cniht*hade till he marries rightly a maiden wife, and have her then afterwards, and no other while she lives." <sup>17</sup> *Cniht*hade here implies chastity and bachelorship.

PERHAPS *cniht* originally signified a boy, afterwards a servant who was not a slave. It may have been then applied to denote a military attendant; and in this sense it gradually superseded the word *thegn*, which I think was the Saxon term for the dignity implied by the term *miles*. A knight, even in the full chivalric meaning, was a military servant of somebody, either of the king, the queen, a favourite lady, or some person of dignity. In a state very similar to this are the *cnihtas* in the Saxon wills. They appear to us, in like manner, in a rank far above a servant in the Saxon *gild-scipes*. Of these fraternities, *cnihts* constituted a part, and are distinctly mentioned, though with a reference to some lord to whom they were subordinate; a situation which seems best explained, by supposing them free and respectable military dependents. "If a *cniht* draw a sword, the lord shall pay one pound, and let the lord get it when he may; and all the *gild-scipe* shall help him, that he may get his money. And if a *cniht* wounds another, his lord shall avenge it. And if a *cniht* sits within the ascent, let him pay one syster of honey; and if he has any foot-stool, let him pay the same." <sup>18</sup> In

<sup>17</sup> Wilkins, *Leg. Sax.* p. 150.

<sup>18</sup> See the *Gild-scipe* in Hickes's *Diss. Ep.* p. 21.

another gild-scipe, after each of the gild has been directed to bring two systers of malt, it is added, "And let every cniht bring one, and a sceat of honey." <sup>19</sup>

C H A P.  
XII.

It occurs again, as a known and recognised character, in an act of a slave's emancipation, "There-to is witness, William of Orchut, and Ruold the cniht, and Osbern fadera, and Umfreig of Tettaborn, and Alword the portreeve, and Johan the cniht." <sup>20</sup>

It occurs again, as the designation of a known and reputable character in society, in a Saxon charta about land; for after many witnesses have been mentioned by name, these words follow: "And many a good cniht besides these." <sup>21</sup>

THE term as well as the character of cniht was, therefore, in the Anglo-Saxon period, rising fast to its full station of dignity.

THERE is a character represented in the illuminations and drawing of a Saxon MS. which I think answers to the situation of a cniht, in its more advanced meaning. When a king is sitting on his throne, he is drawn as holding his sceptre. Close by him, and as a part of his public dignity, a person is standing, holding his sword and shield. This figure occurs several times in the drawings of Genesis, in Claud. B. 4. A similar character occurs near a king in the battle. The king is fighting; an armed attendant, apparently a young man, is fighting near him. I consider these to represent what was originally called a king thegn, or miles, and afterwards a cniht; and such a character Lilla

<sup>19</sup> See the Gild-scipe in Hickee's Diss. Ep. p. 22.

<sup>20</sup> Ibid. p. 18.

<sup>21</sup> Hickee, Gram. Pref. p. xxi.

**BOOK VII.** appears to have been, who received the assassin's blow that was intended for Edwin.<sup>22</sup>

**TOURNAMENTS** appear to have been used in the age of the Anglo-Saxons, for they are expressly mentioned in the laws of the emperor of Germany, Henry the First. It was in 934 that he published institutions concerning them.<sup>23</sup> By these he directs, that the equestrian games, to be fought by the usual weapons, should be solemnly exhibited in the empire by those of noble descent. All blasphemers and traitors; they who had deprived widows or virgins of their honour or property; the perjured, the coward, the homicide, and the sacrilegious; they who had robbed the orphan, who had attacked the unsuspecting, who had harassed society, and injured the commercial; the adulterer and the merchant; were prohibited from partaking of the diversions. If they presumed to present themselves, their horses were taken away, and they were to be thrown on the septum.<sup>24</sup>

THE city or place appropriated for the exercises

<sup>22</sup> See the 1st vol. of this work.

<sup>23</sup> Goldastus, in his *Constitutiones Imperiales*, vol. ii. p. 41. has the *Henrici I. Aucupis leges hastiludiales sive de torneamentis*, which he says, were *latæ Gottingæ in Saxonia*, 938. The author of the *Aquila Saxonica*, p. 27., says, it should be 934. These *leges* are also mentioned in *Fabricius, Hist. Sax. i. p. 122.* The *Aquila Saxonica* quotes also at length other *statuta et privilegia* of these games, made at Magdeburg. This imperial document contradicts the opinion, that tournaments originated in 1066, which *Dufresne* gives, 3 *Gloss. Med.* 1147. *Wittichind*, who addressed his history to the grand-daughter of Henry, expressly says of this emperor, "In exercitiis quoque ludi tanta eminentia superabat omnes ut terrorem cæteris ostentaret," p. 15. Previous to this, *Nithard* mentions, that some French gentlemen fought in play on horseback.

<sup>24</sup> Goldastus, *ubi supra*.

was made free to all except heretics, thieves, and traitors, during the time of the games, and for fourteen days preceding and afterwards. The area of the games was to be hedged round: every combatant was to be first confessed and absolved; every count was to bring with him but six companions; a baron four, a knight three, others only two, unless they maintained them at their own expence.<sup>25</sup>

CHAP.  
XII.

SOMETHING like a trophy appears in a description of Saxon boundaries of land: "Thence to the limit of a banner, coat of mail, and helmet, both of the kings and of Eadbald in an ash-tree."<sup>26</sup>

No shield-maker was allowed to put a sheep's skin on a shield.<sup>27</sup> Was this provision made to favour the manufacture of parchment for their books?

<sup>25</sup> *Aquila Saxonica*, p. 28, 29., where the other provisions, established for the regulation of the tournaments, may be seen.

<sup>26</sup> *Hem. Chart.* p. 7.

<sup>27</sup> *Wilk. Leg.* p. 59. I observe another passage in the canons of Edgar relating to *cnihtes*: "We teach that every priest should have at the synods his cleric, and a fit man *to cnihte*, and no one unwise that loves folly." *Wilk. Leg.* p. 82. This is not a passage applicable to a boy, but to a manly attendant on the superior priests at the great councils.

## CHAP. XIII.

*Their Superstitions.*B O O K  
VII.

**T**HE belief, that some human beings could attain the power of inflicting evils on their fellow-creatures, and of controlling the operations of nature, existed among the Anglo-Saxons, but did not originate with them. It has appeared in all the regions of the globe; and from its extensive prevalence we may perceive that the human mind, in its state of ignorance and barbarism, is a soil well adapted to its reception and cultivation. It is not true that fear first made a deity; but it cannot be doubted that fear, vanity, and hope, are the parents of superstition.

LIFE has so many evils which the uninstructed mind can neither prevent nor avert, and encourages so many hopes which every age and condition burn to realize, that we cannot be astonished to find a large portion of mankind the willing prey of impostors, practising on their credulity by threats of evil and promises of good, greater than the usual course of nature would dispense. In every country where the intelligent religions of Judaism or Christianity were unknown, these delusions obtained a kind of legal sovereignty, and peculiarly in Thrace and Chaldea. But that such frauds and absurdities should be countenanced, where the genuine revelations of the Divine wisdom prevail, may reasonably excite both our astonishment and regret, especially as they have been steadily discountenanced by both

civil and ecclesiastical laws. Their foundation seems to lie deep in the heart's anxiety about futurity; in its impatience for good greater than it enjoys; and in its restless curiosity to penetrate the unknown, and to meddle with the forbidden.

C H A P.  
XIII.

BUT the superstitions of magic and witchcraft began among the civilised nations of the earth, and prevailed even in Greece and Rome, before the Saxons are known to have had an historical existence. The general diffusion of the fond mistake forbids us to derive the later impostures from those which preceded; but as every thing that was popular among the Romans must have scattered some effects on the nations with whom they had intercourse, we will glance at the opinions which the masters of the world, who so long colonised our island, admitted on this delusive subject.

WE are familiar in our youth with the incantations alluded to by Virgil and Horace, and described by Lucan: it is still more amusing to read of Apuleius, who flourished under the Antonines, and who, though born in Africa, was educated at Athens, that he was accused of magic arts, and of having obtained a rich wife by his incantations. In his *Metamorphoseon* we have a curious picture of the witchcraft which was believed to exist in the ancient world. One of his characters is described as a *saga*, or witch<sup>1</sup>, who could lower the sky, and raise the manes of the dead. She is stated to have transformed one lover into a beaver, another into a frog, and another into a ram; to have condemned a rival wife to perpetual

<sup>1</sup> Apul. *Metamorph. lib. i. p. 6.*

B O O K

VIL.

gestation ; to have closed up impreguably all the houses of a city, whose inhabitants were going to stone her ; and to have transported the family of the authors of the commotion to the top of a distant mountain.

ANOTHER lady of similar taste is mentioned to have been a maga, mistress of every sepulchral song, who, by twigs, little stones, and such like petty instruments, could submerge all the light of the world in the lowest Tartarus, and into ancient chaos ; who could turn her lovers that displeased her into stones or animals, or entirely destroy them.<sup>2</sup>

APULEIUS afterwards gives us a description of one of her achievements. In the dead of the night, as two friends are sleeping in a room, the doors burst open with great fury ; the bed of one is overturned upon him ; two witches enter, one carrying a light, the other a sponge and a sword. This stabs her sleeping faithless lover, plunges the weapon up to its hilt in his throat, receives all the blood in a vessel, that not a drop might appear, and then takes out his heart. The other applied her sponge to the wounds, saying, "Sponge ! sea-born ! beware of rivers !" The consequence was, that though he waked, and travelled as well as ever, yet when on his journey he approached a river, and proceeded to drink at it, his wounds opened, the sponge flew out, and the victim fell dead.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>2</sup> Apul. Metamorph. lib. i. p. 21.

<sup>3</sup> Mr. Cumberland in his Observer, No. 31., has noticed the magical powers ascribed in the Clementine recognitions, and Constit. Apos. to Simon Magus, viz. That he created a man out of the air ; that he had the power of being invisible ; that he could make marble as penetrable as clay ; could animate

APULEIUS himself was a great student of magic. The chief seat of all these wonders is declared to have been Thessaly; and so popular was the notion of witchcraft among those nations whom in our youth we are taught almost exclusively to admire, that even philosophers thought that they accounted sufficiently for the miracles of the Christian legislator, by referring them to magic.

WE will consider the Anglo-Saxon superstitions under the heads of their witchcraft, their charms, and their prognostics.

THEIR pretenders to witchcraft were called *wicca*, *scin-læca*, *galdor-cræftig*, *wiglær*, and *morthwyrtha*. *Wiglær* is a combination from *wig*, an idol or a temple, and *lær*, learning, and may have been one of the characters of the Anglo-Saxon idolatry. He was the wizard, as *wicca* was the witch. *Scinlæca* was a species of phantom or apparition, and was also used as the name of the person who had the power of producing such things: it is, literally, a shining dead body. *Galdor-cræftig* implies one skilled in incantations; and *morthwyrtha* is, literally, a worshipper of the dead.

---

statues; resist the effects of fire; present himself with two faces, like Janus; metamorphose himself into a sheep or a goat; fly at pleasure through the air; create gold in a moment; and at a wish take a scythe in his hand and mow a field of corn almost at a stroke; and recall the unjustly murdered to life. A woman of public notoriety looking out of the window of a castle on a great crowd below, he was said to have made her appear, and then fall down from every window of the place at the same time. To these fancies Anastacius Nicenus added, that Simon was frequently preceded by spectres, which he declared to be the spirits of certain persons that were dead. It is extraordinary that the ancients framed no romantic tales on imaginations so favourable to interesting fiction.

BOOK  
VII.

ANOTHER general appellation for such personages was *dry*, a magician. The clergy opposed these follies in their homilies.<sup>4</sup>

THE laws notice these practices with penal severity. The best account that can be given of them will be found in the passages proscribing them. -

"If any *wicca*, or *wiglær*, or false swearer, or *morthwyrtha*, or any foul, contaminated, manifest *horcwenan*, (whore, quean or strumpet,) be any where in the land, man shall drive them out."<sup>5</sup>

"WE teach that every priest shall extinguish all heathendom, and forbid *wilweorthunga* (fountain-worship), and *licwiglunga* (incantations of the dead), and *hwata* (omens), and *galdra* (magic), and man-worship, and the abominations that men exercise in various sorts of witchcraft, and in *frithsplottum*, and with elms and other trees, and with stones, and with many other phantoms."<sup>6</sup>

FROM subsequent regulations, we find that these practices were made the instruments of the most fatal mischief; for penitentiary penalties are enjoined if any one should destroy another by *wicce cræfte*; or if any should drive sickness on a man; or if death should follow from the attempt.<sup>7</sup>

THEY seem to have used philtres; for it is also made punishable if any should use witchcraft to

<sup>4</sup> Thus, in a homily against auguries, it is said, "That the dead should rise through *dry-cræft*, *deofol gild*, *wice-cræft*, and *wiglunga*, is very abominable to our Saviour; and they that exercise these crafts are God's enemies, and truly belong to the deceitful devil, with him to dwell for ever in eternal punishment." MSS. Bodl. Wanl. Cat. p. 42.

<sup>5</sup> Wilk. Leg. Anglo-Sax. p. 53.

<sup>6</sup> Ibid. p. 83.

<sup>7</sup> Ibid. p. 93.

produce another's love, or should give him to eat or to drink with magic.<sup>8</sup> They were also forbid to wiglian by the moon.<sup>9</sup> Canute renewed the prohibitions. He enjoined them not to worship the sun or the moon, fire or floods, wells or stones, or any sort of tree; not to love wiccecræft, or frame death-spells, either by lot or by torch; nor to effect any thing by phantoms.<sup>10</sup> From the Pœnitentiale of Theodore we also learn, that the power of letting loose tempests was also pretended to.<sup>11</sup>

C H A P.  
XIII.

ANOTHER name for their magical arts was unlybban wyrce, literally, destructive of life. The penitence is prescribed for a woman who kills a man by unlybban. One instance of their philtres is detailed to us. A woman resolving on the death of her step-son, or to alienate from him his father's affection, sought a witch, who knew how to change minds by art and enchantments. Addressing such a one with promises and rewards, she enquired how the mind of the father might be turned from the child, and be fixed on herself. The magical medicament was immediately made, and mixed with the husband's meat and drink. The catastrophe of the whole was the murder of the child; and the discovery of the crime by the assistant, to revenge the step-mother's ill-treatment.<sup>12</sup>

THE charms used by the Anglo-Saxons were innumerable. They trusted in their magical in-

<sup>8</sup> Wilk. Leg. Anglo-Sax. p. 93.

<sup>9</sup> MS. Tib. A. 3.

<sup>10</sup> Wilkins, p. 134.

<sup>11</sup> Spelm. Concil. 155. They dreaded spectres; and one of their medical recipes is, "If a man suffer from a scinlac, or spectre, let him eat lion's flesh, and he will never suffer from any scinlac again." Cott. MSS. Vitell. C. 3.

<sup>12</sup> 3 Gale's Script. p. 439.

B O O K  
VII.

cantations for the cure of disease<sup>13</sup>, for the success of their tillage<sup>14</sup>, for the discovery of lost property<sup>15</sup>, for uncharming cattle, and for the prevention of casualties.<sup>16</sup> Specimens of their charms for these purposes still remain to us. Bede tells us, that “many, in times of disease (neglecting the sacraments) went to the erring medicaments of idolatry, as if to restrain God’s chastisements by incantations, phylacteries, or any other secret of the demoniacal arts.”<sup>17</sup>

THEIR prognostics, from the sun and moon, from thunder, and from dreams, were so numerous, as to display and to perpetuate a most lamentable debility of mind. Every day of every month was catalogued as a propitious or unpropitious season for certain transactions. We have Anglo-Saxon treatises which contain rules for discovering the future fortune and disposition of a child, from the day of his nativity. One day was useful for all things; another, though good to tame animals, was baleful to sow seeds. One day was favourable to the commencement of business; another to let blood; and others wore a forbidding aspect to these and other things. On this day they were to buy, on a second to sell, on a third to hunt, on a fourth to do nothing. If a child was born on such a day, it would live; if on another its life would be sickly; if on another it would perish early. In a word, the

<sup>13</sup> For incantations to cure various diseases, see Wanley’s Catalogue of Saxon MSS. p. 44. 115. 231. 232. 234. 305.

<sup>14</sup> For charms to make fields fertile, see Wanley, p. 98. 225.

<sup>15</sup> For charms to find lost cattle, or any thing stolen, see Wanley, p. 114. 186.

<sup>16</sup> For amulets against poison, disease, and battle, see also Wanley.

<sup>17</sup> Bede, lib. iv. c. 27.

most alarming fears, and the most extravagant hopes, were perpetually raised by these foolish superstitions, which tended to keep the mind in the dreary bondage of ignorance and absurdity, which prevented the growth of knowledge, by the incessant war of prejudice, and the slavish effects of the most imbecile apprehensions.<sup>18</sup>

THE same anticipations of futurity were made by noticing on what day of the week or month it first thundered, or the new moon appeared, or the new-year's day occurred. Dreams likewise had regular interpretations and applications; and thus life, instead of being governed by the councils of wisdom, or the precepts of virtue, was directed by those solemn lessons of gross superstition, which the most ignorant peasant of our days would be ashamed to avow.<sup>19</sup> How lamentable is it that mankind should have such an inveterate propensity to resort to the meanest agencies, and most capricious accidents of nature, for aid or comfort in their anxieties and difficulties, rather than to con-

<sup>18</sup> See especially MS. Tiberius, A. 3. and Bede's works on these subjects. A few specimens may amuse: "On the first night of the moon, go to the king and ask what you like. Whatever you see at the first appearance of the new moon will be a blessing to you. In the beginning of the moon it is useful to do any thing. If a man be born on a Sunday he will live without trouble all his life. If it thunder in the evening, some great person is born. If new-year's day be on a Monday, it will be a grim and confounding winter. When you see a bee fast in the briar, wish what you please and it will not fail you."

<sup>19</sup> Some of their fancies: "If a man dream that he hath a burning candle in his hand, it is a sign of good. If he dream that he sees an eagle over his head, it implies dignity to him, and the greater, the higher the bird flies. Whatever we dream on the first night of the old moon will become joyful to us."

BOOK  
VII.

side in its Author, solicit his kindness, or resign themselves to his will; rather than calmly await his benevolent dispensations, and trust to his discernment for the fittest season of their occurrence and duration.<sup>20</sup>

<sup>20</sup> Even while this page is penning, one Gipsy is offering her prognostications, surprised at being refused; and another is employed in a neighbouring garden, by three intellectual beings, to delude them by her random predictions, which she afterwards ridicules them for believing!

## CHAP. XIV.

*Their Funerals.*

**T**HE northern nations, at one period, burnt their dead. But the custom of interring the body had become established among the Anglo-Saxons, at the æra when their history began to be recorded by their Christian clergy, and was never discontinued. CHAP.  
XIV.

THEIR common coffins were wood; the more costly were stone. Thus a nun who had been buried in a wooden coffin was afterwards placed in one of stone.<sup>1</sup> Their kings were interred in stone coffins<sup>2</sup>; they were buried in linen<sup>3</sup>, and the clergy in their vestments.<sup>4</sup> In two instances mentioned by Bede, the coffin was provided before death.<sup>5</sup> We also read of the place of burial being chosen before death, and sometimes of its being ordered by will.<sup>6</sup>

WITH the common sympathy of human nature, friends are described as attending, in illness, round the bed of the deceased. On their departure, we read of friends tearing their clothes and hair.<sup>7</sup> One who died, is mentioned to have been buried the next day.<sup>8</sup> As Cuthbert, the eleventh bishop from Augustin, obtained leave to make cemeteries within

<sup>1</sup> Bede, lib. iv. c. 19.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. c. 4.

<sup>3</sup> Ibid. c. 19.

<sup>4</sup> Ibid. p. 261.

<sup>5</sup> Ibid. lib. v. c. 5. and lib. iv. c. 11.

<sup>6</sup> 3 Gale Script. 470.

<sup>7</sup> Eddius, p. 64.

<sup>8</sup> Bede, p. 302.

**B O O K**  
**VII.**

cities<sup>9</sup>, we may infer that the more healthful custom, of depositing the dead at some distance from the habitations of the living, was the general practice; but afterwards it became the custom of England to bury the dead in the churches. The first restriction to this practice was the injunction that none should be so buried, unless it was known that in his life he had been acceptable to God. It was afterwards ordered, that no corpse should be deposited in a church, unless of an ecclesiastic, or a layman so righteous as to deserve such a distinction. All former tombs in churches were directed to be made level with the pavement, so that none might be seen: and if in any part, from the number of the tombs, this was difficult to be done, then the altar was to be removed to a purer spot, and the occupied place was to become merely a burying-ground.<sup>10</sup>

SOME of their customs at death may be learnt from the following narrations. It is mentioned in Dunstan's life, that Æthelfleda, when on her death-bed, said to him, "Do thou, early in the morning, cause the baths to be hastened, and the funeral vestments to be prepared, which I am about to wear; and after the washing of my body, I will celebrate the mass, and receive the sacrament; and in that manner I will die."<sup>11</sup>

<sup>9</sup> Dugd. Mon. i. p. 25.

<sup>10</sup> Wilk. Leg. Anglo-Sax. p. 179. p. 84.

<sup>11</sup> MSS. Cleop. B. 13. This life has been printed in the *Acta Sanctorum* for May, from a MS. brought from the Vedastine monastery at Rome. This MS. differs from the Cotton MS. in some particulars. It has the preface, which the Cotton MS. wants; but it has not two pages of the conclusion, which are in the Cotton MS. In the body of the Roman MS. there are forty-two hexameters which are not in the Cotton MS.

THE sickness, death, and burial of archbishop Wilfrid, in the eighth century, is described with these particulars. On the attack of his illness, all the abbots and anchorites near were unwearied in their prayers for his recovery. He survived, with his senses; and power of speech returned, for a year and a half. A short time before his death, he invited two abbots and six faithful brethren to attend him, and desired them to open his treasure-chest with a key. The gold, silver, and precious stones therein were brought out, and divided into four parts, as he directed. One of these he ordered to be sent to the churches at Rome, as a present for his soul; another part was to be divided among the poor of his people; a third he gave to some monasteries, to obtain therewith the friendship of the kings and bishops; and the fourth he destined to those who had shared in his labours, and to whom he had not given lands.

AFTER his death, one of the abbots spread his linen garments on the ground. The brethren laid his body on them, washed it with their hands, and put on his ecclesiastical dress. Afterwards they wrapped it in linen, and singing hymns, they conducted it in a carriage to the monastery. All the monks came out to meet it; none abstained from tears and weeping. They received it with hymns and chantings, and deposited it in the church which he had built.<sup>12</sup>

ONE of the nobles who attended the king at his Easter court, having died, it is mentioned that his body was carried to Glastonbury; and the king ordered some of the bishops, earls, and barons, to attend the bier thither with honour.<sup>13</sup>

<sup>12</sup> Eddius, p. 89.

<sup>13</sup> 3 Gale Script. p. 395.

## BOOK

## VII.

WHEN the body of an alderman was taken to the monastery at Ramsay to be buried, a numerous assemblage from the neighbourhood met to accompany his exequies.<sup>14</sup>

THE saul-sceat, or the payment of the clergy on death, became a very general practice. No respectable person died or was buried without a handsome present to some branch or other of the ecclesiastical establishment.

NOTHING can more strongly express the importance and necessity of this custom, than that several of their gilds seem to have been formed chiefly with a view to provide a fund for this purpose.

It appears in all the wills. Thus Wynflæd, for her saul-sceat, gave to every one of the religious, at the places she mentions, a mancus of gold; and to another place, half a pound's worth, for saul-sceat. She adds a direction to her children, that they will illuminate for her soul.

BYRHTRIC, for his soul and his ancestors, gave two sulings of land by his will, and a similar present, with thirty gold mancys, for his wife's soul and her ancestors.<sup>15</sup> Wulfaru bequeaths to Saint Peter's minster, for his "miserable soul," and for his ancestors; a bracelet, a patera, two golden crosses, with garments and bed-clothes."<sup>16</sup>

A DUX who flourished in the days of Edgar and Æthelred, not only gave an abbot some valuable lands, in return for his liberal hospitality, but also several others, with thirty marks of gold, and twenty pounds of silver, two golden crosses, two pieces of his cloak, set with gold and gems in valuable work-

<sup>14</sup> 3 Gale Script. p. 428.

<sup>15</sup> Hickee, Diss. Ep. 51.

<sup>16</sup> Ibid. p. 54.

manship, and other things, that, if he fell in battle, his body might be buried with them.<sup>17</sup>

C H A P  
XIV.

A dux in Alfred's days directed one hundred swine to be given to a church in Canterbury, for him and for his soul; and the same to Chertsey abbey. The same dux directed two hundred peninga to be paid annually from some land to Chertsey abbey, for the soul of Alfred.<sup>18</sup>

So Æthelstan the ætheling gave to St. Peter's church, at Westminster, land which he had bought of his father for two hundred mancusan of gold, five pounds of silver by weight, and some land, which he had purchased for two hundred and fifty gold mancus by weight; and the land which his father released to him, for both their souls: he makes other bequests to other religious places.<sup>19</sup>

<sup>17</sup> 3 Gale Script. 494.

<sup>18</sup> Test. Ælf. App. Sax. Dict.

<sup>19</sup> App. Sax. Dict. If the body was buried out of the "riht scire," or parish, the soul's sceat was to be paid to the minister to which he belonged. Wilk. Leg. 121. 108. It was to be always given at the open grave. Ib. 108.

## BOOK VIII.

*The GOVERNMENT and CONSTITUTION of the ANGLO-SAXONS.*

## CHAP. I.

*The King's Election and Coronation.*BOOK  
VIII.

**I**N treating of the Anglo-Saxon government it will be proper to begin with the cyning, or king, who, though he did not concentrate in himself the despotism of an eastern monarch, was yet elevated far above the rest of the nation in dignity, property, and power.

THE witenagemot may then be considered, and afterwards the official dignities respected by the nation. Our subject will be closed by a review of the contributions levied from the people.

THE first cynings of the Anglo-Saxons seem to have been their war-kings, continued for life; and the crown was not hereditary, but elective. Many authors, both in the Anglo-Saxon times and afterwards, when speaking of their accessions, express them in terms which signify election. Thus, the contemporary author of Dunstan's life says of Edwin, "After him arose Eadwig, son of king Edmund, in age a youth, and with little of the prudence of reigning; *elected*, he filled up the number and names of the kings over both people." It proceeds afterwards to mention, that, abandoning Eadwig, they chose (*eligere*) Eadgar to be king.<sup>1</sup>

It was the witenagemot who elected the cyning. The council, in 785, directs, that "lawful kings be

<sup>1</sup> MS. Cleop. B. 13. p. 76. 78.

chosen by the priests and elders of the people.”<sup>2</sup> C H A P. I.  
The author of the life of Dunstan says, “when at the time appointed he was by all the chiefs of the English, by general election, to be anointed and consecrated king.”<sup>3</sup> Ethelred recites himself, in a charter, that all the optimates had unanimously chosen his brother Edward to rule the helm of the kingdom.<sup>4</sup> Alfred is stated to have been chosen by the ducibus et presulibus of all the nation.<sup>5</sup> Edward and Athelstan are also described as “a primatis electus.”<sup>6</sup>

SOMETIMES the election is mentioned as if other persons besides the witan were concerned in it. Thus, the Saxon Chronicle says, that after Ethelred’s death all the witan who were in London, and *the citizens*, chose Edmund to cinge.<sup>7</sup> It says afterwards, that when Canute died there was a gemot of all the witan at Oxford; and earl Leofric, and most of the thegns north of the Thames, and *the lithsmen* at London chose Harold. The earl Godwin, and all the yldestan men in West Saxony, opposed it as long as they could.<sup>8</sup>

BUT, from the comparison of all the passages on this subject, the result seems to be, that the king was elected at the witena-gemot held on the demise of the preceding sovereign; and these citizens and lithsmen were probably the more popular part of the national council, the representatives of the cities and burghs. The name of lithsmen would

<sup>2</sup> Spelm. Concil. p. 296.

<sup>3</sup> MS. Cleop. p. 76.

<sup>4</sup> MS. Claud. c. 9. p. 123.

<sup>5</sup> Simeon Dunel. 126, 127.

<sup>6</sup> Ethelwerd, 847. Malmsh. 48. <sup>7</sup> Sax. Chron. p. 148.

<sup>8</sup> Sax. Chron. p. 154.

**B O O K** suit those of the maritime burghs, afterwards, as  
**VIII.** now, called the cinque ports.

THAT the accession of the Anglo-Saxon sovereigns was not governed by the rules of hereditary succession, is manifest from their history. The dynasties of Wessex were more steady and regular than any others in the octarchy. Yet the son of its third king, Cealwin, did not succeed, though he existed. The son of Ceolwulf was equally passed by. Ceadwalla left two sons, yet Ina acceded, to their prejudice; and, what is singular, Ina was elected king, though his father was alive. Some other irregularities of the same sort took place before Egbert, and continued after him.

ETHELBERT, the second son of Ethelwulph, left sons, and yet Ethelred succeeded in their stead. They were still excluded, when Alfred and his son received the crown. So Athelstan, though illegitimate, was chosen in preference to his legitimate brothers. On Edgar's death, both his eldest and youngest sons were made candidates for the crown, though Edward was preferred; and although Edmund Ironside left a son, his brother, Edward the Confessor, after the Danish reigns, was preferred before him. To the exclusion of the same prince, Harold the Second obtained his election.

BUT though the Saxon witan continued the custom of election, and sometimes broke the regular line of descent, by crowning the collateral branches, yet in the greatest number of instances they followed the rule of hereditary succession. Their choice of the cyning in Wessex, even when the heir was disregarded, was always made from the family of its first founder, Cerdic, and usually from

the kinsmen of the preceding sovereign. The Norman conquest diminished the power of the witenagemot in this respect, or at least restricted its practical exertion. The form and name of election continued, but it was rather adoption than choice. The crown passed gradually from an elective to an hereditary succession ;—a change highly auspicious to the national prosperity, by precluding the most destructive of all human competitions.

CHAP.

I.

THE coronation of Ethelred the Second, and his coronation oath, have been transmitted to us in Latin, in a MS. yet extant in the Cotton Library.<sup>9</sup> The ceremony was thus ordered: the translation is made literal: some part of it seems to be the composition or the arrangement of Dunstan. —

“Two bishops, with the witan, shall lead him to the church, and the clergy, with the bishops, shall sing the anthem, ‘Firmetur, manus tua,’ and the ‘Gloria Patri.’

“When the king arrives at the church, he shall prostrate himself before the altar, and the ‘Te Deum’ shall be chaunted.

“When this is finished, the king shall be raised from the ground, and, *having been chosen* by the bishops and people, shall, with a clear voice, before God and all the people, promise that he will observe these three rules.”

“*The Coronation Oath.*”

‘In the name of Christ, I promise three things to the Christian people, my subjects :

‘First, That the church of God, and all the Christian people, shall always preserve true peace under our auspices.

‘Second, That I will forbid rapacity and all iniquities to every condition.

‘Third, That I will command equity and mercy in all judgments, that to me and to you the gracious and merciful God may extend his mercy.’

---

<sup>9</sup> MS. Claud. A. 3.

**BOOK**  
**VIII.**

"All shall say, Amen. These prayers shall follow, which the bishops are separately to repeat :—

'We invoke thee, O Lord, Holy Father, Almighty and Eternal God, that this thy servant (whom, by the wisdom of thy divine dispensations from the beginning of his formation to this present day, thou hast permitted to increase, rejoicing in the flower of youth) enriched with the gift of thy piety, and full of the grace of truth, thou mayest cause to be always advancing, day by day, to better things before God and men: that, rejoicing in the bounty of supernal grace, he may receive the throne of supreme power; and defended on all sides from his enemies by the wall of thy mercy, he may deserve to govern happily the people committed to him with the peace of propitiation and the strength of victory.'"

*"Second Prayer.*

'O God, who directest thy people in strength, and governest them with love, give this thy servant such a spirit of wisdom with the rule of discipline, that, devoted to thee with his whole heart, he may remain in his government always fit, and that by thy favour the security of this church may be preserved in his time, and Christian devotion may remain in tranquillity; so that, persevering in good works, he may attain, under thy guidance, to thine everlasting kingdom.'

"After a third prayer, the consecration of the king by the bishop takes place, who holds the crown over him, saying,—

'Almighty Creator, Everlasting Lord, Governor of heaven and earth, the Maker and Disposer of angels and men, King of kings and Lord of lords! who made thy faithful servant Abraham to triumph over his enemies, and gavest manifold victories to Moses and Joshua, the prelates of thy people; and didst raise David, thy lowly child, to the summit of the kingdom, and didst free him from the mouth of the lion and the paws of the bear, and from Goliath, and from the malignant sword of Saul and his enemies; who didst endow Solomon with the ineffable gift of wisdom and peace: look down propitiously on our humble prayers, and multiply the gifts of thy blessing on this thy servant, whom, with humble devotion, we have chosen to be king of the Angles and the Saxons. Surround him every where with the right hand of thy power, that, strengthened with the faithfulness of Abra-

'ham, the meekness of Moses, the courage of Joshua, the humility of David, and the wisdom of Solomon, he may be well-pleasing to thee in all things, and may always advance in the way of justice with inoffensive progress.

'May he so nourish, teach, defend, and instruct the church of all the kingdom of the Anglo-Saxons, with the people annexed to it; and so potently and royally rule it against all visible and invisible enemies, that the royal throne of the Angles and Saxons may not desert his sceptre, but that he may keep their minds in the harmony of the pristine faith and peace! May he, supported by the due subjection of the people, and glorified by worthy love, through a long life, descend to govern and establish it with the united mercy of thy glory! Defended with the helmet and invincible shield of thy protection, and surrounded with celestial arms, may he obtain the triumph of victory over all his enemies, and bring the terror of his power on all the unfaithful, and shed peace on those joyfully fighting for thee! Adorn him with the virtues with which thou hast decorated thy faithful servants; place him high in his dominion, and anoint him with the oil of the grace of thy Holy Spirit!

"Here he shall be ANOINTED with oil; and this anthem shall be sung:—

'And Zadoc the priest, and Nathan the prophet, anointed Solomon king in Sion; and, approaching him, they said, May the king live for ever!

"After two appropriate prayers, the SWORD was given to him, with this invocation:—

'God! who governest all things, both in heaven and in earth, by thy providence, be propitious to our most Christian king, that all the strength of his enemies may be broken by the virtue of the spiritual sword, and that Thou combating for him, they may be utterly destroyed!

"The king shall here be CROWNED, and shall be thus addressed:—

'May God crown thee with the crown of glory, and with the honour of justice, and the labour of fortitude; that by the virtue of our benediction, and by a right faith, and the various fruit of good works, thou mayest attain to the crown of the everlasting kingdom, through His bounty whose kingdom endures for ever!

## B O O K

## VIII.

“After the crown shall be put upon his head, this prayer shall be said : —

‘God of eternity! Commander of the virtues! the Conqueror of all enemies! bless this thy servant, now humbly bending his head before thee, and preserve him long in health, prosperity, and happiness. Whenever he shall invoke thine aid, be speedily present to him, and protect and defend him. Bestow on him the riches of thy grace; fulfil his desires with every good thing, and crown him with thy mercy.’

“The SCEPTRE shall be here given to him, with this address : —

‘Take the illustrious sceptre of the royal power, the rod of thy dominion, the rod of justice, by which mayest thou govern thyself well, and the holy church and Christian people committed by the Lord to thee! Mayest thou with royal virtue defend us from the wicked; correct the bad, and pacify the upright; and that they may hold the right way, direct them with thine aid, so that from the temporal kingdom thou mayest attain to that which is eternal, by His aid whose endless dominion will remain through every age!’

“After the sceptre has been given, this prayer follows : —

‘Lord of all! Fountain of good! God of all! Governor of governors! bestow on thy servant the dignity to govern well, and strengthen him, that he become the honour granted him by thee! Make him illustrious above every other king in Britain! Enrich him with thine affluent benediction, and establish him firmly in the throne of his kingdom! Visit him in his offspring, and grant him length of life! In his day may justice be pre-eminent; so that, with all joy and felicity, he may be glorified in thine everlasting kingdom!’

“The ROD shall be here given to him, with this address : —

‘Take the rod of justice and equity, by which thou mayest understand how to soothe the pious and terrify the bad; teach the way to the erring; stretch out thine hand to the faltering; abase the proud; exalt the humble, that Christ our Lord may open to thee the door, who says of himself, I am the door; if any enter through me, he shall be saved. And HE who is the key of David, and the sceptre of the house of Israel, who opens and no one can shut; who shuts and no one can open; may he be thy helper! HE who bringeth the bounden

'from the prison-house, and the one sitting in darkness and the shadow of death ! that in all things thou mayest deserve to follow him of whom David sang, Thy seat, O God, endureth for ever ; the sceptre of thy kingdom is a right sceptre. Imitate him who says, Thou hast loved righteousness, and hated iniquity ; therefore God, even thy God, has anointed thee with the oil of gladness above thy fellows.'

"The benedictions follow : —

'May the Almighty Lord extend the right hand of his blessing, and pour upon thee the gift of his protection, and surround thee with a wall of happiness, and with the guardianship of his care ; the merits of the holy Mary ; of Saint Peter, the prince of the Apostles ; and of Saint Gregory, the apostle of the English ; and of all the Saints, interceding for thee !

'May the Lord forgive thee all the evil thou hast done, and bestow on thee the grace and mercy which thou humbly askest of him ; may he free thee from all adversity, and from all the assaults of visible or invisible enemies !

'May he place his good angels to watch over thee, that they always and every where may precede, accompany, and follow thee ; and by his power may he preserve thee from sin, from the sword, and every accident and danger !

'May he convert thine enemies to the benignity of peace and love, and make thee gracious and amiable in every good thing ; and may he cover those that persecute and hate thee with salutary confusion ; and may everlasting sanctification flourish upon thee !

'May he always make thee victorious and triumphant over thine enemies, visible or invisible ; and pour upon thy heart both the fear and the continual love of his holy name, and make thee persevere in the right faith and in good works, granting thee peace in thy days ; and with the palm of victory may he bring thee to an endless reign !

'And may he make them happy in this world, and the partakers of his everlasting felicity, who have willed to make thee king over his people !

'Bless, Lord, this elected prince, thou who rulest for ever the kingdoms of all kings.

'And so glorify him with thy blessing, that he may hold the sceptre of Solomon with the sublimity of a David,' &c.

‘Grant him, by thy inspiration, so to govern thy people, as thou didst permit Solomon to obtain a peaceful kingdom.’”

*“Designation of the State of the Kingdom.”*

‘Stand and retain now the state which thou hast hitherto held by paternal succession, with hereditary right, delegated to thee by the authority of Almighty God, and our present delivery, that is, of all the bishops and other servants of God; and in so much as thou hast beheld the clergy nearer the sacred altars, so much more remember to pay them the honour due, in suitable places. So may the Mediator of God and men confirm thee the mediator of the clergy and the common people, on the throne of this kingdom, and make thee reign with him in his eternal kingdom.’

“This prayer follows:—

‘May the Almighty Lord give thee, from the dew of heaven, and the fatness of the earth, abundance of corn, wine, and oil! May the people serve thee, and the tribes adore thee! Be the lord of thy brothers, and let the sons of thy mother bow before thee: He who blesses thee shall be filled with blessings, and God will be thy helper: May the Almighty bless thee with the blessings of the heaven above, and in the mountains and the vallies; with the blessing of the deep below; with the blessing of the suckling and the womb; with the blessings of grapes and apples; and may the blessing of the ancient fathers, Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, be heaped upon thee!

‘Bless, Lord, the courage of this prince, and prosper the works of his hands; and by thy blessing may his land be filled with apples, with the fruits, and the dew of heaven, and of the deep below; with the fruit of the sun and moon; from the top of the ancient mountains, from the apples of the eternal hills, and from the fruits of the earth and its fulness!

‘May the blessing of Him who appeared in the bush come upon his head; and may the full blessing of the Lord be upon his sons, and may he steep his feet in oil.

‘With his horn, as the horn of the rhinoceros, may he scatter the nations to the extremities of the earth; and may He who has ascended to the skies be his auxiliary for ever!’

“Here the coronation ends.”

# CHAP. II.

## *His Family and Officers.*

**T**HE Anglo-Saxon queen was crowned, as well as the king, until the reign of Egbert, when this honour was taken from her. The crimes of the preceding queen, Eadburga, occasioned the Anglo-Saxons to depart awhile, in this respect, from the custom of all the German nations.<sup>1</sup> But it was soon restored; for Ethelwulph, on his second marriage, suffered his queen, Judith, to be crowned. An account of the ceremony of her coronation has been preserved by the old Frankish writers.<sup>2</sup>

C H A P.  
II.

THE custom was not immediately reassumed in England, because the expressions of Asser imply, that in Alfred's time the disuse of the coronation continued. But, by the time of the second Ethelred, it was restored; for after the account of his coronation, the ceremonial of her coronation follows. — She was anointed; and, after a prayer, a ring was given to her, and then she was crowned.<sup>3</sup>

THE queen's name is joined with the cyning's in some charters, and it is not unusual to find them signed by her. From them we learn that she often sat in the witena-gemot, even after she became queen-dowager. She had her separate property; for, in a gift of land by Ethelswitha, the queen of Alfred, she gives fifteen manentes, calling them a

<sup>1</sup> Asser, Vit. Alfr. p. 10, 11.

<sup>2</sup> It may be seen in Du Chesne's Collection of the Frankish Historians, tom. ii. p. 423.

<sup>3</sup> Cott. MS. Claud. A. 3.

B O O K  
VIII.

part of the land of her own power.<sup>4</sup> She had also officers of her own household; for the persons, with whose consent and testimony she made the grant, are called *her* nobles.

THE king's sons had lands appropriated for them, even though under age; for Ethelred says, that, on his brother being elected king, "the nobles delivered to me, for my use, the lands belonging to the king's sons." These, on the death of the princes, or on their accession to the sovereignty, became the property of the king; for, he adds, "my brother dying, I assumed the dominion, both of the royal lands, and of those belonging to the king's sons."<sup>5</sup>

AMONG the royal household we find the disc thegn, or the thegn of his dishes; the hregal thegn, or the thegn of his wardrobe; his hors thegn, or the thegn of his stud; his camerarius, or chamberlain; his propincenarius and pincerna, or cup-bearer; his secretaries; his chancellor; and, in an humbler rank, his mægden, his grindende theowa, his fedesl, his ambiht-smith, his horswealh, his ge-neat, and his laadrinc. But we may remark, that his cup-bearer and feeder, or probably taster, were both females. The executive officers of his government will be mentioned hereafter.

<sup>4</sup> MS. Claud. c. 9. p. 105.

<sup>5</sup> Ibid. p. 123.

### CHAP. III.

#### *The Dignity and Prerogatives of the ANGLO-SAXON Cyning.*

**FIVE** descriptions of kings have appeared in C H A P.  
III.  
the world: the FATHER at the head of his family; the most ancient sovereign, once exhibited in the Jewish Patriarch, but now perhaps obsolete, unless in the simplicity of some portions of Africa. The ELDER, governing his descendants and tribe rather by influence and persuasion than power, as the North American sachems; the Arabian sheiks; and some Tartarian hordes. The IMPERATOR, or military sovereign, commanding among his people as among his soldiers, like the emperors of Rome. The DESPOT LORD, ruling his nation like his vassal slaves, without check, sympathy, consideration, or responsibility, like the shereffs of Morocco, the dey of Algiers, and, in a great measure, the sultans of Turkey: and the Teutonic KINGS, who are neither fathers, elders, imperators, nor despotic lords, but who are a creation of social wisdom far more excellent in conception, and more beneficial in practice than either of the others. The fatherking must cease to exist when the family becomes a tribe. The elder king, who then succeeds, suits not a numerous, enterprising, and extensively-spread nation. The imperator, or the despot lord, must then be resorted to, or tyrannical oligarchies, severe aristocracies, or factious democracies, must be substituted; or else an anomalous, and discordant, and not lasting combination of some of these forms;

**B O O K**  
**VIII.**

which was attempted at Athens, Carthage, Rome, and Sparta, with no permanent advantage, or possibility of long continuance.

THE experience and sagacity of the ancient world went no farther than to use one or other of these institutions. It was reserved for those whom we unjustly call Barbarians, the descendants of the Scythian, Gothic, or Teutonic nomades, to invent, and to reduce to practice, a form of monarchy, under the name of kings, with powers so great, yet so limited; so superior and independent in the theory of law, and yet so subordinate to it, and so governed by it; so majestic, yet so popular; so dignified, yet so watched; so intrusted, yet so criticised; so powerful, yet so counteracted; so honoured, yet so counselled; so wealthy, yet so dependent,—that all the good which sovereignty can impart is enjoyed largely by the nations whom they sway, with as few as possible of the evils which continued power must always tend to occasion, and which no human wisdom, while the executing instruments of its plans are imperfect mortals, can absolutely prevent. Such an institution was the Anglo-Saxon cyning; and such, with all the improvements which a free-spirited nation has at various times added to it, is the British monarchy under which we are now reposing.

THE Anglo-Saxon cyning reigned, as his kingly successors reign, by no divine right. His office was the invention, his appointment was the election, of his people; as the succession of our present sovereigns is the ordination of law made by all the orders of the people in their great united parliamentary council. But religion has wisely taught us to consider the reigning sovereign as a consecrated functionary;

not to give him the right divine of doing wrong, but to guard his person and character, for the sake of that welfare of the society for which they were created, with all the veneration which can be obtained from human sympathies; and with all that attachment which will most effectually promote the utility of his great office. Hence he was, as already shown, anointed, prayed for, and said to reign by the grace of God. Hence violence to his person has been always considered as a species of sacrilege. Hence, without adopting the impious deification of the Roman emperors, or the analogous adulation with which those of China and the East are to their own moral prejudice surrounded, our kings have been always considered with a degree of religious<sup>1</sup> as well as civil respect, enough to raise them above every other class of society in character as well as dignity and prerogative; but not enough to emancipate them from all legal obligations, nor to elevate them above that law to which both sovereign and people are equally subject. That this state of subordination to the laws was the principle of the Anglo-Saxon royalty we may safely infer from the emphatic words of our ancient and venerable Bracton. The Norman kings were certainly not inferior in power or prerogative to the Anglo-Saxon; yet of the kingly power in his day, that of Henry the Third, and viewing it as connected with the usages of what then was English antiquity, he says, —

“KINGS ought not to be under man, but under God, AND THE LAW, because THE LAW MAKES THE KING. The King

---

<sup>1</sup> Hence Bracton calls the king the Vicarius Dei, p. 5. The minister and vicarius of God, p. 55.

**B O O K** ascribes to the Law what the Law ascribes to him ; that is, dignity and power : for he is not King where his will governs, and not the Law.<sup>2</sup>  
**VIII.**

“ The King has a superior, God ; ALSO THE LAW, BY WHICH HE IS MADE KING ; also this court, that is, of the earls and barons (the parliament) ; therefore, if the King should be without a bridle, that is, without Law, They ought to put a bridle upon Him.<sup>3</sup>

“ The English laws are not whatever is rashly presumed from the will of the King ; but what, with the intention of establishing laws, shall be rightly determined by the council of his magistrates (the parliament), the King presiding in authority, and in the deliberation and discussion having been had upon this subject.”<sup>4</sup>

So our ancient law-book, *Fleta*, written under the successful and powerful Edward the First, thus expresses the same ideas, imitating or copying its predecessor : —

“ The King has superiors in ruling the people ; as, THE LAW, by which he is made King ; and his court, that is, the earls and barons,” meaning by these, the parliament.<sup>5</sup>

“ The King ought not to have an equal in his kingdom ; for an equal has no government over an equal : nor ought he to have any superior but God AND THE LAW. And because BY THE LAW he is made King, it is fit that domination and power should be ascribed to the Law, and should be defended by him on whom THE LAW has bestowed honour and power. He governs badly when a will shall govern in him dissonant to the law.<sup>6</sup>

“ He is not called King from reigning, but the name is assumed from well-governing. He is a King while he governs well ; but a Tyrant when he oppresses his people by his violated domination.<sup>7</sup>

“ To this He is *elected* that he may cause justice to be exhibited equally to all who are subject to him, accepting the person of no one : that in him the Lord may sit, and by him decree judgment. It concerns him to defend and sustain what

<sup>2</sup> Bracton, p. 5.

<sup>3</sup> Ibid. p. 34.

<sup>4</sup> Ibid. p. 107.

<sup>5</sup> *Fleta*, Proemium.

<sup>6</sup> *Fleta*, p. 2.

<sup>7</sup> Ibid. p. 16.

shall be justly judged ; because if there was not one who would do justice, peace would easily be exterminated.<sup>8</sup>

C H A P.  
III.

“ He has the power of coercion, that he may punish and restrain the delinquents ; and have it in his power to make the laws, customs, and assizes provided, approved, and sworn in his kingdom, to be firmly observed BY HIMSELF and all his subjects.<sup>9</sup>

“ He ought to excel all in his kingdom in power, because He ought not to have a peer, and much more a superior, in administering justice. Yet, though he excel all in power, his heart should be in the hand of God ; and that his power may not remain unbridled, let him apply the bridle of temperance and the reins of moderation, that HE be not drawn to do injury, who can do nothing in the land BUT WHAT HE CAN DO BY LAW.<sup>10</sup>

“ For this HE IS CREATED AND CHOSEN KING, that he may do justice to all.”<sup>11</sup>

It is in the same strain that our judge Fortescue writes, in the reign of Henry the Sixth : —

“ The King of England cannot change the laws of his kingdom at his will.<sup>12</sup>

“ He cannot change the laws without the assent of his subjects ; nor burthen his people with strange impositions.<sup>13</sup>

“ The statutes of England cannot thus arise, since they are not from the will of the prince, but by the assent of the whole kingdom.<sup>14</sup>

“ They are not made by the prudence of one man ; or of an hundred counsellors ; but of more than three hundred chosen men ; as those who know the form of the parliament of England, and the order and manner of its convocation.<sup>15</sup>

“ Nor can the King, by himself, or his ministers, impose talliages or subsidies, or any other burthens on his liege people ; or change their laws, or establish new ones, without the concession and assent of all his kingdom, expressed in parliament.”<sup>16</sup>

<sup>8</sup> Fleta, p.16.

<sup>11</sup> Ibid. p.18.

<sup>14</sup> Ibid. p.40.

<sup>9</sup> Ibid.

<sup>12</sup> Fortescue, p. 25.

<sup>15</sup> Ibid. p.40.

<sup>10</sup> Ibid.

<sup>13</sup> Ibid. p. 26.

<sup>16</sup> Ibid. p. 84.

**BOOK**  
**VIII.**

It is in the same spirit, and obviously implying the same principles which these lawyers of Henry the Third, Edward the First, and Henry the Sixth, have expressed more at large, that the still more ancient Glanville, under Henry the Second, in his very short treatise, takes also occasion to say, —

“ It will not seem absurd that those English laws should be called **LAWs**, although not written, which have been promulgated on doubtful things, and in council determined by the advice of the proceres, and acceding authority of the prince.” <sup>17</sup>

From this passage we perceive that these unwritten laws were not mere customs, as the common law of England has been sometimes erroneously called, but the actual enactments of the national council of England; and as these principles, from which the ancient interpreters of the law deduced their statements of the royal and parliamentary power in England, are not likely to have originated after the Norman conquest, we may consider them as describing to us some important features of the Anglo-Saxon cyning, and of the Anglo-Saxon witenagemots.

We will now proceed to collect more distinctly some of the chief traits of the dignity and prerogatives of the cyning, which the Anglo-Saxon remains have preserved for our curiosity.

The authorities already adduced on the nature of the government of the Saxons on the Continent, lead us to infer, that when Hengist, Ella, Cerdic, and Ida invaded Britain, they and the other chiefs who succeeded in establishing themselves in the island, came with the rank of war-kings, whose power was to continue while hostilities existed.

<sup>17</sup> Glanville Prologus.

BUT to rule a territory extorted by violence from angry natives, who were perpetually struggling to regain it, could scarcely admit of any deposition of the kingly office. The same power and dignity which were requisite to obtain victory were equally wanted, while the hostility lasted, to preserve its conquests. It is, therefore, probable that the first Anglo-Saxon chieftains and their successors were, from necessity and utility, continued on the throne till the kingly dignity became an established, a legal, and a venerated institution.

C H A P.

III.

THE circumstance, that these war-kings and their associates invaded and conquered the dominions of petty British kings, was also favourable to the establishment of continued royalty. When the British king fell, or retreated before the Saxon war-king, all his advantages became the spoil of his conquerors. The Saxon chief naturally succeeded to the British, the Saxon nobles to the British nobles, and the other invading warriors to the possessions of the free part of the native community.

IT is certain, that in the earliest periods of the Anglo-Saxon history, we find the cyning, or king, and all the four orders of noble, free, freed, and servile. Their conversion to Christianity introduced another class, of monks and clergy.

THE power and prerogatives of the Anglo-Saxon cyning were progressively acquired. As the nation had no written constitution, their government was that of ancient custom, gradually altered from its original features by the new circumstances which occurred. In the course of time, the augmentation of the power of the cyning became indispensable to the happiness of the nation. What could arrange the contentions of right, property, and power, be-

B O O K  
VIII.

tween equal nobles, or between them and the free, and afterwards between them and the church ; what could protect the infant state from British hostility, ever jealous, ever bickering, and ever to be mistrusted, but such an institution as continued royalty — as a cyning, raised in dignity and power above all the other chieftains ; who could see the laws of the society executed, and their various rights adjusted ; to whom every rank could effectually appeal, and who was the protector of every order of the state from violence and wrong ?

WE have seen that the land swarmed with independent land proprietors of various denominations, whose privileges were not uniform ; but whose jurisdictions were generally peculiar and independent. What but a king could, in their age, and with their customs, have rescued the nation from a New Zealand state of general warfare ? The institution of the cyning was, therefore, an admirable device, adapted to promote the common interest. It maintained peace between the turbulent chieftains. It insured to every order the enjoyment of its immunities. It was the source whence legal justice was administered to all ; and perhaps no single incident tended more to accelerate the Anglo-Saxon civilisation, than the character and prerogatives of the cyning, moderated by the continuance of the witenagemots, and the free spirit of the people.

It is extremely difficult to describe accurately his privileges and his power. It is remarked by Tacitus, as peculiar to the German nations, that the power of their kings was neither unlimited nor free<sup>18</sup> ; and that the chieftains governed rather by

<sup>18</sup> Nec regibus infinita ; nec libera potestas. Mor. Germ. s. 7.

influence than command. They could neither punish, fetter, nor lash : priests only had these powers, and these severities were submitted to from them as the inflictions of their gods.<sup>19</sup> The ancient Saxons having no king but in war time, his power could be but temporary ; and when it became more permanent, must have been much restricted. As the supreme chief of many other chieftains, whose rights were as sacred as his dignity may have been popular, his authority must have been circumscribed by others. Much of his power at first depended on his personal character and talents. Thus Ead-bald had less authority in Kent than his father<sup>20</sup> ; while Edwin, in Northumbria, attained to such power, that he had the banner carried before him, not only in battle, but also in his excursions with his ministers through his kingdom, which seems to have been an assumption of dignity and state unknown before.<sup>21</sup> So, Oswin was so beloved for his amiable conduct, that the noblest men of his provinces came from every part to attend and serve him.<sup>22</sup>

C H A P.  
III.

THE growth of the kingly prerogatives was favoured not only by the energy and talents of the prosperous sovereigns, but also by the natural tendency of such a power to accumulate. The crown was a permanent establishment, which it was the interest of every one but the superior nobles to maintain and to aggrandize, till its power became formidable enough to be felt in its oppressions. Its domains were increasing by every successful

<sup>19</sup> Mor. Germ. s. 7.

<sup>20</sup> Bede, lib. ii. c. 6.

<sup>21</sup> Ibid. c. 16.

<sup>22</sup> Ibid. c. 14.

**B O O K** war, and its revenue, privileges, and munificence,  
**VIII.** were perpetually adding to its wealth and influence.

WHEN the zeal of the popes had completed the conversion of the island, and an hierarchy was established, the kingly power received great support and augmentation from the religious veneration with which the clergy surrounded it. That the church, in its weakness, should support the crown, which was its best protector, was a circumstance as natural as that it should afterwards oppose it, when its aggressions became feared.

THE laws of Ethelbert, the first Christian king of Kent, who was converted about 600, are the most ancient specimens of the Anglo-Saxon legislation which remain to us. In these<sup>23</sup> the cyning appears already distinguished by a superior rank and privileges. While the mundbyrd of a ceorl was valued at six scillinga, the king's was appointed at fifty. The mulct on homicide in an eorle's residence was twelve scillinga; in a king's fifty. A double penalty was inflicted for injuries done where the cyning was drinking. An offence with his female was punished by a fine of fifty scillinga; while the eorle's occasioned only twelve, and a ceorl's but six. So, though a freeman's theft from a freeman incurred a treble satisfaction, his purloining the king's property was to be nine times compensated.

ANOTHER impressive and profitable token of superiority was, that some of the mulcts on offences were paid to him. Thus, if any harm was done to the leode, or people, when the king called them together, the compensation was to be double, and

<sup>23</sup> Wilk. Leg. Sax. p. 1—7.

fifty scillinga were to be paid to the king. If any one killed a freeman, the king had a similar sum as his lord. If a freeman stole from others of the same condition, the penalty was to be the king's. If a pregnant woman was forced away, the king had fifteen scillinga.

IN the laws of Ina, we see the cyning mentioned in a style of authority very much resembling that of subsequent sovereigns. He says, "I, Ina, by the grace of God, king of the West Saxons." He uses the phrase "*my* bishops." He calls the nobles "*my* ealdormen," and "the oldest sages of *my* people." He adds, "I was consulting on the health of *our* soul and the establishment of *our* kingdom, that right laws, and right cyne domas (kingly judgments), through *our* people, might be settled and confirmed, and that no ealdorman, and none of *our* subjects should violate *our* laws." The laws then are introduced with "*We* command."<sup>24</sup>

ONE of the provisions in these laws shows the king in the same authoritative and dignified features. "If any one fight in the king's house, he shall forfeit *all* his property, and it shall remain for the king's decision whether he shall have his life or not."<sup>25</sup> The difference between this offence and quarrels elsewhere was very great; for a battle in the church, and in an ealdorman's house, was punished by a fine of 120 scillinga only.

THE epithets given by the pope to the first Christian king of the Anglo-Saxons were, "the glorious," and "the most glorious." In several of their let-

<sup>24</sup> Wilk. Leg. Sax. p. 14.

<sup>25</sup> Ibid. p. 16.

**B O O K** ters, the phrase "your glory" is used as synony-  
 VIII. mous with our expression of "your majesty." The  
 same epithet of "most glorious" is applied by Aldhelm to the king of Cornwall, and, by an abbot, to the Frankish king.<sup>26</sup> But this epithet was rather the complimentary language of the day, than a phrase appropriated to royalty; for Alphuald, king of East Anglia, writing to Boniface, styles the mitred missionary, "Domino gloriosissimo." A pope, in 684, addresses the king of Northumbria as "your excellency." Boniface, to the king of Mercia, says, "We intreat the clemency of your highness." On another occasion, his superscription is more rhetorical: "To Ethelbald, king, my dearest lord, and in the love of Christ to be preferred to other kings, governing the illustrious sceptre of the empire of the Angles."<sup>27</sup> Another address of the same sort in Saxon occurs in a monk's dedication of a saint's life: "To my most loved lord above the earthly kings of all other men, Alfwold, king of the East Angles, ruling his kingdom with right and with dignity."<sup>28</sup>

THE titles which the ancient Saxon kings assumed in their charters may be briefly noticed:—"I, Æthelbald, by the divine dispensation, king of the Mercians." The powerful Offa simply writes, "Offa, king of the Mercians." Another: "Kenulph, by God's mercy, king of the Mercians." Witlaf's, Burtulph's, and Beorred's, are as unassuming. In the same spirit, Ethelwulph calls himself merely Rex West Saxonum. The style in which Edgar

<sup>26</sup> Bonif. Letters, 16 Mag. Bib. 65. 85.

<sup>27</sup> Ibid. 16 Mag. Bib.

<sup>28</sup> MS. Vita S. Guthlaci. Cott. Lib.

chose to be mentioned is usually very pompous and rhetorical. C H A P.  
III.

ALFRED's exordium to his laws is as dignified as Ina's: "I, Alfred, cyning, gathered together and have commanded to be written many of those things that our forefathers held which pleased *me*; and, many of those things that liked *me* not *I* have thrown aside, with the advice of my witan, and other things have commanded to be holden."<sup>29</sup>

THE subsequent kings, in the same manner, promulgated the laws in their own name, with the advice of their witan.

THE prerogatives and influence in society of the cyning were great. He was to be prayed for, and voluntarily honoured<sup>30</sup>; his word was to be taken without an oath<sup>31</sup>; he had the high prerogative of pardoning in certain cases<sup>32</sup>; his *mund-byrd* and his *were*, were larger than those of any other class in society<sup>33</sup>; his safety was protected by high penalties for offences committed in his presence or habitation, or against his family<sup>34</sup>; he had the lordship of the free<sup>35</sup>; he had the option to sell over sea, to kill, or to take the *were* of a freeman thief; also to sell a theow over sea, or take a penalty<sup>36</sup>; he could mitigate penalties<sup>37</sup>; and could remit them<sup>38</sup>; he had a *sele*, or tribunal, before whom thieves were brought<sup>39</sup>; he had a tribunal in London<sup>40</sup>; his tribunal was the last court of appeal<sup>41</sup>; he was the executive superintendant of

<sup>29</sup> Wilk. Leg. Sax. p. 34.

<sup>30</sup> Ibid. p. 10.

<sup>31</sup> Ibid. p. 11.

<sup>32</sup> Ibid. p. 20. 65.

<sup>33</sup> Ibid. 71, 72.

<sup>34</sup> Ibid. 22.

<sup>35</sup> Ibid. 2.

<sup>36</sup> Ibid. 12.

<sup>37</sup> Ibid. 77.

<sup>38</sup> Spelm. Conc. p. 485.

<sup>39</sup> Wilk. Leg. Sax. 8.

<sup>40</sup> Ibid. p. 10.

<sup>41</sup> Domesday, in loc.

**B O O K** the general laws, and usually received the fines at-  
**VIII.** tached to crimes.<sup>42</sup> The Jews were his property<sup>43</sup>; the high executive officers, the ealdormen, the gerefas, the thegns, and others, were liable to be displaced by him.<sup>44</sup> He convoked the councils of the witan<sup>45</sup>, and summoned the people to the army, which he commanded.

IN the Saxon book of constitutions, he is thus spoken of: "The king should be in the place of a father to his people; and, in vigilance and guardianship, a viceroy of Christ, as he is called. It belongs to him and all his family to love Christianity, and shun heathenism. He should respect and defend the church, and tranquillize and conciliate his people by right laws; and by him happiness will be increased. He loves right, and avoids what is not so."<sup>46</sup>

<sup>42</sup> Heming. Chart. 1. p. 265.

<sup>43</sup> Wilk. Leg. Sax. 203.

<sup>44</sup> Ibid. 109. 122.

<sup>45</sup> Ibid. 109.

<sup>46</sup> Wilk. Leg. p. 147. The exhortations which Alcuin gives to a king of Northumbria will show what the Anglo-Saxons expected or desired their kings to be. After reminding him that man cannot perish like an animal, but must live somewhere else for ever, and happily or miserably according to his actions here, he adds: —

"Love not unjust riches, for all injustice is avenged by God. It is the duty of a king to repress all iniquities by his power, to be just in his judgment, and prone to mercy. God will be merciful to him, according as he shows mercy to his subjects. Let him be sober in his morals, true in his words, liberal in his gifts, provident in his councils. Let him choose prudent ministers, who fear God and lead an honourable life. He must not covet another's inheritance, nor indulge in avarice, nor in rapine. Often by rapine he loses his own possessions; for the Supreme hears the groans of the oppressed.

"You have seen how the kings your predecessors have perished from their injustice, their rapines, and their profligacy. Dread their ruin. The same God surveys your actions who did

His property, on the dissolution of the octarchy, was very extensive in every part of England. Just before Alfred acceded to the crown, there were four kings reigning over the Anglo-Saxons; — the kings of Wessex, Mercia, East Anglia, and Northumbria. These four sovereignties had absorbed the other four. But when the sword of the Northmen had destroyed the dynasties of Mercia, East Anglia, and Northumbria, and when the invaders had themselves bent to the power of Alfred, then the Anglo-Saxon cyning rose into great power and property, because the royal power and property of the subdued kingdoms became the right of the ruling king. Alfred united in himself all the regal possessions in England, except those which he allowed the Danish princes to retain in Northumbria and East Anglia. The Northmen were completely subdued by Athelstan; and, when this event took place, the cyning of England became the possessor of all the prerogatives and property which the eight kings of the octarchy had enjoyed. It was this concentration of wealth and privileges, and its consequences, which exalted the cyning to

C. A. P.  
III.

---

not spare their crimes. Many desired to amass supplies by violence and iniquities, and did not foresee that by this conduct they would lose the comfort both of this world and the future. Cultivate their peace, benignity, mercy, justice, and virtue." Ep. 1538.

In another letter to him he says:—

"It does not become you on a throne to live with rustic manners. Anger should not govern you, but reason. Mercy will make you amiable, and cruelty hateful. Let truth only be heard from your mouth. Be chaste, sober, and reputable. Be free in giving, and not covetous in receiving. Let justice adorn your actions, and the form of honourable demeanour distinguish you to all who see you." P. 1554.

**B O O K** that majesty and power which, in the later periods  
**VIII.** of the Anglo-Saxon dynasty, became attached to  
 the throne.

THE royal property consisted of lands in demesne in every part of England; and though in the lapse of time he had given large possessions to his friends and followers, yet from many he reserved rents and services which were a great source of wealth and power. The places which occur with the denomination of royal towns, or royal villas, are very numerous; and among these we may notice the name of Windeshore (Windsor), which is still a regal residence.

HIS revenues were the rents and produce of his lands in demesne; customs in the sea-ports; tolls in the markets, and in the cities on sales; duties and services to be paid to him in the burghs, or to be commuted for money; wites, or penalties and forfeitures, which the law attached to certain crimes and offences; heriots from his thanes, and various payments and benefits arising to him on the circumstances stated in the laws.

HIS dignity and influence were displayed and upheld by his liberality, of which specimens will be given in another place.

BUT all the prerogatives and rights of the Anglo-Saxon cyning were definite and ascertained. They were such as had become established by law or custom, and could be as little exceeded by the sovereign, as withheld by his people. They were not arbitrary privileges of an unknown extent. Even William the Conqueror found it necessary to have an official survey of the royal rights taken in every part of the kingdom; and we find the hundred, or similar bodies, in every county, making the inquisi-

tion to the king's commissioners, who returned to the sovereign that minute record of his claims upon his subjects which constitutes the Domesday-book. The royal claims in Domesday-book were, therefore, not the arbitrary impositions of the throne, but were those which the people themselves testified to their king to have been his legal rights. Perhaps no country in Europe can exhibit such an ancient record of the freedom of its people, and the limited prerogatives of its ruler.

THE military force was under the command of the king, while it was assembled. It was rather a militia than a regular army. We have already given some notices of its nature: from a certain quantity of land, a fixed number of soldiers were sent, when the king summoned his people to an expedition, who were bound to serve under him for a certain time, apparently two months. Thus, in Berkshire, "when the king sent any where his army, one soldier went from every five hides, and for his victuals or his pay every hide gave him four shillings for two months. This money was not transmitted to the king, but to the soldiers. If any one, after he was summoned to the expedition, did not go, he forfeited to the king all his land. If any who had the right of staying at home promised to send a substitute, and the substitute did not go, the penalty was fifty shillings." In Wiltshire, "When the king went on an expedition by land or sea, he had from Wilton burgh either twenty shillings to feed his buzecarlos, or led one man with him for the honour of five hides." A curious instance of tenure on military service occurs in Heming's Chartularium. The prior of a monastery gave a villa to a miles for life, on condition of his serving

**B O O K** for the monastery for it, in the expeditions by sea and land which then frequently took place.

VIII.

By the laws persons were forbidden to join the fyrd, or expedition, without the king's leave. To depart from it without permission, when the king commanded, was still more severely punished. The loss of life, and the forfeiture of all the offender's property, was the consequence.

THE scip fyrd, or naval expedition, was ordered to be always so accelerated as to be ready every year soon after Easter.

It was enacted, that whoever destroyed or injured the people's fyrd scyp should carefully compensate it, and to the king the mund.<sup>47</sup>

So early as in the time of Ina, it was provided, that if a sith-cund man, having land, neglected the fyrd, he should pay one hundred and twenty shillings, and forfeit his land. If he had no land, he was to pay sixty shillings. A ceorl paid thirty shillings as a fyrd-wite.<sup>48</sup>

IN this obligation of military service attached to lands, we see the leading principle of the feudal system. Its next principle was that of doing homage to the superior from whom they were held. Did the Anglo-Saxons perform the act of homage? I have met with one passage which implies it. The head of a monastery, finding he could not prevail against an opposing bishop, sought Wulstan as a protector, and did homage to him.<sup>49</sup>

<sup>47</sup> Wilk. Leg. Sax. 122.

<sup>48</sup> Ibid. 23.

<sup>49</sup> Petiit Wulstanum fecit que sibi homagium. 3 Gale Script. 482.

## CHAP. IV.

*The Witena-Gemot, or ANGLO-SAXON Parliament, and of whom composed.*

THE gemot of the witan was the great council of the Anglo-Saxon nation ; their parliament, or legislative and supreme judicial assembly. As the highest judicial court of the kingdom, it resembled our present House of Lords. And in those periods, when the peers of the realm represented territorial property rather than hereditary dignities, the comparison between the Saxon witena-gemot and the upper house of our modern parliament might have been more correctly made in their legislative capacity. As the German states are recorded by Tacitus to have had national councils<sup>1</sup>, so the continental Saxons are also stated to have possessed them.<sup>2</sup>

C H A P.  
IV.

If we had no other evidence of the political wisdom of our Gothic or Teutonic ancestors than their institution of the witena-gemots, or national parliaments, this happy and wise invention would be sufficient to entitle them to our veneration and gratitude. For they have not only given to government a form, energy, and direction more promotive of the happiness of mankind than any other species of it has exhibited, but they are the most admirable provision for adapting its exercise and continuance to all the new circumstances ever arising of society, and for suiting and favouring its continual progress.

<sup>1</sup> Tacitus de Morib. Germ.

<sup>2</sup> Fabricius Hist. Sax. 64. 69. Chronographus Saxo. p. 115.

BOOK  
VIII.

OF these assemblies, originating amid the woods and migrations of the Teutonic tribes, one important use has been, to remove from the nation that has possessed and preserved them, the reproach, the bondage, and the misery of an immutable legislation. The Medes and Persians made it their right that their laws should never be changed; not even to be improved. This truly barbaric conception, a favourite dogma also with the kingly priests, or priestly kings of the Nile, and even at Lacedemon, could only operate to curtail society of its fair growth, and to bind all future ages to be as imperfect as the past. It may produce such a political and intellectual monstrosity as Egypt long exhibited, and force a nation to remain a piece of mechanism of by-gone absurdity. But internal degradation and discomfort, external weakness, and national inferiority and decay, are the certain accompaniments of a polity so violent and unnatural.

INSTEAD of thus making the times of ignorance, national infancy, and incipient experience the standard and the laws of a country's future manhood, the Anglo-Saxon witenagemot or parliament was a wise and parental law-giver; not bound in the chains of an obsolete antiquity, but always presiding with a nurturing care; always living, feeling, and acting with the population and circumstances of the day, and providing such regulations, either by alterations of former laws, or by the additions of new ones, as the vicissitudes, novelties, wants, improvement, sentiment, situation, and interest of its co-existing society, in its various classes, were found to be continually needing: sometimes legislating for the benefit of the rich, or the great, or the clergy, or

the commercial, or the agriculturist ; sometimes for the middling and lower orders ; and sometimes collectively for all. Open to petitions, stating the grievances from which certain classes or individuals occasionally suffer, and acquiring thus a knowledge of the wants and feelings of society, which no vigilance of its own or of government could by other means obtain : ready to enact new laws, as manifest evils suggest and reasoning wisdom patronises, an English parliament, with all its imperfections, many perhaps inevitable, is, — I speak with reverence, and only use the expression from the want of another as meaning, — the nearest human imitation of a superintending Providence which our necessities or our sagacity have yet produced or devised. The right of petitioning brings before it all the evils, real or imaginary, that affect the population which it guards ; and the popular part being new-chosen at reasonable intervals, from the most educated orders of society, is perpetually renewed with its best talents ; and, what is not less valuable, its living and contemporaneous feelings, fears, hopes, and tendencies. No despotic government, however pure and wise, can have these advantages. It cannot so effectually know what its subjects want. It cannot so well judge what they ought to obtain. It cannot so completely harmonise with the sympathies and flowing mind of the day, because its majesty precludes the acquisition of such identity as a septennial or hexennial election infuses. Whether new members are chosen, or old ones are re-elected, in both cases the election bespeaks their affinity with the hearts and understandings that surround them, and provides this security for a kind, vigilant, and improved legislation

**B O O K** more effectually than any other system has yet im-  
**VIII.** parted. Our Anglo-Saxon ancestors had all these advantages, though the peculiar state of their society prevented them from having that full benefit of such a noble institution as we now enjoy. But they were petitioned, and they legislated ; and the dom-boc, or laws, of every Anglo-Saxon reign that has survived to us contains some improvements on the preceding. Some of their members were also most probably chosen like our own august parliament. The noble tree was then planted and growing, and had begun to produce fruit ; though it had not obtained the majestic strength and dilation, and the beauty and fertility of that which now overshadows, protects, and distinguishes the British islands and their dependencies.

BUT this excellence our Anglo-Saxon parliaments certainly possessed, that they contained the collected feelings and mind of all the classes of the nation, except of the enslaved. The king was always an integral part of their constitution. He summoned, he addressed them ; his concurrence was always necessary to their legislation, and he was the organ of its execution. The noble proprietors of land, and of the dignities annexed to it or flowing from it, were also essential members, and sometimes the most powerful. The gentry or thegns, knights, and the official dignities were there, and the chiefs of the clergy who had landed property. The bishops and abbots were always a constituent part, after Christianity was introduced ; and if that unhappy portion of the people, which consisted of the slaves of all these orders, had no actual representatives, yet the many provisions for their benefit in the laws show that they possessed

humane friends in it, attentive to their interests, and compassionating their degradation: these were probably the king and the clergy. It was the interest of royalty, and congenial with the courteous feelings which have usually accompanied our kings, to increase the number of the free; because every freed slave gave the crown a new partisan, and thus lessened those of a fierce, haughty, and dangerous nobility. It was the duty and the benevolent wish of the religious, and also their interest, to pursue the same policy, and, in the mean time, to mitigate the evils of thralldom. Thus the feelings, the interests, and the reason of all classes of the Anglo-Saxon society appeared in their witenagemot; and whoever studies the successive provisions of their legislation which have come down to us, will perceive that the state of every class was progressively meliorated by new laws as new circumstances required them; and, even as far as we can discern their operation, almost every law seems to have been an improvement. Nothing more tended to insure this effect, than the right and practice of the subject to petition his legislature; for this, in practical tendency, makes every man, who has any grievance to complain of, a kind of party to its councils, as it enables him to lay his complaint before it, as completely as if he were a member of its body. Thus as our present parliament, in its sovereign, its nobles, and its popular representatives, and in the petitions which it receives, concentrates all the feelings and mind of the nation: so did the Anglo-Saxon witenagemot; for there is good reason to believe, that the cities and burghs sent their members into its body; and if these were not at first commercial, from the poverty

BOOK  
VIII.

and low estate of the earliest Anglo-Saxon tradesmen, they were likely to be of this description, when commerce had increased into the power of giving wealth, and that wealth, of creating for the merchant an effective rank not less important in the society whom he benefited, than the born nobility, which the great so highly valued. It is to the credit of the Anglo-Saxons, that no other European branch of the Teutonic population preserved so free and so effective a witena-gemot as they did. The legislatures which continued to exist of this sort in other countries gradually dwindled into non-existence, while the English parliament has flourished like the English nation, an example and an instrument of a national prosperity and power, exceeded by no preceding state, and equalled, if at all, by very few. To Fra Paolo's exclamation, of "Esto perpetua," the tendencies of the present age allow us to add the hope that, sooner or later, "Sit universa."

WHERE the cyning was only the temporary commander of the nation, for the purposes of war, whose function ceased when peace returned, the witena-gemot must have been the supreme authority of the nation. But when the cyning became an established and permanent dignity, whose privileges and power were perpetually increasing till he attained the majestic prerogatives and widely-diffused property which Athelstan and Edgar enjoyed, the witena-gemot then assumed a secondary rank in the state. We will endeavour to delineate its nature and powers with fidelity, adopting no theory, but carefully following the lights which the Saxon documents afford to us.

The topics of our inquiry will be these :

What its members were styled.

Of whom it was composed.

By whom convened.

The times of its meetings.

The place.

Its business.

Its power.

THE gemot and its members have various appellations in the writings of our ancestors. In their vernacular tongue they have been styled, the witen-gemot; the Engla ræd gifan (council-givers); the witan; the Eadigra geheahtendlic ymcyne (the illustrious assembly of the wealthy); the Eadigan (the wealthy); the mycel synoth (great synod).<sup>3</sup>

IN the Latin phrases applied to them by our forefathers they have been called optimates; principes; primates; procures; concionatores Angliæ, and such like.<sup>4</sup>

THE kings, who allude to them in their grants, call them, My witan; meorum sapientum archontum; heroicorum virorum; conciliatorum meorum; meorum omnium episcoporum et principum optimatum meorum; optimatibus<sup>5</sup> nostris. All these are various phrases to express the same thing. With reference to their presumed wisdom, they were called witan; with reference to their rank and property, or nomination, they were styled

<sup>3</sup> Sax. Chron. 154. MS. Claud. A. 3. Sax. Chron. 148. Alfred's Will. Wilkins, 76. 102. Ibid. p. 10. p. 72., &c.

<sup>4</sup> Ethelward, 847. Hem. Chart. p. 15. 17. 23. MS. Claud. MS. Cleop. 3 Gale, 484, 485, &c.

<sup>5</sup> Heming. Chart. 2. 41. 57. MS. Claud. C. 9. 103. 112, 113. &c.

§ O O K eadigan, optimates, principes, proceres, &c. Other  
 VIII. names will appear in some of the subsequent quotations.

ON the question, who were the members of the witenagemot, some certain information can be given, and some probable inferences may be made. That the bishops, abbots, eorles, ealdormen, and those who bore the title which was latinised into dux, princeps, &c., were parts of the great national council, is indisputable, from the language of the laws and the numerous charters which they signed. It is as manifest, that others besides these higher nobles also attended it; and that these were thegns or ministri, milites, and several who are mentioned in the charters without any designation of legal rank. Thus far the Anglo-Saxon documents give certain information. The only questionable points are, whether these thegns, milites, and others, attended like our ancient and present barons, as a matter of personal right from their rank, when summoned by the king, and with a legal claim to be so summoned; or whether they were elected representatives of any and what part of the nation, inferior in rank to the summoned nobility. After many years' consideration of the question, I am inclined to believe, that the Anglo-Saxon witenagemot very much resembled our present parliament, in the orders and persons that composed it; and that the members, who attended as representatives, were chosen by classes analogous to those who now possess the elective franchise.

WE have an expressive outline of the general construction of all the German national councils, in these words of Tacitus: "On the minor affairs

the chiefs consult ; on the greater, ALL. Yet so, CHAP.  
IV.  
 that those things, of which the decision rests with the people, are treated of among the chiefs.”<sup>6</sup>  
 This passage shows that, by the general principle of the most ancient German gemots, the people made an essential part of the assembly. Both chiefs and people deliberated, and the people decided. This being the primeval principle of the national councils of ancient Germany, before the Angles and Saxons left it, it becomes incumbent on the historical antiquary to show, not when the people acceded to the witena-gemots, but when, if ever, they were divested of the right of attending them. Of such a divestment there is no trace either in our historical or legal records.

THE popular part of our representation seems to have been immemorial. There is no document that marks its commencement. And if the probabilities of the case had been duly considered, it would have been allowed to be unlikely, that the sovereigns and the aristocracy of the nation would have united to diminish their own legislative power, by calling representatives from the people to share it. Neither kings nor nobles could alone confer this power ; and it would have been a voluntary and unparalleled abandonment of their own exclusive prerogatives and privileges, that they should have combined to impart it to others, if these had not possessed an ancient indefeasible right of enjoying it. But, in considering the Anglo-Saxon people that were represented at the gemot, we must not confound them with our present population. Those

<sup>6</sup> Tacitus Germ. s. 11.

**B O O K** **VIII.** classes only who now elect members would then have been allowed to elect them ; and the numbers of the individuals composing these classes were very much smaller indeed than their present amount. The great bulk of the Anglo-Saxon population was in a servile state, and therefore without any constitutional rights. All the villani, servi, bordarii, coscetæ, cotarii and coliberti, esnes and theows ; that is, all the working agricultural population, and most of those who occupied the station of our present small farmers ; and in the burghs and cities, all those who were what is called the men, or low vassals of other persons, analogous to our inferior artisans and mechanics and small tradesmen, were the property of their respective lords, and with no more political rights than the cattle and furniture, with which we find them repeatedly classed and transferred. Two-thirds, at least, more probably three-fourths, of the Anglo-Saxon population were originally in this state, till voluntary or purchased emancipations, and the effects of war and invasion, gradually increased the numbers of the free. Domesday-book shows, that even in the reign of the Confessor, the largest part of the English population was in the servile state.

THE constitutional principle as to the servile population of the country seems to have been, that it was represented by its masters in the national council, like the rest of their property.

HENCE it was only to the freemen of the counties, or, as we now call them, freeholders ; and to the free inhabitants of the burghs or boroughs, and cities, whom we now call burgesses and citizens, that any legislative representation can have applied

in the Anglo-Saxon times. The freeholders appear to have multiplied from the Northmen invasions; for greater numbers of them are enumerated in Domesday-book, in the counties which the Danish population principally colonised than in the others.<sup>7</sup> These desolating wars destroyed so many nobles and their families, that many of the servile must have often become liberated from no lords or thegns surviving to claim them; and corresponding with this idea, there are many passages in our laws which are directed against those who wander over the country without having a visible owner. All such, as well as every fugitive who could escape pursuit, became in time freemen in the burghs or towns where they ultimately settled; yet these would not become electors in those places where none were allowed to be burgesses, who were not formally admitted to be such. They could only acquire a share in the elective franchise in those parts where mere house-holding was sufficient to constitute an elector; and as this large privilege was in after-times possessed in very few places, there is no reason to believe, that it was more extensively enjoyed in the Anglo-Saxon burghs.

If the freeholders of the Anglo-Saxon counties were not represented in their witena-gemot, at what other time did this most important privilege originate? That it should have begun after the Norman conquest is incredible. If the legislative council of the nation had been from immemorial custom confined to the king and nobles, their sturdy maintenance of all their exclusive rights and advantages, is evidence that they would not have willingly cur-

<sup>7</sup> See Domesday-book in Essex, Norfolk, &c.

**B O O K** VIII. } tailed their power by so great an innovation. The pride of nobility would not have admitted unnoble freeholders to have shared in the most honourable of its privileges; and least of all would the fierce and powerful Norman lords have placed the Anglo-Saxon freemen, whom they had conquered, and with whom they were long in jealous enmity and proud hatred, in the possession of such a right. But the total absence of any document or date, of the origin of the election of representatives by the freeholders of counties, is the strongest proof we can have that the custom has been immemorial, and long preceded the Norman conquest. The facts that such representatives have been always called knights of the shire, and that milites, or an order like those afterwards termed knights, were a part of the witena-gemot, befriend this deduction. Milites or knights were not the nobles of the country, though noblemen courted the military honour of the Anglo-Saxon knighthood. So many charters of the witena-gemots exist, signed by knights or milites, that either milites had a right as such to be a part of the council, or they were sent there as the representatives of their counties. The first supposition is supported by no law or practice, and is improbable from the number of milites in the country. The latter has been the ancient custom, without any known origin or limitary date.

To the citizens and burgesses of parliament analogous remarks are equally applicable. We may find no existing writ ordering their election earlier than the 23d year of Edward I.<sup>8</sup>; but the loss of the

<sup>8</sup> Brady gives this writ of summons, Hist. Treat. Boroughs, p. 54.

preceding records is no proof of their non-existence, and ought never to have been confounded with it. All the writs of summons of the Anglo-Saxon nobles to the witena-gemot have been lost; yet, who would infer from their non-appearance that the nobles were not summoned to the gemot, and had no right to be there. The earliest summons of the peers to parliament is usually, but erroneously, said to be that of the 49 Hen. III.; but is this a proof that they were not in parliament before?<sup>9</sup> There is nothing in the earliest writ which has survived that marks such writ to have been the commencement of the custom. The truth seems to be, that this privilege has been, like the county representation, immemorial. Authentic history can assign to it no limit.

It is in this way that the privilege is mentioned by our most venerable writers. When our ancient Littleton mentions burghs, he describes them as the most ancient towns of England, and as possessed of this privilege of representation, without any remark that this great right was a novelty, or at that time of modern origin. His words are: "The ancient towns called burghs are the most ancient cities that are in England; for those towns that are called cities were burghs in ancient times, and were called burghs. For of such ancient cities,

<sup>9</sup> The error on this subject shows the absurdity of dating the origin of any part of the parliamentary representation from the first writ that has happened to survive. Dugdale, and from him Hume, and a stream of writers on this subject, state the summons of the peers of the 49 Hen. III. as the most ancient that exists; and yet Selden had noticed one twenty-three years earlier. There is one to the archbishop of York, 26 Henry III. It is Dors. Claus. 26 Henry III. Mem. 13.

B O O K  
VIII.

called burghs, come the burgesses to parliament, when the king has summoned his parliament." It appears to me that our venerable judge, when he wrote this passage, considered the custom of sending burgesses as ancient as the burghs themselves.<sup>10</sup>

THE ancient words of the writ to the sheriffs, cited by Lord Coke, correspond with the preceding view of the subject. They do not order him to return burgesses from this or that particular burgh, to which the king or parliament had at some late period granted a right; but they direct him to send from every burgh in his county two burgesses<sup>11</sup>; *every* burgh, as if it had been the common public right of all burghs, and not a special privilege granted to any in particular. The language of the oldest writ yet found, 23 Ed. I., is precisely the same.<sup>12</sup>

IN the same manner our ancient lawyer Bracton speaks generally of the English laws, as having been made by the three estates of king, lords, and commons. It must be observed that he is not here speaking of new laws, but of the ancient law of the kingdom. "It will not be absurd to call the English laws by the name of laws, although not written, since whatever shall have been justly defined and approved by the council and consent of the magnates, and the common assent of the republic, the authority of the king or prince preceding has the vigour of law."<sup>13</sup> Here our unwritten common law is derived from the concurring

<sup>10</sup> Littleton, Ten. lib. ii. s. 164.

<sup>11</sup> Coke on Littl. p. 109.

<sup>12</sup> "De *qualibet* civitate ejusdem comitatus, duos cives et de quolibet burgo, duos burgenses." Brady, p. 54.

<sup>13</sup> Bracton, c. i. p. 1.

authority of the king, the great, and the common assent of the republic. This third branch of authority is evidently that which arose from the popular representation. C H A P.  
IV.

INA, in his introduction to his laws, mentions distinctly the three orders of the nation as assisting and concurring in their formation.—“ My bishops and all my ealdormen, and the eldest *witan of my people*, and a great collection of God’s servants.”<sup>14</sup> Here the nobles, *the people*, and the clergy are distinctly recognised.

THAT in addition to the clergy and greater nobles, there were other members of the *witena-gemot*; that thegns or ministri<sup>15</sup>, and milites, or a rank in the community called afterwards knights, were among these other members; and that there were other persons there, who were neither clergy, nobles, knights, thegns nor ministri, and who being mentioned without designation, in an age when all were so tenacious of their rank, may be reasonably considered to have been of an inferior order, are facts proved by the expressions used in many Anglo-Saxon charters, and by the signatures to them.

A charter of Ethalbeld, in 736, is signed by the king, two bishops, two comites, a dux, an abbas, and by *six persons without any note of their quality*.<sup>16</sup>

A charter of Ethelred, expressed to be made “ with the consent and licence of my optimates and other *fideles*,” is signed

<sup>14</sup> Wilk. Leg. Sax. p. 14.

<sup>15</sup> The Saxon word used to express minister is thegn. In Henry the First’s time thegn is mentioned as if analogous to baron. For a legal offence the fine of a comes was ten mancæ: thanii vel barones quinque. Wilk. Leg. 250.

<sup>16</sup> MSS. Cott. Aug. A. 2.

B O O K  
VIII.

by the king, two archbishops, six bishops, four duces, six abbots, ten ministri, and *by two without any title*.<sup>17</sup>

A charter of Ethelwulph is signed by the king, archbishop, two duces, and by twenty-three *without a title*. It is indorsed by two abbots, seven presbyters, six deacons, and *by three without a title*.<sup>18</sup>

A charter of Sigered, expressed to be made "with the advice and consent of my principes," is signed by the king, archbishop, two abbots, one presbyter, one comes, and *by four without a title*.<sup>19</sup>

A charter of Ceolwulf is signed by the king, archbishop, two bishops, a subregulus, ten duces, three abbots, two presbyters, and *by five without a title*.<sup>20</sup>

A charter of Offa is signed by the king, queen, one archbishop, three bishops, five abbots, two principes, one dux, one prefect, and *by eight without a title*.<sup>21</sup> Another of Offa's *has two without a title*.<sup>22</sup>

A charter of Cenwulf, made "with the advice and consent of my optimates," is signed by king, queen, archbishop, four bishops, five duces, and *by one without a title*.<sup>23</sup>

A charter of Berhtwulf, mentioned to be made before the king and proceres, and that the optimates adjudged, and that the king before his archontes did it, is signed by the king, queen, four bishops, one abbot, eight duces, and *by six without a title*.<sup>24</sup>

A charter of Edward, the son of Alfred, made "with the testimony of the bishops, and princes, and *some senators subject to them*," is signed by the king, the ruler of Mercia and his lady, three bishops, two duces, two ministri, and *by one without a title*.<sup>25</sup>

A charter of Burghred, made "with the advice and licence of all my proceres," is signed by the king, queen, four bishops, ten duces, and *by ten without a title*.<sup>26</sup>

A charter of Edward, in 908, is signed by the king, arch-

<sup>17</sup> MSS. Cott. Aug. A. 2.

<sup>18</sup> Ibid.

<sup>19</sup> Dugdale, Mon. Ang. p. 29.

<sup>20</sup> MSS. Aug. A. 2.

<sup>21</sup> Ibid.

<sup>22</sup> Heming. Chart. p. 18.

<sup>23</sup> Ibid. p. 23.

<sup>24</sup> Heming. Chart. p. 28. Another of Berhtwulf is signed by seven without a title, p. 224.

<sup>25</sup> Ibid. p. 65.

<sup>26</sup> Ibid. p. 87.

bishop, four bishops, king's brother and two sons, five duces, four presbyters, eighteen ministri, and *by three without a title.*<sup>27</sup> C H A P.  
IV.

A charter of Edward the Confessor to the Abbey of Westminster, is signed by the king, queen, two archbishops, eight bishops, seven abbots, the chancellor, four duces, six ministri, and *by four without a title.*<sup>28</sup>

A charter of Edgar is signed by the king, two archbishops, three bishops, three abbots, four duces, four ministri, and *by fifteen others without a title.*<sup>29</sup>

A charter of Cnut is signed by the king, queen, two archbishops, six bishops, seven duces, seven milites, seven abbots, and *by five without a title*<sup>30</sup>; and this is expressed to be made with the advice and decree of the archbishops, bishops, abbots, earls, and *of my other fidelium.*<sup>31</sup>

A charter of Edgar in 973, besides the king, two archbishops, three bishops, three abbots, four duces, and four disc-thengs, *has twenty-one without a title among the according persons.*<sup>32</sup>

In a charter of Edward the Confessor, the consenting persons are the king, two archbishops, three bishops, the chancellor, a notary, five abbots, four duces, a chamberlain, a stallere, and *two without a title.*<sup>33</sup>

FROM these instances it is manifest that there were members of the witenagemot who were distinguished by no rank or title of honour, like the duces, earls, thegns, or ministri, and milites, and

<sup>27</sup> Dugd. Mon. p. 37.

<sup>28</sup> Ibid. p. 62.

<sup>29</sup> Ibid. p. 66.

<sup>30</sup> MSS. Aug. A. 2.

<sup>31</sup> Dugd. Mon. p. 288.

<sup>32</sup> Ibid. p. 244. "His testibus concordantibus."

<sup>33</sup> Dugd. Mon. p. 238. In a charter granted by Wihfred, it is stated that it was confirmed in 716, in the synod held at Cloveshoe, by the authority of those whose names follow. It is signed by the archbishop, thirteen bishops, ten presbyters, one deacon, two abbots, two prepositi, one earl, and twenty others who have no titles. Astle's Charters, MSS. No. 2. In 1018 is a charter of Cnut signed by prelates and duces, and also by a prepositus, two ministri, and by four others with no quality annexed. Ast. Ch. MSS. No. 31.

**B O O K**  
**VIII.**

who had no other dignity than that of being part of the gemot, and therefore signed the charters without any designation of peculiar quality. These untitled persons suit the situation of those who were sent by the cities and burghs. Such would be but plain citizens and burgesses, who had no rank in the state by which they could be designated.

THAT thegns, or ministri, and milites were always members of the witenagemot, will be sufficiently manifested by the following instances, as well as by some of those already adduced. It will be hereafter shown, in considering the dignity of thegns, or thanes, that the superior thegns, also called king's thegns, had under them inferior thegns, who were named medeme, or middling thegns. As Domesday-book mentions thanes holding land, with their milites under them, who were also landed-proprietors, we may presume that the Saxon term of the middling thanes, was first used to mark those who are in Domesday called their milites, especially as Alfred translated the milites of Bede by the word thegn. But the term cniht was also coming into use before the Conquest for the same class; and afterwards the word knights was their established English denomination, as milites was the Latin one. That the Saxons had a dignity and class of persons analogous to the Norman knight has been already proved: one authority will be hereafter noticed which applies the word drenc to this celebrated class of our population.

It has been already intimated that Saxon superior thegns were classed as the Norman barons, and it is probable that the secondary or middling thegns were similar to the Norman knights. But although

milites were in the Anglo-Saxon witenagemot, as well as thegns, yet, as all the milites, or secondary thegns, were too numerous to be there, the inference seems indisputable that those who were present did not come from any personal right of being members, but were sent as the elected representatives of others, either of their own class, or of all the freeholders in the county whom they preceded in rank. C H A P.  
IV.

THE following examples will add more information on these subjects : —

A charter of Ceolulf, in 803, is signed by the king, archbishop, two bishops, three duces, one presbyter, and *by thirteen milites*.<sup>34</sup>

One of Ethelstan has the names of the king, archbishop, eight bishops, four duces, and *twenty marked mis and mi*, which may either mean miles or minister.<sup>35</sup>

One of Cnut stated to be "with these witnesses consenting," and "under the testimony of the optimates," is signed by the king, queen, two archbishops, nine bishops, four duces, eight abbots, and *four milites*.<sup>36</sup>

One of Ethelstan has the king, archbishop, five bishops, three duces, and seven ministri.<sup>37</sup>

Eadwig's charters exhibit to us, in one, the king, his brother, archbishop, two bishops, five duces, and eight ministri; in the other, besides the clergy, six duces and six persons marked m.<sup>38</sup>

Besides one of Edgar's, signed *by sixteen m*, and another *by twenty-six mis*<sup>39</sup>, there is another, expressed to be "confirmed at London by the common council of his optimates," which is signed *by four ministri*.<sup>40</sup>

In 958, a charter of Edgar's, made "with the advice of my optimates," adds, "these witnesses consenting, whose names follow according to the dignity of each." The names are, the

<sup>34</sup> MSS. Aug. A. 2.

<sup>35</sup> Ibid.

<sup>36</sup> Ibid.

<sup>37</sup> Ibid.

<sup>38</sup> Ibid.

<sup>39</sup> Ibid.

<sup>40</sup> Dug. Mon. 17. One of the persons, among the kings that sign, is Mascusius Archipirata. This was a sea-king. Another has twelve ministri, p. 141.

B O O K  
VIII.

king's, two archbishops, six bishops, the king's avia, a former queen, three abbots, seven dukes, and *sixty ministri*.<sup>41</sup>

A charter of Wulfere, in 664, made "with the accompanying kings, fathers, and dukes, is signed by the king, by three other kings of the octarchy, his brother, and two sisters, archbishop, four bishops, two presbyters, one abbot, three principes, and *five ministri*;" and it is added, "*by the rest of the optimates and ministri of the king.*"<sup>42</sup>

Edmund's charter, in 942, is signed by eleven milites<sup>43</sup>; another in 941, by fourteen ministri.<sup>44</sup> So one of Edred's has nine ministri<sup>45</sup>; another, marked as with the consent "*heroicorum virorum*," has also nine ministri.<sup>46</sup> One of Ethelstan's is signed by eleven ministri.<sup>47</sup> One of Cnut, "with the advice of twenty ministri, among others."<sup>48</sup>

Of Ethelred's charters, one contains fifteen ministri among the concurring persons<sup>49</sup>; another is made with the advice of forty-three ministri, among others<sup>50</sup>; another, in 1006, among the "*sapientes*," or *wise men*, places *twenty-one ministri*<sup>51</sup>; and also ten ministri in 1001.<sup>52</sup>

ON so important a subject it may be proper to adduce a few more examples:—

A charter of Edgar, in 970, gives strong evidence on this subject: it is signed by the king, two archbishops, eleven bishops, the queen, eleven abbots, nine dukes, and twenty-six milites, or knights; and there are added these words, "With many others of all the dignities and primates of my kingdom."<sup>53</sup>

IT is obvious from this document that the witenagemot consisted not only of the prelates, abbots,

<sup>41</sup> Dug. Mon. p. 103.      <sup>42</sup> Ibid. p. 66.      <sup>43</sup> Ibid. 287.

<sup>44</sup> Ibid. 214. So another in 940. has twenty-three ministri. Aug. A. 2.

<sup>45</sup> Aug. A. 2.

<sup>46</sup> Dugd. Mon. 215.

<sup>47</sup> Hem. Chart. p. 12.

<sup>48</sup> Dugd. 276. Another of his is signed by twenty-six ministri, *ibid.* p. 229.

<sup>49</sup> Dugd. 258.

<sup>50</sup> Ibid. 261.

<sup>51</sup> Ibid. 270.

<sup>52</sup> Ibid. 217. So fifteen ministri sign another, p. 218.

<sup>53</sup> Compare the charters in Dugdale, p. 211., with those in p. 141. and 103.

and nobles, but of knights and many others, who are called dignitates et primates.<sup>54</sup>

C H A P.  
IV.

Another charter of Edgar is signed by the king, one archbishop, twelve bishops, twelve abbots, six dukes, and twenty-eight milites, or knights.<sup>55</sup>

One of Cnut is signed by the king, queen, two archbishops, eleven bishops, eight abbots, three earls, five milites, and five others called satraps.

THAT this was part of the witenagemot is manifest, because one of the Comites expresses, in addition to his signature, that it was the decretum sapientum, the decree of the wise men.<sup>57</sup>

THE Saxon Chronicle obviously alludes to the members and assembly of the witenagemot when he mentions that William the Conqueror wore his crown every year, in Easter, at Winchester; on Whitsuntide, at Westminster; and in mid-winter at Gloucester; and then were with him all the rice men over all England; archbishops, bishops, abbots, and earls, thegns, and cnihtas.<sup>58</sup> It is not at all probable that thegns and knights would have been part of the Conqueror's parliament if they had not been constituent parts of the national council before his invasion.

THAT the thegn, or minister, was also sometimes a miles, I infer from observing that one of Edgar's charters is signed by eight with the designation of miles, some of whose names I recognise in other charters of the same king, where they are denoted as ministri.<sup>59</sup> That thegn is sometimes translated minister, many charters and Saxon documents

<sup>54</sup> Gale's Script. vol. iii. p. 517.

<sup>55</sup> Ibid. p. 520.

<sup>57</sup> Ibid. p. 523.

<sup>58</sup> Sax. Chron. p. 190.

<sup>59</sup> Compare the charters in Dugdale Mon. p. 211. with those in p. 141. and 103.

B O O K show<sup>60</sup>; but there is one that has come down to us  
 VIII. which actually distinguishes the ministri from the  
 nobiles: it is signed by the king, the archbishop,  
 four bishops, six duces, one abbot, *three nobiles*,  
 and *nine ministri*.<sup>61</sup>

THAT the witena-gemot contained some who had lands, and some who had none, and therefore did not sit in that assembly by virtue of their baronies, or landed property, may be justly inferred from an important charter of Kenulf, king of Mercia, in the year 811. —

It states that the king called to the consecration of the church, “the whole of the optimates of Mercia; the bishops, princes, earls, *procuratores*, and my relations, the kings of Kent and Essex, with all who were present, witnesses, in our synodical councils.” The king adds, “With all the optimates of Mercia IN THREE SYNODS, with unanimous advice, I gladly gave my gifts to all the archontes of Mercia, and of the other provinces, in gold, in silver, and in all my utensils, and in chosen steeds; that is, to each according to the dignity of his degree; and on all who had not lands I bestowed a pound in the purest silver, and in the purest gold; and to every presbyter one marc; and to every servant of God one shilling; and these gifts are not to be numbered, as it became our royal dignity.”<sup>62</sup>

---

<sup>60</sup> And so Alfred translates the Latin of Bede.

<sup>61</sup> Dugd. Mon. 230.

<sup>62</sup> Ibid. 189. It is signed by only the king, the two other kings, archbishop, twelve bishops, and eleven duces, which shows that only a part of the witena-gemot signed this charter. Some of the Saxon charters have been supposed to be forged just after the Conquest. The observation has been made much too indiscriminately. But though the monks may have sometimes pretended to more grants of land, and of exemptions than they were intitled to, their own interest would lead them to be correct in their forms and phrases of the documents they adduced. In the above citations I have endeavoured to avoid all that seemed doubtful, but we cannot believe that the monks would expose themselves to immediate detection by introducing into the witena-gemot those classes who were never there.

THIS important charter not only proves that some of the members of the witena-gemot had no lands, but it seems to intimate that they met in three chambers. The expression "in three synods," coupled with "the unanimous advice," leads the mind to ask whether it does not refer to the three orders of clergy, nobles, and commons meeting in separate synods, rather than to three successive meetings of the same synod. The practice from the time that the meetings of parliament become distinctly visible to us has been such separate meetings, with the custom of all uniting together when the king was present. The natural force of the words "three synods" is to express three distinct councils, not three sittings of the same council.

THERE is a charter, dated 970, in Ingulf, which, besides the clergy, duces, and ministers, has fourteen signatures without any designation.<sup>63</sup>

IN one a person signs himself as both sacerdos and minister, as if the minister was a qualification distinct from, and additional to, that of priest.

IN 833, the king says he makes his charter before the bishops, and greater proceres of all England, as if the proceres had been in two divisions — the majores and the minores.<sup>64</sup>

THE same distinction is expressly mentioned in 851. The optimates of the universi concilii, of the whole council, are noticed; and Ingulf says, "In this council, many, tam majores quam minores, became afflicted with an epidemical disease."<sup>65</sup>

---

Therefore even surreptitious charters would throw light on this subject. — *Procuratores*, or attorneys, imply representation.

<sup>63</sup> Ingulf, Hist. p. 117.

<sup>64</sup> Ibid. p. 10.

<sup>65</sup> Ibid. p. 16. In the same sense Eadmer mentions "*totam regni nobilitatem, populumque minorem*." p. 58.

BOOK  
VIII.

THIS distinction of the greater from the less barons, or proceres, in the Anglo-Saxon times, shows that there were two classes of them in the national council before the Conquest. That the majores, or greater barons, answered to our present House of Peers, and were, like them, called individually to parliament by the king's writ of summons, and that the others were to be sent like our Commons, we may safely infer from the provisions of Magna Charta: "We will cause to be summoned the archbishops, bishops, abbots, earls, and greater barons, majores barones, separately, by our letters: and besides, we will cause to be summoned, in general, by our sheriffs and bailiffs, all those who hold of us in capite at a certain day, at the end of forty days at least, at a certain place," &c.<sup>66</sup> The provisions of Magna Charta were not claimed as innovations, but as the ancient rights and privileges of the nation.

THE same distinction of the inferior barons from the superior chamber of them, is expressively mentioned in the life of Becket, by his contemporary secretary.

AFTER stating that the king appointed a general council, or parliament, to meet at Northampton, he says, "On the second day the bishops, earls, and *all* the barons were sitting."<sup>67</sup> In the discussion the bishops said, "We sit here not as bishops, but as barons: you are barons and we are barons, your <sup>68</sup> peers." He afterwards adds, "The king exacted from the earls and barons their judgment of the archbishop." Then follows this important passage: "Some sheriffs and barons of the second

<sup>66</sup> Statutes of the Realm, p. 10.

<sup>67</sup> W. Stephan. p. 35.

<sup>68</sup> Ibid. p. 37.

dignity are called in, antient in days, that they may be added to them, and be present at the judgment." <sup>66</sup> C H A P.  
IV.

THESE last quotations prove that there were barons of the second dignity distinct from the greater, not only in John but in Henry the Second's times; and by comparing them with the expressions of Ingulf, it is obvious that the same distinction prevailed in the Saxon times. The passage from Stephanides also implies that, until called in, the minor barons were not sitting with the peers.

THE expressions of the writers immediately after the Conquest, in describing the national council, show that it consisted of other classes besides the nobles and clergy, because it is not likely that the three first Norman sovereigns would have introduced, as there is no evidence that they did introduce, a more popular representation. Thus of Henry the First it is said, by Peter of Blois, "Having appointed a most distinguished council at London, as well of the bishops and abbots of all the clergy of England, as of the earls, barons, *optimates* and *proceres* of all his kingdom." <sup>70</sup> The *optimates* and *proceres* express members different from the earls, and barons, and additional to them.

So the Saxon Chronicle mentions of the same king, Henry the First, that he "sent his writs over all England, and commanded his bishops and his abbots, and *all his thegns*, that they should come to his ge-witena-mot at Candlemas-day at Gloucester: and they did so: and the king bade them choose an archbishop. The bishops chose one, but it is added, that the monks, the eorles, and the

<sup>66</sup> W. Stephan. p. 46.

<sup>70</sup> Pet. Bless. Hist. p. 128.

BOOK  
VIII.

*thegnas*, opposed him.”<sup>71</sup> So it is mentioned four years afterwards, that Henry held all his “hired,” meaning his council, at Windsor, at Christmas; and that all the head men, lay and clergy, that were in England, were there; and it adds, that the archbishop, bishops, and abbots, and the earls, and *all the thegns*, that were there, swore fidelity to his daughter.<sup>72</sup> These passages concur with the preceding to show that the witenagemot here contained other members, called thegns, in addition to the earls and clergy.

RECOLLECTING preceding facts, and the immemorial custom of the united assent of King, Lords, and Commons being given to all our statute-laws, without any record of the commencement of their concurrence, the following passages of the unanimous consent of the whole council in the Anglo-Saxon times, and of their being the council of the *whole* nation, seem very much to imply an unanimity of more bodies or classes than one single assembly of assenting nobles:—

“With the unanimous consent of the whole of the present council,”<sup>73</sup>

“With the common gratuitous council and consent of all the magnates of the kingdom.”<sup>74</sup>

“When (948.) the *universal* magnates of the kingdom, summoned by the royal edict, as well the archbishop, bishops, and abbots, as the other *proceres* and *optimates* of the *whole* kingdom, had met together at London, to treat of the public affairs of the whole kingdom.”<sup>75</sup>

“947. Who at London in a *common* council before the archbishop, bishops, and the magnates of the whole<sup>76</sup> land.”

<sup>71</sup> Sax. Chron. 224, 225. That thanes or thegns made part of the witenagemot is expressly declared by Edgar; for he says, “I and my thegns will,” &c. Wilk. p. 80.

<sup>72</sup> Sax. Chron. p. 230. <sup>73</sup> Ingulf, p. 15. <sup>74</sup> Ibid. p. 13.

<sup>75</sup> Ingulf, p. 32.

<sup>76</sup> Ibid. p. 39.

So Egbert says: —

“With the licence and consent of the *whole* of our nation, and with the unanimity of all the *optimates*.”<sup>77</sup>

CHAP.  
IV.

So a charter of Ethelred mentions, emphatically, “with the unanimous legal council, and most equal judgment, of the bishops, dukes, and all the *optimates* of this kingdom.” And a charter of Burhred, in 864, is made “with the consent and licence of all our senate of bishops, princes, and of *all* our *optimates together*.” Another document says, “with the testimony of the bishops and princes, and of some *senators subject to them*.”<sup>78</sup> All these expressions seem not to suit an assembly that consisted merely of nobles and clergy.

HENCE, when we read that William the Conqueror adds, “By the *common council* of *all* our kingdom,” and that his son Henry the First uses the words “By the common council of the barons,”<sup>79</sup> we appear not to err when we infer that the words common council express an united council of more classes and bodies than one. It is thus the terms have been immemorially used in the city of London. Its lord mayor, aldermen, and the elected deputies of its wards, form, when all assemble, its common council; yet the aldermen have a separate court, with separate powers and privileges, and at times, like the mayor, act distinctly and apart. There is every reason to suppose that this civic constitution of the metropolis originated in the Anglo-Saxon times.

<sup>77</sup> MSS. Claud. C. 9.

<sup>78</sup> MSS. Claud. and Hem. Chart. 63. 65.

<sup>79</sup> Wilk. Concil. p. 228.

<sup>80</sup> Ibid. 233. So John says in the articles preceding Magna Charta, that no scutage or aid shall be imposed on the kingdom except by the “*commune consilium*.”

**BOOK**  
**VIII.**

BUT this meaning of the terms "common council" is not left merely to our conjecture, it is the actual meaning given to the words by the most ancient writ of electing citizens and burgesses to parliament that has survived to us. It occurs among the Rolls of the 23d Edward the First.—

"We command and firmly enjoin you, that of the aforesaid county you cause to be elected, without delay, two knights, and from every city of the same county two citizens, and from every burgh two burgesses, of the more discreet and able to labour, and cause them to come to us at the aforesaid day and place; so that the said knights may have then there full and sufficient power for themselves, and for the community of the aforesaid county; and the said citizens and burgesses for themselves, and for the community of the aforesaid cities and burghs, distinct from them, to do there what shall be ordained from the common council (*de communi consilio*) in the premises."<sup>81</sup>

HERE the words common council are applied to express the deliberate determinations of the whole body of the parliament in its three estates of king, lords, and commons.

If only the nobles and clergy, as nobles or barons, had formed the *witena-gemot*, there seems to be no reason why so many and such various phrases should have been used in the Anglo-Saxon documents to express its members. If they had been of one class only, one uniform and simple denomination would have been more natural; but if the *witena-gemot* was a complex body, and, besides the nobles, comprised knights of the shires, citizens, and burgesses, as all our parliaments since the Conquest seem to have done, then we perceive the cause of their appellations being multiplied.

THE force of all the preceding circumstances, considered without reference to any theory, and

<sup>81</sup> Claus. 23 Ed. I. M. 4. apud Brady, p. 54.

taken together, seems to me to suit better the constitution of our present parliament than any senate composed merely of nobility and clergy. Although we have no direct evidence from records that the cities and burghs were represented in the witenagemot, yet there seems to be sufficient probabilities of evidence that the fact was so. The claim of the borough of Barnstaple, in Devonshire, must have considerable weight on our judgments when we reflect on this subject. In a petition to parliament, presented in the reign of Edward the Third, this borough claimed to have been chartered by Athelstan, with several privileges, and to have sent, from time immemorial, burgesses to parliament. Its claims were investigated by jurors legally appointed, and though from the loss of the charter the other immunities were not confirmed, its right of sending burgesses was admitted to continue.<sup>82</sup> In Edward the Second's reign the borough of St. Alban's stated, in a petition to parliament, that they, *as the other* burgesses of the kingdom, ought to come, by two common burgesses, to the parliament of the kingdom when that should happen to be summoned, as they have been accustomed to come *in all past times*; but that the sheriff, to favour the abbot, had refused to return them. The answer to this petition was not a denial of the right, but a reference to the Chancery, to see if *they* had been accustomed to come.<sup>83</sup> The right here claimed is not rested on any particular charter, but on the ancient usage of the country.

<sup>82</sup> Lord Lyttleton remarked this important document in his *History of Henry II.* vol. iii. p. 413.

<sup>83</sup> *Plac. Parliam.* vol. i. p. 327.

BOOK  
VIII.

In the 51st Edward the Third, the Commons stated that, “ of *the common right of the kingdom*, two persons are and will be chosen to be in parliament for the community of the said counties, except the prelates, dukes, earls, and barons, and such as hold by barony; and besides cities and burghs, who ought to choose of themselves such as should answer for them.<sup>84</sup> Here also the privilege of parliamentary representation is not rested on any dated law or royal charter, but *on the common right of the kingdom*.

THERE is a passage in the laws of Ethelstan that seems to me to relate to the witena-gemot, and to the representatives of burghs. If it has this reference, it shows the punishment that was provided for those who, when chosen for the burghs, neglected to attend the gemot. —

“ IF any one shall forsake the gemot three times he shall pay a fine to the king for his contumacy, and shall be summoned seven nights before the gemot meets. If he will not then act rightly, (that is, attend,) nor pay for this contumacy, then all the yldestan men that belong to that burgh shall ride and take away all that he possesses, and set him to bail.”<sup>85</sup>

THE expence, trouble, suspension of business, and occasional danger, which the burgesses, especially the more distant would often experience from the perils of travelling, and the violence of the great, in attending the witena-gemot, must have made many persons backward in frequenting it, especially when they had been chosen without

<sup>84</sup> Plac. Parliam. vol. ii. p. 368.

<sup>85</sup> Wilk. Leg. Sax. p. 60.

desiring the distinction. This law seems directed to counteract this disposition.

C H A P.  
IV.

THAT it was no common gemot appears from the next provision of the same law, which supposes a reluctance in the yldestan man to inflict the punishment enjoined, and therefore imposes a fine on every one that would not ride with his companions to execute the law. It proceeds to forbid all revenge for the punishment, and directs the same loss of property on the avenger as had been attached to the person that would not attend the gemot. I cannot think that the severity of this law was wanted for enforcing attendance on a mere folc or shire gemot, for which there were so many inducements from its vicinity and popularity. Hence I think it relates to the great national council, to which only the word gemot, by itself, properly applies. The word gemot is frequently thus used to express the witena-gemot.<sup>86</sup>

THAT every freeman had his definite rights, and every land its definite burthens and services, known and established by law and custom, is apparent from numerous Anglo-Saxon documents which have survived to us, and is fully shown by Domesday-book, in which the commissioners appointed by the Conqueror made a specific return of the gelding lands and burghs of the country, and stated the individual payments and share of military burthens to which each was subject, and which only could be claimed from him according to law and ancient custom. The act of the national legislature to which, by his representatives, he assented, could alone subject him to further burthens. These de-

<sup>86</sup> Wilk. Leg. Sax. p. 62. 69. 116. 146. &c.

**B O O K** finite, individual rights favour the supposition that  
**VIII.** the witenagemot, in order to affect the property and exemptions of the free class of the people, must have consisted of more orders than that of the nobility and clergy, and the probabilities, on the whole, seem to be that the witenagemot very much resembled our present parliaments.

DR. BRADY'S assertions, in his treatise on boroughs, that "there were no citizens, burgesses, or tenants of the king's demesnes summoned to great councils or parliaments until the 23d of Edward the First"<sup>87</sup> is not supported by the authorities which he adduces, but rests on his mistaken supposition that the first writ, now existing, of that year, in which the sheriff was directed to proceed to the election of citizens and burgesses<sup>88</sup> was the first time that they were elected at all, although there is nothing in that writ which marks it to have been the commencement of an innovation so momentous, and although one of the next documents which he produces shows that the government attempted to get money from the burghs without calling their representatives into parliament.<sup>89</sup> The true inference from all his documents is, that the writs for the election of burgesses now existing are but the copies of more ancient forms, and the repetition of a prescriptive custom which has no known commencement.

<sup>87</sup> Brady on Bor. p. 68.      <sup>88</sup> He gives it in his book, p. 54.

<sup>89</sup> Ibid. p. 66. One writ mentions that the mayor, sheriffs, aldermen, and all the communities of the city had granted him a sixth of their moveables, and the other, reciting this as an example, directs the commissioners to ask (*ad petendum*) this of the demesne cities in the four counties mentioned, and to go with the sheriffs to them to require and efficaciously induce them to make a similar grant. p. 67.

THAT they were not regularly summoned will appear probable when the frequent violences of power, and all the irregularities of those disturbed times are duly considered. C H A P.  
IV.

THAT kings may have sometimes been content with the money they obtained from the barons and the counties, or may have sometimes procured it, by persuasion or threats, from the burgs separately, as Edward the First attempted in the instance alluded to, are also credible facts; but the fact that he was obliged to solicit the grant from the burgs, is evidence that he had not the legal power of raising it without their consent; and their right to give this consent is evidence of the existence of their constitutional privilege of not being taxed without their own consent; and this truth confirms all the reasoning which makes it probable that their representatives were called to the Saxon witenagemot when it was intended that the burgs should contribute to the taxation. It does not at all shake this general principle that some new burgs attained the privilege within the period of historical record.<sup>90</sup>

WE know what was necessary to exalt a ceorl to a thegn, but we cannot distinctly ascertain all the qualifications which entitled persons to a seat in

<sup>90</sup> The ancient charters of London, or copies of them recited in authentic charters, exist from the time of Henry the First, but none contain the grant of its right of sending representatives. The just inference seems to be that this constitutional right had been established long before. There is no charter existing, and none have been known to exist, that confers the right on any of the ancient burghs. This appears to me to show that it was the ancient immemorial right of all burghs or cities, beginning with their existence, and constitutionally attached to it, and not flowing from any specific grant.

B O O K  
VIII.

the witena-gemot. There is, however, one curious passage which ascertains that a certain amount of property was an indispensable requisite, and that acquired property would answer this purpose as well as hereditary property. The possession here stated to be necessary was forty hides of land. The whole incident is so curious as to be worth transcribing. — Guddmund desired in matrimony the daughter of a great man, but because he had not the lordship of forty hides of land, he could not, though noble, be reckoned among the *proceres*; and therefore she refused him. He went to his brother, the abbot of Ely, complaining of his misfortune. The abbot fraudulently gave him possessions of the monastery sufficient to make up the deficiency. This circumstance attests that nobility alone was not sufficient for a seat among the *witan*, and that forty hides of land was an indispensable qualification.<sup>91</sup>

I CANNOT avoid mentioning one person's designation, which seems to have the force of expressing an *elected* member. Among the persons signing to the act of the gemot at Clove-shoe, in 824, is, "Ego Beonna *electus* consent. et subscrib."<sup>92</sup>

<sup>91</sup> 3 Gale's Script. p. 513.

<sup>92</sup> Astle's MS. Charters, No. 12.

CHAP. V.

*Witena-Gemot.*—How convened.—Times and Places of meeting.—Its Business and Power.

THEY were convened by the king's writ. Several passages in the writers of this period mention that they assembled at the summons of the king. "On a paschal solemnity all the greater men, the clergy, and the laity of all the land, met at the king's court, to celebrate the festival *called by him.*"<sup>1</sup> In 1048, the Saxon Chronicle says, "the king *sent* after all his witan, and bade them come to Gloucester a little after the feast of Saint Mary."<sup>2</sup> In one MS. in the year 993, the king says, "I ordered a synodale council to be held at Winton on the day of Pentecost."<sup>3</sup>

CHAP.  
V.

THE times of their meeting seem to have been usually the great festivals of the church, as Christmas, Easter, and Whitsuntide; and of these, if we may judge, by its being more frequently mentioned, Easter was the favourite period. But their meetings were not confined to these seasons; for we find that they sometimes took place in the middle of Lent,<sup>4</sup> near the feast of Saint Mary<sup>5</sup>, July<sup>6</sup>, September, and October.<sup>7</sup> One ancient law-book, the Mirror, mentions "that Alfred caused the earls to meet for the state of the kingdom, and ordained for a perpetual usage, that twice in the year, or oftener, if need were, during peace, they should

<sup>1</sup> 3 Gale's Script. 395.

<sup>2</sup> Sax. Chron. p. 163.

<sup>3</sup> MS. Claud. c. 9. p. 122.

<sup>4</sup> Sax. Chron. 161.

<sup>5</sup> Sax. Chron. 163.

<sup>6</sup> Astle's MS. Chart. No. 2.

<sup>7</sup> Sax. Chron. 164. Heming. Chart. 50

**B O O K** assemble together at London to speak their minds  
 { VIII. for the guiding of the people; how to keep from  
 offences; live in quiet, and have right done them  
 by ascertained usages and sound judgment.”<sup>8</sup>  
 We may add, that annual and more frequent meet-  
 ings are often mentioned, but never annual elec-  
 tions.

THE place of their assembly was not fixed. After Egbert's accession, the gemot was convened at London, at Kingston, at Wilton, Winton, Cloveshoe, Dorchester, Cyrneceaster, Calne, Ambresbury, Oxford, Gloucester, Ethelwaraburh, Kyrtnegum, and other places.<sup>9</sup> Perhaps the place of their meeting depended on the king's residence at the time, and was fixed by his convenience.

OUR monarchs seem to have maintained their influence in the witena-gemots by their munificence. One account of their meeting in the time of Edgar is thus given: “All England rejoicing in the placid leisure of tranquil peace, it happened that on a certain paschal solemnity all the majores of all the country, as well clergy as laymen, of both orders and professions, met at the royal court called by him to celebrate the festivity, and to be honoured by him with royal gifts. Having celebrated the divine mysteries with all alacrity and joy, all went to the palace to refresh their bodies. Some days having been passed away, the king's hall resounded with acclamations. The streets murmured with the busy hum of men. None felt entirely a refusal of the royal munificence; for all were mag-

<sup>8</sup> Mirror, c. i. s. 2.

<sup>9</sup> Sax. Chron. 142. 161. 168. 124. 128. 163. 146. Heming. 93. MS. Cott. Aug. 2. 20. Astle's MS. Chart. No. 8. No. 12. MS. Cleop. B. 13. MS. Claud. c. 9. 121.

nificently rewarded with presents of various sort and value, in vessels, vestments, or the best horses.<sup>10</sup> C H A P.  
V.

THE king presided at the witena-gemots, and sometimes, perhaps always, addressed them. In 993 we have this account of a royal speech. The king says, in a charter which recites what had passed at one of their meetings, "I benignantly addressed to them salutary and pacific words. I admonished all—that those things which were worthy of the Creator, and serviceable to the health of my soul, or to my royal dignity, and which ought to prevail as proper for the English people, they might, with the Lord's assistance, discuss in common."<sup>11</sup> The speech of Edgar, in favour of the monks, is stated at length in one of our old Chroniclers.<sup>12</sup>

It has been already mentioned, that one of their duties was to elect the sovereign, and to assist at his coronation. Another was to co-operate with the king in making laws. Thus Bede says, of the earliest laws we have, that Ethelbert established them "with the counsel of his wise men."<sup>13</sup> The introductory passages of the Anglo-Saxon laws which exist, usually express that they were made with the concurrence of the witan.

THE witena-gemot appears also to have made treaties jointly with the king; for the treaty with Guthrun and the Danes thus begins: "This is the treaty which Ælfred, king, and Gythrun, king, and all the witan of England, and all the people in East Anglia, (that is, the Danes,) have made and fast-

<sup>10</sup> 3 Gale's Script. p. 395.

<sup>11</sup> MS. Claud. c. 9. p. 122.

<sup>12</sup> Eth. Abb. Ailr.

<sup>13</sup> Bede, lib. ii. c. 5.

**B O O K**  
**VIII.**

ened with oath.”<sup>14</sup> In 1011, it is said, that the king and his witan sent to the Danes and desired peace, and promised tribute and supply.<sup>15</sup> On another occasion, the Saxon Chronicle states, that the king sent to the hostile fleet an ealdorman, who, with the word of the king, and his witan, made peace with them.<sup>16</sup> In 1016, it expresses that Eadric, the ealdorman, and the witan who were there, counselled, that the kings (Edmund and Canute) should make peace between them.<sup>17</sup> In 1002, the king ordered, and his witan, the money to be paid to the Danes, and peace to be made.<sup>18</sup> The treaty, printed in Wilkins’ *Leges Anglo-Saxonicae*, p. 104. is said to have been made by the king and his witan.

THEY are also mentioned to us as assisting the king in directing the military preparations of the kingdom. Thus, in 992, the Saxon Chronicle says, that “the king ordered, and all his witan, that man should gather together all the ships that were to go to London.”<sup>19</sup> In 999, the king, with his witan, ordered that both the ship fyrde and the land fyrde should be led against the Danes.<sup>20</sup> So, in 1052, the king decreed, and his witan, that man should proceed with the ships to Sandwich; and they set Raulf, eorl, and Oddan, eorl, to heafod-mannum (to be the head-men) thereto.<sup>21</sup>

IMPEACHMENTS of great men were made before the witenagemot. Some instances may be concisely narrated. In 1048, the king, conceiving that he had cause of complaint against the family of the famous Godwin, convened the witenagemot.

<sup>14</sup> Wilk. Leg. Angl. 47.

<sup>15</sup> Sax. Chron. 140.

<sup>16</sup> Ibid. 132.

<sup>17</sup> Ibid. 150.

<sup>18</sup> Ibid. 132.

<sup>19</sup> Ibid. 126.

<sup>20</sup> Ibid. 130.

<sup>21</sup> Ibid. 165.

The family armed. The witan ordered that both sides should desist from hostilities, and that the king should give God's peace and his full friendship to both sides. Then the king and his witan directed another witenagemot to be assembled at London on the next harvest equinox, and the king ordered the army on the south and north of the Thames to be banman.

At this gemot, eorl Swain, one of Godwin's sons, was declared an utlah (outlaw); and Godwin and his other son, Harold, were cited to attend the gemot as speedily as possible. They approached, and desired peace and hostages, that they might come into the gemot and quit it without treachery. They were again cited, and they repeated their demand. Hostages were refused them, and five days of safety only were allowed them to leave the country. They obeyed, and went exiles into Flanders.<sup>22</sup>

We have another instance of the great council both banishing and pardoning. A great gemot, in 1052, was assembled at London, which "all the eorls and the best men in the country" attended. There Godwin made his defence, and purged himself before his lord the king and all the people, that he was guiltless of the crime charged on him and his sons. The king forgave him and his family, and restored them their possessions and the earldom. But the archbishop and all the Frenchmen were banished.<sup>23</sup>

The same power was exerted in 1055. A witenagemot was assembled seven days before Mid-Lent, and eorl Elfgar was outlawed for high treason, or,

<sup>22</sup> Sax. Chron. 164.

<sup>23</sup> Ibid. 168.

**B O O K** as it is expressed, because he was a swica, a betrayer of the king and all his people. His earldom was given to another.<sup>24</sup>

**VIII.**

So all the optimates meeting at Cynrceaster, in the reign of Ethelred, banished Elfric for high treason, and confiscated all his possessions to the king.<sup>25</sup>

At a great council, held in 716, one of their main objects is expressed to have been to examine anxiously into the state of the churches and monasteries in Kent, and their possessions.<sup>26</sup>

At these councils, grants of land were made and confirmed. The instances of this are innumerable. Thus, in 811, Cenwulf, at a very great council convened in London, gave some lands of his own right, with the advice and consent of the said council.<sup>27</sup> It would be tedious to enumerate all the grants which we know of, where the consent of the council is stated. Many have been already alluded to.

At the council in 716, they forbade any layman taking any thing from the monastery therein named; and they freed the lands belonging to it from various impositions and payments.<sup>28</sup>

At the council in 824, they inquired into the necessities of the secular deputies, as well as into the monasterial disciplines, and into the ecclesiastical morals. Here a complaint was made by the

<sup>24</sup> Sax. Chron. 169.

<sup>25</sup> MS. Claud. C. 9. 123, 124. <sup>26</sup> Astle's MS. Chart. No. 2.

<sup>27</sup> Ibid. No. 8. But it would seem that even the kings could not grant lands without the consent of the witenagemot, for a gift of land by a king is mentioned: "Sed, quia non fuit de consensu magnatum regni, donum id non potuit valere."

1 Dug. Mon. 20.

<sup>28</sup> Ibid. No. 2

archbishop, that he had been unjustly deprived of some land. He cited those who withheld it. The writings concerning the land were produced, and *viva voce* evidence heard. The writings and the land were ordered by the council to be given to the archbishop.<sup>29</sup> C H A P.  
V.

AT a council in 903, an ealdorman stated that his title deeds had been destroyed by fire. He applied to the council for leave to have new ones. New ones were ordered to be made out to him, as nearly similar to the former as memory could make them.<sup>30</sup>

WHAT was done at one council was sometimes confirmed at another. Thus what was done in the great council in Baccanfield was confirmed in the same year at another held in July at Cloveshoe. So a gift at Easter was confirmed at Christmas.<sup>31</sup>

THAT the *witena-gemot* sometimes resisted the royal acts, appears from their not choosing to consider valid a gift of land by Baldred, king of Kent, because he did not please them.<sup>32</sup>

THE *witena-gemot* frequently appears to us, in the Saxon remains, as the high court of judicature of the kingdom, or as determining disputed questions about land.

IN 896, Æthelred, the ealdorman of Mercia, convened all the *witan* of Mercia, (which had not yet been reduced into a province,) the bishops, ealdormen, and all the nobility, at Gloucester, with the leave of Alfred. "They consulted how they most justly might hold their theod-scipe, both for

<sup>29</sup> Astle's MS. Chart. No. 12.

<sup>30</sup> Ibid. No. 21.

<sup>31</sup> Ibid. No. 2.; and MS. Claud. C. 9. 124.

<sup>32</sup> Spelm. Conc. p. 340.

B O O K  
VIII.

God and for the world, and right many men, both clergy and laity, concerning the lands and other things, that were detained." At this gemot, the bishop of Worcester made his complaint of the wood-land of which he was deprived. All the witan declared that the church should have its rights preserved, as well as other persons. A discussion and an accommodation took place.<sup>33</sup>

In another case of disputed lands, the bishop states, that he could obtain no right before Ethelred was lord of Mercia. He assembled the witan of Mercia at Saltwic, about manifold needs, both ecclesiastical and civil. "Then (says the bishop) I spoke of the monastery with the epre ge ppute, (conveyances of the land,) and desired my right. Then Eadnoth, and Alfred, and Ælfstan, pledged me that they would either give it to me, or would, among their kinsfolk, find a man who would take it on the condition of being obedient to me." No man, however, would take the land on these terms, and the parties came to an accommodation on the subject.<sup>34</sup>

In 851, the monks of Croyland, having suffered much from some violent neighbours, laid their complaint before the witena-gemot. The king ordered the sheriff of Lincoln, and his other officers in that district, to take a view of the lands of the monastery, and to make their report to him and his council, wherever they should be, at the end of Easter. This was done, and the grievances were removed.<sup>35</sup>

THE power of the witena-gemot over the public

<sup>33</sup> Heming. Chart. i. p. 93.

<sup>34</sup> Ibid. p. 120.

<sup>35</sup> Ingulf, p. 12. See other instances, Hem. p. 17. 27. 50.

golds of the kingdom, we cannot detail. The lands of the Anglo-Saxons, the burghs, and the people, appear to us, in all the documents of our ancestors, as subjected to certain definite payments to the king as to their lords; and we have already stated, that by a custom, whose origin is lost in its antiquity, among the Anglo-Saxons, all their lands, unless specially exempted, were liable to three great burdens, the building and reparation of bridges and fortifications, and to military expeditions. But what we now call taxation seems to have begun in the time of Ethelred, and to have arisen from the evils of a foreign invasion. Henry of Huntingdon, speaking of the payment of ten thousand pounds to the Danes, to buy off their hostility, says, "This evil has lasted to our days, and long will continue, unless the mercy of God interferes; for we now, (in the twelfth century) pay that to our kings from custom, which was paid to the Danes, from unspeakable terror."<sup>26</sup> This payment, and those which followed, are stated to have been ordered by the king and the witenagemot.<sup>27</sup>

UNDER SOVEREIGNS of feeble capacity, the witenagemot seems to have been the scene of those fac-

<sup>26</sup> Hen. Hunt. lib. v. p. 357. Bromton, Chron. p. 879. Ingulf also complains heavily of these exactions, p. 55.

<sup>27</sup> Sax. Chron. 126. 132. 136. 140. 142. Unless we refer it to the Anglo-Saxon period, I do not see when the principle could have originated which is recognised in Magna Charta and in its preparatory articles, and is so concisely mentioned by Chaucer in these two lines:

"The king taxeth not his men,  
But by assent of the communalte."

Ecl. fol. p. 88.

B O O K  
VIII.

tions which always attend both aristocracies and democracies, when no commanding talents exist to predominate in the discussions, and to shape the council.

THE reigns of Ethelred the Second, and of the Confessor, were distinguished by the turbulence, and even treason of the nobles. Of the former, our Malmsbury writes, " Whenever the duces met in the council, some chose one thing and some another. They seldom agreed in any good opinion. They consulted more on domestic treasons, than on the public necessities." <sup>38</sup>

It was indeed becoming obvious that the extreme independence of the Anglo-Saxon aristocracy, during the last two reigns, was destroying the monarchy and injuring the nation. And if the Norman Conqueror had failed in his invasion, and had not, by tightening the bonds of feudality, homage, wardship, and law, reduced the diverging and contradictory power of the nobility into a state of more salutary subordination, it would have become pernicious to the king and people, and even to itself; and have brought the land to that state of faction and civil warfare from which the the Saxons had rescued it, and of which Poland and Albania have given us modern examples.

<sup>38</sup> Malmsb. p. 63.

# CHAP. VI.

## *Some General Principles of the ANGLO-SAXON Constitution and Laws.*

**F**ROM a careful perusal of the laws, charters, and documents of the Anglo-Saxons which remain, the following may be selected as a statement of some of the great general principles of their constitution and laws. C H A P.  
VI.

At the head of the state was **THE KING**; the executive authority of the nation, and an essential part of its legislature; the receiver and expender of all taxations; the centre and source of all jurisprudence; the supreme chief of its armies; the head of its landed property; the lord of the free, and of all burghs, excepting such as he had consented to grant to others; the person intrusted to summon the **witena-gemot**, and presiding at it; possessed of the other prerogatives that have been noticed; but elective, and liable to be controuled by the **witena-gemot**.

Co-existing as anciently as the sovereign, if not anterior, and his elector, was a **WITENA-GEMOT** or parliament, consisting of the nobles holding land, including the superior thanes, and containing also milites, or those who were afterwards called knights, and likewise others without any designations, who were probably citizens and burgesses.

A church establishment pervaded the country, consisting of archbishops, bishops, abbots, and priors, who were dignitaries sitting in the **witena-gemot**; comprising also inferior degrees of clergy, as deans, canons, archdeacons, priests, parochial rectors, &c.; besides the monks and nuns of their various cloisters.

The highest orders of nobility were open to the lowest classes of life.

A nobility existed with the titles of ealdorman, hold, here-toch, eorl, and thegn. These titles were personal and not inherited. That of thegn was probably connected with their lands. Some part of the nobility were distinguished by their birth, others by their office. The possessed lands of all were

**B O O K** transmissible to their heirs as they pleased by their wills ; but  
**VIII.** no system of primogeniture.

The landed property of the nation was generally bound to build castles and bridges, and to serve the king for a limited time, in his military expeditions, in proportion to the quantity of their land. To certain extents of it, independent legal jurisdictions were attached, exempt from all others.

An order of milites ; made by the investment of the military belt, who were the privileged classes that served for the lands of the nobility and clergy and for their own, and who could not serve in the army in this rank nor command others until it had been conferred. These were the superior class of the free.

A class of freemen ; with the king for their lord and defender, subject to no other master but whom they chose to serve.

The majority of the population, slaves or bondsmen to the other classes of society, with many shades of servility or of employment ; who had no constitutional or political right, but were part of the property of their master, and as such bought, sold, and transmissible at his pleasure ; but for whose benefit the laws were watchful, and made from time to time various kind and superintending regulations, to promote their good usage and emancipation as well as good conduct.

No property of the nobility, clergy, or free, was taxed without the consent of these orders, given in the *witena-gemot*.

All the nobles and free were required to be always armed with arms appropriate to their condition.

All the free were required to place themselves in some tything, and every one was to be under bail for his general good behaviour, under certain regulations, and the bail were to answer for his quiet conduct.

Bail was to be given for all prosecutions, and for all defences.

Offences were punished by fines to the state, as well as by compensation to the party.

Every class had a pecuniary value fixed on it, at which each individual of it was estimated, called his *were* ; and also another called *mund*, by which the value of his social peace was guarded.

A high regard for the personal liberty of the free subject, while unoffending against the laws ; and repeated provisions made to punish those who imprisoned or bound him without legal justice.

Their principle of repelling criminal accusations was that of the accused producing a certain number of his neighbours, who swore to their belief of his innocence. Of this custom our habit of producing witnesses to character is a remnant. This imposed on every one the strongest obligation to maintain a good character in his neighbourhood.

To this principle was attached at length the right of trial by jury. No record marks the date of its commencement. It was therefore either one of their immemorial institutions, or was introduced by the Danish colonists among whose countrymen it prevailed.

From the extreme independence and violence of the great, and from the warlike spirit and habit of all their society, every stranger and traveller was considered as a suspected person, and jealously watched by many legal restrictions.

From the same cause, all purchases above a very small sum were required to be public, and in the presence of witnesses, in every city appointed for that purpose.

Although the right of property was a fixed principle among them, yet it was subject to certain rules, both of tenure and transmission, and to certain payments; but none of these seem to have been arbitrary, but all definite, known, and customary.

Public fairs at certain seasons, and markets every week, were allowed by law, and usually granted by charter. Tolls and payments to those entitled to receive them accompanied their sales; and tolls also were levied on the high roads on those who passed with traffic.

Every man was ordered to perform to others the right that he desired to have himself.

Judges were warned that every act should be carefully distinguished, and the judgment be always given righteously according to the deed; and be moderated according to the degree of the offence.

The superior orders were emphatically enjoined to comfort and feed the poor; to gladden and not distress widows and orphans, and not to harass or oppress strangers and travellers.

The *witena-gemot* declared that just laws should be established before God and the world, and that all that was unlawful should be carefully abolished; and that every man, poor or rich, should be entitled to his common rights, or, as they termed it, be worthy of his folk-right.

The principle of the laws was that of continual improvement, either by addition, enshment, or qualification, as circumstances

**B O O K**  
**VIII.**

required, and without any principle of immutability. The meetings of the witenagemot gave the means of this improvement, and their laws for the conversion of slaves into free men, contrary to the interest of the chieftains, exhibited striking evidence of the impulse of the improving spirit.

That legal redress should be refused to no one, was one of Ina's laws, which enacted penalties on the shire-men or judges who gave refusal :

That revenge should not be taken personally till legal justice had been sought, was another.

The natural liberty of every individual was to be restricted by definite laws so far as social good required, but only by definite and previously enacted laws.

Not only the life and liberty of the free were strictly guarded by law, but every limb of the body had its protecting penalty, which was to be paid by those who injured it, that the safety of every individual might be reduced to as great a certainty as positive law and punishment could make it.

To discourage fighting and personal violence was a continual object of the witenagemot; and also to repress those habits of reputable robbery and rapine which the powerful and warlike indulged in.

The domestic peace of every individual was promoted by strong laws against trespasses in his house or lands; and every one was required to make hedges to keep his cattle from injuring another.

The observance of Sunday as a day of rest from all worldly labour was strictly enforced.

To abate the pride and violences of a powerful and oppressive aristocracy, the Anglo-Saxon clergy taught the natural equality of man, which Alfred also enforced.

But the gradation of ranks was a principle recognised by all the laws; and offences were differently punished according to the quality of both the offender and the offended.

Each class had its appropriate rights and protecting penalties, and its appointed redress; each was kept distinct, but each was rescued from the oppressions of the other; and the law and government, as far as they could operate, watched impartially over all, and for the benefit of all.

The character of individuals was protected as well as their right and property; and slanderous words were subjected to punishment.

The fair sex were taken by the law under its protection,

and the principle of respecting and exalting it appears in one of our earliest laws, which placed the children, on the father's death, under the care of the mother; and by another forbidding concubinage; and by others protecting them from violence and forced marriages.

A tenderness even for animals appears in the provision that lambs should not be sheared before Midsummer.

We will close this enumeration by adding the principles which appear in the laws of king Canute: —

That just laws shall be universally established.

We forbid that any Christian man should be consigned to death for a small cause, but rather that a peace-like punishment should be established for the public benefit; that man may not destroy the work of the Divine hands for a little cause, who was redeemed by so dear a price.

That it should be always contemplated in every way how the best councils may be adopted for the benefit of the public:

That every one twelve winters old should swear that he will not be a thief, nor the adviser of a thief:

That nothing shall be bought above four pennies' worth, living or dead, without the true witness of four men.

No one shall receive another into his house for more than three days, unless one that had previously served him as a follower.

Every master shall be the pledge or bail for his own family, and answer for it, if accused.

If any friendless man or stranger be accused, so that he has no bail, he must be put into the pillory till he doth go to the ordeal.

A man convicted of perjury shall be disqualified for giving evidence afterwards.

Every man might hunt in his own wood and fields.

## CHAP. VII.

*Their Official and other Dignities.*BOOK  
VIII.Ealdor-  
man.

THE EALDORMAN was the highest officer in the kingdom. In rank he was inferior to an etheling; for when an etheling's were-geld was fifteen thousand thrymsas, an ealdorman's was but eight thousand.<sup>1</sup> He was the chief of a shire, and he lost this dignity if he connived at the escape of a robber, unless the king pardoned him.<sup>2</sup> He was one of the witan, who attended the witenagemot.<sup>3</sup> He presided with the bishop at the scire-gemot, which he was ordered to attend<sup>4</sup>, and the folc-gemot.<sup>5</sup> He ranked with a bishop<sup>6</sup>, but was superior to the thegn.<sup>7</sup> He had great civil powers in administering justice, and also enjoyed high military authority; he is mentioned as leading the shire to battle against the enemy.<sup>8</sup> To draw weapons before him, incurred a penalty of one hundred shillings<sup>9</sup>; and to fight before him in a gemot, incurred a fine to him of one hundred and twenty shillings, besides other punishments.<sup>10</sup> The ealdorman is a title which occurs perpetually in the Saxon Chronicle.

Eorl.

THE EORL is a dignity recognised in our earliest laws. It appears in those of Ethelbert, who died in 616, where offences in the tune and against the birele of an eorl are expressly punished.<sup>11</sup> He

<sup>1</sup> Wilk. Leg. Sax. p. 71.<sup>2</sup> Ibid. 20.<sup>3</sup> Ibid. 14.<sup>4</sup> Ibid. 78. 136.<sup>5</sup> Ibid. 42.<sup>6</sup> Ibid. 38.<sup>7</sup> Ibid. 22. 71.<sup>8</sup> Sax. Chron. p. 78.<sup>9</sup> Wilk. Leg. Sax. p. 38.<sup>10</sup> Ibid. 42.<sup>11</sup> Ibid. p. 3.

is also mentioned in a charter, dated 680.<sup>12</sup> The mund of his widow is highly estimated.<sup>13</sup> He is also noticed in the laws of Alfred, Edward, Ethelstan, and Edgar.<sup>14</sup>

AN eorl's heriot was four horses saddled and four horses not saddled, four helms, four mails, eight spears and shields, four swords, and two hundred mancusa, of gold, which was twice a thegn's heriot.<sup>15</sup> To be an eorl was a dignity to which a thegn might arrive<sup>16</sup>, and even a ceorl.<sup>17</sup>

IN 656, Wulfer in his charter mentions the eorls: "I Wulfer, kyning, with the king and with eorls, and with herotogas, and with thegnas, the witnesses of this gift."<sup>18</sup> The persons who sign this, with the king and clergy, call themselves ealdormen. The title of eorl occurs again in a grant of 675<sup>19</sup>, and afterwards.<sup>20</sup>

IN the fragment of poetry in the Saxon Chronicle to the year 975, Edward, the son of Edgar, is called the eorla ealder; the ruler of eorls.<sup>21</sup>

IN 966, Oslac is stated to have received his ealdordome. In 975, he is called se mære eorl, the great earl; and is stated to have been banished<sup>22</sup>; he is also called ealdorman.<sup>23</sup> This same Oslac is mentioned in the laws of Edgar as an earl: "Then let Oslac eorl promote it, and all the army that in this ealdordome remaineth."<sup>24</sup> These passages induce a belief that eorl and ealdorman were but different denominations of the same of-

<sup>12</sup> Spelman. Concil. p. 164.

<sup>13</sup> Wilk. Leg. p. 7.

<sup>14</sup> Wilk. 35. 53. 70. 82.

<sup>15</sup> Ibid. 144.

<sup>16</sup> Ibid. 71. <sup>17</sup> Ibid. 112.

<sup>18</sup> Sax. Chron. p. 37.

<sup>19</sup> Sax. Chron. p. 42.

<sup>20</sup> Ibid. 62.

<sup>21</sup> Ibid. 123. <sup>22</sup> Ibid. 121. 123.

<sup>23</sup> Ibid. 122.

<sup>24</sup> Wilk. Leg. Sax. 82.

ficial dignity. Yet, when we find in the Chronicle such distinctions, in the same paragraph, as “Ealfrice ealdorman, and Thorode eorl<sup>25</sup>,” we are led to imagine that there must have been some peculiar traits by which they were discriminated. But it is obvious, from the Saxon Chronicle, that eorldome<sup>26</sup> expressed the same thing that ealdordome has been applied to signify.

IN the latter part of the Anglo-Saxon period, the title ealdorman seems to have been superseded by that of eorl.<sup>27</sup> The iarl of the Northmen was the same title. We cannot now ascertain the precise distinction of rank and power that prevailed between the eorl and the ealdorman.

**Heretoch.** THE term HERETOCH implies the leader of an army; and **Hold.** HOLD is mentioned as a dignity in Æthelstan’s laws, whose were was higher than that of a thegn.<sup>28</sup> Many persons with this title are mentioned in the Saxon Chronicle<sup>29</sup>, in the years 905. 911.

**Gerefa, or Reeve.** THE GEREFAS were officers appointed by the executive power, and in rank inferior to the eorl or ealdorman. They were of various kinds. The heh-gerefa is mentioned, whose were was four thousand thrymsas.<sup>30</sup> Also the wic-gerefa, before whom purchases of the Kentishmen in London were to be made, unless they had good witnesses.<sup>31</sup> And the porte-gerefa, or the gerefa of the gate, who was to witness all purchases without the gate, unless other unimpeachable persons were present.<sup>32</sup>

THE gerefas were in every byrig.<sup>33</sup> They were

<sup>25</sup> Sax. Chron. 127

<sup>27</sup> Ibid. 164—173.

<sup>29</sup> Sax. Chron. 101. 103.

<sup>31</sup> Ibid. 9. <sup>32</sup> Ibid. 48.

<sup>26</sup> Sax. Ch. 168, 169.

<sup>28</sup> Wilk. Leg. Sax. 71.

<sup>30</sup> Wilk. Leg. 71.

<sup>33</sup> Ibid. 54, 55.

judicial officers<sup>34</sup>, and were ordered to judge according to right judgment, and the dom-boc, or book of judgment. They delivered over offenders to punishment.<sup>35</sup> They were present at the folc-gemot<sup>36</sup>, where they were to do justice. They were ordered to convene a gemot every four weeks, to end law-suits.<sup>37</sup> They took bail or security in their respective shires for every one to keep the peace; and if they omitted to take the bail, and neglected their duty, they lost their office, and the king's friendship, and forfeited to him one hundred and twenty shillings.<sup>38</sup>

IN cases of robbery, application was to be made to the gerefa in whose district it was; and he was to provide as many men as were sufficient to apprehend the thief, and avenge the injury.<sup>39</sup> If any one became "untrue" to every one, the king's gerefa was to go and bring him under bail, that he might be brought to justice to answer his accuser. If the offender could find no bail, he was to be killed.<sup>40</sup> He was to supply such prisoners with food who had no relations that could support them.<sup>41</sup> He was to defend the abbots in their necessities.<sup>42</sup>

THEY were made responsible for their official conduct. If they neglected their duty, it was ordered, in the laws of Ethelstan, that they should be fined for their delinquency, and be displaced, and the bishop was to announce it to the gerefa in his province. If they broke the law, they had to pay five pounds the first time, the price of their

<sup>34</sup> Wilk. Leg. 9. 12. 48, 49.

<sup>35</sup> Ibid. 12.

<sup>36</sup> Ibid. 39. 41.

<sup>37</sup> Ibid. 50.

<sup>38</sup> Ibid. 69.

<sup>39</sup> Ibid. 68.

<sup>40</sup> Ibid. 103.

<sup>41</sup> Ibid. 34.

<sup>42</sup> Ibid. 115.

B O O K  
VIII.

were the second, and for the third offence they lost all their property.<sup>43</sup> If they took a bribe to pervert right, they were punished as severely.<sup>44</sup>

THE thegns of the Anglo-Saxons were in rank below the eorls and ealdormen. They formed a species of nobility peculiar to those ancient times; and though, at this distant period, they cannot be delineated accurately, yet, from the circumstances which we can collect, we shall find them a very curious and interesting order of men.

It has been already mentioned, that it was a rank attainable by all, even by the servile, and that the requisites which constituted the dignity are stated in the laws to have been the possession of five hides of his own land, a church, a kitchen, a bell-house, a judicial seat at the burgh gate, and a distinct office or station in the king's hall. It is not clear whether this means an office in the king's household, or a seat in the witenagemot. The latter has some probabilities in its favour.

<sup>43</sup> Wilk. Leg. 61.

<sup>44</sup> Ibid. 62. The exposition of the duties of an eorl, and the higher dignities, which exists in Anglo-Saxon, adds something to our notions of their character: "Eorls and heretogas, and the secular judges, and also the gerefas, must necessarily love justice before God and the world, and must never by unjust judgment lay aside their own wisdom for either enmity or friendship. They must not thus turn wrong into right, nor decree injustice to the oppression of the poor. They should, above all other things, honour and defend the church; they should protect widows and orphans, and help the needy, and watch to guard the enslaved. Thieves and robbers they should hate, and spoilers and plunderers destroy, unless they will amend and abstain for ever from their violences. For this is true which I say, believe it who will, 'Woe to those that inflict injury, unless they amend: most surely they shall suffer in the dim and deep caverns of the infernal punishments, apart from all help,' &c. Lib. Const. Wilk. Leg. 149.

BUT it was essential to a thegn, that he should be a landed proprietor ; for though a ceorl had a helm, mail, and a gold-handled sword, yet if he had no land, the laws declare that he must still remain a ceorl.<sup>45</sup>

THE thegns were of two descriptions. The inferior sort was called thegn, and the superior were distinguished as king's thegns. The laws recognise these two descriptions. A king's thegn accused of homicide was to acquit himself of guilt by twelve king's thegns ; a thegn of lessa maga, with eleven of his equals.<sup>46</sup> The here-geat, or heriot of the king's thegn that was nearest to him, was two horses saddled, and two not saddled, two swords, four spears, shields, helms, and mails, and fifty mancus of gold. But the here-geat of a middling thegn was but one horse, and his trapping and arms.<sup>47</sup> By comparing these heriots, we may see how greatly superior the rank of the king's thegn was esteemed.

THE inferior thegns appear to have been numerous. In every borough, says a law, thirty-three thanes were chosen to witness. In small burghs, and to every hundred, twelve were to be selected.<sup>48</sup> Thegns had halls.

THEGNS are twice mentioned in the laws as thegns born so.<sup>49</sup> Perhaps the title was attached to their landed property, and descended with it. In the

<sup>45</sup> Wilk. Leg. 70.

<sup>46</sup> Ibid. 47. So the superior thane is mentioned in the laws as having a thane under him, serving him as his lord in the king's hall. Ibid. 71.

<sup>47</sup> Ibid. 144. The officers of the king's household were also called thegns, as his disc-thegn, hregel-thegn, hors-thegn, or the thanes of his dishes, his wardrobe, and his horses.

<sup>48</sup> Ibid. 80. Their halls are often mentioned in Domesday-book.

<sup>49</sup> Ibid. 125. 27.

**B O O K**  
**VIII.** } Domesday Survey, many lands are mentioned in several counties, which are called "Terra tainorum;" the land of the thegns; and they are mentioned also with their milites. Thegn-lands seem to have had some analogy with the baronies of the Norman times.

If a thegn had a church in his boclande, with a place of burial, he was to give to the church one-third of his own tenths; if he had not a burial-place, he was to give what he chose out of the nine parts.<sup>50</sup>

WHAT Alfred calls the king's thegn is in Bede the king's minister.<sup>51</sup> No one was to have any socne or jurisdiction over him but the king.<sup>52</sup>

WE learn from Domesday-book, that for the tenure of five hides of land the owner was liable to the fyrd, or Saxon militia. We have also found, that the tenure of five hides of land was essential to the dignity of thegn. The king's thegn is mentioned in the laws as attending in his expeditions, and as having a thegn under him.<sup>53</sup>

THE thegn was also a magistrate, and might lose his dignity. The laws declared, that if a judge decided unjustly, he should pay to the king one hundred and twenty shillings, unless he could swear that he knew no better; and he was to lose his thegn-scipe, unless he could afterwards buy it of the king.<sup>54</sup>

<sup>50</sup> Wilk. Leg. 130. 144.

<sup>51</sup> Bede, lib. ii. c. 9. and lib. iv. c. 22. Alfred, p. 511. and 591.

<sup>52</sup> Wilk. Leg. 118. The thegn is not merely termed a liberalis homo, or free man, as in Tex. Roff, but his rank is mentioned in the higher degree of the comparative mood, as one of the liberalioribus, one of the more free.

<sup>53</sup> Wilk. Leg. 71.

<sup>54</sup> Ibid. 78. 135.

THEY are thus mentioned by Edgar: "In every byrig, and in every seire, I will have my kingly rights, as my father had; and my thegns shall have their thegn-ship in my time, as they had in my father's." <sup>56</sup>

C H A P.  
VII.

HIS were was two thousand thrymsa. <sup>56</sup> It is elsewhere stated as equal to that of six ceorls, or twelve hundred shillings. <sup>57</sup> If a thief took refuge with a thegn, he was allowed three days' asylum. <sup>58</sup>

THE judicial magistracy of the thegns appears from their assisting at the shire-gemots. The Northmen had also a dignity of this sort, for thegns are mentioned in Snorre.

I AM inclined to believe that the superior thanes were those who were afterwards called barons, for the laws of Henry the First put the titles as synonymous <sup>59</sup>; and that the next degree of thegns were

<sup>56</sup> Wilk. Leg. 80.

<sup>56</sup> Ibid. 71.

<sup>57</sup> Ibid. 64. 72. He is mentioned as synonymous with twelf-hynde man. Leg. Hem.; Wilk. 265.; and Du Cange voc. Liberalet. In another passage of the laws of Henry I. the twelf-hynde is mentioned as a man plene nobilis, and a thane, p. 269. Such a man was to swear as for sixty hydes of land. Wilk. 18. We may, therefore, consider this as the quantity of land of the higher thane. The comparative dignities of the land, in the time of Ethelstan, will appear from their different weres:

The king's was	- - -	30000 thrymsa.
Etheling's, or king's sons,		15000
Bishop	- - -	8000
Ealdorman	- - -	8000
Holdes and high-gerefa	-	4000
Mass thegn	- - -	2000
World's thegn	- - -	2000
Ceorl	- - -	266

<sup>58</sup> Wilk. Leg. 63.

<sup>59</sup> Thaini vel baronis. Wilk. Leg. p. 250. and 276. They are frequently classed with barons, as 272. The same is im-

## BOOK

## VIII.

those who were after the Conqueror's time termed knights, because five hydes of land were the feudum of a knight<sup>60</sup>, and the thegn of five hydes of land is mentioned as that rank of thegn which served the more dignified thegns.<sup>61</sup> These inferior thanes were called middling thanes.<sup>62</sup> A general idea of an Anglo-Saxon nobleman may be formed from the note below.<sup>63</sup>

plied in the Hist. Rames., who uses the term baronis where the Saxon word would have been thegn, p. 395. So Hist. El. 475.

<sup>60</sup> Quinque hidæ (faciunt) fœdum militis. Chr. T. Red. ap. Blamt. voc. Virgata.

<sup>61</sup> Wilk. Leg. p. 71. The Epistle of the prior and convent of Canterbury to Henry II. states, that before the Conqueror's time there were no knights in England but threnges, and that this king converted them into knights. Wilk. 429. This authority tends to show that Drengc was the Anglo-Saxon word at first applied to express their milites. It occurs frequently in their poems on martial subjects. The term cniht, at last superseded it. Drenchcs occur in Domesday.

<sup>62</sup> In Saxon medeme, and in Latin mediocris. The comparative ranks in Henry the First's time appear thus in their relevationes: *the comes*, eight horses, four helmets, four coats of mail, eight lances and shields, four swords, and one hundred mancæ of gold; *the king's thegn*, "who is next," four horses, two swords, four lances and shields, one helm and mail, and fifty mancæ; *the middling thane*, one horse, with his trappings and arms, and his half-hang. Leg. Hen. Wilk. 245. We may look on these as corresponding with the ranks of earls, barons, and knights.

<sup>63</sup> The Monk of Ramsay has left a full picture of what was then deemed an accomplished nobleman, in the following traits of the character of one of Edgar's favourites, and in Oswald's conversation with his brother:—

"His innate prudence, his noble birth, and approved vigour of body in warlike affairs, had obtained from the king much dignity and favour. He was distinguished for religion at home, and for the exercise of his strength and use of military discipline abroad. He adorned the nobility which he derived from

his birth by the beauty of his manners. Cheerful and pleasing in his countenance ; venerable in his mien ; courteous in his fluent conversation ; mild and sincere in his words : in duty impartial ; in his affections cautious ; with a heart resembling his face ; constant in good faith ; steady and devout. In counsel persuading what was right ; ending disputes by the equity of his judgments ; revering the divine love in others, and persuading them to cultivate it."

Oswald says of him : " Throughout the king's palace he was famed and esteemed ; his nod seemed to govern the royal mind ; clothed in silk and purple, he shared the royal banquets with us in the court," &c. His brother, also a favourite with the king, tells the bishop : " I am a man under the power of another, exercising also authority myself. Nobility of birth, abundance of wealth, the wisdom of the world, the grace of the lip, and the public favour, as well of the rich as of the poor, have alike exalted me ; yet I cannot apply to the good studies which I desire. Often the king's difficulties, or warlike exercises, or the distributions of presents to the knights, or the judgment of causes, or the exercise of punishment on the guilty, or some other forensic business, which I can hardly if ever decline without offence, occupy and fatigue me." *Hist. Ram.* 3 Gale, 395, 396.

## CHAP. VIII.

*Some Features of the Political State of the ANGLO-SAXONS.*

BOOK  
VIII.

**O**UR Saxon ancestors appear to us at first in that state in which a great nation is preparing to be formed on new principles, unattained by human experience before. The process was that of leading their population to such a practical system as would combine the liberty of the people with the independence and elevated qualities of a high-spirited nobility, and with the effective authority of a presiding king, and of such wise and improving laws as the collected wisdom of the nation should establish from the deliberations of its witenagemot, not legislating only for the powerful.

THE first stage in this political formation was the diffusion and independence of a great and powerful nobility. After these were radically fixed in the land, the influence and prerogatives of the king were enlarged, and the numbers of the free were increased. A new bulwark was also raised for the benefit of all the three classes, in a richly endowed church, who, besides their political utility in supporting, as circumstances pressed, each order of the state from the oppressions of the rest, introduced into the Anglo-Saxon mind all the literature it possessed. The course of events led all these great bodies into occasional collisions with each other, and with foreign invaders, till the actual practice of life had abated their mutual excesses and injurious powers. The nobility and great landed proprietors, however, still too much prepon-

derated in their exclusive privileges, when the Norman Conquest occurred to fix them in a greater subordination to the crown and to the law than the Anglo-Saxon constitution permitted. From the time of the Conquest the English aristocracy declined into an inferior, but permanent state of power, more compatible with the freedom and prosperity of the nation, and the liberties of the people, while the number of the free were proportionably multiplied.

THAT a great landed and independent aristocracy should have been first formed in the nation was the natural result of their mode of invading the Britons. Small fleets of Anglo-Saxon warriors successively landed, and forced from the Britons certain districts of the island, which their future warfare enlarged. Being comparatively few in number, the division of the conquered territory threw large tracts of land into the hands of the first chieftains and their followers, and the conquered natives were made their slaves. Their king being at first but one of themselves, elected as their war-king, had no pretensions to more power or prerogatives than they chose to concede; and hence a martial aristocracy, headed by a king, became the prevailing character of the Anglo-Saxon body politic. Their feuds with each other led the weaker party at all times to seek aid from the king, and the people had no other asylum than his power from the violence of their superiors. Hence the royal authority was perpetually invited into greater power and activity for the general benefit; and the Christian clergy made it venerable to the nation by the religious considerations which they attached to it.

BOOK  
VIII.

THUS the first state of the Anglo-Saxon nation was that of a great landed body, in proud independence, of fierce spirit, and attached to military habits. The rest of the nation were chiefly enslaved peasantry and domestics, and free burghs, with poor artisans, and tradesmen of small consideration and no greater property; with a clergy that, in their tithes and church payments, and in the endowments of their monasteries, were sharing with the nobles the land and property of the country.

BUT the same evil existed among the Anglo-Saxons that attends every country in which the laws of property have become established, and to which extensive commerce has not opened its channels; that of continually having an unprovided population, which had their subsistence to seek, and their love of consequence to gratify. The monasteries took off some portion of this disquieting body, which was the more formidable to the peaceful, from the warlike habits of the country; but the larger part sought their provision perpetually by the sword. Hence robbery and rapine became one of the main internal features of the country; and more of the laws of every Anglo-Saxon king were directed against such plunderers than to any other single subject. Hence the severity against those who had no lords or no friends to bail them. It was this habit that compelled the law to enjoin that every body should be armed, and have their appointed weapons ready, that the burghs and towns might be more secure, and the marauders repressed or pursued. The same cause urged Alfred and the witenagemots to put every man into a state of bail for good behaviour, and to shackle

what little trade there was, by making it illegal, unless transacted before deputed officers and witnesses, and by treating every traveller as a suspicious wanderer. Hence all who could afford it had knights and retainers in their pay, to protect their property and persons from violence. Hence the laws against binding free men, and selling them and Christians for slaves; for by seizing those who had property, the violent extorted a ransom, or by disposing of them as slaves, extracted a profit from their misery. Hence we find, amid the chronicles of the clergy, repeated instances of land torn by force and rapine even from them. And we may form some notion of the amount and danger of these depredations, by observing that, in the laws of Ina, they are described as of three classes. While they did not exceed seven men together they were called thieves (*theofas*); but from that number to thirty-five they were called a *hloth* or band; when they were more than thirty-five they were termed an army. Each of these offences were differently punished.<sup>1</sup> In the subsequent reigns we find *ealdormen*, *thegns*, and others, possessing themselves of lands by force from weaker proprietors.<sup>2</sup>

Much individual prosperity could not be expected from such habits; but the bounty of nature every year pours such riches from the earth, that, notwithstanding these habits of depredation, the property of the country could not fail to increase. Timber grows, grass diffuses itself, fruit trees blos-

<sup>1</sup> 1 Leg. Ina. Wilk. 17.

<sup>2</sup> The instances of these are numerous. See of one single monastery, Hist. El. p. 466, 467. 469. 482, 483, 484, 485, &c. &c.

BOOK  
VIII.

som, and animals multiply, and minerals enlarge, whether man labours, idles, or combats. But there were plenty of slaves to pursue the husbandry that was needed, and therefore all the natural riches of animal, vegetable, and mineral production were perpetually accumulating in the country. These are the foundations of wealth in all; and though the Anglo-Saxons had at first but little external or internal traffic, and imperfect roads, except those left by the Romans, yet the permanent property of the country was increasing in the multiplied permanent comforts of each individual. Every additional article of furniture or convenience from the forest or the mine; from the horns, hair, hides, or bones of his animals; every barn of corn and stock of salted provision, or pile of turf, wood, or peat, beyond his immediate consumption, was, as well as the stones he dug from the quarry, or the articles he manufactured from his flax or metals, an accumulation of actual property to himself, and an augmentation of the general wealth of the nation. All these articles were every year accumulating in the country, and many were by degrees exchanged for the gold and silver, and natural produce of other countries, as slowly increasing trade gradually brought them from abroad. Hence every reign discovers to us some indication of an increasing affluence, as well as an increasing population of the Anglo-Saxon nation.

THE progress of the Anglo-Saxons to wealth was accelerated by the previous civilisation of Britain. The Romans had retired from it but a few years before their invasion, and had raised many temples and buildings in the island, and filled them with appropriate furniture, of which much re-

mained to assist the ingenuity and excite the taste of the new conquerors. That gold and silver had abounded in the island, while it was possessed by the Romans and Britons, the coins that have been found at every period since, almost every year, sufficiently testify; and it was the frequency of these emerging to view which made treasure-trove an important part of our ancient laws, and which is mentioned by Alfred as one of the means of becoming wealthy. In the earliest Anglo-Saxon laws, almost all the penalties are pecuniary, in silver coin. That bullion was not deficient in the country, but was continually increasing, appears from the numerous instances of purchase monies given in gold and silver, either coined or by weight, for lands, of which the charters still remain. By the quantities of money given to buy land for a monastery, by one bishop and by its first abbot<sup>s</sup>, it

C H A P.  
VIII.

<sup>s</sup> Thus for the Ely monastery they paid to various persons the following sums:—

100 pounds and a golden cross,	8 pounds,
100 aureos,	80 aurei,
60 pounds of silver,	200 aurei,
20 aureos,	6 pounds,
40 shillings,	8 pounds,
15 pounds,	12 pounds,
100 shillings,	80 shillings,
7 pounds,	7 pounds,
4 pounds,	90 aurei,
15 pounds,	112 memmi,
20 shillings,	100 shillings,
30 aurei,	20 shillings,
200 aurei,	30 pounds,
30 aurei,	40 shillings,
11 pounds,	40 pounds,
20 pounds,	4 pounds, 18 pence,
50 aurei,	100 shillings,
	15 pounds,

**B O O K** would appear that the church and monasteries had  
 { **VIII.** abundance of it; and indeed the pecuniary payments appointed for them, besides their tithes and presents, gave them great facilities of acquiring it<sup>4</sup>, as the fines and gafols poured still more into the royal exchequer. The great quantity of payments recorded in Domesday-book, as due to the king, in pounds, shillings, and pence, from the various subdivisions of lands in every county, show both the diffusion and the abundance of bullion among the Anglo-Saxons.<sup>5</sup>

BUT our ancestors by their conquests among the Britons obtained immediately abundance of cattle, corn, slaves, agricultural instruments, and cultivated lands. They found in the island, as Gildas and Bede state, twenty-eight noble cities, and in-

---

100 shillings,	10 pounds,
50 aurei,	40 aurei,
20 pounds, 10 aurei,	20 pounds,
15 pounds,	11 pounds,
100 aurei,	4 pounds.

Hist. Eliens. 465—488.

<sup>4</sup> Thus a plough-alms, fifteen days before Easter; St. Peter's penny on his anniversary; the church sceat on St. Martin's; the light-money thrice a year; and the soul sceat at every grave. Wilk. Leg. Sax. 121. The church sceat was enforced by Ina, under a penalty of forty shillings, and twelve times the money withheld. Ib. p. 15. Besides these certainties, a quantity of money was always coming to them from wills, as already noticed. Other occasions also produced it. Thus a thegn, to have his parish church dedicated, brought a silver scutella of forty shillings. Hist. El. 467.

<sup>5</sup> That the clergy and monasteries advanced money to the landed proprietors, we have an instance in Ely monastery. Os-lac had to pay the king Edgar one hundred aureos; he had not so much, and borrowed of the bishop forty aureos, for which he gave him forty acres. Hist. El. 476.

numerable castles, with their walls, towers, and gates. Productive veins of copper, iron, lead, and even silver had been opened. A great supply of shell-fish, yielding a beautiful scarlet dye; and muscles with pearls, mostly white, but some of other colours, abounded on their shores. The marine animals, whales, seals, and dolphins, frequented the coasts; salmons and other fish their rivers; and eels and water-fowl their pools and marshes. Vines in some places, and useful forests in all, increased their general resources of natural wealth.<sup>6</sup>

SETTLING in a country thus abundantly supplied with the means of affluence, it is not surprising that the Anglo-Saxons became a prosperous people, notwithstanding the retarding effects of their military and predatory habits. After the reign of Alfred they became gradually more commercial. The invasions of the Danes had the effect of connecting them with the countries in the north of Europe, and of leading them to distant voyages of intercourse and traffic. Their progress was such, that by the time of the Norman invasion they had become both populous and rich. Some evidence of their extending intercourse is given by the facts, that some Moors or Africans, as well as Spaniards, were in the country at that time.<sup>7</sup>

From the views that have been presented of the Anglo-Saxon classes of society, it is obvious that their unprovided poor must have been chiefly of the free. The vassal peasantry of the great and the clergy had their masters to depend upon or to

<sup>6</sup> See Gildas, and Bede's Hist.

<sup>7</sup> Domesday-book mentions *Matthæus de Mauritanie*; and also a *Servus*, who was an *Afrus*, in the county of Gloucester; also Alured as *Hispanus*. P. 165. 170. 162. 86.

**BOOK**  
**VIII.**  
 relieve them. But when the freemen were destitute, their situation must have been deplorable. Jealously suspected and pursued by the laws, if they wandered to seek or solicit subsistence; they had no resource, if they could not join armies, or become minstrels and jugglers, or be enlisted as retainers in the service of the great, but to engage as servants to burghers and others, or to become robbers, outlaws, and foresters. Poor freemen are several times noticed in Domesday.<sup>8</sup>

It is perhaps in no age from the insufficient productions of nature that any would perish from want. The existing food on the earth always exceeds the wants of its actual inhabitants; but it cannot be distributed by any laws or polity just as individual necessities require. It can only flow to all through the regular channels of civilised society, on the system of equivalent exchange; and the means of acquiring this frequently fail. It is from the temporary want of an equivalent to exchange for the food they need, and not from the non-existence of that food, that so much misery usually pervades society, and at times rises to an afflicting height. Yet the evil cannot be remedied by a legislature without invading those sacred rights of property which are the cement of the social fabric. Benevolence must effect on this point what no law can command. The poor can only put themselves in possession of equivalents to exchange for food by their personal industry. Where the demand for their labour declines, a wise and discriminating charity must be active to contrive employments for the distressed, that they may acquire the means of obtaining subsistence from those who have it to

<sup>8</sup> As in Suffolk, fifty-four freemen satis inopes.

dispose of, or must in her kindness distribute that subsistence without the equivalent, until increasing occupation can enable the distressed again to provide it.

C H A P.  
VIII.

THESE principles were not understood by our ancestors ; yet the benevolent feelings of the clergy were always labouring to impress on the affluent the duty of succouring the needy. The church gave them the emphatic name of "the poor of God ;" and they are frequently so mentioned in the laws : thus presenting them in the most interesting of all relations, as those which the Deity himself presents to human benevolence as his peculiar class, and for whom he solicits our favourable attentions.

BUT the supplies from individual liberality are always precarious, and usually temporary, and not so salutary to the necessitous as those which, with a conscious exertion of power, independence, and self-merit, they can obtain by their own industry. It was therefore a great blessing to the Anglo-Saxon society, that, as their population increased, an augmented traffic arose, and employments became more numerous. The property of the landholders gradually multiplied in permanent articles raised from their animals, quarries, mines, and woods ; in their buildings, their furniture, their warlike stores, their leather apparatus, glass, pigments, vessels, and costly dresses. An enlarged taste for finery and novelty spread as their comforts multiplied. Foreign wares were valued and sought for ; and what Anglo-Saxon toil or labour could produce, to supply the wants or gratify the fancies of foreigners, was taken out to barter. All these things gave so many channels of nutrition to those who had no lands, by presenting them with oppor-

B O O K  
VIII.

tunities for obtaining the equivalents on which their subsistence depended. As the bullion of the country increased, it became, either coined or uncoined, the general and permanent equivalent. As it could be laid up without deterioration, and was always operative when it once became in use, the abundance of society increased, because no one hesitated to exchange his property for it. Until coin became the medium of barter, most would hesitate to part with the productions they had reared, and all classes suffered from the desire of hoarding. Coin or bullion released the commodities that all society wanted, from individual fear, prudence, or covetousness, that would for its own uses have withheld them, and sent them floating through society in ten thousand ever-dividing channels. The Anglo-Saxons were in this happy state. Bullion, as we have remarked, sufficiently abounded in the country<sup>9</sup>, and was in full use in exchange for all things. In every reign after Athelstan the trade and employment of the country increased. Pride and the love of pleasure favoured their growth, and still more the fair taste for greater conveniences in every class of society. Population multiplied, and found more occupation for the numbers of its free classes, until it reached that amount at the time of the Conquest, which we shall proceed to enumerate.

<sup>9</sup> Many facts are mentioned in the Chronicles, implying the quantity of the valuable metals in the monasteries, &c. Thus Hereward in his romantic attack of Peterborough, took from the crucifix there the crown of pure gold, and its footstool of red gold; the cope, all of gold and silver, hidden in the steeple; also two gilt shrines, and nine of silver; fifteen great crosses of gold and silver; and "so much gold and silver, and so much treasure in money, robes and books, that no man can compute the amount." Gurney's Sax. Chron. p. 215.

CHAP. IX.

*Sketch of the ANGLO-SAXON Population.*

**I**N Domesday-book, we have a record of the Anglo-Saxon population, which, though not complete, yet affords us sufficient information to satisfy our general curiosity. The following summary has been taken from its statement. For the convenience of the reader the counties there noticed will be enumerated alphabetically here.

CHAP.  
IX.

BEDFORDSHIRE (*Bedefordscire*).

Chief proprietors	55	Molendini	86
Prefects of the		Silvatici	72
king and others	21	Milites	5
Villani	1766	Tenentes	102
Bordarii	1113	Piscatores	1
Servi	454	Burgesses of Bedford	9
Sochmanni	88		
			3772

BERKSHIRE.

Chief proprietors	63	Molini	166
Others persons	13	Piscar.	70
Villani	2424	Silvat.	67
Bordarii	1802	Others	169
Cotarii	732	Hagas noticed	459
Servi	772		
			6737

BUCKINGHAMSHIRE (*Bockingamscire*).

Chief proprietors	56	Molini	129
King's thanes	12	Silvatici	122
Villani	2885	Moldarii	1
Bordarii	1320	Cotarii	10
Servi	828	Burgenses of Buck	52
Sochmanni	19	Others	110
Piscatores	19		
			5568

## HISTORY OF THE

BOOK  
VIII.CAMBRIDGESHIRE (*Greutebracire*).

Chief proprietors	42	Mol.	121
Villani	1898	Porcarii	7
Bordarii	1438	Silvatici	26
Servi	563	Tenentes	53
Cotarii	742	Milites	34
Sochmanni	245	Others	6
Mold.	2	Burgenses of Cam-	
Pisc.	34	bridge	295

5506

CHESHIRE (*Cestrescire*).

Villani	768	Salinæ	10
Bordarii	633	Tenentes	72
Servi	223	Francigenæ	39
Bovarii	184	Milites	12
Radmanni	134	Drenches	54
Silvatici	127	Burgenses, C.	559
Piscat.	29	Others	29

2873

CORNWALL (*Cornvalgie*).

Chief proprietors	6	Mol.	4
Villani	1738	Pasturæ	109
Bordarii	2441	Silvæ	38
Servi	1148	Cerevisarii	40
Coliberti	49	Tenentes	23
Salinæ	10		

5606

DERBYSHIRE (*Derbyscire*).

Chief proprietors	15	Mol.	68
Taini	22	Silvæ	71
Villani	1823	Presbyters	51
Bordarii	731	Tenentes	167
Servi	16	Censarii	41
Sochmanni	127	Others	6

3140

DEVONSHIRE (*Devonscire*).

Chief proprietors	50	Bordarii	4814
Taini	18	Servi	3210
Servientes regis	8	Cotarii	19
Villani	8246	Coleberti	32

# ANGLO-SAXONS.

245

Coscez	32	Tenentes	118
Porcarii	296	Burg. of Exeter	476
Piscat.	17	Barnstaple	83
Salinæ	117	Lideford	69
Mol.	79	Totness	110
Pasturæ	249	Ochemanton	4
Silvæ	157	Others	41

CHAP.  
IX.

18,245

## DORSET (*Dorseti*).

Chief proprietors	56	Silvæ	239
Villani	2663	Moleni	269
Bordarii	2827	Censorii	9
Servi	1165	Burgenses	655
Cotarii	185	Liberi hom.	10
Coleberti	33	Taini	127
Salinarii	100	Taini proprietors	24
Pasturæ	334	Other persons	37
Coscez	146		

8679

## ESSEX (*Excessa*).

Chief proprietors	79	Piscat	48
Villani	4014	Salinæ	28
Bordarii	6329	Others	30
Servi	2041	Censarii	36
Sochmanni	343	Burg. of Malden	180
Liberi homines	306	Orsett	100
Mol.	129	Sudbury	5
Silvæ	437	Colchester	400
Prebyters	44		

14,549

## GLOUCESTERSHIRE (*Glowcesterscire*).

Chief proprietors	66	Mol.	254
Taini	16	Silvæ	45
Villani	3071	Piscat.	90
Bordarii	1901	Salinæ	7
Servi	2423	Others	124
Radchenistri	119	Burgenses, &c.	144
Coleberti	105		

8965

**BOOK**  
**VIII.**

**HAMPSHIRE.**

General amount	-	-	-	9807
Isle of Wight	-	-	-	824

---

 10,631
**HEREFORDSHIRE.**

Chief proprietors	37	Presbyters	26
Villani	2052	Prepositi	33
Bordarii	1381	Bedelli	21
Servi	966	Liberi	15
Bovarii	130	Homines	204
Radchenistri	41	Wallenses	41
Radmanni	38	Fabri	23
Coleberti	16	Milites	34
Cotarii	19	Buri	18
Mol.	95	Clerici	19
Sylvæ	45	Other persons	26
Piscat.	12	Subtenentes	78
Porcarii	14	Hereford burg.	70
Salinæ	8	Clifford burg.	16
France-genæ	23	Another	9

---

 5510
**HERTFORDSHIRE (*Herfordscire*).**

Chief proprietors	43	Silvatici	87
Taini regis	12	Mold.	9
Villani	1763	Tenentes	194
Bordarii	1118	Burgenses of	
Servi	575	Escewille	14
Cotarii	853	St. Alban's	46
Sochmanni	57	Berchamsteed	52
Mol.	95	Stanestede	6

---

 4924
**HUNTINGDONSHIRE (*Huntedunscire*).**

Chief proprietors	27	Piscatores	12
Taini	7	Silvatici	28
Villani	1886	Presbyters and eccl.	46
Bordarii	383	Tenentes	42
Sochmanni	23	Milites	16
Molin.	33	Homines	8

---

 2511

# ANGLO-SAXONS.

247

CHAP.  
IX.

## KENT (*Chenth*).

Chief proprietors	305	Piscat.	158
Villani	6676	Burghers of	
Bordarii	9967	Dover	42
Servi	1142	Canterbury	1600
Cotarii	308	Sandwich	415
Molin.	212	Rochester	7
Mol.	107	Romeney	166
Salinæ	130	Hide	231

14,866

## LEICESTERSHIRE (*Ledecestre*).

Chief proprietors	52	Presbyteri	34
Villani	2446	France-genæ	37
Bordarii	1285	Tenentes	101
Servi	374	Milites	27
Sochmanni	1716	Others	9
Molin.	105	Burgenses	371
Silvæ	56		

6613

## LINCOLNSHIRE.

Tenentes	68	Salinæ	361
Taini	27	Piscarii	211
Sochmanni	11,322	Censorii	20
Villani	7168	Burgenses	274
Bordarii	3737	Other persons	260
Molini	414	Lincoln mans.	982
Moldarii	76	Stamford	317
Silvæ	252	Terchesey	102
Ecclesiæ	226		

25,817

## MIDDLESEX.

Chief proprietors	23	Molini	34
Villani	1124	Silvæ	35
Bordarii	367	Tenentes	106
Servi	112	Stanes burg.	46
Cotarii	442		

2289

B O O K  
VIII.NORFOLK (*Nordfolc*).

Chief proprietors	62	Piscatores	72
Villani	4528	Salme	240
Bordarii	8679	Vara apium	187
Servi	1066	Other persons	61
Sochmanni	5521	Burg. Norwich	883
Liberi homines	4981	Others there	68
Molini	403	Bordarii there	480
Silvæ	180	Yarmouth	70
Ecclesiæ	159	Thetford	725

---

 28,965
NORTHAMPTONSHIRE (*Northantscire*).

Chief proprietors	62	Silvæ	112
Villani	3901	Milites	50
Bordarii	2011	Tenentes	125
Servi	879	Presbyteri	55
Sochmanni	915	Other persons	11
Molini	249	Burg. North.	295

---

 8665
NOTTINGHAMSHIRE (*Snotinghamscire*).

Chief proprietors	28	Presbyteri	63
Taini	26	Piscatores	32
Villani	2555	Tenentes	201
Bordarii	1099	Other persons	44
Servi	26	Censorius	2
Sochmanni	1565	Burg. Nottingh.	363
Molini	118	Derby, were	243
Silvæ	69	Others	56

---

 6490

## RUTLANDSHIRE.

Villani	722	Sochmanni	2
Bordarii	109		

---

 833

## OXFORDSHIRE.

Chief proprietors	77	Bordarii	1838
Villani	3525	Servi	938

# ANGLO-SAXONS.

249

Piscatores	38	Salina	1
Molini	170	Houses in Oxford,	
Silvæ	41	were	721
Pasturæ	32	Other persons	80
			<hr/>
			7461

CHAP.  
IX.

## SHROPSHIRE (*Sciropescire*).

Chief proprietors	9	Presbyteri	54
Villani	1726	Molini	88
Bordarii	1118	Silvæ	69
Servi	991	Piscatores	31
Bovarii	388	Salinæ	6
Radmanni	173	Wallenses	64
Radchenistri	3	Tenentes	98
Cotarii	24	Other persons	193
Cosces	5	Burgenses	191
Coliberti	13	<hr/>	
			5344

## SOMERSETSHIRE (*Summersete*).

Chief proprietors	46	Gablatores	7
King's thanes	17	Burgenses	
Other proprietors	11	Bath, Bade	30
Villani	4947	Tautone	64
Bordarii	4377	Lanperth	39
Servi	1565	Alsebruge	32
Coliberti	156	Givelcestre	108
Cotarii	299	Meleburn	61
Cosces	43	Bremet	17
Piscarii	21	Bristow	10
Porcarii	57	Masuræ	22
Molini	323	Subordinate te-	
Pasturæ	156	nentes	205
Silvæ	206	<hr/>	
			12,819

## STAFFORDSHIRE (*Statfordscire*).

Chief proprietors	16	Molini	62
King's thanes	18	Silvæ	143
Villani	1758	Presbyteri	22
Bordarii	897	Piscarii	2
Servi	230	Liberi homines	20

## HISTORY OF THE

BOOK VII. }	Militia	5	Subordinate tenentes	84
	Burgenses	217	—	
	Other persons	24		8498

**SUFFOLK** (*Sudfulc*).

Chief proprietors	72	Silvæ	152
Villani	3024	Molendini	220
Bordarii	6292	Ecclesiæ	358
Servi	947	Piscatores	60
Sochmanni	1014	Salinæ	18
Liberi homines	8012	Burgenses	1924
			<hr/>
			22,098

**SURRY** (*Sudrie*).

Chief proprietors	40	Silvæ	86
Villani	2327	Piscarii	16
Bordarii	921	Porcarii and others	23
Servi	469	Milites	6
Cotarii	288	Sochmanni	9
Molini	121	Lib. homines	4
Ecclesiæ	62	Burg. Gildeford	175
			<hr/> 4547

**SUSSEX** (*Sudserre*).

Tenentes	753	Berquarii	10
Villani	5866	Propositus manerii	1
Bordarii	2510	Molini	148
Cotarii	738	Hagæ	26
Servi	415	Salinæ	285
Oppidani and		Piscariæ	30
Burgenses	830	Ecclesiæ	103
Presbyteri	3		
			<hr/> 11,718

**WARWICKSHIRE** (*Warwicscire*).

Chief proprietors		Silvæ	110
and Thanes	43	Presbyteri	59
Villani	3537	Salinæ	3
Bordarii	1705	Tenentes	109
Servi	726	Liberi homines	20
Molini	121	Milites	24

# ANGLO-SAXONS.

251

Francigeni	15	Burgenses of		CHAP. IX.
Other persons	61	Warwick	398	
		Tamewerd	10	
			<hr/>	6941

## WILTSHIRE (*Wiltescire*).

Chief proprietors	66	Coleberti	252
Villani	3290	Porcarii	87
Bordarii	2713	Pasturæ	206
Servi	1475	Silvæ	143
Cosces	1385	Ecclesiæ	29
Cotarii	284	Burgenses	371
Molini	404	Other persons	44
			<hr/>
			10,749

## WORCESTERSHIRE (*Wirecestrescire*).

Chief proprietors	27	Bovariæ	65
Villani	1524	Molini	107
Bordarii	1725	Silvæ	87
Servi	813	Salinæ	50
Cotarii	39	Piscarii	18
Cotmanni	19	Francigenæ	23
Radchenistri	2	Presbyteri	21
Radmanni	52	Other persons	93
Coleberti	9	Burgenses	242
			<hr/>
			4916

## YORKSHIRE (*Euruicscire*).

Chief proprietors	65	Piscarii	61
Villani	5061	Censores	36
Bordarii	1842	Coteros	16
Sochmanni	438	Other persons	68
Molini	103	Tenentes, about	200
Silvæ	122	Burg. of York	1716
Presbyteri	130	Other burghers	110
			<hr/>
			9968

General total 

---

 900,785

**BOOK**  
**VIII.**

**DANISH COUNTIES.**

Norfolk	28,365	Essex	14,549
Lincolnshire	25,819	Yorkshire	9,968
Suffolk	22,093		
			<hr/> 100,794

**OTHER COUNTIES PLACED ACCORDING TO THE NUMBER.**

Devonshire	18,205	Buckinghamshire	5,563
Kent	14,866	Herefordshire	5,510
Somerset	12,819	Cambridgeshire	5,506
Sussex	11,718	Shropshire	5,344
Wilts	10,749	Herts	4,924
Hampshire	10,631	Worcestershire	4,916
Dorset	8,879	Surry	4,547
Northamptonshire	8,665	Bedfordshire	3,772
Gloucestershire	8,365	Staffordshire	3,498
Oxfordshire	7,461	Derbyshire	3,140
Warwickshire	6,941	Cheshire	2,873
Berkshire	6,737	Huntingdon	2,511
Leicestershire	6,613	Middlesex	2,289
Nottinghamshire	6,490	Rutland	833
Cornwall	5,606		
			<hr/> 199,991

**TOTAL.**

Danish counties	-	-	-	-	-	-	100,794
The others	-	-	-	-	-	-	199,991
							<hr/>
Persons mentioned in Domesday-book <sup>1</sup>	-	-					300,785

THESE may be considered as so many families, and if we take five as the general average of a family for all the counties, it would make the Anglo-Saxon population actually alluded to, at the time of the Conquest, 1,504,925, or a million and a half; but this enumeration was made after the

---

<sup>1</sup> I have taken the numbers for Hampshire and Sussex from Mr. Rickman's enumeration; and have, in all the rest, assumed, as he has done in these, a man for every silva, molinum, pastura, domus, &c. that is mentioned.

destructive wars between William and the English<sup>2</sup>, and after his dreadful devastation of Yorkshire, which left one hundred miles of the country, north of the Humber, a mere desert<sup>3</sup>; hence the number of that county is so small. Four counties are also entirely omitted; as Cumberland, Durham, Lancaster, and Northumberland.<sup>4</sup> But London, a century afterwards, is stated to have furnished sixty thousand fighting men<sup>5</sup>; therefore its population cannot have then been less than three hundred thousand persons. In Domesday-book it is also obvious that all the burghers, or actual inhabitants of the cities and burghs, are not mentioned. When Canterbury was burnt by the Danes in 1006, it contained eight thousand men, of whom only eighty-four survived the ruin. Only one thousand six hundred are mentioned in Domesday-book eighty years afterwards, though a city so venerated and celebrated must have recovered its prosperity. But in other cities and towns it is manifest that almost all the residents are omitted; as in Bristol, where only ten are noticed, though this was at that time

C H A P.

IX.

<sup>2</sup> The effects of these wars appear frequently in Domesday. Thus in the county of Dorset, it is said that in Dorchester *were*, in the time of the Confessor, 172 houses, but that 100 had been entirely destroyed; so in Wareham 143, of which 73 were "*penitus destructæ*;" so in Shaftesbury 38 out of 104, p. 75. So in Oxford, though 243 houses paid gold, yet 478 had become so "*vastæ*" as to yield none. In Ipswich 328 were "*vastatæ*." In York 540 are noticed as "*vacuæ*." Many such occur in other counties.

<sup>3</sup> See Turner's Hist. Eng. vol. i.

<sup>4</sup> These were the border counties, the seat of almost continual warfare; and part of them were then in the power of Malcolm, the king of Scotland, especially Cumberland and Durham.

<sup>5</sup> See Stephanides's Life of Becket.

## BOOK

## VIII.

a great trading city; only seventy at Yarmouth; fifty-two only at Buckingham; nine only at Bedford; five at Sudbury; seventy at Hereford; forty-two at Dover; and but forty-six at St. Alban's, though a place peculiarly frequented and respected. Winchester, though then a large town, is not mentioned.

ALL the monks, and nearly all the parochial clergy, are omitted.\* So in the different counties it will be found that, excepting in the Danish counties, and in Leicestershire and Nottinghamshire, which they also pervaded, very few of the actual freemen are enumerated. It would seem as if those persons were chiefly, if not only, recorded whose lands and tenements rendered some payments or services to the crown or state, or had been supposed to do so. Hence there is a careful enumeration of the extent and cultivators of the lands which had to defend themselves; that is, to contribute to the military force of the country in the proportions alluded to, but little more than this is attended to; and though this contribution was a very general obligation on the landed property of the country, yet the charters show us that some parts were exempt from it. If we take all these things into consideration, we shall perceive that the Anglo-Saxon population, in the period just before the Norman conquest, must have exceeded TWO MILLIONS.

THIS enumeration intimates to us the political benefits which resulted from the invasions of the

\* We may infer the extent of the omission as to the parochial clergy from recollecting that the parish churches in England, in the middle ages, were stated to be 46,822.

Northmen. They appear to have planted in the colonies they occupied a numerous race of free-men; and their counties seem to have been well peopled. Thus,

CHAP.  
IX.

In Essex	343 sochmanni.
	306 liberi homines.
Leicestershire	1716 sochmanni.
Lincolnshire	11,322 sochmanni.
Nottinghamshire	1565 sochmanni.
Norfolk	5521 sochmanni.
	4981 lib. hom.
Suffolk	8012 lib. hom.
	1014 sochmanni.
York	438 sochmanni.

THIS enumeration of the population shows how large a proportion of Englishmen were then in the servile state; for that villani were in a state of bondage is manifest from the manner in which they are mentioned in our ancient Glanville<sup>7</sup>, Bracton, and Fleta<sup>8</sup>, who say that even holding a freehold does not give liberty to a villanus, a remark not observed by those who have deemed villani free peasants, because they were found to have lands. The bordarii, servi, cotarii, cosces, &c. were similarly circumstanced. In Domesday-book, burghers are mentioned as having bordarii under them. There can be no doubt that nearly three-fourths of the Anglo-Saxon population were in a state of slavery; and nothing could have broken the powerful chains of law and force by which the landed aristocracy held their people in bondage but such events as the Norman conquest, and the civil wars which it excited and fostered, and in which such numbers of the nobility perished; and also that

**B O O K** **VIII.** wise and humane law which directed that if a slave was not claimed by his lord within a limited period, he should be presumed to be free. It was perhaps as much by the destruction of the Anglo-Saxon great proprietors as by their own colonists near the Baltic, that the number of the free were so numerous in the districts where the Danes had predominated.

# BOOK IX.

*Their POETRY, LITERATURE, ARTS, and SCIENCES.*

## CHAP. I.

*Their Native or Vernacular Poetry.*

AS poetry has been always classed among the most interesting productions of the human mind, few topics of human research are more curious than the history of this elegant art, from its rude beginning to that degree of excellence to which it has long been raised by our ingenious countrymen.

CHAP.

I.

IN no country can the progress of the poetical genius and taste be more satisfactorily traced than in our own. During that period which this work attempts to commemorate, we find it in its earliest state. It could, indeed, have been scarcely more rude, to have been at all discernible. But though its dress was homely, and its features coarse, yet it was preparing to assume the style, the measures, and the subjects, which in subsequent ages were so happily displayed as to deserve the notice of the latest posterity.

THE poetry of the Anglo-Saxons was of two sorts; the poems which they composed in their own tongue, and the poems which they wrote in Latin. These two kinds of poetry were completely distinct from each other; — distinct in origin; distinct in style.

THE Anglo-Saxon native poetry may be distinguished into its mind and its style.

Their  
Native  
Poetry.

## BOOK

## IX.

IN the mind of poetry we look for its imagination, its feeling, and its force of thought; but these in all ages obey and display the tastes, sentiment, and habits of the passing day. In the Anglo-Saxon times, though women were highly respected and valued, yet that cultivated feeling which we call love, in its intellectual tenderness and finer sympathies, was neither predominant nor probably known. The stern and active passions were the rulers of society, and all the amusements were gross or severe. Women were revered, but not loved; and hence, except in the little effusions which have been noticed of our self-cultivated Alfred, there is no affectionate allusion to the fair sex in any Anglo-Saxon poem.

WAR and religion were the absorbing subjects of this period, and all the imagination, and feeling, and thought which exist in the Anglo-Saxon poetry are connected with one or both of these topics. There can be no poetry without imagination and feeling; but these endeared qualities appear in different nations, and in different states of society, in very dissimilar forms.

IN the Anglo-Saxon poetry they took the peculiar shape of the metaphor and the periphrasis. The imagination exerted itself in framing those abrupt and imperfect hints or fragments of similes which we call metaphors, and the feeling expressed its emotions by that redundant repetition of phrases, which, though it added little to the meaning of the poet's lay, was yet the emphatic effusion of his heart, and excited consenting sympathies in those to whom it was addressed. This habit of paraphrasing the sentiment is the great peculiarity of the mind of the Anglo-Saxon poetry;

the metaphor may be frequently observed, but the periphrasis is never long absent. C H A P.  
I.

THE style of their poetry was as peculiar. It has been much disputed by what rules or laws the Saxons arranged their poetical phrases. I have observed a passage in the general works of Bede which may end the controversy, by showing that they used no rules at all, but adopted the simpler principle of consulting only the natural love of melody, of which the human organs of hearing have been made susceptible; and of using that easy allocation of syllables which pleased the musical ear. In defining *rythmus*, Bede says,

“It is a modulated composition of words, not according to the laws of metre, but *adapted in the number of its syllables to the judgment of the ear*, as are the verses of our vulgar (or native) poets.” —

“Metre is an artificial rule with modulation; *rythmus* is the modulation without the rule. For the most part, you find, by a sort of chance, some rule in *rythm*; yet this is not from an artificial government of the syllables, but because the sound and modulation lead to it. The vulgar poets effect this rustically; the skilful attain it by their skill; as,

Rex eterne! Domine!  
Rerum Creator omnium!  
Qui eras ante secula!<sup>1</sup>

FROM this passage it is obvious that Bede's poetical countrymen wrote their vernacular verses without any other rule than that of pleasing the ear. To such a selection and arrangement of words as produced this effect, they added the habit of frequently omitting the usual particles, and of conveying their meaning in short and contracted phrases. The only artifices they used were those of inversion and transition.

<sup>1</sup> Bedæ Op. vol. i. p. 57.

BOOK  
IX.Their Per-  
iphrasis.

THE most ancient piece of Anglo-Saxon poetry which we possess, is that fragment of the song of the ancient Cædmon which Alfred has inserted in his translation of Bede. Cædmon was a monk, who accustomed himself to religious poetry, which he began late in life. He died in 680.

THE fragment, which has descended to us, he made on waking in a stall of oxen which he was appointed to guard during the night.<sup>2</sup> The original shows the rythm to which Bede alludes :

Now we should praise  
The Guardian of the heavenly  
kingdom ;

The mighty Creator,  
And the thoughts of his mind,  
Glorious Father of his works !  
As he, of every glory  
Eternal Lord !

Established the beginning ;  
So he first shaped  
The earth for the children of men,  
And the heav'ns for its canopy.

Holy Creator !  
The middle region,  
The Guardian of Mankind,  
The eternal Lord,  
Afterwards made  
The ground for men.  
Almighty Ruler !

Nu we sceolan heprizean  
Deaƿon ƿiceƿ ƿeaƿb ;

Metodeƿer mihte,  
And hiƿ mœb geƿhanc,  
Weopc ƿulƿop ƿæƿer !  
Sƿa he ƿulƿƿer geƿƿær  
Ece bƿihten !

Opb onƿcealbe ;  
De æƿert geƿcop  
Eonƿhan beapnum,  
Deofon to ƿofe.  
ƿalig ƿcƿppent !  
Tha miƿban gearb,  
Mon cƿynner ƿeaƿb,  
Ece bƿihtne,  
Æfter teobe  
Fƿum folƿan ;  
Fƿea almitig !

*Alfred's Bede, 597.*

In these eighteen lines the verbal rythm and periphrasis of the style are evident. Eight lines are occupied by so many phrases to express the Deity. These repetitions are very abruptly introduced ; sometimes they come in like so many interjections :

<sup>2</sup> Bede, iv. 24. Alfred has preserved the Saxon.

The Guardian of the heavenly kingdom ;  
The mighty Creator —  
Glorious Father of his works ! —  
Eternal Lord ! —  
Holy Creator !  
The Guardian of Mankind,  
The Eternal Lord —  
Almighty Ruler !

THREE more of the lines are used for the periphrasis of the first making the world :

He established the beginning ;  
He first shaped —  
He afterwards made —

THREE more lines are employed to express the earth as often by a periphrasis :

The earth for the children of men —  
The middle region —  
The ground for men —

So that of eighteen lines, the periphrasis occupies fourteen, and in so many lines only conveys three ideas ; and all that the eighteen lines express is simply the first verse of the book of Genesis, “ In the beginning God created the heavens and the earth.”

No Saxon poem can be inspected without the periphrasis being found to be the leading characteristic. The elegant Menology in the Cotton Library displays it in its very beginning. The rythm in the placing of the syllables is also apparent :

Crist pær acennȳð  
Cȳnnȳa pulþon  
On mibne pinter :  
Œæpe theoben !  
Ece ælmihtig !  
On thy eahteothan bæȳ  
hælenð gehæten  
Deoƿon riȳes ƿearþ.

Christ was born  
the King of Glory  
in mid-winter :  
Illustrious King !  
Eternal ! almighty !  
On the eighth day  
he was called the Saviour,  
Ruler of heaven's kingdom.

**BOOK**  
**IX.**

As all the specimens of their native poetry which will be adduced in this chapter will be found to abound with periphrastical amplifications, it will be unnecessary to introduce more instances here.

**Their Me-  
taphors.**

THEIR periphrasis is always mingled with metaphors ; and as these will be seen very frequently in the subsequent citations, they need not be particularised. One striking instance will suffice, which we will take from Cedmon's periphrasis and metaphors to express the ark ; he calls it successively, the ship, the sea-house, the greatest of watery chambers, the ark, the great sea-house, the high mansion, the holy wood, the house, the great sea-chest, the greatest of treasure-houses, the vehicle, the mansion, the house of the deep, the palace of the ocean, the cave, the wooden fortress, the floor of the waves, the receptacle of Noah, the moving roof, the feasting-house, the bosom of the vessel, the nailed building, the ark of Noah, the vehicle of the ark, the happiest mansion, the building of the waves, the foaming ship, the happy receptacle.

**Their  
Omission  
of Par-  
ticles.**

ANOTHER prevailing feature of the Anglo-Saxon poetry was the omission of the little particles of speech, those abbreviations of language which are the invention of man in the more cultivated ages of society, and which contribute to express our meaning more discriminatingly, and to make it more clearly understood. The prose and poetry of Alfred's translation of Boethius will enable us to illustrate this remark. Where the prose says, Thee the on ðam ecan setle sæcra, "Thou who on the eternal seat reignest," the poetry of the same passage, Thee on heahsetle ecan sæcra, "Thou on high seat eternal reignest," omitting

the explaining and connecting particles, *the* and *that*. So, "Thou that on the seat," is again in the poetry, "Thou on seat." The Saxon of the little fragment of Cedmon is without particles. C H A P.  
I.

WHOEVER looks into Anglo-Saxon poetry after being familiar with their prose, will perceive how uniformly barren their poems are of the discriminating and explanatory particles. He will likewise feel, in the difficulties which attend his construction of it, how much obscurity is created by their absence.

IN prose, and in cultivated poetry, every conception of the author is clearly expressed and fully made out. In barbaric poetry, and in the Anglo-Saxon poetry, we have most commonly abrupt, imperfect hints, instead of regular description or narration. The poetical citations which follow, will abundantly show this. But that their poetry seeks to express the same idea in fewer words than prose, may be made apparent by one instance. Thus, the phrase in Alfred's prose, "So doth the moon with his pale light, that the bright stars he obscures in the heavens," is put by him in his poetry thus :

With pale light  
Bright stars  
Moon lesseneth.

EVEN when the same idea is multiplied by the periphrasis, the rest of the sentence is not extended either in meaning or expression. One word or epithet is played upon by a repetition of synonymous expressions, but the meaning of the sentence is not thereby increased.

OF their artificial inversion of their words and phrases in their poems, every specimen adduced

Their In-  
versions  
and Tran-  
sitions.

**B O O K** will give evidence. It is quite different in their  
 IX. prose. The words follow there most commonly in  
 an easy and natural order. The poem on Beowulf  
 will give repeated instances of their abrupt and  
 unconnected transitions. Their metre will be the  
 subject of a separate chapter.

THE poetry which pleases a refined age, has no more similarity to such poetry as we find to have been popular among the Anglo-Saxons, than the sonatas of Haydn, Mozart, or Beethoven, can be supposed to have to the boisterous music of our ancestors. Poetry, like painting and architecture, has attained to its perfection by slow degrees. The leaves of its laurel seem to have been the gradual contributions of genius and labour during many centuries. But at the period in which it is the province of this history to contemplate it, little else seems to have been done than the formation of a style of composition different from prose. If we call this style poetry, it is rather by complaisance than truth — rather with a knowledge of the excellences afterwards introduced into it, than of those which it then possessed.

THE barren and peculiar state of the Anglo-Saxon poetry leads us to infer, that it was the product of art more than of nature. Its origin seems to have been as homely as its genius.

THE origin of the periphrasis is easily accounted for; a favourite chief or hero conquers, and is received on his return by the clamorous rejoicings of his people. One calls him brave; another, fierce; another, irresistible. He is pleased with the praises; and some one at his feast, full of the popular feeling, repeats the various epithets with which he had been greeted:

Edmund,  
the brave chief,  
fierce in war !  
irresistible in battle !  
slaughtered his enemies  
at———.

C H A P.  
L  


THIS is in substance an Anglo-Saxon poem.

BUT when these addresses were found to interest the vanity of the chiefs, and to excite their liberality, more labour would be bestowed in the construction of the periphrasis ; the compliment would be sometimes higher seasoned, and then the periphrasis would be raised into occasional metaphors ; the hero would be called, the eagle of battle, the lord of shields, the giver of the bracelet, the helmet of his people ; and the lady would be saluted as a beautiful elf.

THE style of the Anglo-Saxon poetry seems to have been originally the common, imperfect language of the people, in its half-formed and barbarous state. When an infant first begins to talk, it uses only the nouns and pronouns of its language. By degrees it learns the use of a few verbs, which for some time it uses in their simplest forms, without any of their conjugations. The meaning of these is supplied by its actions, or is left to be guessed by its parent. The knowledge of the abbreviations, or the particles of language, is gradually attained. With our careful education, children acquire from us the habit of using them with fluency and correctness in a few years. But wild nations must have been some centuries without them.

ALL nations, who have formed their languages, have gone through the same process, in doing so, that our children are always exhibiting. The nouns,

**B O O K** or the names of things, are at first their only language. **IX.** Some of these, which signify visible action or motion, come at last to be used to express motion or action generally, or are added to other nouns, to express them in a state of action. These are what we now call verbs. Hence nouns, nouns used as verbs, or thus converted into verbs, and others made pronouns, compose the whole of the language in the ruder ages of every uncivilised nation.

As the progress of society goes on, the abbreviations of language begin to be formed; words multiply, and the forms of using them to distinguish the various ideas of the human mind from each other, and to give determination and precision to its meaning, begin also to multiply. The conjugations of the verbs, and the declensions of nouns, are then invented, new sets of nouns receive being, and new meanings are given to the primitive nouns, as will be shown in our chapter on language, till at length every language receives that multiplicity of terms and particles which form the copious and clear stream of expressive and cultivated prose. If a people narrate a tale in the full and copious period of their language, they will do it naturally in that easy and loquacious prose which forms the style of Herodotus, the oldest prose writer of Greece that has survived to us. But if the same tale was told by the ancestors of this people in their ruder state, when language had not acquired its abbreviations, nor the verbs their conjugations, nor the nouns their secondary meanings and derivative applications; and if that tale, so rudely told, were handed down faithfully by tradition in its rude state to the cultivated age, it

would probably exhibit all the features of the C H A P.  
 Anglo-Saxon poetry; — it would be without parti- I.  
 cles, without conjugations or declensions, with great  
 contraction of phrase, with abrupt transitions, with  
 violent metaphor and frequent periphrasis. The  
 contraction of phrase would arise from the penury  
 of their associations. The same poverty of mind  
 and knowledge would make the periphrasis, or the  
 retracing the same idea again and again, their  
 easiest source of eloquence; and the violence of  
 metaphor naturally arises from not having imme-  
 diately new terms to express the new, or more in-  
 tellectual ideas, that would every year be rising  
 among an improving people; and therefore, till new  
 words are devised, the old names of real things are  
 necessarily, though violently applied.

THE metre of the Saxon poetry is the simplest  
 that can be conceived, and is, indeed, often little  
 else than a series of short exclamations. Its inver-  
 sions are more artificial. But when music was ap-  
 plied to poetry, and men found it beneficial to sing  
 or recite a chieftain's praise, we may conceive,  
 that, to secure to themselves the profits of the pro-  
 fession, some little ingenuity was exerted to make  
 difficulties which would raise their style above the  
 vulgar phrase. Its inversion was one of the easiest  
 modes of making a peculiar style of composition;  
 and as society advanced in its attainments, the  
 transition, the alliteration, and other ornaments,  
 may have been added, either as new beauties or as  
 new difficulties.

WHEN the style of the nation had been improved  
 into an easy and accurate prose, the ancient style  
 may have been kept on foot by the bards of the  
 chiefs from design, and by the people from habit

**B O O K** and veneration. The old style would be long remembered by a nation, from respect to its ancestors, from that venerable air which it has from its antiquity, like the dialect and stanza of Spenser to us, which is always pleasing, and often imitated; and from the fact, that the ancient compositions which had become popular were in the ancient style.

## IX.

HENCE, independent of the interest which the bards would have to use the ancient style, because, by becoming more unlike the improving language of the improving people, it would remain more securely appropriated to them, and therefore more beneficial; the people, from habit and association, would also prefer it.

THUS humbly, it is conceived, the Anglo-Saxon poetry arose: at first the rude exclamations of a rude people, with a rude language, greeting their chieftains; soon repeated or imitated by some men, from the profit derived from it. When, from the improvement of the manners and state of the people, a more cultivated style, or that we call prose, became general, because better fitted to the uses of life, then the old rude style dropped out of common use. The bards, however, retained and appropriated this, because more instrumental to their professional advantages. To enjoy these more exclusively, to secure their monopoly of credit and gifts, they added more difficulties to the style they adopted, to make it more remote from the vulgar attainment; till at length their poetical style became for ever separated from prose.

IN thus considering our ancient poetry as an artificial and mechanical thing, cultivated by men chiefly as a trade, we must not be considered as

confounding it with those delightful beauties which we now call poetry. These have arisen from a different source, and are of a much later chronology. They are the creations of subsequent genius; but they have sprung up, not in its dark and ancient days, but in a succession of better times, during the many ages which followed, in which the general intellect of society being continually improving, taste and imagination improved also. The English fancy was cultivated with assiduous labour for many centuries before Chaucer' arose, or could have arisen. True poetry is the offspring of cultivated mind. Art cannot produce it without nature, but neither can nature make it where art is wholly unknown. Hence, all that we owe to our Anglo-Saxon ancestors in poetry is, that, by accident or design, they perpetuated a style of composition different from the common language of the country, which gradually became appropriated to fancy and music. In happier times, genius, using it as the vehicle of its effusions, improved it by slow degrees, and enriched it with ever-succeeding beauties; till that rich stock of poetry has been created, which is the pride of our literature and country.

THE Anglo-Saxon poetry, as it is earlier, so it is also inferior to the Northern in depth of feeling, in vigour of genius, and in culture of imagination. It occupies a middle space between the ancient British poetry and the Northern. It has not the story, nor the strong imagination of the Northern.

It exhibits chiefly feeling, but it is vague feeling, or feeling vaguely expressed, not made out, not communicated by expressions or images adapted to excite it in others. It is strong heroic feeling

**BOOK** in the mind of the writer, but more expressed by  
**IX** violent words than by the real effusion or detail of  
 the genuine emotion.

BUT, in truth, society had then not acquired a phrase of eloquent passion for its own use. It felt often strongly; but, like the uncultivated mind of all ages, did not know how to express itself. Hence the use, and the cause of the use of oaths and imprecations, violent gesticulations and abuse. The strong feeling is expressed by them because the utterers have not yet attained the art or the habit of using any other form of diction to express their feelings by, and know no other way of giving them utterance.

ALFRED, by translating the poetry of Boethius, did more to improve Saxon poetry than any other thing, but this kind was too intellectual to be then imitated by his uneducated contemporaries. He would have done them more service if he had translated Virgil or Homer, or any other epic poem into Saxon. The story would have caught their attention, and the descriptions and dialogues have been more level to their comprehension. The warlike story of Homer would have suited them; but Homer was out of the reach of Alfred, and perhaps Virgil's Eneid might have been too refined and sentimental.

THE history of the Saxon poetry, and, indeed, of all modern European poetry, in its ruder state, may be divided into three heads: songs, or ballads; the lengthened narrative poems, or romances; and that miscellaneous kind which, if we term it lyric, it is more for the convenience of using a short generic word, than for the exact appropriation of its meaning. Under these three divisions shall be

arranged all that can be collected on the Saxon poetry. C H A P.  
I.

THAT our ancestors had popular songs on the actions of their great or favourite characters, or on such other subjects as interested the vulgar mind, is proved by many instances, which may be traced in the ancient writers. Aldhelm, whose Latin poetry will be noticed, applied himself to compose songs, or ballads, in the Anglo-Saxon language, to instruct, as well as to amuse, his countrymen. Alfred inserted it as a remark in his Manual, that no one had ever appeared before Aldhelm so competent in English poetry; none had been able to compose so much, or to sing and recite it so appositely. The king mentions a popular ballad of Aldhelm's, which was in his time (that is, nearly two centuries afterwards) sung in the streets. Malmsbury adds, that Aldhelm, anxious to instruct his countrymen, then semi-barbarous, and inattentive to their religious duties, took his station on the public bridge, as if a singer by profession, and, by mixing sacred with lighter topics, won their attention, and meliorated their minds. The Saxon  
Ballads.

NONE of Aldhelm's vernacular poetry has survived; but the circumstance above mentioned, that he composed and sang these ballads as if "he professed the art of singing<sup>3</sup>," show that the harpers of the day were accustomed to recite them. That such things were then in general circulation is also implied by Bede, when he mentions, that in a festive company the harp was sent round, that those might sing who could.<sup>4</sup>

It was a book of Saxon poems which first al-

<sup>3</sup> Malmsb. 3 Gale, 339.

<sup>4</sup> Bede, lib. iv. c. 24.

BOOK  
IX.

lured Alfred to learn to read<sup>5</sup>; and the fact, that he had his children taught to read Saxon poems<sup>6</sup>, and that he himself visited the Danish camp as a harper<sup>7</sup>, which, in the reign of his grandson, Anlaf imitated<sup>8</sup>, prove the existence of popular songs, which interested both the child and the rude warrior.

THESE songs, or ballads, are also mentioned on other occasions. When Malmsbury, after narrating the reign of Athelstan, proceeds to describe his origin from Edward's amour with a shepherd's daughter, he says, "The following facts I have taken rather from the songs (*cantilenis*) worn out by the course of time, than from books composed for the instruction of posterity."

WHEN Malmsbury has to mention the adulteries of Edgar, he endeavours to lessen their historical authority by saying, "The other infamies which I shall mention have been rather diffused by songs" (*cantilenæ*).<sup>10</sup>

THESE popular songs occur to us again in the ancient life of Dunstan. He is there said to have learnt "the vain songs of his nation."<sup>11</sup> He was also at that time a player upon the harp.

A FRAGMENT of a ballad composed by Canute the Great has survived to us<sup>12</sup>, which gives us a specimen of the measure which this kind of poetry had attained in his time. As he was sailing by the abbey in the isle of Ely, he heard the monks chanting their psalms and anthems, and was so struck with the interesting melody, that he composed a

<sup>5</sup> Asser.

<sup>6</sup> Ibid.

<sup>7</sup> Malmsb. 43.

<sup>8</sup> Ibid. 48.

<sup>9</sup> Ibid. 52.

<sup>10</sup> Ibid. 56.

<sup>11</sup> MS. Cleop. B. 13.

<sup>12</sup> Hist. Elien.—3 Gale, 505.

little Saxon ballad on the occasion, which began thus :

CHAP.  
L

Depe rungen ðe munecher binnen Ely,  
Tha Laut ching peudeþ by;  
Ropeð, Linter, noep ðe land,  
Anð hepe þe ðer munecher rang.

Merry sang the monks in Ely,  
When Canute the king was sailing by;  
" Row, ye Knights, near the land,  
" And let us hear these monks' song."

THE historical ballads of the Saxons on the actions of their popular favourites are also intimated by Ingulf, the Conqueror's secretary. In his account of the chivalric hero, Hereward, who flourished in the time of Edward the Confessor and afterwards, he says, " His brave actions were sung in England."<sup>13</sup> In another passage, the monk informs us that Hereward died at last in peace, and was buried in their monastery, " after great battles, and a thousand dangers, frequently dared against the king, earls, barons, and magistrates, and bravely achieved, as is yet sung in the streets."<sup>14</sup> We may close our authorities by stating, that William of Malmsbury mentions, that the song (cantilena) of Roland was begun to be sung before the battle of Hastings, to excite a martial spirit in the combatants.<sup>15</sup>

Two of the historical songs of our ancestors, and some fragments of others, have been preserved in the Saxon Chronicle, in which they have been inserted as part of the Chronicle. As one of the songs on Edgar's death has not been hitherto

<sup>13</sup> Ingulf, p. 67.

<sup>14</sup> Ibid. p. 68.

<sup>15</sup> Malmsb. p. 101.

**B O O K** brought before the English public, and the other, **IX.** on Ethelstan's victory, has been given with an incorrect translation, I will add a version of both.

*The Song on Ethelstan's Victory at Brunanburh.*

Here Athelstan king,  
of earls the lord,  
the giver of the bracelets of  
the nobles,  
and his brother also,  
Edmund the ætheling,  
the Elder! a lasting glory  
won by slaughter in battle  
with the edges of swords  
at Brunan burh.

The wall of shields they  
cleaved,  
they hewed the noble banners :

the survivors of the family,  
the children of Edward.

As to them it was natural  
from their ancestry,  
that they in the field often  
against every enemy  
their land should defend,  
their treasures and homes.

Pursuing, they destroyed  
the Scottish people  
and the ship-fleet.

The dead fell!

the field resounded!

the warriors sweat!

After that the sun  
rose in the morning hour,  
the greatest star!

glad above the earth,  
God's candle bright!  
the eternal Lord's!

till the noble creature  
hastened to her setting.

There lay soldiers many  
with darts struck down,  
Northern men,  
over their shields shot.  
So were the Scotch;  
weary of ruddy battle.

The West Saxons then  
throughout the day,  
with a chosen band,  
to the last pressed  
on the loathed people.  
They hewed the fugitives of  
the army,  
the behind ones, fiercely  
with swords sharpened at the  
mill.

The Mercians did not re-  
fuse  
the hard hand-play  
with any of those men  
that, with Anlaf,  
over the turbid sea,  
in the bosom of the ship,  
sought the land  
for deadly fight.

Five lay  
in that battle place,  
young kings,  
by swords quieted :  
so also seven,  
the earls of Anlaf,  
and innumerable of the army  
of the fleet—and the Scots.

There was chased away  
the lord of the Northmen,  
driven by necessity

to the voice of the ship.  
With a small host,  
with the crew of his ship,  
the king of the fleet  
departed out on the yellow  
flood ;

his life preserved.

So there also the routed  
one,  
a fugitive, came  
to his northern country ;  
Constantinus :  
the hoarse din of Hilda  
he needed not to vociferate  
in the commerce of swords,  
he was the fragment of his  
relations ;  
of his friends felled in the  
folk-place,  
slain in the battle :  
And his son he left  
on the place of slaughter  
with wounds beaten down.  
Young in the conflict,  
he would not boast ;  
the lad with flaxen hair,  
from the bill of death,  
tho' old in wit.

Nor more than Anlaf,  
with the residue of their  
armies  
had need to exult,  
that they for works of battle  
were better  
in the place of combat,  
in the prostration of the ban-  
ners,  
in the meeting of the arrows,  
in the assembly of men,  
in the exchange of weapons,  
when they on the field of  
slaughter

against Edward's  
descendants played.  
Departed from them, then  
the Northmen,  
in nailed ships,  
the dreary relics of the darts,  
on the stormy sea,  
over the deep water,  
sought Dublin,  
and their land,  
disgraced in mind.

So the brothers  
both together,  
the king and the ætheling,  
their country sought,  
the West-Saxon land.  
/ The screamers of war  
they left behind,  
the raven to enjoy,  
the dismal kite,  
and the black raven  
with horned beak ;  
and the hoarse toad ;  
the eagle, afterwards  
to feast on the white flesh ;  
the greedy battle-hawk,  
and the grey beast,  
the wolf in the wood. /

Nor had there been a greater  
slaughter  
in this island  
ever yet  
of people destroyed,  
before this  
by the edges of swords,  
(This is what the books tell us  
of the old wise men)  
since from the East hither  
the Angles and the Saxons  
came up  
over the broad waves,  
and sought the Britons.

**B O O K** The illustrious smiths of war! the earls excelling in honor!  
**IX.** the Welsh, they overcame; and obtained the country.

In this song we may observe this artless order: in the two first paragraphs, the actions of Athelstan and his brother are recited. The West Saxons and the Mercians are then separately praised. The fate of their enemies follows. The deaths of the five kings and seven earls are commemorated. Anlaf's flight and escape are sung, and Constantine's, whose son fell in the conflict. The poet then exults in the superior prowess of his countrymen. He conducts the remains of the defeated army to Dublin, and the victorious princes into West Saxony. He closes his song with two poetical commonplaces; one on the birds of prey, who crowd the field of battle, and the other on the superiority of this victory to all former ones.

THE song on Edgar's death is much shorter:

Here ended  
 his earthly joys —  
 Edgar, England's king:  
 he chose for himself another  
     light,  
 beautiful and pleasant;  
 and left this feeble life,  
 which the children of the na-  
     tions,  
 the men on earth,  
 call so transitory.  
 On that month which every  
     where  
 in this country's soil  
 they, that were before  
 in the art of numbers  
 rightly instructed,  
 call July;  
 in his youth departed  
 on the eighteenth day,

Edgar from life —  
 the giver of the bracelets of  
     the nobles:  
 and his son took  
 afterwards to the kingdom;  
 a child not full grown;  
 the ruler of earls:  
 Edward was his name,  
 an excelling hero.  
 Ten nights before  
 from Britain departed  
 the bishop so good  
 in native mind,  
 Cyneward was his name.  
 Then was in Mercia,  
 to my knowledge,  
 wide and every where  
 the praise of the Supreme  
     Governor  
 destroyed on the earth.

Many were disturbed  
of God's skilful servants.  
Then was much groaning  
to those that in their breasts  
carried the burning love  
of their Creator in their mind.  
Then was the source of miracles  
so much despised,  
the Governor of victory ;  
the Lawgiver of the sky ;  
when man broke his rights.

And then was also driven  
the beloved man,  
Oslac, from the earth,  
over the rolling of the waves,  
over the bath of the sea-fowl,  
the long-haired hero,  
wise, and in words discreet,  
over the roaring of the waters,  
over the country of the  
whales ;

of an home deprived.  
And then was shown  
up in the sky  
a star in the firmament.  
This the firm of spirit,  
the men of skilful mind,  
call extensively  
a comet by name,  
men skilled in art,  
wise truth-tellers.

There was over the nation  
the vengeance of the Su-  
preme.

Widely spread  
hunger over the mountains.  
That again Heaven's  
Ruler removed ;  
the Lord of angels !  
He again gave bliss  
to every inhabitant  
by the earth's fertility.

THESE historical songs have none of the story,  
nor the striking traits of description which inter-  
est us in the ballads of a subsequent age. In the  
Saxon songs we see poetry in its rudest form, before  
the art of narration was understood. The simpli-  
city of the ballad deceives us into a belief that it  
is the easy and natural performance of the less cul-  
tivated ages of society. But the truth seems to  
be, that the excellence of the ballad is as difficult  
of attainment as any other species of approved  
poetry, and is the result not merely of genius, but  
also of great cultivation. In the ruder ages of na-  
tions, the ballad is the sort of poetry the most fre-  
quently composed and the most generally recited.  
The incessant cultivation of this particular species  
creates at least an excellence in it which subsequent  
ages do not attain, because other departments of

**B O O K** the Parnassian art are then attended to, and the  
 { **IX.** ballad becomes less used.

THE song of Canute on Ely was the composition of the eleventh century; and being much later written than that on Athelstan, and therefore of a more cultivated kind, seems to have approached nearer that lively and dramatic form which interests us so much in the ballads of the following ages. This little fragment is, indeed, the oldest specimen of the dramatic or genuine ballad which we have in the Anglo-Saxon language.

THE genuine ballad seems to have originated when the old Saxon poetry began to decline. The laboured metaphor, the endless periphrasis, the violent inversion, and the abrupt transition, being the great features of the Saxon poetry; these constituted that pompousness which William of Malmesbury truly states to have been its great characteristic. But it was impossible that while these continued prevalent and popular, the genuine ballad could have appeared. The ballad, therefore, probably arose from more vulgar and homely poets—from men who could not bend language into that difficult and artificial strain which the genius of the Anglo-Saxon bard was educated to use. The ambulatory glee-men, who strove to please the public by their merry-andrew antics, were most probably the first inventors of the genuine ballad. While at one time they tumbled and danced, showed their bears, and frolicked before the people in the dresses of various animals, at others they may have told little tales to interest the mob, from whose liberality they drew their maintenance.

INCIDENTS narrated in verse were more intelligible than the pompous songs of the regular poets,

and far more interesting to the people. In time they gained admission to the hall and the palace; and, by the style of Canute's ballad, this revolution must have been achieved by the beginning of the eleventh century. Then the harsh and obscure style of the old Saxon poetry began to be unpopular; and being still more discredited after the Norman conquest, it was at length completely superseded by the ballad and the metrical romance.

C H A P.  
I  
}

## CHAP. II.

ANGLO-SAXON *Narrative Poems, or Romances.* — *The Poem on BEOWULF.*

BOOK  
IX.

**T**HE origin of the metrical romance has been lately an interesting subject of literary research ; and as it has not been yet completely elucidated, it seems proper to enquire whether any light can be thrown upon it from the ancient Saxon poetry.

It was asserted by Mr. Ritson, in conformity with the prevailing opinion of antiquaries, that the Anglo-Saxons had no poetical romance in their native tongue. But he grounds this opinion on the fact, that no romance had been at that time discovered in Saxon but a prose translation from the Latin of the legend of Apollonius of Tyre. The Anglo-Saxon poem on Beowulf, which was particularly recommended to the notice of the public in the first edition of this history in the year 1805, proves that this opinion was erroneous.

THIS work is a poem on the actions of its hero Beowulf. If it describes those deeds only which he actually performed, it would claim the title of an historical poem ; but if, as few can doubt, the Anglo-Saxon poet has amused himself with portraying the warrior, and incidents of his fancy, then it is a specimen of an Anglo-Saxon poetical romance, true in costume and manners, but with an invented story. It is the most interesting relic of the Anglo-Saxon poetry which time has spared to us ; and, as a picture of the manners, and as an

exhibition of the feelings and notions of those days, it is as valuable as it is ancient. There is only one MS. of it now existing, which is in the Cotton Library, Vitellius, A. 15.; and our antiquarian patriotism may be blamed that, when so much labour and money have been applied to print, at the public expence, so many ancient remains, and some of such little utility<sup>1</sup>, we should have left this curious relic of our ancestors to have been first printed by a foreigner, and in a foreign country.<sup>2</sup>

C H A P.  
II.

THE MS. of this poem was injured by the fire in the British Museum in 1731. It seems to have been written in the tenth century.<sup>3</sup> Its author, in several places, speaks as if he had been a contemporary of the events he describes; but this may be considered as a poetical licence, especially if it be historically true that Beowulf fell in Jutland in

<sup>1</sup> Under the commission for printing the public records of the kingdom much has been printed which deserves the thanks of the community; but I should have rejoiced to have seen the Anglo-Saxon remains substituted for some of the volumes which have perhaps never been twice opened since their publication, and will never be molested even by antiquaries again. Would not a more enlarged principle of selection have been more advantageous to our most valuable MSS.?

<sup>2</sup> Ten years after the first edition of this part of the Anglo-Saxon history, Dr. G. J. Thorkelin, in the year 1815, printed this work at Copenhagen, which he addressed to the Lord John de Bulow, as his Mæcenas optime! by whose private munificence, he says, he had been enabled to bring into his country a monument of literature which was above a thousand years old. But he is not entitled to claim it as a Danish poem; it is pure Anglo-Saxon; and though I grant that the Anglo-Saxon language is very like that of the old Icelandic poetry which has survived, yet it is a similarity with great idiomatical and verbal differences. It is by no means identity.

<sup>3</sup> So the late Mr. Astle thought, and the writing has all the appearance of being of that age.

**BOOK** IX. the year 840.<sup>4</sup> The following analysis of the poem will give the reader of this history a general notion of its contents, and the extracts will be selected with a view to shew the manners it describes.

It opens with an exclamatory introduction of his hero, but without immediately naming him :—

How have we of the Gar-	the mead-seats withdrew.
Danes <sup>5</sup>	The earl was dreaded—
in former days,	he grew up under the
of the Theod-kings <sup>6</sup> ,	heavens ;
the glory heard ?	he flourished in honours
How the ethelings	till that each
excelled in strength !	of those sitting about
Oft the scyld-scefing	the path of the whole
from hosts of enemies,	should obey him ;
from many tribes,	should pay him tribute. <sup>7</sup>

His birth and encomium follow :—

There was a good king :	a youth in the world :
to him offspring	this one God sent
was afterwards born,	the people to comfort

<sup>4</sup> Dr. Thorkelin mentions this on the authority of Suhm, in his *Geschichte der Danen*. I can neither deny nor confirm the chronology.

<sup>5</sup> Thorkelin calls these the Northern Danes, inhabiting Zealand and the other isles, p. 261. His derivation of Gar from Aur, a peninsula in Iceland, is unsatisfactory. I would rather deduce it from the Saxon, as implying the ancient Danes ; as *eald Saxons*, the old Saxons.

<sup>6</sup> Of these see vol. i. of this history, p. 428.

<sup>7</sup> Thorkelin's first translation of this poem was burnt in our bombardment of Copenhagen. At the request of his patron, Bulow, he made another translation in Latin, which he has published. As I very often differ with him in the construction of the original, I have attempted to convey the ideas of the poet in a version of my own, in the passages inserted in this work. Yet, as a *first* translation of a very difficult composition, I ascribe great merit to Dr. Thorkelin for that which he has published ; and cordially thank him for the courage and ingenuity of his undertaking.

because he understood their  
need,  
which the Supreme knew  
that they had before

a long while suffered.  
To him the Lord of life,  
the Ruler of glory,  
the world's honours gave.<sup>8</sup>

He proceeds to name his hero, and to represent him as announcing and preparing for a warlike or predatory adventure : —

BEOWULF was illustrious.  
Wide sprang the rumour  
that the offspring of the scyld  
would rush upon some lands.  
So would he be able  
good vessels to obtain,  
with abundant money-gifts,  
in seasonable time.

Then with him, as formerly,  
again associated  
his voluntary companions.  
When the battle was coming  
the people followed him.  
With deeds of praise  
every where among the tribes  
this man shall flourish.<sup>9</sup>

THE description of their embarkation is then given : —

With them the scyld departed  
to the ship,  
while many were eager  
to proceed with their lord.  
They conducted him forth  
to the journey of the ocean,  
his dear companions  
as he commanded,  
when with words he governed  
the friendly scyldingi,  
the loved land-chieftain  
had long possessed them.

the voice rung on the ice  
and out, ready  
was the etheling's expedition.

They led then  
the dear king,  
the lord of bracelets,  
the illustrious one,  
into the bosom of the ship.  
By the mast there was  
of many vessels  
from distant waves  
the ornaments collected.<sup>10</sup>

There at the port he stood :

THE poet then indulges himself in describing the war-ship and its contents : —

I have never heard  
that a more king-like ship

has been prepared.  
With the weapons of Hilda,

<sup>8</sup> Thorkelin's Beowulf, p. 4.

<sup>9</sup> Ibid. p. 4, 5. On collating the Doctor's printed text with the MS. I have commonly found an inaccuracy of copying in every page; but for a first publisher he has been, on the whole, unusually correct.

<sup>10</sup> Beowulf, p. 5.

**B O O K** and noble garments,  
**IX.** and bills and mails.

In its bosom lay  
 many vessels,  
 that with them should far de-  
 part  
 on the territory of the flood.

Nor did they place in it  
 few presents from the people's  
 wealth ;  
 this they did  
 who at its first formation  
 sent it forth,  
 alone over the waves,  
 a spacious vessel.

Then they fixed in it  
 the flowing banner  
 high over their heads.  
 They let the waters bear it,  
 the tide, into the ocean.

To him would be a soul of  
 sorrow ;  
 a mourning mind :  
 men would not be able  
 to say, in truth,  
 that any warrior under heaven  
 would have a happy state  
 who from them would take its  
 lading.<sup>11</sup>

THE poet then introduces to us a character who makes also a principal figure in his work : this is Hrothgar, one of the sons of Halfden, a Danish king, to whose dignity Hrothgar had succeeded : —

Then was to Hrothgar  
 the army-treasure given,  
 the worship of battle.  
 Then him, his dear relations

diligently obeyed,  
 while the youth grew up  
 the great lord of his kins  
 men.<sup>12</sup>

THE author now advances to the incident on which the main part of the poem turns, but which is narrated with considerable obscurity. The first incident is, that Hrothgar summons his warriors to one of those great meetings which it was customary with all the Teutonic kings to hold, which with the Anglo-Saxons was the time when their witenagemot met, and when the sovereigns distributed their presents, as we have already mentioned.<sup>13</sup>

It occurred to his mind  
 that to the hall of his palace

he would summon his heroes.  
 Men hastened

<sup>11</sup> Beowulf, p. 6.

<sup>12</sup> Ibid. p. 7.

<sup>13</sup> See before, p. 194. 208.

much mead to prepare.  
This the chiefs of men  
always enquired for.  
And within that place

he purposed to share every C H A P.  
thing II.  
with young and old,  
except his territory  
and the lives of his men.<sup>14</sup>

The meeting was proclaimed, and the assembly  
collected. The name given to the royal mansion,  
or town, was HEORT: —

When it was all ready  
the great hall-chamber,  
the poet called it Heort,  
he that of his words  
had extensive power.

he laid out the bracelets;  
he divided the treasure;  
at the feast the lofty hall  
resounded with shouts,  
and with the crooked horn.<sup>15</sup>

The king was not menacing;

An enemy is now abruptly noticed as watching this  
festivity with dark and secret purposes of malign-  
ity: —

He that abode in darkness, heard their joy  
while he every day loud in the hall.<sup>16</sup>

THE author continues his description of their  
festivity, and introduces the curious circumstance  
of a scop or poet singing a poem on the origin of  
things, like Jopas, at Carthage, before Dido and  
Æneas: —

There was on the harp  
the sweet sound sung,  
the poet's narration;  
he that knew,  
the origin of men,  
though remote to describe.<sup>17</sup>

its bright, beauteous plains.  
So the water-beds  
he bendeth.  
He established the path  
of the fierce sun,  
and the moon's light,  
to illuminate  
the inhabitants of the earth.

He sang, that the ALMIGHTY  
created the earth;

<sup>14</sup> Beowulf, p. 8.

<sup>15</sup> Ibid. p. 8, 9.

<sup>16</sup> Ibid. p. 9.

<sup>17</sup> At this part of the latter MS. is a leaf inserted out of its  
place, which completely confuses all just comprehension of the  
poem. Dr. Thorkelin remarked the interpolation, and has re-  
stored it to its proper place.

## B O O K

## IX.

He has also adorned  
the regions of the world  
with leaves and splendor.

He has also made life  
for every species  
of those that move alive.<sup>18</sup>

THE poet of the feast is represented as continuing his song to notice the evil beings that disturb both heaven and earth; and the murder of Abel, an idea of some ingenuity in the author, as it leads on to a scene of blood, which occasions the principal events of his work, and which he ascribes to a malignant being whom he now and afterward calls Grendel: —

Thus the Lord made man-  
kind,  
and they lived happily in joy,  
till that one began  
to perpetrate crimes,  
the enemy in hell.

There was a more grim  
spirit called GRENDEL.  
Great was the mark of his  
steps,  
he, that ruled the moors,  
the fen and the fastness  
of the Fifel race.

Unhappy on the earth,  
man resided awhile,  
after the Creator had cast him  
off.

On Cain's offspring,

the Eternal Lord  
avenged his murder.  
His, who slew Abel.  
He had no joy from that ho-  
micide;

but him afar  
the Creator punished  
for this crime to mankind.

From thence sprang  
all the pernicious ones.  
The Eotenas, and the Ylfe,  
and the Orcneas;  
such giants

as fought against God  
for a long time,  
till he retaliated on them his  
retribution.<sup>19</sup>

THE author now represents the festive assembly as retiring to their rest; and while they were all sleeping secure and unsuspecting, this malignant enemy, or evil spirit, surprises them, and kills, in their repose, thirty thegns: —

He departed to observe,  
after night had come on,  
how in the lofty mansion,

the warlike Danes were re-  
siding,  
after the quaffing of the beer.

<sup>18</sup> Beowulf, p. 9, 10.

<sup>19</sup> Ibid. p. 10, 11.

He found there within  
the assembly of the ethelings  
sleeping after the feast,  
knowing no sorrow.  
This won-sceaft of men,  
this creature unhealthful,  
grim and greedy,  
soon was ready,

reeking and fierce,  
and he took away in their rest  
thirty thegns.

Then again he departed,  
satisfied with plunder,  
to return home,  
from that slaughter.<sup>20</sup>

This unexpected disaster became known in the morning, and excited both grief and indignation. The king, Hrothgar, was reproached for it, either from suspicion, or because he had not prevented it, or was unable to avenge it. For twelve winters the dissatisfaction of his people and his own vexation continued, and the fœhthe or homicide was still unpunished. It was in this state of things that Beowulf, hearing of "the deeds of the Grendel," undertook his expedition for the purpose of aiding Hrothgar, finding out Grendel, and inflicting vengeance for his midnight murders.

BEOWULF is described sometimes as a princely chief, and sometimes as the thegn, the heorth-geneat, and the beod-geneat of a king named Higelac. He is also styled lord of the scyldingi. His father was Ecgtheow, and his people are called Geata or Jutes.<sup>21</sup> He is thus represented as resolving on his enterprise : —

He said, "The battle-king  
over the road of the swans  
will seek the great sovereign,  
as he has need of men.

This expedition, for him,  
prudent Ceorles shall soon  
provide."<sup>22</sup>

His companions assemble at his request, and  
Sought the wood of the sea, to the boundary of the shore.  
the warrior directed The vessel was under the  
the sea-skilled men rock,

<sup>20</sup> Beowulf, p. 12.

<sup>21</sup> *Ibid.* p. 17. 22, 28, 29, 30.

<sup>22</sup> *Ibid.* p. 18.

## BOOK

## IX.

the heroes ready,  
at his voice went down ;  
they waded thro' the streams  
of the sea : on the sands  
the warriors bore  
into the empty bosom

the bright ornaments,  
the instruments of battle,  
of the Jute-like men.  
The adventurers drew out,  
for their voluntary journey,  
the well-bound timber.<sup>23</sup>

Their voyage is then stated. Their sailing is described to be like the fanning of the neck of a fowl, till

They saw land ;  
the cliffs of the ocean ;  
the shining hills ;

the steep wide promontories :  
there their voyage ended.

Their debarkation follows :

The people of the storm  
ascended on the plain.  
They fastened the wood of the  
the sea ;  
they shook their syrcas ;

the garments of battle ;  
they thanked God,  
that to them the wave-jour-  
ney  
had been so easy.<sup>24</sup>

The poet then exhibits the alarm, vigilance, and enquiries of those who had been appointed to watch the coast :—

Then from the wall,  
he that the sea-cliff  
should maintain,  
beheld the chief of the scyl-  
dingi  
carrying over the rock  
the bright shield  
and battle weapons.  
Hastily he broke the fire-ves-  
sel,  
anxiously weighing in his mind  
who these men could be.

The thegn of Hrothgar then  
turn'd  
to the shore of battle to ride.  
Among his bands he shook

the wood of strength in his  
hands ;  
he enquired their intentions  
by his words.

“ What are ye,  
such a mailed host  
of weaponed men,  
that thus the bright keel  
over the sea-street have led ?  
Come ye hither over the waves  
to molest the inhabitants ?  
I keep guard here,  
that on the land of the Danes  
no hostile ones  
with a ship-army injure  
them.”<sup>25</sup>

<sup>23</sup> Beowulf, p. 19

<sup>24</sup> Ib.

<sup>25</sup> Ib. p. 20.

Beowulf advances to answer him ; states his country and descent, and assures him that he has come on a friendly errand to Hrothgar, and to assist him to procure vengeance on his dreaded enemy. CHAP.  
II.

THE Danish warder answers civilly, and sends the tidings of their arrival to his <sup>26</sup> sovereign, while Beowulf's warriors prepared to advance.

The street was of varied  
stone,  
the path was observed  
by the men together.  
Their battle-mail shone  
by hard hands well locked.

The shining iron rings  
sung against their weapons,  
when they to the palace,  
in their formidable apparel,  
were delighted to go.<sup>27</sup>

But as they were arranging their shields, and displaying their arrows and their ashen shafts, with the grey iron heads, they were interrupted by an opposing band :—

A powerful champion asked  
them,

“ Why do you here carry  
your lusty shields,  
grey vestments of war ;  
and grim helms,  
and this heap of the shafts of  
battle?

I am Hrothgar's messenger  
and envoy ;

I have never seen of foreigners  
so many valiant-looking men.  
For a path of revenge,  
or for glory of mind,  
do you seek Hrothgar ?”<sup>28</sup>

Beowulf tells him that his errand is with his ealdor, if he will permit him to greet him. Wulfgar, “ of the Wendel people,” who answered him, announces their arrival to Hrothgar, and advises him to be on his guard. But the king declares that he knew him when “ a cniht,” and orders him to be welcomed and escorted to his palace.<sup>29</sup> Beowulf is then introduced to Hrothgar.

<sup>26</sup> Beowulf, p. 22—26.

<sup>28</sup> Ib. p. 27.

<sup>27</sup> Ib. p. 26.

<sup>29</sup> Ib. p. 28—32.

BOOK  
IX.

Beowulf addressed him.  
The mail shone upon him :  
the heavy net was linked  
by the smith's care.

"Thou, Hrothgar ! hail !  
I am the kinsman of Higelac,  
and a born thegn.  
Many an enterprise  
have I begun in my youth ;  
to me the ruler of my native  
soil  
this affair of Grendel reveal-  
ed.

"The sea-sailing ones said  
that this mansion, once the  
happiest hall,  
has been to some warriors  
deformed and useless,  
after the light of evening,  
under the serene sky,  
had become darkened.  
My people have taught me  
that they were the happiest of  
wise Ceorles.

"King Hrothgar, I have  
sought thee,  
that they may know my  
strength.—  
And now against Grendel,

against that wretched one,  
I will alone exert myself  
against that Thyrse.

"Of thee, now, I ask one  
prayer,  
bright lord of the Danes,  
the hedge of the scyldingi !  
Do not thou deny me,  
asylum of warriors !  
dear lord of thy people !  
as I have thus far come ;  
let me alone,  
the lord of my sorls  
and of this sturdy host,  
expiate Heorot.

"I hear that the wretch  
madly cares not for weapons ;  
but this I despise,  
so that Higelac, my lord,  
may be blithe in his mind.  
I will bear the sword  
and the ample shield,  
my yellow buckler, to the bat-  
tle.

I will seize the foe with my  
grasp,  
and fearless contend  
with hate against the hate-  
ful." <sup>30</sup>

Recollecting, however, with modesty of mind, the  
adverse chances of battle, Beowulf adds :—

"If death should take me  
away,  
Bear me from the bloody  
slaughter ;  
remember to bury me.  
Eat over the solitary wanderer

un-mourningly.  
Mark my hillock with the sim-  
ple flower ;  
nor do thou about the fate  
of my bodily life long sorrow ;  
but send to Higelac,

if Hilda should withdraw me, the remains of the Hred-lan,  
my garments of battle. the work of Weland. C H A P.  
II.  
The best that my bosom bears, Now let fortune  
the richest of my clothes, wheel as she may.<sup>31</sup>

Hrothgar answers this manly speech in a friendly manner, and ends it with inviting him to "a feast in the hall of mead." Benches are spread "in the beer hall;" the thegn arranges them; the cup-bearer, "laden with ale," distributes it to the band. The scop, or poet, is again introduced, singing peace in Heorot<sup>32</sup>; but a new character is introduced: Hunferth, "the son of Eglaf, who sat at the feet of the lord of the Scyldingi." He is described as jealous of Beowulf's reputation, and as refusing to any man more celebrity than himself. He is represented as taunting Beowulf on his exploits as a sea-king or vikingr.

"Art thou Beowulf,  
he that with such profit  
labours on the wide sea,  
amid the contests of the ocean?  
There you for riches,  
and for deceitful glory,  
explore its bays  
in the deep waters,  
till you sleep with your elders.  
Nor can any man restrain you,  
whether dear or odious to you,  
from this sorrowful path.

There you rush on the wave;  
there on the water streams:  
from the miserable you flou-  
rish.

You place yourselves in the  
sea-street;  
you oppress with your hands;  
you glide over the ocean  
through the waves of its seas.  
The fury of winter rages,  
yet on the watery domain  
seven nights have ye toiled."

After other allusions to his exploits, he ends his speech with predicting:—

"If thou darest the Grendel, Beowulf answered  
the space of a long night awaits the son of Ecgtheow.  
thee."<sup>33</sup>

<sup>31</sup> Beowulf, p. 36.

<sup>33</sup> Ib. p. 40, 41.

<sup>32</sup> Ib. 37—39.

BOOK  
IX.

"What a throng of many Drunk with beer, hast thou  
words, spoken!"

my friend Hunferth,

He proceeds to justify himself for attempting the adventure, by a statement of some of his achievements, which is given as an illustration of their habits of life:—

We said when a cniht,  
and we threatened in the life  
of youth,  
that out on the ocean,  
with our elders we would sleep;  
and we accomplished our purpose.

Naked were our swords,  
hard in our hands,  
when we rushed into the bay,  
and against the whale fishes  
intended to defend ourselves.  
No creature could float away,  
far on the waves of the flood  
from me,  
swifter thro' the ocean  
than I could pursue him.  
For the space of five nights  
we were together on the sea,  
until the flood dispersed us;  
the raging waves and the coldest sky,  
the nipping nights and the  
north wind;

fierce were the waves,  
strong and grim their rolling,  
the rage of the great fishes  
was excited.

There against the enemies  
my body's iron vest,  
by hard hands well locked,  
gave me complete help.  
My braided battle-garment  
lay on my breast,  
adorned with gold.

The hateful enemy  
would have dragged me to the  
ground;  
fast he would have had me in  
his grim gripe,  
but that it was given to me  
that I should reach the wretch  
with my point.

With the battle axe of Hilda,  
thro' my hands in the noble  
onset,

I took the mighty sea-deer.<sup>34</sup>

Beowulf continues to talk of his exploits. The conversation is carried on; and the author thus describes the continuation of the banquet, and the appearance of the queen of Hrothgar amid the festivity, and assisting to honor Beowulf:—

<sup>34</sup> Beowulf, 43, 44.

There was in the hall  
the dispenser of treasure,  
the long-haired one, illustrious  
in battle,  
the bright lord of the Danes.  
He believed his salutation ;  
he heard from Beowulf,  
the guardian of his friends,  
the firmly counselled  
thought.

There was from the men  
the din of laughter resound-  
ing ;  
their words were pleasant.

WALTHROW came forth :  
the queen of Hrothgar,  
mindful of her descent,  
circled with gold, she greeted  
the warrior in the hall ;  
and the lordly wife gave the  
cup

to the first of the East  
Danes,

to the noble warder.  
She welcomed him blithely,  
the one dear to his people,  
to that feast of beer.  
He glowed with delight,

the illustrious king of victory, C H A P.  
at the feast and that hall-cup. II.

Then the lady went about  
the helmed nobles and the  
youths.

A portion to every one  
of the treasured vessels she  
gave ;

till the opportunity arrived  
that she, the queen, circled  
with bracelets,  
elevated in her mind,  
bore the cup of mead to Beo-  
wulf.

She greeted the Jute peo-  
ple ;  
wise with steady words, she  
thanked God  
that he had fulfilled her wish,  
for she believed the eorl  
would

be a comforter to his people  
in any thing.

He took the cup with joy,  
the warrior of fierce slaughter  
at the wall of the Whales,  
and then he sang, that the bat-  
tle might he hastened.<sup>33</sup>

The author proceeds to describe the continuation  
of these courteous civilities, which show us the  
royal manners of the day : —

Beowulf spoke, the son of would fulfil the wish of your  
Ecgtheow, people.  
“ When I launch'd my sea-boat And in the deadly conflict,  
on the waves, fast with hostile gripe,  
with the company of my war- I will show an eorl-like  
riors, strength.  
I thought that I alone To the end of my day  
in this mead hall expect me.”

<sup>33</sup> Beowulf, p. 45—49.

BOOK  
IX.

These words pleased the  
wife;  
the Jute's expressions of glory.  
Encircled with gold, she  
went,  
the queen of the free-like  
people,  
to sit by her lord.

Then, as before in the hall,  
words of menace were ut-  
tered.  
The people in the mansion  
sang the victories of their na-  
tion,  
till the son of Healfdan sud-  
denly  
sought his evening rest.<sup>26</sup>

Before he retires, Hrothgar again greets his brave  
visitor: he then withdraws with his own warriors.  
The queen "prays the King of Glory against Gren-  
del," and the warder of the hall conducted Beowulf  
to his place of repose.

Then he took off from him  
his iron coat of mail,  
and his helm from his head.  
He gave his ornamented sword  
of select iron  
to his attendant thegn,  
and bade him keep the instru-  
ment of Hilda.

The loved nobleman bent  
down his cheek,  
his bolster received the face of  
the eorl,  
and many of the active sea-  
warriors  
around him, to happy rest in-  
clined.<sup>27</sup>

But while they are in this state of rest and com-  
fort, the poet prepares to change the scene.

The spirit of the wan night  
came on;  
the hosts of the shadows roll  
up.

The shooters sleep — even  
those  
that should have held the horn  
of the palace.<sup>28</sup>

The ancient enemy now suddenly returns, to  
take advantage of their security, by a new sur-  
prise.

Then came from the moors,  
amid the mist from the moun-  
tains,

the Grendel, bearing the Di-  
vine anger.  
The hateful foe purposed in  
his madness

<sup>26</sup> Beowulf, p. 50.

<sup>27</sup> Ibid. p. 52—54.

<sup>28</sup> Ibid. p. 55.

to destroy treacherously some  
in that high hall.

He knew that the wine  
palace,  
the gilded hall of warriors,  
had been stored with various  
vessels:

It was not the first time  
that he had sought the home  
of Hrothgar,  
but never on former days, or  
since,  
had he attempted braver men  
than those hall thegns.<sup>39</sup>

His fatal measures are thus described : —

Swiftly he passed the mouth of  
the hall,  
and on the joyless floor the  
fiend trod ;  
he moved in wrathful mind ;  
he stood with eyes likest to  
flame,  
a frightful light.

He saw in that mansion  
Many warriors sleeping  
in peace with their lord.  
A band of related heroes.

Then his mind laughed :  
deformed wretch !

He purposed that he should  
separate  
the life of each from his body.  
A feast full of hope shone be-  
fore him.

The wyrd seemed propitious  
to him,  
that he might prevail over more  
men that night.

He contemplated with rage  
the kinsman of Higelac,  
and how the execrable one  
might get him under his fierce  
gripe.<sup>40</sup>

He appears to have been under the necessity of at-  
tacking first one of the warriors that surrounded  
Beowulf before he could reach the chief.

He assailed the sleeping war-  
rior on his upper side :  
his club struck the unwary  
one

on the bone of his locks ;  
the blood burst from the  
broken veins.<sup>41</sup>

Beowulf awakes as the Grendel is about to destroy  
him ; a fierce contest ensues between them, which  
is described at some length ; and the issue of it is  
the flight and escape of Grendel without effecting  
his full purpose.<sup>42</sup> The people assemble in the

<sup>39</sup> Beowulf, p. 56.

<sup>40</sup> Ibid. p. 57.

<sup>41</sup> Thorkelin here inserts the misplaced leaf.

<sup>42</sup> Beowulf, p. 58—64.

**B O O K** morning at the place of conflict, surprised at the  
**IX.** tidings. Beowulf is highly honoured for his first  
 success. Much rejoicing and conversation ensue  
 upon it. Hrothgar goes and congratulates Beowulf,  
 and declares that he shall consider him as his son.  
 Beowulf, in a respectful answer, shortly describes  
 the conflict. The jealous son of Eglaf becomes  
 silent, and another splendid banquet is prepared. <sup>43</sup>

It was then commanded  
 that the interior of Heort  
 by hands should be adorn'd.

There was then a number  
 of men and women,  
 who the wine-chamber  
 of the great mansion prepared.

There shone, variegated with  
 gold,  
 the web on the walls ;  
 many wonders to the sight  
 of each of the warriors  
 that would gaze on it, became  
 visible. <sup>44</sup>

The king himself proceeded to the festive hall ;  
 and the author declares, that he had never heard  
 that a nobler assembly, "about their giver of trea-  
 sures, the chamber had ever borne." The royal  
 presents to Beowulf are then described : —

They bent towards the tables,  
 to enjoy their full fruit ;  
 fair and free they rejoiced ;  
 the mead cups abounded ;  
 many kinsmen contended with  
 them.

In the lofty hall  
 were Hrothgar and Hrothulf.  
 Heorot was filled with friends  
 within.

No deceitful stafas (letters or  
 charms)  
 the people of the scyldingi  
 there framed.

Then to Beowulf he gave  
 the sword of Healfdan ;

a golden banner,  
 the reward of his victory ;  
 an ensign adorned in the hilt ;  
 a helmet and coat of mail ;  
 a great sword with decora-  
 tions ;

many saw borne before the  
 hero.

Beowulf fully prospered in  
 the chamber ;

he needed not be ashamed  
 of the money-gifts then  
 poured on him.

I have not observed  
 four vessels of gold more li-  
 beral,

<sup>43</sup> Beowulf, p. 68—75.

<sup>44</sup> Ibid. p. 76.

prepared on the table of their  
meal,  
to be given to many others of  
the men.

Around the roof of the hel-  
met,  
the castle of the head,  
was a hedge firmly circled,  
to keep off slaughter,  
that no remains of danger on  
him

might the steel hard with  
scouring inflict,  
when against the guilty robber  
in fury he should go.

The asylum of eorls then  
commanded

eight mares with fat cheeks,  
to be drawn into the cham-  
ber ;

on each of them was sta-  
tioned

a saddle, varied with trappings  
richly made.

That was the high king's seat  
of battle,

when the oblation of swords  
the son of Healfdan would  
perform.

Never on the fatal far-famed  
conflict

would they shrink from the  
slaughter.<sup>45</sup>

Hrothgar gives these presents to Beowulf, and ex-  
horts him to use them manfully. He also gave  
"vases from the treasure of his inheritance to each  
of those at that mead table, who followed Beowulf  
through the paths of the ocean."<sup>46</sup> The author  
moralises shortly, that the Creator governs all men ;  
and that the understanding is the best part of the  
soul ; and that —

Much forethought shall abide  
in it,

both of love and hatred  
to him that in these days of  
trouble

long enjoys the world.<sup>47</sup>

Then were song and music  
united

before Healfdan's leader of  
Hilda,

the mouth greeted the wood ;

the lay was oft narrated ;

the hall games followed ;

the poet of Hrothgar,

behind the table of mead,

recorded the expedition against  
the Finns.<sup>48</sup>

<sup>45</sup> Beowulf, p. 77—79. This description corresponds with  
the gifts of kings to their nobles and knights, alluded to be-  
fore.

<sup>46</sup> Ibid. p. 80.

<sup>47</sup> Ibid. p. 81.

<sup>48</sup> Ibid.

**BOOK IX.** **THIS** episode is rather long. The enterprise ended in the capture of the king and queen of the Finns. After this —

The song was sung;  
the lay of the gleemen.  
The games again sprang up.  
The music of the table enlivened them,  
the cup-bearers distributed the wine  
from wonderful vessels.

Then came forth Waltheow  
to go under the golden crown,  
where the two good heroes sat  
akin;  
peace reigned between them,  
each with the other in full confidence.<sup>49</sup>

The queen is then again exhibited as assisting actively in the friendly assembly; turning to her husband, —

Then the lady addressed the  
scyldinga:  
“Take this cup, lord of my  
love!  
Dispenser of treasure!  
In thy hall thou hast been gladden-  
ed  
with the wine of men;  
and to the Jutes hast spoken  
with the mild words that should  
be used.  
Be cheerful with the Jutes,  
mindful of gifts far and near.

“I am told thou hast de-  
clared,  
thou wouldest have their chief  
for a son.  
Heorot is now expiated;  
the mansion bright with brace-  
lets.  
Enjoy the plentiful mead while  
thou canst,  
and to thy relations leave  
thy people and thy kingdom,  
when thou shalt see the me-  
tod-sceaft.”<sup>50</sup>

After reminding him that Hrothulf will rule with honour if he survive him, and take care of their offspring, she returns to her seat, where her children and their young friends were near her. Soon the music is repeated; and taking some valuable ornaments, the queen again rises.

Before the assembly she  
spoke:—

“Accept this bracelet, dear  
Beowulf!

<sup>49</sup> Beowulf, p. 88, 89.

<sup>50</sup> Ibid. p. 90.

Be it an omen of reward to you. and to these cnyhts  
And these garments—enjoy their wealth, be mild in thy counsels.  
and flourish well with skilful valour; I will be careful of thy reward."<sup>61</sup>

After some further commendations, and recommending her sons to his attention, she orders "the drink to be got ready for the noble ones," and returns to her seat. Evening came on, the king withdrew, the tables were taken away, and the place was spread with beds and bolsters.

Some of the beer-servants, speedy and joyful, prepared the chamber of rest. They fixed over their heads the shields of Hilda; the boards of bright wood.	There high over the Etheling on his bench, the helmet of the noble one was seen, his ringed coat of mail, his glorious wood of strength." <sup>62</sup>
---	--

They all incline to rest; and in this situation the inveterate enemy attacks them again, but not in person. It is the mother of Grendel that is now the assailant; she enters secretly among the friends of Hrothgar, and kills one of his dearest thegns. Beowulf was not in that part, and the murderess escapes.<sup>63</sup> Hrothgar is much grieved for him, and exclaims:—

" Dead is Æschere, the son of Yrmenlates; the brother of the elders;	of my run-witan; of my ræd bora." <sup>64</sup>
--	--

Hrothgar goes on to lament the situation of his people, thus exposed to such assaults; ascribes the

<sup>61</sup> Beowulf, p. 93.

<sup>62</sup> Ibid. p. 95.

<sup>63</sup> Ibid. p. 96—100.

<sup>64</sup> Ibid. 101. These are some of the names given by the Anglo-Saxons to the members of their witen-gemot.

**B O O K**  
**IX.**

mischief to Grendel, and gives an account of his habitation.<sup>55</sup> Beowulf in an heroic speech proposes to undertake the enterprise of punishing both the Grendel and his mother for these new fehthes. He collects his own forces and some of Hrothgar's, and prepares for the expedition.<sup>56</sup> His arming himself is described. He takes an old sword of some celebrity that is described, and called Hrunting. He makes a farewell speech to Hrothgar, and requests that if Hilda, their goddess of war, should take him away, the presents he has received should be sent to Higelac his lord.<sup>57</sup>

He then proceeds to the adventure, and begins it by a combat with the mother of Grendel, who attacks him like a sea-wolf. He fights valiantly, but he finds the famous sword of no use. She is not impressible by its edge; her strength and fury begin to overpower him; she throws him down, and is proceeding to destroy him, when an enchanted sword, a weapon of the ancient giants, and of their fabrication, comes within his reach: he strikes her with it, and she dies under his blow.<sup>58</sup> This success is followed by a victory over Grendel himself, whom he also destroys, and whose head he carries off and presents to Hrothgar.<sup>59</sup>

He tells the king that he could achieve nothing with Hrunting.

<p>" But the ruler of ages          granted me,          that over the waves I should          see          an ancient sword hang beauti-          ful.</p>	<p>It was often declared,          by the wine-geleasum,          that I should draw this wea-          pon.<sup>60</sup></p>
---	---

<sup>55</sup> Beowulf, p. 102—104.

<sup>57</sup> Ibid. 110—113.

<sup>59</sup> Ibid. p. 120—124.

<sup>56</sup> Ibid. p. 105—109.

<sup>58</sup> Ibid. p. 114—119.

<sup>60</sup> Ibid. p. 126.

Hrothgar looks at it, and says it was an ancient relic, on which were written the battles of the ancient times, when after the flood the race of the giants were destroyed. On the polished blade, in pure gold, the runæ-letters were marked.<sup>61</sup>

C H A P.  
II.

THE poem proceeds to describe Beowulf's return to Higelac. He engages in some further adventures, which are not of equal interest with the former. He succeeds Higelac in his kingdom; builds a city; fights thirty battles; and dies after a reign of fifty years.<sup>62</sup> Such is the substance of this curious poem, which is quite Anglo-Saxon in the manners it describes, and corroborates several of those features, which in the preceding pages have been delineated. It seems to be the oldest poem, in an epic form, that now exists in any of the vernacular languages of modern Europe.

<sup>61</sup> Beowulf, p. 127, 128.

<sup>62</sup> Ibid. p. 157—236.

## CHAP. III.

ANGLO-SAXON *Poems of JUDITH and CÆDMON.—Their other Poetry.*

BOOK  
IX.

**T**HE fragment which remains of the poem on Judith, may be deemed another Anglo-Saxon poetical romance. The subject of this poem is taken from the Apocrypha, but the Anglo-Saxon poet has borrowed merely the outline of the story. All the circumstances, the descriptions, and the speeches, which he has inserted, are of his own invention. He has, therefore, done what all romancers did. He has applied the manners and characters of his day to the time of Judith, and thus really made it an Anglo-Saxon romance.

It is curious, from another circumstance. It is a romance written while the old Anglo-Saxon poetry was in fashion, but when it began to improve: for, while it displays the continuity of narration and minuteness of description of the more cultivated romance, it retains some metaphors, the periphrasis, and the inversions which our stately ancestors so much favoured. It has only laid aside their abrupt transitions and more violent metaphors.

THE eight first sections of the poem on Judith, and part of the ninth, are lost. It begins with a part that corresponds with this verse in the Apocrypha<sup>1</sup>:—

“AND in the fourth day Holofernes made a feast to his own servants only, and called none of the officers to the banquet.”

<sup>1</sup> Judith, xii. 10.

THE Saxon poet expresses this passage thus: — C H A P.  
III.

Understood I then,  
Holofernes ordered  
wine to be made diligently,  
and with all wonders  
a splendid feast to prepare. /  
To this commanded  
the Baldor<sup>2</sup> of men,  
all the eldest thegna.  
They with much haste obeyed:

the shielded warriors came  
to the rich king;  
the leaders of the people.  
This was the fourth day  
that Judith,  
cunning in thought,  
the woman shining like an elf, )  
first sought him.

The subsequent narration of the Apocrypha is not followed by the poet; but instead of it, from his own invention, he substitutes these circumstances: —

They then to the feast  
went to sit,  
eager to drink wine;  
all his fierce chiefs,  
bold, mail-clad warriors!  
There were often carried  
the deep bowls  
behind the benches;  
so likewise vessels  
and orcas full  
to those sitting at supper.  
They received him, soon about  
to die,  
the illustrious shield-warriors:  
though of this the powerful  
one  
thought not; the fearful  
lord of earls.

Then was Holofernes  
exhilarated with wine;  
in the halls of his guests,  
he laughed and shouted;

he roared and dinned;  
then might the children of  
men  
afar off hear  
how the stern one  
stormed and clameured,  
animated and elated with wine.  
He admonished amply  
that they should bear it well,  
to those sitting on the bench.

So was the wicked one  
over all the day,  
the lord and his men,  
drunk with wine,  
the stern dispenser of wealth;  
till that they swimming lay  
over drunk,  
all his nobility  
as they were death-alain;  
their property poured about.  
So commanded the Baldor of  
men

<sup>2</sup> Baldor was one of the sons of Odin. — His name is figuratively used to express a chief.

## B O O K

## IX

to fill to them sitting at the feast,  
till that to the children of men  
the dark night approached.  
Then commanded he  
the man so overpowered,  
the blessed virgin  
with speed to fetch  
to his bed rest,  
with bracelets laden,  
with rings adorned.  
Then quickly hurried  
the subjected servants,  
as their elder bade them.  
The mailed warriors  
of the illustrious lord  
stepped to the great place.  
There they found Judith,  
prudent in mind ;  
and then firmly,  
the bannered soldiers  
began to lead  
the illustrious virgin  
to the high tent.  
There the powerful one  
his rest on the feast night  
within was enjoying ;  
the odious Holofernes.  
There was the fair  
the golden fly net  
about the chief's bed hung,  
that the mischief-ful  
might look thro',  
the Baldor of the soldiers,  
on every one  
that there within came  
of the children of men ;  
and on him no one  
of man kind ;  
unless the proud one,  
any man of his illustrious  
soldiers,  
commanded to come  
near him to council.

Then they to the bed  
brought quickly  
the prudent woman.  
Then went  
the fierce-minded men  
their lord to tell,  
that the holy woman was  
brought  
into the chamber of his tent.  
Then was the illustrious one  
blithe in mind.  
The elder of the cities thought  
the bright woman  
with filth and pollution to stain.  
But the Judge of Glory,  
the keeper of majesty,  
would not suffer it ;  
but the Lord,  
ruler of his nobles,  
from this thing restrained.

Then departed  
the devil-worshipping lustful  
one  
from the host of men,  
mischief-ful,  
his bed to visit,  
where he should  
suddenly his blood lose  
within one night.

So, drunken with wine,  
the rich one fell  
on the middle of his bed,  
as he knew no discretion  
in the inclosure.

The soldiers stepped  
out of the chamber  
with much haste :  
the wine-ful men  
that the perfidious  
people-hating tyrant  
led to the bed  
the nighest way.  
Then was the glory-ful

maiden of the Saviour  
very mindful  
how she the foul elder  
might easiest destroy,  
before the vicious  
stainful one awoke.

The maid of the Creator  
with twisted locks  
took then a sharp sword,  
hard with scouring,  
and from the sheath drew it  
with her right limb.

C H A P.  
III.

THE poet then describes her killing Holo-  
fernes :

She took the heathen man  
fast by his hair ;  
she drew him by his limbs  
towards her disgracefully ;  
and the mischieful  
odious man  
at her pleasure laid ;  
so as the wretch  
she might the easiest well  
command.

She with the twisted locks  
struck the hateful enemy,  
meditating hate,  
with the red sword,  
till she had half cut off his neck ;  
so that he lay in a swoon,  
drunk, and mortally wounded.  
He was not then dead,  
not entirely lifeless ;  
she struck then earnest,  
the woman illustrious in  
strength,  
another time  
the heathen hound ;

till that his head  
rolled forth upon the floor.  
The foul one lay without a  
coffer ;  
backward his spirit turned  
under the abyss,  
and there was plunged below,  
with sulphur fastened ;  
for ever afterwards wounded  
by worms.

Bound in torments,  
hard imprisoned,  
in hell he burns.  
After his course  
he need not hope,  
with darkness overwhelmed,  
that he may escape  
from that mansion of worms ;  
but there he shall remain  
ever and ever,  
without end, henceforth  
in that cavern-home,  
void of the joys of hope.

Jud.p. 23.

THE poet continues to describe Judith's escape  
to the town of her countrymen. Her reception is  
thus mentioned :

There were they blithe,  
those sitting in the burgh,  
after they heard  
how the Holy One spake  
over the high wall.

The army was rejoiced.  
Towards the gates of the fast-  
ness  
the people went,  
men and women together,

B O O K

IX.

in numbers and heaps,  
in crowds and hosts.  
They thronged, and ran

against the illustrious maid,  
from a thousand parts,  
old and young.

Here repetition of phrase is the substitute for energy of description.

THE poet then gives her speech to the people :—

Then the discreet one ordered,  
adorned with gold,  
to her maidens,  
with thoughtful mind,  
that army-leader's  
head to uncover,  
and it on high,  
bloody, to show  
to the citizens—  
Then spake the noble one  
to all the people.  
“ Here may we manifestly  
stare on the head  
of the man illustrious for victory,  
of the leader of his people,  
of the odious heathen commander ;  
of the not living Holofernes,  
he that of all men to us  
most murders has done,  
sore sorrows ;  
and more yet  
would have augmented them,  
but that to him God grants  
not  
a longer life,  
that he with injuries

should afflict us.  
I from him life took away,  
through God's assistance.  
Now I to every man  
of these citizens  
will pray,  
of these shield-warriors,  
that ye immediately  
haste you to fight.  
When God, the source of all,  
the honour-fast king,  
from the East sends  
a ray of light,  
bear forth your banners ;  
with shields for your breasts,  
and mail for your hams,  
shining helmets,  
go among the robbers ;  
let their leaders fall,  
the devoted chiefs,  
by the ruddy sword !  
they are your enemies,  
destined to death,  
and ye shall have their doom,  
victory from your great leader,  
the mighty Lord !  
as he hath signified to you  
by my hand.”

Jud. p. 24.

The sally which immediately took place, and the consequent battle, is thus described :—

Then was the host of the swift  
quickly gathered together,

the soldiers to the field ;  
the warriors and the nobles  
illustrious stepped forth.

They bore the Tufas,  
they went to fight  
straight onwards :  
men under helms  
from the holy city,  
at the dawn itself.  
They dinned shields ;  
men roared loudly.  
At this rejoiced the lank  
wolf in the wood,  
and the wan raven,  
the fowl greedy of slaughter,  
both from the west,  
that the sons of men for them  
should have thought to prepare  
their fill on corpses.

And to them flew in their paths  
the active devourer, the eagle,  
hoary in his feathers.

The willowed kite,  
with his horned beak,  
sang the song of Hilda.

The noble warriors pro-  
ceeded,

they in mail, to the battle,  
furnished with shields,  
with swelling banners.)

They that awhile, before  
the reproach of the foreigners,  
the taunts of the heathen  
endured.

To them what had been hard  
at that play of swords,  
was in all repaid  
on the Assyrians ;  
when the Hebrews,

under the banners,  
had sallied  
on their camps.

They then speedily  
let fly forth  
showers of arrows,  
the serpents of Hilda,  
from their horn bows ;  
the spears on the ground  
hard stormed.  
Loud raged  
the plunderers of battle ;  
they sent their darts  
into the throng of the chiefs.)

The angry land-owners  
acted as men  
against the odious race.  
Stern-minded, they advanced  
with fierce spirits :

they pressed on unsoftly,  
with ancient hate,  
against the mead-weary foe.

With their hands, the chiefs  
tore from their sheaths  
the sheer, cross sword,  
in its edges tried :  
they slew earnestly  
the Assyrian combatants.

Pursuing with hate,  
none they spared  
of the army-folk  
of the great kingdom  
of the living men,  
whom they could overcome.)

Jud. 24.

As Cædmon's paraphrase is a poetical narration mixed with many topics of invention and fancy, it has also as great a claim to be considered as a narrative poem, as Milton's *Paradise Lost* has to be deemed an epic poem. It was published by Junius

Cædmon's  
Para-  
phrase.

**BOOK**  
**IX.**

as the work of the ancient Cædmon, who has been already mentioned. It treats on the first part of the subjects which Bede mentions to have been the topics of the elder Cædmon; but it is presumed by Hickes not to be so ancient as the poet mentioned by Bede. I confess that I am not satisfied that Hickes is right in referring it to any other author than the person to whom Junius ascribes it.

It begins with the fall of angels, and the creation of the world. It proceeds to the history of Adam and Eve; of Cain, and the deluge; of Abraham and of Moses. The actions of Nabuchodonosor and Daniel are subjoined.

In its first topic, "the fall of the angels," it exhibits much of a Miltonic spirit; and if it were clear that our illustrious bard had been familiar with Saxon, we should be induced to think that he owed something to the paraphrase of Cædmon. No one at least can read Cædmon without feeling the idea intruding upon his mind. As the subject is curious, I shall make no apology for very copious extracts from Cædmon, translated as literally as possible:—

On the  
Fall of the  
Angels.

To us it is much right  
that we the Ruler of the firmament,  
the Glory-King of Hosts,  
with words should praise,  
with minds should love.  
He is in power abundant,  
High Head of all creatures,  
Almighty Lord!

There was not to him ever  
beginning  
nor origin made;  
nor now end cometh.  
Eternal Lord!  
But he will be always powerful  
over heaven's stools,<sup>3</sup>  
in high majesty,  
truth-fast and very strenuous,  
Ruler of the bosoms of the sky!

---

<sup>3</sup> I use the term in the original, because such expressions as have any allusion to ancient manners should always be preserved.

Then were they set  
wide and ample,  
thro' God's power,  
for the children of glory,  
for the guardians of spirits.  
They had joy and splendor,  
and their beginning-origin,  
the hosts of angels;  
bright bliss was their great  
fruit.

The glory-fast thegns  
praised the King :  
they said willingly praise  
to their Life-Lord ;  
they obeyed his domination  
with virtues.

They were very happy ;  
sins they knew not ;  
nor to frame crimes :  
but they in peace lived  
with their Eternal Elder.  
Otherwise they began not  
to rear in the sky,  
except right and truth,  
before the Ruler of the angels,  
for pride divided them in error.

They would not prolong  
council for themselves !  
but they from self-love  
throw off God's.  
They had much pride  
that they against the Lord  
would divide  
the glory-fast place,  
the majesty of their hosts,  
the wide and bright sky.

To him there grief hap-  
pened,  
envy, and pride ;  
to that angel's mind  
that this ill counsel  
began first to frame,  
to weave and wake.

Then he words said,  
darkened with iniquity,  
that he in the north part  
a home and high seat  
of heaven's kingdom  
would possess.

Then was God angry,  
and with the host wrath  
that he before esteemed  
illustrious and glorious.  
He made for those perfidious  
an exiled home,  
a work of retribution,  
Hell's groans and hard  
hatreds.

Our Lord commanded the  
punishment-house  
for the exiles to abide,  
deep, joyless,  
the rulers of spirits.

When he it ready knew  
with perpetual night foul,  
sulphur including,  
over it full fire  
and extensive cold,  
with smoke and red flame,  
he commanded them over  
the mansion, void of council,  
to increase the terror-punish-  
ment.

They had provoked accus-  
ation ;  
grim against God gathered  
together,  
to them was grim retribution  
come.

They said that they the king-  
dom  
with fierce mind would pos-  
sess,  
and so easily might.  
Them the hope deceived,  
after the Governor

**B O O K**  
**IX.**

the high King of Heaven,  
 his hands upreared.  
 He pursued against the  
 crowd;  
 nor might the void of mind,  
 vile against their Maker,  
 enjoy might.  
 Their loftiness of mind de-  
 parted.  
 their pride was diminished.

Then was he angry;  
 he struck his enemies  
 with victory and power,  
 with judgment and virtue,  
 and took away joy:  
 peace from his enemies,  
 and all pleasure:  
 Illustrious Lord!  
 and his anger wreaked  
 on the enemies greatly,  
 in their own power  
 deprived of strength.

He had a stern mind;  
 grimly provoked;  
 he seized in his wrath  
 on the limbs of his enemies,  
 and them in pieces broke,  
 wrathful in mind.  
 He deprived of their country

his adversaries,  
 from the stations of glory  
 he made and cut off,  
 our Creator!  
 the proud race of angels from  
 heaven;  
 the faithless host.  
 The Governor sent  
 the hated army  
 on a long journey,  
 with mourning speech.  
 To them was glory lost,  
 their threats broken,  
 their majesty curtailed,  
 stained in splendor;  
 they in exile afterwards  
 pressed on their black way.  
 They needed not loud to  
 laugh;  
 but they in Hell's torments  
 weary remained, and knew  
 woe  
 sad and sorry:  
 they endured sulphur,  
 covered with darkness,  
 a heavy recompense,  
 because they had begun  
 to fight against God.

Cæd. p. 1, 2.

CÆDMON thus describes the creation:—

On the  
 Creation.

There was not yet then here,  
 except gloom like a cavern,  
 any thing made.  
 But the wide ground  
 stood deep and dim  
 for a new lordship,  
 shapeless and unsuitable.  
 On this with his eyes he  
 glanced,  
 the king stern in mind,  
 and the joyless place beheld.

He saw the dark clouds  
 perpetually press  
 black under the sky,  
 void and waste;  
 till that this world's creation  
 thro' the word was done  
 of the King of Glory.

Here first made  
 the Eternal Lord,  
 the Patron of all creatures,  
 heaven and earth.

He reared the sky,  
and this roomy land established  
with strong powers,  
Almighty Ruler !

The earth was then yet  
with grass not green ;  
with the ocean covered,  
perpetually black ;  
far and wide  
the desert ways. )

Then was the glory-bright  
Spirit of the Warder of heaven  
borne over the watery abyss  
with great abundance.

The Creator of angels com-  
manded,  
the lord of life !  
light to come forth  
over the roomy ground.

Quickly was fulfilled  
the high King's command ;  
the sacred light came  
over the waste  
as the Artist ordered.  
Then separated  
The Governor of victory  
over the water-flood  
light from darkness,  
shade from shine ;  
he made them both be named,  
Lord of life !  
Light was first,  
thro' the Lord's word,  
called day,  
creation of bright splendor.

Pleased well the Lord  
at the beginning,  
the birth of time,  
the first day.  
He saw the dark shade  
black spread itself  
over the wide ground,  
when time declined

over the oblation-smoke of the C H A P.  
earth. III.

The Creator after separated  
from the pure shine,  
our Maker,  
the first evening.

To him ran at last  
a throng of dark clouds.

To these the King himself  
gave the name of night:

our Saviour  
these separated.

Afterwards, as an inheritance,  
the will of the Lord  
made and did it  
eternal over the earth.

Then came another day,  
light after darkness.  
The Warder of life then com-  
manded

the greater waters  
in the middle to be  
a high-like heaven timber.  
He divided the watery abyss  
our Governor,  
and made them  
a fastness of a firmament.  
This the Great One raised  
up from the earth,  
through his own word,  
Almighty Lord !

The world was divided  
under the high firmament  
with holy might ;  
waters from waters :  
from those that yet remain  
under the fastness,  
the roof of nations.  
Then came over the earth,  
hasty to advance,  
the great third morning.

There were not then yet  
made

**B O O K** the wide land,  
**IX.** nor the useful ways;  
 but the earth stood fast,  
 covered with flood.  
 The Lord of angels com-  
 manded,  
 thro' his word,  
 the waters to be together,  
 that now under the firmament  
 their course hold  
 an appointed place.  
 Then stood willingly

the water under heaven,  
 as the Holy One commanded.  
 Far from each other  
 there was separated  
 the water from the land.  
 The Warder of life then be-  
 held  
 dry regions;  
 the Keeper of the virtues  
 wide displayed them.  
 Then the King of Glory  
 named the earth.

Cæd. 3, 4.

BUT that part of Cædmon which is the most original product of his own fancy, is his account of Satan's hostility. To us, the "Paradise Lost" of Milton has made this subject peculiarly interesting; and as it will be curious to see how an old Saxon poet has previously treated it, we shall give another copious extract. Some of the touches bring to mind a few of Milton's conceptions. But in Cædmon the finest thoughts are abruptly introduced, and very roughly and imperfectly expressed. In Milton the same ideas are detailed in all the majesty of his diction, and are fully displayed with that vigour of intellect in which he has no superior.

The universal Ruler had  
 of the angelic race,  
 through his hand-power,  
 the holy Lord!  
 a fortress established.  
 To them he well trusted  
 that they his service  
 would follow,  
 would do his will.  
 For this he gave them under-  
 standing,  
 and with his hands made them.

The Holy Lord  
 had stationed them  
 so happily.  
 One he had so  
 strongly made,  
 so mighty  
 in his mind's thought;  
 he let him rule so much;  
 the highest in heaven's king-  
 dom;  
 he had made him  
 so splendid;

so beautiful  
was his fruit in heaven  
which to him came  
from the Lord of Hosts ;  
that he was like  
the brilliant stars.

Praise ought he  
to have made to his Lord ;  
he should have valued dear  
his joys in heaven ;  
he should have thanked his

Lord  
for the bounty which  
in that brightness he shared ;  
when he was permitted  
so long to govern.

But he departed from it  
to a worse thing.  
He began to upheave strife  
against the Governor  
of the highest heaven,  
that sits on the holy seat.  
Dear was he to our Lord ;  
from whom it could not be hid,  
that his angel began  
to be over-proud.

He raised himself  
against his Master ;  
he sought inflaming speeches ;  
he began vain-glorious words ;  
he would not serve God ;  
he said he was his equal  
in light and shining ;  
as white and as bright in  
hue.

Nor could he find it in his  
mind

to render obedience  
to his God,  
to his King.

He thought in himself  
that he could have subjects  
of more might and skill  
than the Holy God.

Spake many words  
this angel of pride.  
He thought through his own  
craft  
that he could make  
a more strong-like seat,  
higher in the heavens.

SATAN is represented as uttering this soliloquy,  
which begins with doubting about his enterprise,  
but ends in a determination to pursue it :

/ “ Why should I contend ?  
I cannot have  
any creature for my superior !  
I may with my hands  
so many wonders work !  
and I must have great power  
to acquire a more godlike  
stool,  
higher in the heavens !

Yet why should I  
sue for his grace ?  
or bend to him

with any obedience ?  
I may be  
a god, as he is.  
Stand by me,  
strong companions !  
who will not deceive me  
in this contention.  
Warriors of hardy mind !  
they have chosen me  
for their superior ;  
illustrious soldiers !  
with such, indeed,

## B O O K

## IX.

one may take counsel !  
 with such folk  
 may seize a station !  
 My earnest friends they are,  
 faithful in the effusions of their  
 mind.  
 I may, as their leader,  
 govern in this kingdom.

So I think it not right,  
 nor need I  
 flatter any one,  
 as if to any gods  
 a god inferior.  
 I will no longer  
 remain his subject."<sup>4</sup>

AFTER narrating the consequent anger of the Deity, and the defeat and expulsion of Satan, the poet thus describes his abode in the infernal regions :

The fiend, with all his fol-  
 lowers,  
 fell then out of heaven ;  
 during the space  
 of three nights and days ;  
 the angels from heaven  
 into hell ; and them all  
 the Lord turned into devils :  
 because that they  
 his deed and word  
 would not reverence.  
 For this, into a worse light  
 under the earth beneath  
 the Almighty God  
 placed them, defeated ;  
 in the black hell.  
 There have they for ever,  
 for an immeasurable length,  
 each of the fiends,  
 fire always renewed.  
 There comes at last  
 the eastern wind,  
 the cold frost  
 mingling with the fires.

Always fire or arrows,  
 some hard tortures,  
 they must have :  
 it was made for their punish-  
 ment.

Their world was turned round.  
 Hell was filled  
 with execrations. —

They suffer the punishment  
 of their battle against their

Ruler ;  
 the fierce torrents of fire  
 in the midst of hell :  
 brands and broad flames ;  
 so likewise bitter smoke,  
 vapour and darkness. —

They were all fallen  
 to the bottom of that fire  
 in the hot hell,  
 thro' their folly and pride.  
 Sought they other land,  
 it was all void of light,  
 and full of fire,  
 a great journey of fire. —

---

<sup>4</sup> i. e. his younger.

Another of Satan's speeches may be cited :

C H A P.  
III.

Then spake the over-proud  
king,  
that was before  
of angels the most shining ;  
the whitest in heaven ;  
by his Master beloved,  
to his Lord endeared ;  
till he turned to evil ; —  
Satan said,

with sorrowing speech —  
“ Is this the narrow place,  
unlike, indeed, to the others  
which we before knew,  
high in heaven's kingdom,  
that my Master puts me in ?  
But those we must not have,  
by the Omnipotent  
deprived of our kingdom.  
He hath not done us right,  
that he hath filled us  
with fire to the bottom  
of this hot hell,  
and taken away heaven's king-  
dom.

“ He hath marked that  
with mankind  
to be settled.  
This is to me the greatest sor-  
row,

that Adam shall,  
he that was made of earth,  
my stronglike stool possess.  
He is to be thus happy,  
while we suffer punishment ;  
misery in this hell !

Oh that I had free  
the power of my hands,  
and might for a time  
be out ;  
for one winter's space,  
I and my army !  
but iron bonds

lay around me !  
knots of chains press me down !  
I am kingdomless !  
hell's fetters  
hold me so hard,  
so fast encompass me !  
Here are mighty flames  
above and beneath ;  
I never saw  
a more hateful landscape.  
This fire never languishes ;  
hot over hell,  
encircling rings,  
biting manacles,  
forbid my course.  
My army is taken from me,  
my feet are bound,  
my hands imprisoned ! —  
Thus hath God confined me.  
Hence I perceive  
that he knows my mind.  
The Lords of Hosts  
likewise knows  
that Adam should from us  
suffer evil  
about heaven's kingdom,  
if I had the power of my  
hands. —

He hath now marked out  
a middle region ;  
where he hath made man  
after his likeness.  
From him he will  
again settle  
the kingdom of heaven  
with pure souls.  
We should to this end  
diligently labour,  
that we on Adam,  
if we ever may,  
and on his offspring,  
work some revenge.”

**BOOK IX.** After explaining his plan of seducing Adam to disobedience, he adds,

“ If, when king,  
to any of my thegns  
I formerly gave treasures ;  
when we in that good king-  
dom  
sat happy,  
and had the power of our  
thrones ;  
when he to me,  
in that beloved time,  
could give no recompense,  
to repay my favour ;  
let him now again,  
some one of my thegns,  
become my helper,  
that he may escape hence  
thro’ these barriers ;  
that he with wings may fly,  
may wind into the sky,  
to where Adam and Eve  
stand created on the earth. —

“ If any of you  
could by any means change  
them,  
that they God’s word,  
his command, would neglect,  
soon they to him  
would become odious.  
If Adam break thro’  
his obedience,  
then with them would the Su-  
preme  
become enraged,  
and award their punishment.  
“ Strive ye all for this,  
how ye may deceive them !  
Then shall I repose softly,  
even in these bonds.  
To him that succeeds  
a reward shall be ready —  
I will set him  
near to myself.”

Cæd. 6—11.

FROM these poems, of Beowulf, Judith, and Cædmon, it is clear that the Anglo-Saxons had begun to compose long narrative poems, rising at times, both to fancy and feeling, and making some pretensions to the name of heroic poems. From whence did this taste originate ?

THE epic poems of antiquity seem to me to be the legitimate parents of all the narrative poetry of Europe, and the progress of the descent may be sufficiently traced.

THE Romans derived this species of composition from the Greeks, and cultivated it with varying success. Their epic poetry established a taste for narrative poems wherever their language spread.

This appears from the poems of this sort which the writers, of the various countries of Europe under their influence, attempted to compose, and some of which may be briefly enumerated. C H A P.  
III.

IN the fourth century we have a narrative poem, in Latin hexameter verse, written by VICTORINUS, an African rhetorician, on the slaughter of the Maccabees. It is not much above four hundred lines in length.<sup>5</sup>

IN the same century, JUVENCUS, a Spaniard, wrote a narrative poem, in hexameter verse, on the history of Christ, which contains four books, and above three thousand lines. The narration is carefully carried on, but the poetry is of an humble cast.<sup>6</sup>

ONE of the most remarkable poems of AURELIUS PRUDENTIUS, a Spaniard of consular dignity, is the Psychomachia. This is an allegorical poem, in eight books, on the virtues and vices of the mind, in a sort of heroic narration. It is partly the same subject which our Spenser has combined with a chivalric story. In Prudentius, every virtue and every vice come out as persons, armed or dressed appropriately to their different qualities, and harangue and fight. It consists of one thousand and twenty-two hexameter lines.<sup>7</sup>

IN the fifth century, SEDULIUS, an Irishman, went to France, Italy, and Asia; and on his return from Achaia, settled at Rome. He has written a narrative poem on the miracles of Christ, which he calls his Paschale Opus. It is in five books, containing about two thousand hexameter lines. It

<sup>5</sup> Bib. Mag. tom. viii. p. 625—628.

<sup>6</sup> Ib. p. 629—657.

<sup>7</sup> Ib. tom. viii. p. 463—471

B O O K

IX.

is almost wholly narration and description, seldom enlivened by dialogue; but his style of verse is much superior to that of the preceding authors, and has somewhat of the air of Statius.<sup>8</sup>

CLAUDIUS MARIUS VICTOR, a rhetorician of Marseilles, lived in the same century. His poetical commentary on Genesis is a narrative poem on the creation, the fall of man, and the subsequent history, including that of Abraham. In the part of his poem which concerns "Paradise Lost," the most original incidents are these: while Adam is addressing the Deity in a long penitential speech, they see the serpent gliding before them. Eve counsels his destruction. She immediately pursues him with stones, in which Adam joins, till one of them, striking a flint, elicits a spark, which instantly kindles a flame and sets the woods in a blaze. The unexpected sight of this new element of fire terrifies our parents into a hasty flight. The poem contains about eighteen hundred lines.<sup>9</sup>

THE poems of SIDONIUS on the emperor, his friend, contain a sort of heroic fable. In the panegyric on Avitus, the emperor speaks, as do others; and Jupiter likewise harangues.<sup>10</sup> The life of St. Martin, by PAULINUS, a senator of Aquitaine, afterwards a bishop, in hexameter verse, must be also considered as a narrative poem of considerable length. It is in six books, and contains about three thousand seven hundred hexameter lines. Though it abounds with fiction it is very dull.<sup>11</sup>

IN the sixth century ALCIMUS AVITUS, the archbishop of Vienne, composed a narrative poem on

<sup>8</sup> Bib. Mag. tom. viii. p. 658—678.

<sup>9</sup> Ib. p. 580—595.

<sup>10</sup> Sid. Apoll.

<sup>11</sup> Bib. Mag. tom. viii. p. 852—882.

the Jewish history, from the creation to Exodus, in five books, comprising above two thousand lines. The first book is on the creation, the second on the fall, the third on the expulsion from Paradise, the fifth on the flood, and the sixth on the passage of the Red Sea. It is more remarkable for its antiquity than for its poetry. But it must be ranked much above the lowest in the list of the leaden goddess.<sup>12</sup>

C H A P.  
III.

ARATOR, a Roman sub-deacon, in the same century, wrote a narrative poem on the apostolic history, in two books, and about two thousand four hundred lines. It is more entitled to be enumerated than read. Its purpose is much better than its versification.<sup>13</sup>

FORTUNATUS, a loquacious poet, bishop of Poitou, devoted four books, and about two thousand lines, to a narrative poem of the life of St. Martin. As it is full of his miracles, it is full of invention; but as the poets whom he enumerates, in his proemium, as his models, are those whom we have just mentioned, it may be expected that the pupil has not obscured his tutors either by his taste or his genius.<sup>14</sup>

IN the seventh century, we have the heroic poem of PETRUS APOLLONIUS, an Italian, on the destruction of Jerusalem, in above two thousand hexameters. It obviously emulates the style and the manner of the best models. It attempts epic machinery and dramatic effect, though the success of the effort is not always equal to its ambition. One part of its machinery is, the sending the angel Raphael to the Tartarian abodes, to command one of

<sup>12</sup> Bib. Mag. tom. viii. p. 596—618.

<sup>13</sup> Ib. p. 682—700.

<sup>14</sup> Ib. p. 752—772.

**B O O K** IX. the demons to go and persuade the Jewish leaders to revolt from the Romans, that they may bring their punishment on themselves.<sup>15</sup>

IN the eighth century, we have **BEDE's** Life of Saint Cuthbert, of which a specimen will be given in the chapter on the Latin poetry of the Anglo-Saxons. It is, indeed, a romance in Latin verse. The incidents are fanciful tales of Cuthbert's miraculous adventures. They are narrated in a dramatic form, as the specimen hereafter given will show. It consists of nine hundred and seventy-nine lines.

ALL these poems are obviously the offspring of the Roman Epopeas; and show, that by them the taste for narrative poetry was excited in France, in Spain, Italy, and Britain. From the epic poems of antiquity, and their imitations, the Anglo-Saxons, as well as the Franks, and the Goths in Spain, learnt the art of constructing and carrying on an epic fable. The first imitations were in Latin, by those who knew the language and loved its poetry. But that men arose who cultivated poetry in their native tongue, as well as in the Latin language, we learn from the example of Aldhelm. His Latin poetry will be noticed in the next chapter; and we have already remarked, from the information of Alfred, that he took great pains to compose poems for the instruction of his countrymen in their vernacular tongue.

THE first narrative poems were probably composed by the ecclesiastics. The poems of Cædmon and on Judith are obviously religious; and some passages of Beowulf have that air. Such

<sup>15</sup> Bib. Mag. tom. viii. p. 731—752.

men, from their learning, would be best skilled in the art of narration; and from them it probably descended to the scop, or professional poet. C H A P.  
III.

THAT the ecclesiastics of those ages greatly cultivated the art of narrative invention, and were successful in their efforts, we see from their legends. The miraculous stories in Gregory's dialogues, in Bede's history, and in other writers of that time, are in fact so many fanciful tales, much more poetical in their invention and narration than any of those works which then passed as poetry.

THAT the legends and lives of Saints were translated from Latin into Anglo-Saxon, we know to be a fact. Alfred caused Gregory's dialogues to be translated, which are nothing but legends or tales of the miraculous actions of the Italian saints, but so numerous as to fill one hundred and sixteen folio pages. It is as complete a specimen of fictitious narration as any book of fairy tales which has been published. Every nation of Europe, after the fall of the Roman empire, had some such narratives of supernatural agency; and therefore we must consider the monks as the great inventors of narrative fiction. So numerous were their creations, that the lives of the saints, which have been collected and published, amount, in the last edition, to above a hundred thick folio volumes; written chiefly in the early and middle ages of Europe, and all abounding with tales of supernatural agency. Some display very striking imagery and rich invention, others are dull. The ancient lives of the Irish saints are so extravagant in their imputed miracles, that the editors, who believe the truth of all the others, have felt it decorous to caution the

**B O O K**  
**IX.**

reader that the fancy of these biographers has been too ardent, and their credulity too indiscriminate.

THE lives of the saints which still exist in the Anglo-Saxon language, show that they were diffused among the people; and the fact, that some ecclesiastics, like Aldhelm, chose to compose poems in their native language, to improve the people, makes it probable that many of the legends were put into Anglo-Saxon poetry.

FOR these reasons, we may consider the Roman epic poems as the parents of the narrative poetry of modern Europe, and the ecclesiastics who had a poetical taste, as the first composers of narrative poems in our vernacular languages, and more particularly in the Anglo-Saxon.

**Their  
 Lyric  
 Poetry.**

OF their lyric, or miscellaneous poetry, one of the oldest and best specimens is Alfred's poetical translation of the poetry in Boetius, which has been already noticed.

To the already copious specimens of the Anglo-Saxon poetry, we will add the following Ode, which is appended to the menology. It is a very singular and curious composition :—

The King shall hold the  
 Kingdom;  
 castles shall be seen afar,  
 the work of the mind of giants,  
 that are on this earth;  
 the wonderful work of wall-  
 stones.

The wind is the swiftest in  
 the sky;  
 thunder is the loudest of noises;  
 great is the majesty of Christ;  
 fortune is the strongest;  
 winter is the coldest;

spring has most hoar-frost;  
 he is the longest cold:  
 summer sun is most beautiful;  
 the air is then hottest;  
 fierce harvest is the happiest:  
 it bringeth to men  
 the tribute-fruits,  
 that to them God sendeth.  
 Truth is most deserving;  
 treasures are most precious,  
 gold, to every man;  
 and age is the wisest,  
 sagacious from ancient days,

from having before endured  
much.

Woe is a wonderful burthen;  
clouds roam about;  
the young Etheling  
good companions shall  
animate to war,  
and to the giving of bracelets.

Strength in the earl,  
the sword with the helm  
shall abide battle.

The hawk in the sea-cliff  
shall live wild;  
the wolf in the grove;  
the eagle in the meadow;  
the boar in the wood  
powerful with the strength of  
his tusk.

The good man in his country  
will do justice.

With the dart in the hand,  
the spear adorned with gold,  
the gem in the ring  
will stand pendent and curved.

The stream in the waves  
will make a great flood,

The mast in the keel  
will groan with the sail yards.  
The sword will be in the bosom,  
the lordly iron:

the dragon will rest on his  
hillock,

crafty, proud with his orna-  
ments;

the fish will in the water  
produce a progeny.

The king will in the hall  
distribute bracelets.

The bear will be on the heath

old and terrible.

The water will from the hill  
bring down the grey earth.

The army will be together  
strong with the bravest.

Fidelity in the earl;

wisdom in man!

The woods will on the ground  
blow with fruit;

the mountains in the earth  
will stand green.

God will be in heaven  
the judge of deeds.

The door will be to the hall  
the mouth of the roomy man-  
sion.

The round will be on the shield,  
the fast fortress of the fingers.

Fowl aloft

will sport in the air;

salmon in the whirlpool

will roll with the skate;

the shower in the heavens,

mingled with wind,

will come on the world.

The thief will go out

in dark weather.

The Thyr<sup>16</sup> will remain in the  
fen,

alone in the land.

A maiden with secret arts,

a woman, her friend will seek,  
if she cannot

in public grow up

so that men may buy her with  
bracelets.

The salt ocean will rage;

the clouds of the supreme  
Ruler,

<sup>16</sup> A Thyr was among the Northerns a giant, or wild moun-  
tain savage, a sort of evil-being somewhat supernatural.

BOOK  
IX.

and the water floods  
about every land,  
will flow in expansive streams.

Cattle in the earth  
will multiply and be reared.  
Stars will in the heavens  
shine brightly  
as their Creator commanded  
them.

God against evil;  
youth against age;  
life against death;  
light against darkness;  
army against army;  
enemy against enemies;  
hate against hate;  
shall every where contend:  
sin will steal on.

Always will the prudent  
strive  
about this world's labour  
to hang the thief;  
and compensate the more  
honest

for the crime committed  
against mankind.

The Creator alone knows  
whither the soul  
shall afterwards roam,  
and all the spirits  
that depart in God.  
After their death-day  
they will abide their judg-  
ment

in their father's bosom.  
Their future condition  
is hidden and secret.  
God alone knows it,  
the preserving father!  
None again return  
hither to our houses,  
that any truth  
may reveal to man,  
about the nature of the Cre-  
ator,  
or the people's habitations of  
glory  
which he himself inhabits.<sup>17</sup>

THERE is a volume of miscellaneous Saxon poetry in the cathedral library at Exeter, the gift of its first bishop, Leofric, from which some interesting passages have been selected by the Rev. J. J. Conybeare. The curious student will find the original with a Latin translation, in the 17th volume of the *Archaeologia*.<sup>18</sup> But as Mr. Conybeare's elegant paraphrase expresses faithfully the sense of the Saxon poet, it may not be unwelcome to extract

<sup>17</sup> See the Saxon ode in Hickes's *Grammat. Anglo-Sax.* p. 207, 208.

<sup>18</sup> Vol. xvii. p. 180—192. In the same MS. there are some fragments of Saxon historical poetry, or of verses alluding to historical events, partly real and partly fabulous.

two passages of it for the gratification of the English reader.—

C H A P.  
III.

Befits it well that man should raise  
To Heav'n the song of thanks and praise,  
For all the gifts a bounteous God  
From age to age hath still bestow'd.  
The kindly seasons temper'd reign,  
The plenteous store, the rich domain  
Of this mid-earth's extended plain,  
All that his creatures wants could crave,  
His boundless pow'r and mercy gave.  
Noblest of yon bright train that sparkle high,  
Beneath the vaulted sky,  
The Sun by day, the silver'd Moon by night,  
Twin fires of heav'n, dispense *for man* their useful light.  
Where'er on earth his lot be sped,  
*For Man* the clouds their richness shed,  
In gentler dews descend, or op'ning pour  
Wide o'er the land their fertilizing shower.

“THE conclusion of this poem will perhaps be found to possess sufficient merit to apologise for transcribing it at length. It will doubtless remind the classical reader of the exquisite choral song of Sophocles<sup>19</sup>, commencing Πολλα ἰα δαινα; and the fine moral reflection with which it terminates would not have disgraced the composition even of the most philosophic poet of antiquity.”<sup>20</sup> —

Thrice Holy He,  
The Spirit Son of Deity!  
He call'd from nothing into birth  
Each fair production of the teeming earth;  
He bids the faithful and the just aspire  
To join in endless bliss Heaven's angel choir.  
His love bestows on human kind  
Each varied excellence of mind.  
To some his Spirit-gift affords  
The power and mastery of words:

<sup>19</sup> Sophocles Antigone.

<sup>20</sup> Conyb. Arch.

BOOK  
IX.

So may the wiser sons of earth proclaim,  
 In speech and measured song, the glories of his name.  
 Some the tuneful hand may ply,  
 And loud before the list'ning throng,  
 Wake the glad harp to harmony,  
 Or bid the trump of joy its swelling note prolong.  
 To these he gave Heaven's righteous laws to scan,  
 Or trace the courses of the starry host,  
 To these the writer's learned toil to plan,  
 To these the battle's pride and victor's boast ;  
 Where in the well-fought field the war-troop pour  
 Full on the wall of shields the arrows flickering shower.  
 Some can speed the dart afar,  
 Some forge the steely blade of war,  
 Some o'er Ocean's stormy tide  
 The swift-wing'd ship can fearless guide.  
 Some in sweet and solemn lays  
 The full-ton'd voice of melody can raise.  
 So heav'n's high Lord each gift of strength or sense  
 Vouchsafes to man, impartial, to dispense.  
 And of the power that from his Spirit flows  
 On each a share, on none the whole bestows.  
 Lest favour'd thus beyond their mortal state,  
 Their pride involve them in the sinner's fate.

We are indebted to the same gentleman for bringing to notice a fragment of later Saxon poetry, from a MS. in the Bodleian. It occurs towards the conclusion of a MS. volume of homilies. It is a speech of death on the last home of man—the grave. The turn of thought is singular, and is more connected with the imagination than Saxon poems usually are. I transcribe Mr. Conybeare's literal translation.<sup>21</sup>—

## DEATH SPEAKS.

For thee was a house built      Ere thou of (*thy*) mother  
 Ere thou wert born,                      camest.  
 For thee was a mould shapen      Its height is not determined,

<sup>21</sup> See the Saxon with a Latin translation, Arch. vol. xvii. p. 174.

Nor its depth measured,  
Nor is it closed up  
(However long it may be)  
Until I thee bring  
Where thou shalt remain ;  
Until I shall measure thee  
And the sod of earth.  
Thy house is not  
Highly built (timbered),  
It is unhigh and low ;  
When thou art in it  
The heel-ways are low,  
The side-ways unhigh.  
The roof is built  
Thy breast full nigh ;  
So thou shalt in earth  
Dwell full cold,  
Dim, and dark.  
Doorless is that house,

And dark it is within ;  
There thou art fast detained,  
And Death holds the key.  
Loathly is that earth-house,  
And grim to dwell in ;  
There thou shalt dwell  
And worms shall share thee.  
Thus thou art laid  
And leavest thy friends ;  
Thou hast no friend,  
That will come to thee,  
Who will ever enquire  
How that house liketh thee,  
Who shall ever open  
For thee the door  
And seek thee,  
For soon thou becomest  
loathly,  
And hateful to look upon.

AFTER these copious specimens of the Anglo-Saxon poetry, we will merely notice, from its peculiarity, one more of Saxon, intermingled with Latin and Greek. It occurs in a very ancient MS. of Aldhelm, and thus begins :—

Thur me ȝeſette  
Sanctus et justus  
Beorn boca ȝleap  
Bonus auctor  
Ealder æthele ȝceop  
Etiam fuit ipse  
On æthel Angel-Seaxtra  
Bȝȝeap en Bȝetene.

Thus has settled me,  
The holy and just one ;  
The man skilled in books ;  
The good author  
Aldhelm, the noble poet,  
He was also  
In the country of the Anglo-Saxons,  
A bishop in Britain.<sup>22</sup>

<sup>22</sup> See the remainder, containing some Greek words, in Wanley's Catalogue, p. 110.

## CHAP. IV.

*On the ANGLO-SAXON Versification.*

**BOOK IX.** **T**HE best Saxon scholars have confessed that the versification of the vernacular poetry of our ancestors was modelled by rules which we have not explored. But the passage before quoted from Bede, shows that it had really no other rule than the poet's ear. To combine his words into a rythmical cadence was all he aimed at. A few specimens will enable the reader to see what this cadence usually was.

IN Alfred's Boetius, part of the specimens before translated stand thus : —

Eala thu ƿeppend  
 Scippa tungla  
 Deƿoner anb eoƿthan  
 Thu on heah ƿetle  
 Ecum ƿicƿart  
 And thu ealne hƿæthe  
 Deƿon ymbhƿeappert  
 And thuph thine  
 ƿalge miht  
 Tunglu genebert  
 Thæt he the to heƿath

ƿƿylce ƿeo runne  
 ƿƿeapƿa nihta  
 Thioƿƿo abƿeƿceth  
 Thuph thine meht  
 Blacun leoht  
 Beophte ƿeoƿƿan  
 Mona gemetƿaƿh  
 Thuph thinƿa meahta ƿƿeð  
 ƿƿilum eac tha runnan  
 Sineƿ beƿeapath  
 Beophtan leohtƿeƿ.

Boet. 154.

THE little poem which was cited from the Saxon Chronicle is the following : —

Tha ƿeapth eac abƿeƿeð  
 Deopmøb hæleth  
 Of lac of eapbe  
 Of a ýcha ƿeƿealc  
 Of ƿeƿ ƿanoteƿ bæth

Lamol ƿeax hæleth  
 Wiƿ anb ƿopb ƿnottop  
 Of ƿeƿ ƿæƿeƿa ƿeƿhƿing  
 Of ƿeƿ hƿæleƿ æthel  
 ƿama beƿeapob.

THE next lines may be cited because of their rhiming tendency : —

CHAP.  
IV.

That pearth ætýpob  
Uppe on pobepum  
Steopna ou ræthole  
Thohe ræth ræpthe  
Dæleth hize gleape

Datath ríðe  
Cometa be naman  
Cpæst gleape men  
Wíre rothbopan. <sup>1</sup>

THE versification of Cædmon's paraphrase has a similar cadence. It begins

Ur íf ríht micel  
Thæt se pobepa pearb  
Nepeta pulbop cýning  
Worþum hepizen  
Wobum lufien.

De íf mægna rþeb  
Deapob calpa  
Deah geþceapta  
Fpea Ælmihtig.

Cæd. p. 1.

IN Judith the versification is of the same species, which is taken from the description of the battle : —

Tha pearth rnellpa pepob  
Snube geþeapepob  
Cenpa to campe  
Stopon cýnepoþe  
Secgar anb geþithar  
Bæpon thupar  
Fopon to geþeohte  
Fopth on gepuhte  
Dæleth unbep helmum  
Of thæpe hahigan býrig  
On thæt dægped  
Sylf býneþan rælbar  
Dlube hlumnon  
Thær se hlanca geþeah

Wulf in palbe  
Anb se panna hpeþn  
Wæl gýrpe fugel  
Weftan beþen  
Tha him tha theob guman  
Tholiton tilian  
Fýlle on fægum  
Ac him fleah on laft  
Eapn æter geopn  
Uþig rethepa  
Salopig paba  
Sanþ hilde leoth  
Dýpneb nebbæ.

Jud. p. 24.

THE description of Beowulf's sailing and landing is thus given : —

Cpæth he Luthcýning  
Oþer rþan pabe

Secean polbe  
Mæpne theoben

<sup>1</sup> Sax. Chron. 123.

B O O K Tha him pær manna theapf  
 IX. Thone ſithpæt him  
 Snotene ceoplar  
 Lýt hpon loxon  
 Thæm the him leof pære. —  
 Secg mraðe  
 Lagu cpærtiz mon  
 Lanb gemýpcu  
 Fyppc ſoþth gepat flota  
 Wæp on ýthum  
 Bat unbep beopge  
 Beopnar geppe  
 On pcepn pizon pceamar. —  
 Gepat tha oþep pæg holm  
 Wmbe gefygeb  
 Flota pann healf  
 Fugle gælicopt  
 Oth tha ýmb an tæb

Othpær bogopær  
 Wunben pceþna  
 Gepaba hæpbe.  
 Tha tha lichenbe  
 Lanb gepapon  
 Bpim clifu blican  
 Beopnar pceape  
 Sibe pæ næppar. —  
 Thanon up hpæthe  
 Webepa leobe  
 On pang pizon  
 Sæ pubu pælbom  
 Sýpcon hpýgebom  
 Liuth gepæbo  
 Lobe chancebon  
 Thær the him ýthlabe  
 Eæthe pupbon.

It appears to me that the only rule of the Saxon versification which we can now discover is, that the words are placed in that peculiar rhythm or cadence which is observable in all the preceding extracts. This rhythm will be felt by every one who reads the following lines : —

Thohhton tilian  
 Fýlle on pætum —  
 Upuz pæthepa  
 Salopiz paba —  
 Wopbum hepuzen

Mobum lupien —  
 Deapob ealpa  
 Deah gepceapta  
 Fpea Ælmihtiz. —

To produce this rhythm seems to have been the perfection of their versification. But, happily for the strength of their poetry, they extended their rhythm sometimes into a more dignified cadence, as

Wepaba pulbon cýning —  
 Ymthe heolpcep pceabo —  
 Thuph thuppa meahta ppeð. —

WHEN their words would not fall easily into the desired rhythm, they were satisfied with an ap-

proach to it, and with this mixture of regular and irregular cadence all their poetry seems to have been composed. C H A P.  
IV.

By this rhythm, by their inversions of phrase, by their transitions, by their omissions of particles, by their contractions of phrase, and, above all, by their metaphors and perpetual periphrasis, their poetry seems to have been distinguished.

THAT they occasionally sought rhyme and alliteration cannot be doubted, for we have some few Anglo-Saxon poems in rhyme.<sup>2</sup> But neither of these formed its constituent character, nor was any marked attention given to the prosodical quantity of their syllables, as Hickes supposed.

<sup>2</sup> Mr. Conybeare remarks, that in the Exeter MS. there is one Anglo-Saxon poem, entirely written in rhyme, with alliteration, p. 195. The extract which he has cited from the poem, on the Day of Judgment, has also the following rhimed passage : —

Thæt nu manna gehpylc  
Cyc thenben heƿ ƿanath  
Leceoran mot  
Sƿa helle hieƿthu  
Sƿa heofenes mæƿthu ;  
Sƿa leohte leoht,  
Sƿa tham latham niht;  
Sƿa thƿýmmer thƿæce,  
Sƿa thƿýrta ƿræce;  
Sƿa mið Ðrihten ðream,  
Sƿa mið ðeoflecm hƿem ;  
Sƿa ƿite mið ƿrathum,  
Sƿa ƿulƿor mið aƿum ;  
Sƿa life, ƿƿa ðeath;  
Sƿa him leofe bið.

Ibid.

That now every man  
who dwells here alive,  
May choose  
Either wounds of hell,  
Or the majesty of heaven ;  
Or the bright light,  
Or the hateful night ;  
Or the power of glory,  
Or the vengeance of darkness ;  
Or joy with the Lord,  
Or mourning with devils ;  
Or punishment with wrath,  
Or glory with honours ;  
Or life, or death,  
Which ever he loves most.

## CHAP. V.

*Their Latin Poetry.*B O O K  
IX.Origin of  
their Latin  
Poetry.

THE Latin poetry of the Anglo-Saxons originated from the Roman poetry, and was composed according to the rules of Roman prosody. Its authors were all ecclesiastics, who had studied the classical writers and their imitators; and who followed, as nearly as their genius would permit them, the style and manner of classical composition. Sometimes they added a few absurd peculiarities, dictated by bad taste, and sometimes they used rhyme. But in general the regular hexameter verse was the predominant characteristic of their poems.

THE origin of their Latin poetry may be therefore easily explained. With the works of the classical writers we are all acquainted. As the Roman empire declined, the genius of poetry disappeared. Claudian emitted some of its departing rays. But after his death it would have sunk for ever in the utter night of the Gothic irruption, if the Christian clergy had not afforded it an asylum in their monasteries, and devoted their leisure to read and to imitate it.

THE Romans had diffused their language as their conquests and colonies spread; but it would have also perished when the Gothic irruptions destroyed their empire, if the Christian hierarchy had not preserved it. The German tribes who raised new sovereignties in the imperial provinces were successively converted to Christianity; and as the new

faith chiefly emanated from Rome, one religious system pervaded the western part of Europe. The public worship was every where performed in Latin. All the dignified clergy and many others were perpetually visiting Rome. The most accessible and popular works of the fathers of the church were in the Latin language. And this was the only tongue in which the ecclesiastics of Germany, France, Britain, Spain, Ireland, and Italy could compose or correspond in to be understood by each other. Hence every ecclesiastic in every part of Europe, who aspired to any intellectual cultivation or distinction, was obliged to learn the Latin language, and to write in it. From this circumstance, they nourished a necessary attachment to the Latin authors; and thus the Latin language and the classical writers were preserved by the Christian clergy from that destruction which has entirely swept from us both the language and the writings of Phœnicia, Carthage, Babylon, and Egypt.

MANY of the clergy wrote homilies, or disputatious treatises; some aspired to history, and some were led to cultivate poetry. In the fourth century, Victorinus, Juvenius, and Prudentius, distinguished themselves by poems in Latin verse on devotional subjects. In the fifth century, Sedulius, Dracontius, and Sidonius, with others, cultivated Latin poetry. In the next age appeared Alcimus, Arator, Columbanus, and the prolific Venantius Fortunatus. Every subsequent century enumerated many ecclesiastical poets, who all alike fashioned both their genius and their works from the classical models, or their imitators. They chose, indeed, subjects more suited to their sacred profession; but they strove, according to their best

**B O O K** abilities, to give their religious efforts all the style  
 { **IX.** and the measures of the standard poetry of ancient Rome.

THE Anglo-Saxons who wrote Latin poetry drank from the same Heliconian spring, and used the same prosody; and of course their Latin poetry originated from the Latin poetry of the ecclesiastics who had preceded them, and their classical models.

BUT though the prosody of the classical poetry furnished these writers with their metres, yet as they were in a ruder and less cultivated age, their taste was too unformed and irregular to keep to the chaste style of the Augustan bards. They undervalued the excellence to which they were familiar, and sometimes they strove to improve it by beauties of their own; beauties, however, often perceptible only to the eye or the ear of a barbaric taste.

SOME of their grotesque ornaments are mentioned in the fifth century by Sidonius. He notices some verses which were so composed as to admit of being read either backward or forward. Thus:

*Roma tibi subito motibus ibit amor.*

and

*Sole medere pede, ede perede melos.*<sup>1</sup>

HE has also given to us a specimen of another fantastic effort in two verses, of which he asks his friend to admire the disposition of the syllables:

*Præcipiti modo quod decurrit tramite flumen,  
 Tempore consumptum jam cito deficit.*

---

<sup>1</sup> Sid. Ap. lib. ix. ep. 14.

These, if read backward, will give

C H A P.  
V.

Deficiet cito jam consumptum tempore flumen,  
Tramite decurrit quod modo precipiti !

THE poem of Proba Falconia, a poetess of the fourth century, was also constructed very whimsically. Her subjects were, the history of the creation, the deluge, and Christ. She narrates these histories in centos from Virgil, who knew nothing about them. She has so curiously selected above seven hundred of his lines, and so placed them, that, with the aid of titles to the different portions, the principal events of these Scripture histories are described in the words of the Mantuan bard.<sup>2</sup>

Our Anglo-Saxons display occasional exertions of the same depraved taste in their Latin poetry ; of which the most ancient that has descended to us consists of the compositions of Aldhelm, who died in 709 ; and will be noticed again in the chapter on their literature. His verses, from the study of better models, are preferable to his pompous prose. His poetical works which remain are entitled, *De Laude Virginum*, *De Octo principalibus Vitiis*, and *Ænigmata*.

Aldhelm's  
Latin  
Poetry :

TOWARDS the close of his prose treatise on Virginity, he stated, that he should write on the same subject in poetry. His preface to the poem is an acrostic address to the abbess Maxima, in hexameter verse. It consists of thirty-eight lines, so fantastically written that each line begins and ends with the successive letters of the words of the first line ; and thus the first and last lines, and the initial and final letters of each line consist of the same

his De  
Laude Vir-  
ginum.

<sup>2</sup> Bib. Mag. tom. viii. p. 708—716.

**BOOK** words. In the last line the words occur backwards.  
**IX.** The final letters are to be read upwards.

METRICA TIRONES NUNC PROMANT CARMINA CASTO S  
 E t laudem capiat quadrato carmine virg O  
 T rinus in arce Deus, qui pollens secla creavi T  
 R egnator mundi, regnans in sedibus alti S  
 I ndigno conferre mihi dignetur in æthr A  
 C um sanctis requiem, quos laudo versibus isti C  
 A rbiter altithronus qui servat sceptrā supern A  
 T radidit his cœli per ludum scandere lime N  
 I nter sanctorum cuneos qui laude perenn I  
 R ite glorificant moderantem regna tonante M  
 O mnitenens Dominus, mundi formator et aucto R  
 N obis pauperibus confer suffragia cert A  
 E t ne concedas trudendos hostibus istin C  
 S ed magis exiguos defendens dextera tanga T  
 N e prædo pallax cœlorum claudere lime N  
 V el sanctos valeat noxarum fallere scen A  
 N e fur strophosus foveam detrudat in atra M  
 C onditor a summo quos Christus servat Olymp O  
 P astor ovile tuens ne possit tabula raptō R  
 R egales vastans caulas bis dicere pup pu P  
 O mnia sed custos defendat ovilia jam nun C  
 M axima præcipuum quæ gestat numine nome N  
 A ddere præsidium mater dignare precat U  
 N am tu perpetuum promisiisti lumine lume N  
 T itan quem clamant sacro spiramine vate S  
 C ujus per mundum jubar alto splendet ab ax E  
 A tque polos pariter replet vibramine fulmen N  
 R ex regum et princeps populorum dictus ab æv O  
 M agnus de magno, de rerum regmine recto R  
 I llum nec mare nec possunt cingere coel I  
 N ec mare navigerum spumoso gurgite valla T  
 A ut zonæ mundi que stipant æthera cels A  
 C larorum vitam qui castis moribus isti C  
 A uxiliante Deo vernabant flore perenn I  
 S anctis aggrediar studiis dicere paupe R  
 T anta tamen digne si pauper præmia proda T  
 O mnia cum nullus verbis explanat apert E  
 S OTSAC ANIMRAC TNAMORP CNUN SENORIT ACIRTE M.<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>3</sup> Maxima Bib. Vet. Patr. tom. xiii. p. 3.

ALDHELM calls this, *quadratum carmen*, a square verse. He was not the inventor of these idle fopperies of versification. Fortunatus and others had preceded Aldhelm in this tasteless path, in which authors endeavour to surprise us, not by the genius they display, but by the difficulties which they overcome.

C H A P.  
V.

THE poem is not divided into books or chapters. It consists of two thousand four hundred and forty-three hexameter lines, the last eight of which are rhimed; the four first alternately; the others in couplets. We subjoin them : —

*Quis prius in spira morsum glomeravit inertem  
Idcirco cursim festinat credere Christo  
Agnoscens propriam tanta virtute salutem  
Insuper et meritum cumulavit sanguinis ostro,  
Præmia sumpturus cum cœli cœtibus almis.  
Candida post sequitur cum binis martyra sertis,  
Integritas nitidam, nec non et passio rubram  
Plumabant pariter macta virtute coronam.*<sup>4</sup>

THE first twenty-two lines of the poem are an invocation to the Deity. The translations of the passages which we select, as specimens of his powers, are made as literal as possible.

Almighty Father! Sovereign of the world!  
Whose word the lucid summits of the sky  
With stars adorn'd, and earth's foundations fram'd;  
Who ting'd with purple flowers the lonely heath;  
And check'd the wandering billows of the main,  
Lest o'er the lands the foamy waves should rage  
(Hence rocks abrupt the swelling surge controul):  
Thou cheer'st the cultured field with gelid streams;  
And with thy dropping clouds the corn distends:  
Thine orbs of light expel night's dreary shade;  
Titan the day, and Cynthia tends the night:

<sup>4</sup> Maxima Bib. Vet. Patr. tom. xiii. p. 19.

## BOOK

## IX.



From thee what tribes the fields of ocean roam,  
 What scaly hosts in the blue whirlpools play !  
 The limpid air with fluttering crowds abounds,  
 Whose prattling beaks their joyful carols pour,  
 And hail thee as the universal Lord :  
 Give, Merciful ! thine aid, that I may learn  
 To sing the glorious actions of thy saints.<sup>5</sup>

\* \* \* \* \*

I seek not rustic verse, nor court the Nine,<sup>6</sup>  
 Nor from Castalia's nymphs their metres ask,

<sup>5</sup> Omnipotens genitor mundum ditione gubernans  
 Lucida stelligeri qui conditis culmina cœli,  
 Nec non telluris formas fundamina verbo :  
 Pallida purpureo pingis qui flore vireta :  
 Sic quoque fluctivagi refrenas cœrula ponti,  
 Mergere ne valeant terrarum littora lymphis,  
 Sed tumidos frangunt fluctus obstacula rupis :  
 Arvorum gelido qui cultus fonte rigabis,  
 Et segetum glumas nimboris imbribus auges,  
 Qui latebras mundi geminato sidere demis ;  
 Nempe diem Titan et noctem Cynthia comit.  
 Piscibus æquoreos qui campos pinguibus ornas,  
 Squamigeras formans in glaucis gurgite turmas  
 Limpida præpetibus, sic complex aera catervis,  
 Garrula quæ rostris resonantes cantice pipant  
 Atque creatorem diversa voce fatentur.  
 Da prius auxilium, clemens, ut carmina possim  
 Indita Sanctorum modulari gesta priorum.

Maxima Bib. Vet. Patr. tom. xiii. p. 3.

<sup>6</sup> Non rogo ruricolæ versus, et commata musas  
 Non peto Castalidas metrorum cantica nymphas  
 Quas dicunt Heliconæ jugum servare supernum,  
 Nec precor, ut Phœbus linguam sermone loquacem  
 Dedat, quem Delo peperit Latona creatrix —  
 Sed potius nitar precibus pulsare Tonantem,  
 Qui nobis placidi confert oracula Verbi,  
 Verbum de verbo peto, hoc Psalmista canebat,  
 Corde patris genitum, quod proles unica constat,  
 Quo pater Omnipotens per mundum cuncta creavit.  
 Sic patris et prolis dignetur Spiritus almus  
 Auxilium fragili clementer dedere servo.

Said erst to guard the Heliconian hill.  
Nor, Phebus! need I thy loquacious tongue,  
Whom fair Latona bore on Delos' isle —  
I'll rather press the thunderer with my prayers,  
Who gave to man the lessons of his word;  
Words from the WORD I ask, whom David sang,  
Sole offspring of the Father; and by whom  
Th' Almighty Sire created all we know;  
So may their gracious inspiration deign  
To aid their feeble servant in his lay.

HE opens his subject by telling us that there are three descriptions of persons to whom the praise of chastity belongs: the married who live virtuously; the married who live as if they were single; and they who keep in the virgin state. After above an hundred lines in praise of virginity, he proceeds to describe forty-five characters who distinguished the state which he prefers; and this biographical panegyric forms the substance of his poem. Most of his applauded personages are only known in the calendars of the Romish church. Some of his images, common-places, and examples, shall be quoted.

AMID his wild and diffuse panegyric on virginity, the following images occur: —

Now let my verses cull the rarest flowers,  
And weave the virgin crowns which grace the good;  
What can more charm celestials in our conflict,  
Than the pure breast by modest virtue ruled?<sup>7</sup>

\* \* \* \* \*

The chaste who blameless keep unsullied fame  
Transcend all other worth, all other praise;

---

<sup>7</sup> Nunc igitur raros decerpant carmina flores  
E quis virgineas valeant fabricare coronas  
Quid plus cælicolas juvat in certamine nostro  
Quam integritatis amor regnans in pectore puro?

BOOK  
IX.

The Spirit high-enthron'd has made their hearts  
His sacred temple.<sup>8</sup>

For chastity is radiant as the gems  
Which deck the crown of the Eternal King :  
It tramples on the joys of vicious life,  
And from the heart uproots the wish impure.  
The yellow metal which adorns the world  
Springs from the miry chambers of the earth :  
So the pure soul, its image, takes its birth  
From carnal passions of terrestrial love.  
And as the rose excels the Tyrian dyes,  
And all the gaudy colours work'd by art ;  
As the pale earth the lucid gem creates  
In rustic soils beneath the dusty glebe ;  
As yellow flowers shoot gaily from the corn,  
When spring revives the germinating earth :  
So sacred chastity, the dear delight  
Of all the colonies of heaven, is born  
From the foul appetites of worldly life.<sup>9</sup>

---

<sup>8</sup> *Virginitas castum servans sine crimine carmen,  
Cætera virtutum vincit præconia laude ;  
Spiritus altithroni templum sibi vindicat almus.*

<sup>9</sup> *Virginitas fulget lucens, ut gemma coronæ,  
Quæ caput æterni præcingit stemmate regis :  
Hæc calcat pedibus spurcæ consortia vitæ :  
Funditus extirpans petulantis gaudia carnis.  
Auri materiem fulvi, obrizumque metallum  
Ex quibus ornatur præsentis machina mundi,  
Glarea de gremio prodidit sordida terræ.  
Sic casta integritas auri flaventis imago  
Gignitur e spurca terreni carne parentis.  
Ut rosa Puniceo tincturas murice cunctas  
Coccineosque simul præcellit rubra colores.  
Pallida purpureas ut gignit glarea gemmas,  
Pulverulenta tegit quas spurci glebula ruris ;  
Ut flos flavescens scandit de cortice corni  
Tempore vernali, dum promit germina tellus :  
Sic sacra virginitas cœlorum grata colonis  
Corpore de spurco sumit primordia vitæ.*

Maxima Bib. Vet. Patr. tom. xiii. p. 4.

And as the vine, whose spreading branches, bent  
With stores immense, the dresser's knife despoils,  
Exists the glory of the fruitful fields ;  
And as the stars confess th' all-glorious ray,  
When in his paths oblique the sun rolls round,  
Transcending all the orbs which grace the poles :  
So Chastity, companion of the bless'd,  
Excelling, meekly, every saintly worth,  
Is hail'd the queen of all the virtues here.<sup>10</sup>

\* \* \* \* \*

The chastity which rules the virtuous frame,  
A virgin flower which blooms unhurt in age,  
Falls not to earth, nor sheds its changing leaves.  
Behold the lilies waving in the fields,  
The crimson rose, sweet blushing on the bank,  
Which crowns the conquering wrestler, and becomes  
The garland for the victor in the course :  
So purity, subduing rebel nature,  
Wins the fair diadem which Christ awards.<sup>11</sup>

\* \* \* \* \*

The peacock's many-colour'd plumage waves,

<sup>10</sup> Vineæ frugiferis ut constat gloria campis,  
Pampinus immensos dum gignit palmite botros,  
Vinitor exspoliât frondentes falcibus antes :  
Sidera præclaro cedunt ut lumina soli,  
Lustrat dum terras obliquo tramite Titan,  
Cuncta supernorum convincens astra polorum :  
Sic quoque virginitas quæ sanctos indita comit,  
Omnia sanctorum transcendans præmia supplex  
Integritas quoque virtutum regina vocatur.

Maxima Bib. Vet. Patr. tom. xiii. p. 4.

<sup>11</sup> Integritas animæ regnans in corpore casto  
Flos est virgineus, qui nescit damna senectæ.  
Nec cadit in terram ceu fronde ligustra fatiscunt.  
Cernite fecundis ut vernent lilia sulcis,  
Et rosa sanguineo per dumos flore rubescat.  
Ex quibus ornatus qui vincit forte palestris,  
Accipit in circo victor certamine, sarta.  
Haud secus integritas devicta carne rebelli.  
Pulchras gestabit Christo regnante coronas.

*Ibid.*

BOOK  
IX.

And the soft circles glow with Tyrian dyes :  
Its tawny beauties, and its graceful form  
Surpass the proudest labours of our skill.<sup>12</sup>

WE may add from the same poem his description of the destruction of paganism, as exhibiting the degree of his powers of poetical composition :—

Not Mars, the lord of wounds, who scatters round  
The seeds of war, and fills the rancorous heart  
With Gorgon poisons, can assist his fanes ;  
Nor Venus can avail, nor her vile boy.  
The golden statues of Minerva fall,  
Tho' fools proclaim her goddess of the arts ;  
Nor he for whom, as ancient fictions sing,  
The leafy vines their precious branches spread,  
Can prop the columns nodding with their gods.  
The marbles tremble with terrific crash,  
And the vast fabric rushes into dust. .  
Ev'n Neptune, rumour'd sovereign of the waves,  
Who by his swelling billows rules the main,  
He cannot save his sculptur'd effigies,  
Whose marble brows the golden leaves surround,  
Not ev'n Alcides, who the centaurs crush'd,  
And dar'd the fiery breath of prowling Cacus,  
When from his throat his words in flames were pour'd,  
Tho' his right hand the dreadful club may grasp,  
Can shield his temples when the Christian prays.<sup>13</sup>

---

<sup>12</sup> *Qanquam versicolor flavescat penna pavonis  
Et teretes rutilent plus rubro murice cycli,  
Cujus formosa species et fulva venustas  
Omnia fabrorum porro molimina vincit.*

Maxima Bib. Vet. Patr. tom. xiii. p. 4.

<sup>13</sup> *Non Mars vulnificus qui belli semina spargit ;  
Rancida Gorgoneis inspirans corda venenis  
Delubri statuis potuit succurrere parvis.  
Nec Venus, aut Veneris prodest spurcissima proles.  
Aurea sturnuntur fundo simulacra Minervæ,  
Quamque deam stolidi dixerunt arte potentem :  
Nec Bacchus valuit, cui frondent palmitæ vites,  
Ut referunt falso veterum figmenta librorum,  
Numine nutantes fani fulcire columnas.*

ONE other example will be a sufficient specimen of his *De Laude Virginum*. Two sisters were condemned for refusing to sacrifice to idols. One was punished first in the presence of the other, with the hope that her constancy might be affected by her sister's suffering. Instead of this event, *Secunda's* speech is thus represented by *Aldhelm* : —

Firmly she said, " *Secunda* ne'er will tremble ;  
Bring all your blood-stain'd tortures to oppress me,  
Your fires, your swords, your scourges red with gore,  
Your clubs, your cords, your stones that pour like hail ;  
Bring all your cruel instruments of pain ;  
Yet, conquering my tormentors, will I triumph.  
As many means of death you fiercely frame,  
So many crowns in heaven's bright plains will bless us." <sup>14</sup>

*Sed titubant templi tremebundis marmora crustis.  
Et ruit in præceps tessellis fabrica fractis.  
Neptunus fama dictus regnator aquarum ;  
Qui regit imperium ponti turgentibus undis,  
Falsas effigies, quas glauco marmore sculpunt,  
Aurea seu fulva quas ornant petala fronte,  
Haud valuit veterum tunc sustentare deorum.  
Alcides fertur Centauri victor opimus,  
Flammea qui pressit latronis flamina Caci.  
Quamvis fumosis ructaret flabra loquelis.  
Herculis in crypta sed torquet dextera clavam  
Nec tamen in templo rigida virtute resultat,  
Quæ famulus Christi supplex oramina fudit.*

*Maxima Bib. Vet. Patr. tom. xiii. p. 12.*

<sup>14</sup> *Nam constanter ait, "nunquam tremebunda Secunda :  
Adfer cuncta simul nobis tormenta cruenta ;  
Ignes et macheras et rubras vibice virgas,  
Restes et fustes et dura grandine saxa.  
Quot tu pœnarum genera crudeliter inferas,  
Ast ego tanta feram victo tortore tropæa,  
Quot tu concinnas crudi discrimina lethi  
Tot nos in supera numerabimus arce coronas. Ibid. p. 18.*

BOOK  
IX.

His poem "De Octo principalibus Vitiis," or on the eight principal vices, opens with an allusion to the preceding poem : —

Thus have I sung the praises of the saints,  
Whose fame re-echoes round the concave sky.  
Now must the verse the mighty battles paint,  
Waged by the vices ; which from virgin tribes  
Withhold the kingdoms of celestial joy,  
And shut the portals of their lucid walls. <sup>15</sup>

THIS poem contains four hundred and fifty-eight Latin hexameters. After an introduction of some length, it treats of the eight vices in this order : gluttony, luxury, avarice, anger, despair, slothfulness, vain-glory, pride. It closes with a diffuse peroration.

His allegorical introduction begins with these lines : —

The crowding legions gather to the war,  
Justice' fair friends, and virtue's holy troops ;  
'Gainst these the vices fix their camps malign,  
And whirl their thickening spears of basest deeds.  
The rival combat glows, the banners float,  
And the loud clangor of the trumpet roars. <sup>16</sup>

<sup>15</sup> Digestis igitur sanctorum laudibus almis,  
Quorum rumores sub cœli culmine flagrant ;  
Restat, ut ingentes depromant carmina pugnas,  
Ex vitiis procedentes, virtutibus atque  
Virginibus Christi, quæ cœli regna negabunt,  
Florida lucifluæ claudentes limina portæ.

Maxima Bib. Vet. Patr. tom. xiii. p. 19.

<sup>16</sup> Ecce catervatim glomerant ad bella phalanges,  
Justitiæ oomites et virtutum agmina sancta,  
His adversantur vitiorum castra maligna,  
Spissa nefandarum quæ torquent spicula rerum,  
Æmula ceu pugnat populorum pugna duorum,  
Dum vexilla ferunt et clangit classica salpax. *Ibid.*

ON luxury he exclaims : —

C H A P.  
V.

Indecent words from this base monster spring,  
From him scurrility and folly's gibes ;  
Love, frivolous deceiver ! and excess.  
Oh what illustrious men ! how great, how many !  
Has this fierce enemy thrust down to hell !  
Yet could he not, though mask'd in beauty's shape,  
From Joseph tear the excelling palm of virtue,  
When the voluptuous net the fair one wove,  
He spurn'd her charms, and from his garment fled ;  
By this he well deserv'd the throne of Memphis.<sup>17</sup>

HIS declaration on avarice is in these phrases : —

Next avarice leads the war, and heads a band  
Of dense array, conductress of the fight ;  
She not alone the public streets pervades  
With blood-stain'd arms, and shafts in poison dipp'd.  
Her base companions follow — frauds and thefts,  
A thousand lies, and actions false and vile ;  
Base appetites of gain, and perjuries throng :  
The hosts of rapine, stain'd with every crime,  
Heedless of oaths, join in an ardent band.<sup>18</sup>

---

<sup>17</sup> Ex hoc nascuntur monstro turpissima verba,  
Nec non scurrilitas et scævo ludicra gestu,  
Frivulus, et fallax amor, ac petulantia luxus.  
O quantos qualesve viros, et laude celebres,  
Hæc Bellona ferox sub tristia Tartaria trusit !  
Non sic egregium virtutis perdere palmam  
Forma venustatis valuit compellere Joseph,  
Qui dominam sprexit nequentem retia luxus,  
Et stuprum fugiens pepli velamina liquit :  
Idcirco felix meruit Memphitica sceptrum.

Maxima Bib. Vetr. Patr. tom. xiii. p. 20.

<sup>18</sup> Post Philargyria producit tertia bellum, —  
Hæc ductrix pugnae stipatur milite denso.  
Non sola graditur per publica strata pedestris,  
Arma cruenta ferens et spicula lita veneno.  
Hæc comites pravos, itidem mendacia mille,

BOOK  
IX.

His first verses on anger are, —

Ferocious wrath the fourth battalion calls,  
And, always raging, hurries to the fight;  
He breaks the pious peace of brothers' love,  
And goads their jarring minds to mutual war;  
Hence impious slaughters — hence the shouts of rage —  
And gnashing indignation clamours loud.<sup>19</sup>

ON vain-glory he exclaims<sup>20</sup>, —

How the false thief his lying promise pours,  
To darken all the solid bliss of life!  
And can it not suffice that this fair world,  
Which round the pole in devious motion glides,  
Exists to gratify all human needs?  
Must heavenly honours earth's frail children grasp?  
What crimes, what wrong, to wretched mortals spring  
From the vain passion of transcendant fame!

His *Ænigmata* may be next considered. Its poetical prologue presents to us a curious instance

*Fraudes et fures, ac falsis frivola gestis,  
Appetitus turpis lucri et perjuria inepta,  
Atque rapinarum maculatos crimine questus,  
Conglobat in cuneum cum falsis testibus ardens.*

<sup>19</sup> *Ast vero quartam trux congregat ira catervam,  
Quæ semper furibunda cupit discrimina belli:  
Et ciet ad pugnam mentes discordia fratrum,  
Dum copulata piæ dirumpit fœdera pacis,  
Ex hoc nascuntur cædes cum strage nefandæ  
Et clamor vocis, simul indignatio frendens.*

Maxima Bib. Vet. Patr. tom. xiii. p. 20.

<sup>20</sup> *O quam falsa latro spondebat frivola mendax,  
Ut concessa rudis fuscaret munera vitæ,  
Nonne satis foret, ut quadro cum cardine mundus,  
Quem vertigo poli longis anfractibus ambit,  
Usibus humanis serviret rite per ævum,  
Infula terrenos ni cœli comat alumnos?  
Heu scelus, heu facinus, miseris mortalibus ortum!  
Et hoc ex vana presertim gloria fretus!* *Ibid.* p. 21.

of that fantastic and difficult versification which some men in former times pursued. Both the beginning and the final letters of the thirty-six hexameters which compose it present to us, in succession, one of this sentence : "Aldhelmus cecinit millenis versibus odas."

C H A P.  
V.

A r biter, ætherio Jupiter qui regmine sceptro A  
L uci fluum que simul cœli regale tribuna L  
D isponis, moderans æternis legibus illu D  
H orrida nam multans torsisti membra Behemot H  
E x alto quondam rueret dum luridus arc E  
L impida dictanti metrorum carmina præsu L  
M unera nunc largire : rudis quo pandere reru M  
V ersibus ænigmata queam clandestina fat U.  
S i Deus indignis tua gratis dona rependi S  
C astalidas nymphas non clamo cantibus istu C  
E xamen neque spargebat mihi nectar in or E,  
C inthi sic nunquam perlustro cacumina, sed ne C  
I n Parnasso procubui, nec somnia vid I.  
N am mihi versificum poterit Deus addere carme N  
I nspirans stolidæ pia gratis munera ment I.  
T angit si mentem, mox laudem corda rependun T  
M etrica : nam Moysen declarant carmina vate M  
J am dudum cecinisse celebris vexilla tropæ I  
L ate per populos inlustrata, qua nitidus So L  
L ustrat ab Oceani jam tollens gurgite . . . L  
E t Psalmista canens metrorum carmina voc E  
N atum divino promit generamine nume N  
I n cœlis prius exortum, quam Lucifer orb I  
S plendida formatis fudisset lumina sæcli S.  
V erum si fuerint bene hæc ænigmata vers U  
E xplosis penitus nevis et rusticitat E  
R itu dactilico recte decursa nec erro R  
S eduxit vana specie molimina menti S ;  
I ncipiam potiora ; seu Deus arida serv I,  
B elligero quondam qui vires tradidit Jo B,  
V iscera perpetui roris si repleat haust U.  
S iccis nam laticis duxisti cautibus amne S  
O lim, cum cuneus transgresso marmore rubr O  
D esertum penetrat : cecinit quod carmine Davi D

## B O O K

## IX.

A rce poli genitor servas qui secula cuncta  
S olvere jam scelorum noxas dignare nefanda S. <sup>21</sup>

THESE ænigmata consist of twenty tetrastica, or stanzas of four lines, on various subjects; as the earth, the wind, clouds, nature, the rainbow, the moon, fortune, salt, the nettle, and such like—of fourteen pentasticha of five lines, of thirteen hexasticha of six lines each, nineteen stanzas of seven lines, ten of eight lines, eleven of nine lines, and thirteen of ten lines each.

IN the collection of Boniface's letters, there is a singular Latin poem in rhyme, entitled the poem of Aldhelm, *Carmen Aldhelmi*.

As the rhimes of this composition are more remarkable than its poetry, I will cite the first few lines, with a prose translation in the notes:—

Lector caste catholice  
Atque obses athleticæ  
Tuis pulsatus precibus  
Obnixæ flagitantibus  
Hymnista carmen cecini  
Atque responsa reddidi  
Sicut pridem pepigeram  
Quando profectus fueram  
Usque diram Domnoniam  
Per carentem Cornubiam  
Florulentis cespitibus  
Et fœcundis graminibus  
Elementa inormia  
Atque facta informia

Quassantur sub ætherea  
Convexa cœli camera  
Dum tremit mundi machina  
Sub ventorum monarchia.  
Ecce nocturno tempore  
Orto brumali turbine  
Quatiens terram tempestas  
Turbabat atque vastitas  
Cum fracti venti fœdere  
Baccharentur in æthere  
Et rupto retinaculo  
Desævirent in sæculo. <sup>22</sup>

<sup>21</sup> *Maxima Bib. Vet. Patr.* tom. xiii. p. 23.

<sup>22</sup> Chaste catholic reader, and strenuous friend; urged by your prayers, earnestly intreating me, I have composed a poem, and returned an answer, as I formerly agreed to do; when I went to dismal Devonshire, through Cornwall, void of flowering turfs and fruitful grass. The vast elements are shaken under the æthereal convex chamber of the sky, while the machine of the world trembles under the monarchy of the winds.

This poem contains two hundred and four lines in this measure. C H A P.  
V.

BUT Aldhelm is also remarkable for having given us a direct testimony of the use of rhyme in England before the year 700. In his treatise "*De Laudibus Virginitatis*," he says —

"It may be expressed not unsuitably in rhimed verse (*Carminē rythmico*) : —

*Christus passus patibulo,  
Atque læti latibulo ;  
Virginem virgo virgini* <sup>23</sup>  
*Commendabat tutamini.*

This clear and decisive testimony destroys the favourite system of our men of letters, that the use of rhyme in Europe came from the Arabs in Spain. Aldhelm used it before they entered Spain; and the ancient Welsh bards long before Aldhelm.

OUR venerable BEDE attempted Latin poetry, but the Muses did not smile upon his efforts. His compositions comprise some hymns, some elegiac poetry, and the life of St. Cuthbert in hexameter verse. Latin  
poetry of  
Bede.

THIS Life consists of a preface and forty-six chapters, which include nine hundred and seventy-nine lines. It has little other merit than that of an Anglo-Saxon labouring at Latin prosody in the dark period of the seventh century. It has not

---

Lo! in the night, when the wintry whirlwind has risen, the tempest shakes the earth, and desolation terrifies; when the bursting winds rage in the air, and, having broken through their confinement, madden on the earth.

<sup>23</sup> Aldhelm *De Laud.* s.7. p. 297. Whart. ed. 1693. See further on this subject, the *Essays on Rhime in the Archeologia*, vol. xiv. p. 168—204.

**B O O K** IX. the vigour or the fancy which occasionally appear in Aldhelm's versification; and therefore a few passages only will be quoted.

He begins in this humble style:—

That many lights should shine in every age,  
 T'illumine the loathsome shades of human night  
 With his celestial flame, the Lord permits:  
 And tho' our light supreme is Christ divine,  
 Yet God has sent his saints with humbler rays  
 To burn within his church. With sacred fire,  
 Love fills their minds, and Zeal inflames their speech.  
 He spreads his numerous torches thro' the world,  
 That the new rays of burning faith, diffus'd  
 With starry virtues, every land may fill. <sup>24</sup>

His invocation is much inferior to Aldhelm's:—

Aid me, Supreme! the Spirit's gifts proceed  
 From thee; and none can fitly sing thy grace  
 Without thy help. Oh, thou! who tongues of flame  
 Erst gave, now send the treasures of thy word  
 To him who sings thy gifts! <sup>25</sup>

THE following legend is selected as a specimen of the general style of the narration.

<sup>24</sup> Multa suis Dominus fulgescere lumina seclis  
 Donavit, tetricas humanæ noctis ut umbras  
 Lustraret divina poli de culmine flamma.  
 Et licet ipse deo natus de lumine Christus  
 Lux sit summa, Deus sanctos quoque jure lucernæ  
 Ecclesiæ rutilare dedit, quibus igne magistro  
 Sensibus instet amor, sermonibus æstuat ardor,  
 Multifidos varium lychnos qui sparsit in orbem.  
 Ut cunctum nova lux fidei face fusa sub axem  
 Omnia sidereis virtutibus arva replet.

Smith's Bede, p 268.

<sup>25</sup> Tu, rogo, summe, juva, donorum spiritus auctor,  
 Te sine nam digne fari tua gratia nescit.  
 Flammivomisque soles dare qui nova famina linguis  
 Munera da verbi linguæ tua dona canenti. *Smith's Bede, p. 268*



The youth now bent beneath a sudden pain,<sup>26</sup>  
 And led his languid footsteps with a pine.  
 When on a day as in the air he plac'd  
 His weary limbs, and meek yet mourning lay,  
 An horseman cloth'd in snowy garments came,  
 And graceful as a courser: — He saluted  
 The youth reclin'd, who offer'd his obeisance.  
 " My prompt attentions should be gladly paid  
 To you — if grievous pains did not withhold me:  
 See, how my knee is swell'd — no leech's care  
 Thro' a long lapse of time has sooth'd the evil."

Straight leap'd the stranger from his horse, and strok'd  
 The part diseas'd, thus counselling: " The flour  
 Of wheat and milk boil quickly on the fire,  
 And spread the mixture warm upon the tumour."  
 Remounting then he took the road he came;  
 And Cuthbert us'd his medicine, and found  
 That his physician from th' exalted throne  
 Of the Supreme had come, and eas'd his pain,  
 As with the fish's gall he once restor'd  
 The light to poor Tobias.

<sup>26</sup> *Parvulus interea subiti discrimine morbi  
 Plectitur, atque regit vestigia languida pino.  
 Cumque die quadam sub divo fessa locasset  
 Membra dolens solus mitis puer, ecce repente  
 Venit eques niveo venerandus tegmine, nec non  
 Gratia cornipedi similis, recubumque salutat,  
 Obsequium sibi ferre rogans. Cui talia reddit,  
 " Obsequiis nunc ipse tuis adsistere promptus  
 Vellem, in diro premeretur compede gressus.  
 Nam tumet ecce genu, nullis quod cura medentum  
 Tempore jam multo valuit mollire lagonis."  
 Desilit hospes equo, palpat genu sedulus ægrum,  
 Sic fatus: " Similæ nitidam cum lacte farinam  
 Olla coquat pariter ferventis in igne culinæ.  
 Hacque istum calida sanandus inunge tumorem."  
 Hæc memorans conscendit equum, quo venerat, illo  
 Calle domum remeans. Monitus medicina secuta est,  
 Agnovitque sacer medicum venisse superni  
 Judicis a solio summo, qui munere clausos  
 Restituit visus piscis de felle Tobia.*

Smith's Bede, p. 269, 270.

**BOOK**  
**IX.**

THERE are some hymns of Bede remaining. The hymn on the year deserves our peculiar notice, as it shows that he also used rhyme, and gives additional support to that column of evidence which enabled me to trace the use of rhyme into the fourth century.

THE first part of the hymn on the year consists of a few hexameters, some of which seem to have been meant to rhyme. These are succeeded by fifty-eight lines, which correctly rhyme in couplets, and which are not hexameters. They are not worth a translation, being only curious for their rhimes. I add the first twelve.

Annus solis continetur quatuor temporibus,  
 Ac deinde adimpletur duodecim mensibus.  
 Quinquaginta et duabus currit hebdomadibus  
 Trecentenis sexaginta atque quinque diebus.  
 Sed excepta quarta parte noctis atque diei  
 Quæ dierum superesse cernitur serie.  
 De quadrante post annorum bis binorum terminum,  
 Calculantes colligendum decreverunt bissextum.  
 Hinc annorum diversantur longe latitudines  
 Quorum quidam embolismi, quidam fiunt communes,  
 Brevis quippe qui vocant communis lunaribus  
 Solis semper duodenis terminatur mensibus.  
 Longus autem qui omnino embolismus dicitur  
 Lunæ tribus atque decem cursibus colligitur  
 Brevioris anni totus terminatur circulus  
 Trecentenis quinquaginta ac quatuor diebus,  
 Longus vero lunæ annus in dierum termino  
 Continetur trecenteno, octogeno, quaterno.<sup>27</sup>

IN the same poem he frequently makes his hexameters rhyme.

<sup>27</sup> Bedæ Opera, tom.i. p. 476. That Bede had observed the middle, or what have been called Leonine rhimes, is clear from his adducing one as a specimen how poets use the figure Homæoteleuton: —

“ Poetæ hoc modo ;

Pervia divisi, patuerunt cærula ponti.” Tom.i. Op. p. 62.

IN another part of the same poem he introduces a series of middle rhimes; as,

CHAP.  
V.

Adventum domini, non est celebrare Decembri,  
Post ternas nonas, neque quintas ante calendas,  
Pascha nec undenas, Aprilis ante calendas,  
Nec post septenas, Maias valet esse calendas,  
Virgo puerperio, dedit anno signa secundo,  
Illius magni cycli, modo bis revolvit....  
Triginta que duos, quingentos qui tenet annos,  
Illius angelici, dantes paschalia cycli,  
Qui constat denis, annis simul atque novenis.<sup>28</sup>

The comma marks the position of the middle rhyme. He adds thirty-six more lines of this sort.

WE have also of Bede's a long poem on the martyr Justin. The beginning may be given to show its form.

Quando Christus Deus noster	Quatenus totius orbis
Natus est ex virgine	Ficret descriptio.
Edictum imperiale	Nimirum quia in carne
Per mundum insonuit,	Tunc ille apparuit. <sup>29</sup>

BONIFACE, the Anglo-Saxon who went a self-devoted missionary to Germany, and, after converting one hundred thousand from their idolatry, was murdered in 755, attempted poetry. Some of the verses which he subjoined to his epistolary correspondence yet remain to us. In the following, the middle lines represent an acrostic of the name of the friend to whom he writes. It is in Latin rhimes. The acrostic begins when he mentions his friend's name :

Latin  
Poetry of  
Boniface.

<sup>28</sup> Bedæ Opera, tom. i. p. 485. Simeon Dun., p. 96., quotes a long poem of Bede, on the day of judgment, in hexameter Latin verse.

<sup>29</sup> Bede, tom. iii. p. 367.

B O O K  
IX.

Vale frater, florentibus  
 Juventutis cum viribus :  
 Ut floreas cum Domino  
 In sempiterno solio  
 Qua martyres in cuneo  
 Regem canunt æthereo  
 Prophetæ apostolicis  
 Consonabunt et laudibus  
 Nitharde nunc nigerrima  
 Imi cosmi contagia  
 Temne fauste Tartares  
 Hæc contra hunc supplicia  
 Alta que super æthera  
 Rimari petens agmina

Dominum quæ semper choris  
 Verum comunt angelicis.  
 Qua rex regum perpetuo  
 Cives ditat in sæculo  
 Iconisma sic cherubin  
 Ut et gestes cum seraphin  
 Editus apostolorum  
 Filius prophetarum  
 Summa sede ut gaudeas  
 Unaque simul fulgeas  
 Excelsi regni præmia  
 Lucidus captes aurea  
 In que throno æthereo  
 Christum laudes preconia.<sup>30</sup>

ON another occasion he closes a letter to pope Gregory with six complimentary hexameters.<sup>31</sup> Boniface is once called by a contemporary the client of Aldhelm.<sup>32</sup>

Of Leob-  
 githa.

AMONG the correspondents of Boniface we find some poets. Leobgitha, an Anglo-Saxon lady, closes a letter to him with these four verses, which are curious, for being *rhimed* hexameters ;

Arbiter omnipotens, solus qui cuncta creavit  
 In regno patris, semper qui lumine fulget.  
 Quia jugiter flagrans, sic regnet gloria Christi  
 Illæsum servet semper te jure perœnni.<sup>33</sup>

Th' Almighty Judge, who in his Father's realms  
 Created all, and shines with endless light,  
 May he in glory reign, and thee preserve  
 In everlasting safety and delight.

She introduces these verses with a letter, of which a few paragraphs may be selected. " I ask your clemency to condescend to recollect the friendship

<sup>30</sup> Maxima Bib. Patrum, xiii. p. 70. They contain nothing worth translating.

<sup>31</sup> Ibid. p. 126.

<sup>32</sup> Ibid. p. 93.

<sup>33</sup> Ibid. p. 83.

CHAP.  
V.

which some time ago you had for my father. His name was Tinne: he lived in the western parts, and died about eight years ago. I beg you not to refuse to offer up prayers to God for his soul. My mother desires also to be remembered to you. Her name is Ebbe. She is related to you, and lives now very laboriously, and has been long oppressed with great infirmity. I am the only daughter of my parents, and I wish, though I am unworthy, that I may deserve to have you for my brother; because in none of the human race have I so much confidence as in you. I have endeavoured to compose these under-written verses according to the discipline of poetical tradition, not confident with boldness, but desiring to excite the rudiments of your elegant mind, and wanting your help. I learnt this art from the tuition of Eadburga, who did not cease to meditate the sacred law."

CÆNA, an Anglo-Saxon archbishop, another of the correspondents of the German missionary, annexes to a letter which he wrote to Lullus, six lines, which are hexameters, but *rhime* in the middle of each line: Of Cæna.

Vivendo felix Christi laurate triumphis  
Vita tuis, seculo specimen, charissime cœlo,  
Justitiæ cultor, verus pietatis amator,  
Defendens vigili sanctas tutamine mandras  
Pascua florigeris pandens prædulcia campis  
Judice centenos portans venienti maniplos.<sup>34</sup>

There is no more of his poetry extant.

ETHILWALD, the friend and pupil of Aldhelm, was also a poet in this period. There is a letter Of Ethilwald.

<sup>34</sup> Maxima Bib. Pat. p. 111.

**BOOK** from Aldhelm to his beloved son and pupil Æthelwald yet extant. There is another from the disciple to his master, conceived in terms of great affection and respect, in which he says that he has sent three poems in two different species of poetry; one in heroic verse, the hexameter and pentameter, in seventy verses; another not formed on quantity, but consisting of eight syllables in every line, and one and the same letter, adapted to similar cross paths of lines; the third made in similar lines of verses and syllables, on the transmarine journey of Boniface.<sup>35</sup>

THERE are no poems immediately subjoined to the letter, but within three pages some poems follow which seem to be some of those described by Ethilwald. We infer this, because the last purports by its contents to be written by Ethilwald<sup>36</sup>, and the one preceding it speaks of Aldhelm<sup>37</sup>, as if it were addressed to him. Both are in the singular sort of verse above described.

THIS singular versification seems to be a peculiar alliteration, which these passages illustrate:

<sup>35</sup> Max. Bib. Pat. 13. 93.

<sup>36</sup> Vale, vale, fidissime,  
Phile Christi charissime  
Quem in cordis cubiculo  
Cinge amoris vinculo —  
Salutatis supplicibus  
Æthelwaldi cum vocibus.

Farewell, farewell, most faithful friend, most dear to Christ; whom in the chamber of my heart I surround with the bond of love — the humble voice of Ethilwald having saluted thee.

Maxima Bib. Pat. p. 98.

<sup>37</sup> Althelmum nam altissimum  
Cano atque clarissimum.

For I sing Aldhelm, the most lofty and most illustrious.

Ibid. p. 98.

Summum satorem solia	Curvato colli cervicem
Sedet qui per æthralia—	Capitis atque verticem,
Cuncta cernens cacumine	Titubanti tutamina
Cœlorum summo lumine—	Tribuat per solamina
Sacro sancta sublimiter	Neque nocet nitoribus
Suffragans manus fortiter.—	Nemerosis cespitibus
Caput candescens crinibus	Ruris rigati rivulo
Cingunt capilli nitidis:—	Roscidi roris sedulo—

THESE poems are more remarkable for these syllabic difficulties of versification than for any other quality, except the absence of the true poetical genius.

THE rhimed poems which we have cited from Aldhelm, Bede, Boniface, Leobgitha, Cæna, and Ethilwald, all Anglo-Saxons who wrote before and between 700 and 750, show that the use of rhyme was a favourite amusement among the Anglo-Saxons, at this period, in their Latin poetry.

ALCUIN was another poet who contributed to adorn the eighth century. Some of his poems have been printed among those of Walafrid Strabo, which his editor, Du Chesne, has noticed. He has left many poetical compositions, among which his verses to Charlemagne, and his religious and moral poetry, form the principal part. He sometimes rhimes, as in this poem, of which the loose measure reminds us of Swift's petition:

Alcuin's  
Latin poetry.

Quam imprimis speciosa quadriga: homo, leo, vitulus et aquila.  
Septuaginta unum per capitula colloquuntur de domino paria.  
In secunda subsequuntur protinus homo, leo loquitur et vitulus  
Quibus inest ordinate positus decimus atque novem numerus.<sup>38</sup>

Sixteen more lines follow, rhiming in the same manner.

THE following poem we may call a religious

<sup>38</sup> Alb. Opera. ed. Du Ch. p. 1686.

**BOOK IX.** sonnet. I quote it, because, as all the lines but two rhyme together at different distances, I think it an early specimen of that sort of *rhime* which afterwards became improved into the sonnet :

Qui cœli cupit portas intrare patentes,  
 Sæpius hunc pedibus intret et ipse suis.  
 Hæc est perpetuæ venienti porta salutis,  
 Hoc est lucis iter et via jam veniæ.  
 Hæc domus alma Dei, hic sunt thesaura tonantis,  
 Sanctorum multæ reliquiæ que patrum.  
 Idcirco ingrediens devota mente viator,  
 Sterne solo membra, pectore carpe polum.  
 Hic Deus, hic sancti tibi spes, hic terra salutis.  
 Sit conjuncta tuo pectore firma fides.<sup>39</sup>

Who seeks to enter heaven's expanded gates,  
 Must oft within these sacred walls attend;  
 Here is the gate of ever-during bliss,  
 The path of light, of pardon, and of peace,  
 The house of God, the treasures of his power,  
 And numerous relics of the holiest men.  
 With mind devoted, traveller, enter here,  
 Here spread your limbs, and fill your heart with heav'n;  
 Here sacred hopes, here God himself awaits thee,  
 If steadfast faith thy humble mind control.

In another poem, on a lady building a temple, who was one of the correspondents of Boniface, he mentions Ina, the Saxon king, in his way :

A third ruler received the supreme sceptre,  
 Whom the nations call In with uncertain cognomen,  
 Who now governs by right the kingdom of the Saxons.

THERE is another, which seems to have been meant to rhyme at different distances :

O mortalis homo mortis reminiscere casus  
 Nil pecude distas si tantum prospera captas.

---

<sup>39</sup> Alb. Opera, ed. Du Ch. p. 1697.

Omnia quæ cernis variarum gaudia rerum.  
 Umbra velut tenuis veloci fine recedunt.  
 Præcave non felix ne te dum nescis et audis  
 Quassans præcipiti dissolvat turbine finis.  
 Porrige poscenti victum, vel contege nudum.  
 Et te post obitum sic talia facta beabunt.<sup>40</sup>

Mortal! the casualties of death remember!  
 If wealth alone we seek, we are but cattle.  
 Know! all the various joys which charm below,  
 Like a light-flying shade will soon depart.  
 Beware! lest in the hour of careless mirth,  
 The final whirlwind shake thee into ruin.  
 Go, feed the hungry and the naked clothe!  
 Such deeds will bless thee in the grave we loathe.

SOME of his poetry is pleasing. The following  
 is his address to his cell, when he quitted it for the  
 world: <sup>41</sup>

O my lov'd cell, sweet dwelling of my soul,  
 Must I for ever say, Dear spot, farewell!  
 Round thee their shades the sounding branches spread  
 A little wood, with flowering honours gay;  
 The blooming meadows wave their healthful herbs,  
 Which hands experienc'd cull to serve mankind;  
 By thee, mid flowery banks, the waters glide  
 Where the glad fishermen their nets extend;  
 Thy gardens shine with apple-bending boughs,  
 Where the white lilies mingle with the rose;

<sup>40</sup> Alb. Opera. ed. Du. Ch. p. 1721.

<sup>41</sup> O mea cella mihi habitatio dulcis amata  
 Semper in æternum, O mea cella, vale.  
 Undique te cingit ramis resonantibus arbos.  
 Silvula florigeris semper onusta comis.  
 Prata salutiferis flore bunt omnia et herbis  
 Quas medici quærit dextra salutis ore.  
 Flumina te cingunt florentibus undique ripis,  
 Retia piscator qua sua tendit ovans.  
 Pomiferis redolent ramis tua claustra per hortos,  
 Lilia cum rosulis candida mixta rubris.

BOOK  
IX.

Their morning hymns the feather'd tribes resound,  
 And warble sweet their great Creator's praise.  
 Dear cell ! in thee my tutor's gentle voice  
 The lore of sacred wisdom often urg'd ;  
 In thee at stated times the Thunderer's praise  
 My heart and voice with eager tribute paid.  
 Lov'd cell ! with tearful songs I shall lament thee,  
 With moaning breast I shall regret thy charms ;  
 No more thy poet's lay thy shades will cheer,  
 No more will Homer or thy Flaccus hail thee ;  
 No more my boys beneath thy roof will sing,  
 But unknown hands thy solitudes possess.  
 Thus sudden fades the glory of the age,  
 Thus all things vanish in perpetual change.  
 Naught rests eternal or immutable :  
 The gloomy night obscures the sacred day ;  
 The chilling winter plucks fair autumn's flowers ;  
 The mournful storm the placid sea confounds ;  
 Youth chases wild the palpitating stag,  
 While age incumbent totters on its staff.

---

Omne genus volucrum matutinas personat odas  
 Atque Creatorem laudat in ore deum.  
 In te personuit quondam vox alma magistri,  
 Quæ sacrosophiæ tradidit ore libros.  
 In te temporibus certis laus sancta tonantis  
 Pacificos sonuit vocibus atque animis.  
 Te mea cella modo lacrymosis plango camænis,  
 Atque gemens casus pectore plango tuos.  
 Tu subito quoniam fugisti carmina satum,  
 Atque ignota manus te modo tota tenet.  
 Te modo nec Flaccus nec fati Homerus habebit  
 Nec pueri Musas per tua tecta canunt.  
 Vertitur omne decus sæcli sic namque repente,  
 Omnia mutantur ordinibus variis.  
 Nil manet æternum, nil immutabile vere est,  
 Obscurat sacrum nox tenebrosa diem.  
 Decutit et flores subito hyems frigida pulcros  
 Perturbat placidum et tristior aura mare.  
 Quæ campis cervos agitabat sacra juvenus  
 Incumbit fessos nunc baculo senior.

Ah! wretched we! who love thee, fickle world!  
Thou flyest our grasp and hurriest us to ruin.

C H A P.  
V.

ONE of Alcuin's fancies in versification was to close his second line with half of the first:

*Præsul amate precor, hac tu diverte viator  
Sis memor Albini ut, præsul amate precor.*<sup>42</sup>

THERE are several poems, some short, others longer, in this kind of composition.

MANY of Alcuin's poems are worthy of a perusal. Some exhibit the flowers of poetry, and some attempt tenderness and sensibility with effect. They are all distinguished by an easy and flowing versification. Several poems are addressed to his pupil Charlemagne, and mention him under the name of David, with a degree of affection which seldom approaches the throne. The adulation of a courtly poet, however, sometimes appears very gross, as in these lines, in which, alluding to Charlemagne's love of poetry, he ventures to address him by the venerable name of the Chian bard:

*Dulcis Homere vale, valeat tua vita per ævum,  
Semper in æternum dulcis Homere vale.*

This appears in the same poem with two other childish lines:

*Semper ubique vale, dic, dic, dulcissime David,  
David amor Flacci, semper ubique vale.*<sup>43</sup>

ONE of his poems consists of six stanzas, each of six lines. The two first are quoted, because

*Nos miseri cur te fugitivum mundus amamus?*

*Tu fugis a nobis semper ubique ruens.*

Alb. Opera. ed. Du Ch. p. 1731.

<sup>42</sup> Ibid. p. 1740.

<sup>43</sup> Ibid. p. 1742, 1743.

**BOOK** this poem is very like one of the most common  
**IX.** modes of versifying in the Anglo-Saxon poetry :

Te homo laudet,	Sed tibi sancte
Alme Creator,	Solus imago,
Pectore mente,	Magna Creator,
Pacis amore,	Mentis in arce
Non modo parva,	Pectore puro
Pars quia mundi est.	Dum pie vivit. <sup>44</sup>

OF the other Latin poetry of the Anglo-Saxons, little need be said. We have a few fragments of some authors, but they deserve a small degree of consideration. Malmsbury has preserved to us part of a poem made on Athelstan, probably by a contemporary, of which the only curiosity is, that it is a mixture of final rhimes and middle rhimes. Where the poet ceases to rhyme at the end of his lines, he proceeds to rhyme in the middle; and where he desists from middle rhimes, he inserts his final ones. <sup>45</sup>

THERE is some poetry on Edgar preserved by Ethelwerd <sup>46</sup>; and the Vedastne MS. of the life of Dunstan contains some rhiming lines. <sup>47</sup>

<sup>44</sup> Alb. Opera. ed. Du Ch. p. 780.

<sup>45</sup> The twelve first lines may be quoted as a specimen :

Regia progenies produxit nobile stemma  
 Cum tenebris nostris illuxit splendida gemma,  
 Magnus Æthelstanus patriæ decus, orbita recti,  
 Illustris probitas de vero nescia flecti.  
 Ad patris edictum datus in documenta scholarum,  
 Extimuit rigidos ferula crepitante magistros :  
 Et potans avidis doctrinæ mella medullis  
 Decurrit teneros, sed non pueriliter annos  
 Mox adolescentis vestitus flore juventæ  
 Armorum studium tractabat, patre jubente.  
 Sed nec in hoc segnem senserunt bellica jura  
 Idquoque posterius juravit publica cura.

Malms. lib. ii. p. 49.

<sup>46</sup> Ethelw. lib. iv. c. 9.

<sup>47</sup> Acta Sanct. May.

## CHAP. VI.

*Of the general Literature of the ANGLO-SAXONS.*

**T**HAT every nation improves as fast as the CHAP.  
VI.  
means and causes of improvement within it, and the external agencies that are operating upon it can effect or allow, all anterior history proves; but the modes and paths of the progress of each country will be as different as its circumstances are dissimilar: in one age or state some directions will be taken peculiar to itself, and distinct from those of its predecessors or contemporaries. In their paths of excellence, it may be pausing, but it will be found to be forcing other channels of its own. The movement is always either preparation for advance, or a diffusion of attained improvements, or clear and steady progression. If its career seems on some points to be questionable, or retrograde, it will, on a more scrutinising examination, be found to be decided and prosperous in others.

THE Anglo-Saxon nation is an instance that may be adduced in verification of these principles. It did not attain a general or striking eminence in literature. But society wants other blessings besides these. The agencies that affected our ancestry took a different course: they impelled them towards that of political melioration, the great fountain of human improvement; and, during the period of the Anglo-Saxon dynasty, laid firmly the foundations of that political constitution, and began the erection of that great social fabric, which Danes and Normans afterwards did not

**BOOK** overthrow, but contributed to consolidate and  
**IX.** complete.

THERE were no causes in action of sufficient energy at that time to make the Anglo-Saxons a literary people. They had not, like the Gauls or Britons, the benefit of Roman instruction to educate them; for both the Roman legions and settlers had quitted the island before they came. From the Britons they could gain nothing, because assailing them as invaders, and either enslaving or exterminating them, there was no chance of any sympathy of mental cultivation. Nor were the Britons much qualified to have been their intellectual teachers. Luxury, civil factions, merciless wars with each other, and the Scotch and Irish depredations, were fast barbarising the island; while the Saxons were fighting for its occupation. The songs of the British bards were engrossed by encomiums on martial slaughter, drunken carousals; or the mystical traditions of expiring Druidism, in which but a few gleams of intelligent thought were at any time intermixed. Their historical events were twisted into the strange form of unnatural triads; and though they possessed many adages of moral wisdom and acute and satirical observation of life and manners, yet aphorisms without reasoning are but the sentences of a dictator, which impress the memory without cultivating the understanding; and even these could rarely benefit the Saxons, from the extreme dissimilarity to their own, of the language in which they were preserved. Hence, till Gregory planted Christianity in England, there was no means or causes of intellectual improvement to our fierce and active ancestors.

BUT Christianity was necessarily taught at first as a system of belief of certain doctrines, and of practice of certain rites and duties. The length of time requisite to inculcate and imbibe these left no opportunity for the diffusion of literature. The monks from Rome introduced some ; but they had not only to bring it into the island, but to raise among the Anglo-Saxons the state of mind and capacity requisite to understand it, as well as the desire to attain it. No effects can take place without adequate causes. It was only among the monasteries that the new taste could be at first introduced, and among that part of the nation which devoted itself to religion. The rest neither felt the want of it, nor the value, nor had the leisure or the means of attending to it. The great majority of the population was in the working or servile state ; and husbandry being imperfectly understood or practised, too much labour was required to raise the produce they needed, and too little was obtained, with all their efforts, to give that leisure and comfort without which no nation or individual will study. The higher classes being all independent, and either assailing or depredating on others, or watching and defending themselves, or pursuing their vindictive feuds, or attending their kings and chiefs in expeditions, witenagemots, and festivities, or employing their time in learning the use of arms, or in pilgrimages, penances, and superstitions, or attending county and baronial courts, performing suit of service, and transacting that frequent civil business of life which their free institutions were always creating, had as little surplus leisure for the cultivation of literature as the vassal, peasant, or the interior domestic. Their dependent jurisdic-

**B O O K** IX. tions and franchises furnished also their thegns, or barons, with continual employment. The clergy only were accessible to it; and these were, as a body, too poor to have books from which to learn it, and in their parochial villages had neither inducement nor opportunities to gain it. It was into the monasteries only that, under the circumstances of the day, the liberal studies could make any entrance. Nor at first even here. The monks were long occupied in building their churches and cloisters, and putting their ground into a state of cultivation, and of raising from it the means of subsistence. Most of them for some time could barely do this. It was only as some became gradually affluent that they could afford to purchase manuscripts, or were at leisure to study them. Literature was not then generally wanted for preferment, business, distinction, occupation, or amusement in the world. There was too much for all classes to do and suffer. But as the more favoured monasteries acquired wealth, libraries, and leisure, some few individuals began to derive enjoyment from literature; and as fast as the means of obtaining it accrued, the taste and pursuit of it arose and was diffused. The neglect of it did not proceed from the barbarism or incapacity of the Anglo-Saxon mind, but from its energies being necessarily absorbed by more indispensable occupations.<sup>1</sup> Our

<sup>1</sup> I observe a passage in Bede which shows that even the Anglo-Saxon clergy made their literature subservient to their business. He says, "I have known *many clerici* placed in school, for this chiefly, that they might acquire a knowledge of secular letters, which teach their auditors most studiously to seek carnal things; to contend for obtaining the glory of the world; and to learn the subtleties of syllogisms and arguments, that they may triumph over the unlearned, who are circum-

ancestors were clever and active men in all the transactions and habits of their day, and were exerting in all their concerns as much awakened intellect as their gross system of feeding and habits of drinking permitted to be developed. We have estimated them too low, because we have too highly appreciated the general condition of Roman society, and too much compared our forefathers with ourselves. Absence of literature has been too often mistaken for absence of intellect. It is usually forgotten that illiteracy has been the general character of the mass of all people, whether Egyptian, Phœnician, Greek, or Roman, as much as of the Goths or Anglo-Saxons. In the most celebrated countries of antiquity it was a portion only, and that but a small one, of their population which possessed either books or literature. It is only in our own times that these are becoming the property of nations at large. When our Anglo-Saxons applied to literature they showed the strength of their intellectual powers, and a rapidity of progress that has never been surpassed. Bede, Alcuin, and Eri-gena may be compared with any of the Roman or Greek authors who appeared after the third century. But that within an hundred years after knowledge, for the first time, dawned upon the Anglo-Saxons, such a man as Bede should have arisen, writing so soundly on every branch of study that had been pursued by the Romans, and forming in his works a kind of cyclopedia of almost all that was

---

vented with a verbosity of this sort." Again, "As many scholars exercise themselves in *secular letters* for the love of *secular* life, so I shall exercise myself in sacred letters." Bed. Op. vol. viii. p. 1063, 1064.

**B O O K** then known, is a phenomenon which it is easier to  
 IX. praise than to parallel.

THE natural direction of the Anglo-Saxon mind, when first led to study, was necessarily to religious literature, because its tuition and its tutors were of this description. To attain knowledge, it was requisite that our ancestors should become acquainted with the Latin language; and this was the first state of their intellectual progress.

WHEN St. Augustin had entered England teaching Christianity, the pope sent to him many books, some of which are now extant in our public libraries. This missionary, and the monks who accompanied him, occasioned a desire of knowledge to spread among the Anglo-Saxons in the seventh century. In a short time afterwards, Sigebert, one of the princes of East Anglia, imbibed this feeling during his residence in France, to which he had fled from his brother Redwald. When he attained the crown of East Anglia, he established a school in his dominions for the instruction of youth, in imitation of those which he had seen among the Franks. He was assisted in this happy effort of civilisation by Bishop Felix, who came to him out of Kent, and who supplied him with teachers from that part of the octarchy which Christianity and literature had first enlightened.<sup>2</sup>

AT this period Ireland was distinguished for its religious literature; and many of the Anglo-Saxons, both of the higher and lower ranks, retired into it to pursue their studies or their devotions. While some assumed the monastic life, others, seeking variety of knowledge, went from one master's cell

<sup>2</sup> Bede, iii. 18.

to another. The hospitable Irish received them all, supplied them with daily food, with books, and gratuitous instruction.<sup>3</sup>

C H A P.  
VI.

MANY persons in England are mentioned at this time by Bede as reading and studying the Holy Scriptures. To the Anglo-Saxons, as to all nations, the Jewish and Christian Scriptures must have been invaluable accessions. From these we learn the most rational chronology of the earth, the most correct history of the early states of the East, the most intelligent piety, the wisest morality, and every style of literary composition. Perhaps no other collection of human writings can be selected, which, in so moderate a compass, presents so much intellectual benefit to mankind. We shall feel all their value and importance to our ancestors, if we compare them with the Edda, in which the happiest efforts of the Northern genius are deposited.<sup>4</sup>

It has been mentioned, that Alfred lamented very impressively the happy times which England had known before his reign, and the wisdom, knowledge, and books which then abounded.

THE period of intellectual cultivation to which he alluded began to dawn when Christianity was first planted; but was advanced to its meridian lustre towards the end of the seventh century, by two ecclesiastics, whom the pope sent into England.

ABOUT the year 668, the English archbishop, who went to Rome for the papal sanction, happen-

<sup>3</sup> Bede, iii. c. 28.

<sup>4</sup> No one who has read them can put the Koran, the Vedas, the Puranas, or the Zendavesta, in competition with the Scriptures, unless he has that unfortunate taste for comparative nonsense which we should lament rather than censure.

**BOOK IX.** ing to die there, the pope resolved to supply his dignity by a person of his own choice. He selected for this purpose Adrian, an abbot of a monastery near Naples, and an African; the unambitious Adrian declined the honour, and recommended Theodore, a monk at Rome, but a native of Tarsus, the Grecian city illustrious by the birth of St. Paul. The pope approved his choice, and at the age of sixty-six Theodore was ordained archbishop of Canterbury. His friend Adrian accompanied him to England.

NOTHING could be more fortunate for the Anglo-Saxon literature than the settlement of these men in England. Both were well versed in sacred and profane literature, and thoroughly acquainted with the Greek and Latin languages. Their conversation and exhortations excited among the Anglo-Saxons a great emulation for literary studies. A crowd of pupils soon gathered round them, and, besides the Scriptures and divinity, they taught the Greek and Latin languages, astronomy, arithmetic, and the art of Latin poetry<sup>b</sup>; a remarkable in-

<sup>b</sup> Bede, iv. c. 1.—We have a curious specimen how the Anglo-Saxons pronounced Greek, in their manner of repeating the Lord's prayer in that language. In the Cotton Library a MS. has preserved this prayer in the Greek language, written in Saxon characters. It is probably a correct example of the pronunciation of Greek as introduced into England by Adrian and Theodore in the seventh century; but it certainly shows, in the division of the words, how little the writer understood of the language. I will transcribe it, placing the original by its side:

Pater imon oynys uranis  
agiastituto onomansu. elthetu  
ebasilias genithito to theli  
mansu. os senu uranu Kep-  
tasgis tonartonimon. tonepi-

Πάτερ ἡμῶν ὁ ἐν τοῖς ὕψουσιν  
ἀγιασθέντος τὸ ὄνομα σου. Ἐλθέτω  
ἡ βασιλεία σου γρηθόντος τὸ θέλη-  
μά σου, ὡς ἐν ὁρατῷ, καὶ ὡς  
τῆς γῆς. Τὸν ἄρτον ἡμῶν, τὸν ἱε-

stance of the natural affinity of the human mind for knowledge, and of the contagious sympathy with which it always spreads when neither the civil nor ecclesiastical powers oppose it. C H A P. VI.

THEODORE held his archiepiscopal station twenty-one years. He appointed Adrian to the monastery of St. Peter at Canterbury, who lived there thirty-nine years; and their presence made Kent the fountain of knowledge to all the rest of England. Bede extols the happy times which the island enjoyed under their tuition, and mentions that some of their scholars were alive in his time, as well versed in the Greek and Latin tongues as in their own.<sup>6</sup>

AMONG the men to whom Anglo-Saxon literature was greatly indebted, Benedict, who founded the abbey at Weremouth, must be mentioned with applause. He went several times from England to Rome, and brought back with him an innumerable quantity of books of every description, given to him by his friends, or purchased at no small expence. One of his last instructions was to keep with care the library that he had collected, and not to let it be spoilt or scattered by negligence.<sup>7</sup> The

---

ussion. dos simin simero Keaffi  
simin. to offilemata imon os-  
keimis affiomen. tus ophiletas  
imon Kemies ininkis imas.  
isperas mon. ala ryse imas  
aptou poniru. — MS. Cott.  
Lib. Galba, A. 18. The cha-  
racter which I express by the  
K seems placed for Kal.

ἔσσιον δὲς ἡμῶν σήμερον. Καὶ ἄφες  
ἡμῶν τὰ θρειλήματα ἡμῶν, ὡς καὶ  
ἡμεῖς ἀφίμεν τοῖς θρειλέταις  
ἡμῶν. Καὶ μὴ εἰσινέγκης ἡμῶς  
εἰς πειρασμὸν, ἀλλὰ βῦσαι ἡμᾶς  
ἀπὸ τοῦ πονηροῦ.

<sup>6</sup> Bede, iv. c. 2.

<sup>7</sup> Bede, Hist. Abb. 293—295.

**B. O. O. K** importance of his attention to the arts is also  
 IX. noticed.

**EGBERT**, who was archbishop of York in 712, had celebrity in his day. He was descended from the royal family of Northumbria, and is highly extolled by Malmsbury as an armoury of all the liberal arts. He founded a very noble library at York. Alcuin speaks with gratitude of this circumstance: "Give me (says he, in a letter to Charlemagne) those exquisite books of erudition which I had in my own country by the good and devout industry of my master Egbert, the archbishop." To this Egbert our Bede addresses a long letter, which remains.<sup>8</sup> We have one treatise of Egbert remaining: it is a series of answers to some ecclesiastical questions.

**WILFRID** was another benefactor to Anglo-Saxon literature, by favouring the collection of books; he also ordered the four Evangelists to be written, of purest gold, on purple-coloured parchments, for the benefit of his soul, and he had a case made for them of gold, adorned with precious stones.<sup>9</sup>

WE have a catalogue of the books in the library at York, collected chiefly by Egbert. They consisted of the following:

Ancient fathers:—

Jerom,	Fulgentius,
Hilarius,	Basil,
Ambrosius,	Chrysostom,
Austin,	Lactantius,
Athanasius,	Eutychius,
Gregory,	Clemens,
Leo,	Paulinus.

<sup>8</sup> Bede, .305

<sup>9</sup> Eddius, Vita Wilf.

## Ancient classics : —

Aristotle,  
Pliny,  
Cicero,  
Virgil,  
Statius,

Lucan,  
Boetius,  
Cassiodorus,  
Orosius,  
Pompeius.

C H A P.  
VI

## Ancient grammarians and scholiasts : —

Probus,  
Donatus,  
Priscian,

Servius,  
Pompeius,  
Comminianus.

## Other poets : —

Victorinus,  
Sedulius,  
Juvencus,

Fortunatus <sup>10</sup>,  
Prosper,  
Arator.

THIS was the library which Alcuin calls the treasures of wisdom which his beloved master Egbert left, and of which he says to Charlemagne, “ If it shall please your wisdom, I will send some of our boys, who may copy from thence whatever is necessary, and carry back into France the flowers of Britain ; that the garden may not be shut up in York, but the fruits of it may be placed in the Paradise of Tours.” <sup>11</sup>

THE studies which were pursued at York may be also stated, as those which they who cultivated literature generally attended to.

THEY were,

Grammar,  
Rhetoric,  
Poetry,

Astronomy,  
and  
Natural Philosophy;

which are thus described : —

“ The harmony of the sky, the labour of the sun and moon, the five zones, the seven wandering planets. The laws, risings,

<sup>10</sup> 3 Gale, p. 730.

<sup>11</sup> Malmsb. i. 24—26.

**B O O K** and setting of the stars, and the aerial motions of the sea; earthquakes; the natures of man, cattle, birds, and wild beasts; their various species and figures. The sacred Scriptures." <sup>12</sup>

**IX.**

THESE were the subjects of the scholastic education at York in the eighth century.

BUT though literature in the seventh and eighth centuries was striking its roots into every part of England, yet, from the causes already noticed, it was principally in the monasteries. The illiteracy of the secular part of society continued: even some of our kings were unable to write. Wihtred, king of Kent, about the year 700, says at the end of a charter, "I have put the sign of the holy cross, *pro ignorantia litterarum*"<sup>13</sup>, on account of my ignorance of writing." Among the kings of the seventh and eighth century, however, some exceptions appear: there are several letters extant from the Anglo-Saxon kings at this period<sup>14</sup>, which show some mental cultivation. Of these sovereigns, none were more distinguished than Alfred, of Northumbria, whose voluntary exile in Ireland for the sake of study, and whose literary attainments and celebrity, we have already recorded.<sup>15</sup> But the improvements of those who sought ecclesiastical duties must have operated with considerable effect on all who were within the circle of their influence; they mingled with every order of society; they were every where respected, and often emulated.

FROM among the Anglo-Saxon students in the century preceding Alfred the Great, we may select for our peculiar notice, as best illustrating the literary progress of the nation, Aldhelm, Bede, and Alcuin.

<sup>12</sup> 3 Gale, 728.

<sup>13</sup> Astle's Charters, No. 1.

<sup>14</sup> See Mag. Bib. Pat. xvi. 64. 82, 83. 88.

<sup>15</sup> See our First Vol. p. 375.

ALDHELMUS, as he calls himself in his Latin poems, or, as Alfred spells it, Ealdhelm<sup>16</sup>, Old C H A P.  
VI. Aldhelm. Helmet, whose poems we have noticed before, was of princely extraction; a kinsman of Ina was his father. He received his first tuition from the Adrian already noticed, and he continued his studies at Malmsbury, where Maildulf, an Irishman, had founded a monastery. He became thoroughly versed in Greek and Latin under this tutor, who, charmed by the sylvan beauties of the place, led an hermit's life there, and supported himself by teaching scholars. He returned to Kent, and resumed his studies under Adrian, till his feverish state of health compelled him to relinquish them. He mentions some of these circumstances in a kind letter to his old preceptor.<sup>17</sup>

"I confess, my dearest, whom I embrace with the tenderness of pure affection, that when, about three years ago, I left your social intercourse and withdrew from Kent, my littleness still was inflamed with an ardent desire for your society. I should have thought of it again, as it is my wish to be with you, if the course of things and the change of time would have suffered me; and if divers obstacles had not prevented me. The same weakness of my corporeal infirmity boiling within my emaciating limbs, which formerly compelled me to return home, when, after the first elements, I had rejoined you again, still delays me."

IN another letter he expresses his love of study, and mentions the objects to which his attention was directed. These were the Roman jurisprudence, the metres of Latin poetry, arithmetic, astronomy, and its superstitious child, astrology.<sup>18</sup>

He became abbot of Malmsbury, and his go-

<sup>16</sup> Alfred's Bede, v. c. 18.

<sup>17</sup> Alfred's Bede, v. c. 18. Malms. de Pont. 3 Gale, 338.

<sup>18</sup> 3 Gale, 338. Henry has given almost the whole of it in his history, vol. iv. p. 14.

## BOOK

## IX.

vernment was distinguished by the numerous and splendid donations of land with which the great men of his time endowed his monastery. In 705 he was made bishop of Sherborn, and in 709 he died.

IT is amusing to read the miracles that were ascribed to him. A beam of wood was once lengthened by his prayers; the ruins of the church he built, though open to the skies, were never wet with rain during the worst weather; one of his garments, when at Rome, once raised itself high in the air, and was kept there a while, self-suspended; a child, nine days old, at his command, once spake to clear the calumniated pope from the imputation of being its father.<sup>19</sup> Such were the effusions of monastic fancy, which our ancestors were once enamoured to read, and eager to believe.

WE will now pass on to his literary character.

HE, while abbot, addressed a letter to Geraint, king of Cornwall, whom he styles "the most glorious lord governing the sceptre of the western kingdom," on the subject of the proper day of celebrating Easter, which yet exists;<sup>20</sup> but which has nothing in it to deserve further notice. He addressed a learned book to Alfred, the intelligent king of Northumbria, on the dignity of the number 7, on paternal charity, on the nature of insensible things which are used in metaphors, on the rules of prosody, on the metres of poetry.<sup>21</sup>

ALDHELM was highly estimated by Malmsbury, in the twelfth century, who places him above both Bede and Alcuin. Bede, his contemporary, described him as a man in every respect most learned;

<sup>19</sup> 3 Gale, 351.

<sup>20</sup> 16 Mag. Bib. Pat. p. 65.

<sup>21</sup> 3 Gale, 339.

neat in his style, and wonderfully skilled in secular and ecclesiastical literature. Alfred translates Bede's "nitidus in sermone" into "on wordum hlutor aud scinende," clear and shining in his words.<sup>22</sup> Malmsbury closes his panegyric on his style with asserting, that from its acumen you would think it to be Greek; from its splendor Roman; and from its pomp, English.<sup>23</sup> After these lavish commendations, it will be necessary to consider of their applicability.

C H A P.

VI

His letter to Eahfrid contains a most elaborate specimen of Latin alliteration. Fifteen words begin with the same letter in the first paragraph.

"PRIMITUS (pantorum procerum pretorumque pio potissimum paternoque præsertim privilegio) panegyricum poemata que passim prosatori sub polo promulgantes stridula vocum symphonia ac melodie cantilenæque carmine modulaturi hymnizenus."

In the same letter we have afterwards, "torrenda tetrae tortionis in tartara trusit." The whole epistle exhibits a series of bombastic amplification.<sup>24</sup>

His treatise in praise of virginity is his principal prose work, and is praised by Malmsbury for its rhetorico lepore. It is unfortunate for human genius, that the taste and judgment of mankind vary in every age, and that so defective are our criterions of literary merit, that even in the same age, there are nearly as many critical opinions as there are individuals who assume a right to judge. Some things, however, please more permanently and more universally than others; and some kinds of merit,

<sup>22</sup> Alfred's Bede, v. 18.

<sup>23</sup> 3 Gale, 342.

<sup>24</sup> Usher Syll. Hib. Ep. p. 37.

**B O O K** like that of Aldhelm, are only adapted to flourish  
 IX. at a particular period.

THIS singular treatise contains a profusion of epithets, new-created words, paraphrases, and repetitions, conveyed in long and intricate periods. He clouds his meaning by his gorgeous rhetoric:<sup>25</sup> never content with illustrating his sentiment by an adapted simile, he is perpetually abandoning his subject to pursue his imagery. He illustrates his illustrations till he has forgotten both their meaning and applicability. Hence his style is an endless tissue of figures, which he never leaves till he has converted every metaphor into a simile, and every simile into a wearisome episode. In an age of general ignorance, in which the art of criticism was unknown, his diction pleased and informed by its magnificent exuberance. His imagery was valued for its minuteness, because, although usually unnecessary to its subject, and to us disgusting, as a mere mob of rhetorical figures, yet, as these long details contained considerable information for an uncultivated mind, and sometimes presented pictures which, in a poem, might not have been uninteresting<sup>26</sup>, it was read with curiosity and praised with enthusiasm.

<sup>25</sup> Yet its editor, Henry Wharton, in 1693, praises its *eximiam elegantiam*. Aldhelm addresses it to several religious ladies, his friends; as Hildelitha, Justina, Cuthberga, Osburga, Aldgida, Hidburga, Burrigida, Eulalia, Scholastica, and Tecla. S. l.

<sup>26</sup> It frequently digresses into such descriptions as this:—  
 “The various-coloured glory of the peacock excels in the perfect rotundity of its circles. Beauty in its feathers at one time assumes a saffron tinge, at another glows with purple grace; it now shines in cerulean blue, and now radiates like the yellow gold.”

THAT the style of Aldhelm's prose work is the injudicious adoption of the violent metaphors and figures of northern poetry so like the swollen style of modern Persia, the following instances, but a sample of several pages of the book, will show; we have not only,

C H A P.  
VI.

"The golden necklace of the virtues; the white jewels of merit; the purple flowers of modesty; the transparent eyeballs of virginal bashfulness; the grapes of iniquity; the swan-like hoariness of age; the shrubbery of pride; the torrid cauter of the dogmas; the phlebotomy of the Divine Word; unbarring the folding doors of dumb taciturnity; the helmet of grammar; the tenacious knot of memory; the importunate dragon of gluttony; the shining lamps of chastity burning with the oil of modesty; the plenteous plantations of the apple-tree fecundating the mind with flourishing leaf; and the fetid sink of impurity lamentably overwhelming the ships of the soul" —

BUT we have also long paragraphs of confused figures —

"O illustrious grace of virginity, which as a rose rises from twigs of briars, reddens with a purple flower, and never putrefies in the dire decay of mortality, although it is tied to the weary frailness of death, and grows old with down-bending and crooked age:"

"The leaky bark of our feeble ingenuity, shaken by the whirlwind of a dire tempest, may attain late its port of silence by laborious rowing of the arms; yet we trust that the sails of our yards, swelling with the blasts of every wind, will, notwithstanding their broken cables, navigate happily between the Scyllas of solecism and the gulph of barbarism, dreading the rocky collisions of vain-glory and the incautious whirlpools of self-love."

"Resembling the industry of the most sagacious bees which, when the dewy dawn appears, and the beams of the most limpid sun arise, pour the thick armies of their dancing crowds from the temple over the open fields; now lying in the honey-bearing leaves of the marigolds, or in the purple flowers of the mallows, they suck the nectar, drop by drop, with their beaks; now flying round the yellowing willows and purplish tops of



**B O O K**  
**IX.**

the broom, they carry their plunder on numerous thighs and burthened legs, from which they make their waxen castles ; now crowding about the round berries of the ivy, and the light springs of the flourishing linden tree, they construct the multifiform machine of their honeycombs with angular and open cells, whose artificial structure the excellent poet with natural eloquence has sung in catalectic verse ; so, unless I mistake, your memorising ingenuity of mind, in like manner wandering through the flourishing fields of letters, runs with a bibulous curiosity." <sup>27</sup>

EVERY page exhibits some strong effusions of fancy and high poetical feeling, but overloading their subjects ; frequently inapplicable ; never placed with taste, nor limited by judgment, nor singly and distinctly used. The whole is a confused medley of great and exuberant genius, wasting and burlesqueing uncommon powers. <sup>28</sup>

THE celebrated BEDE, surnamed the Venerable<sup>29</sup>, was a priest in the monastery at Weremouth,

<sup>27</sup> Dr. Parr has condescended, in our own days, to mention "the battering ram of political controversies ;" but Aldhelm preceded him with the figure : "the bulwark of the Catholic faith, shaken by the balistæ of secular argument, and overthrown by the battering rams of atrocious ingenuity." S. 36.

<sup>28</sup> His encomiastical periphrasis on the Virgin, though placed as prose, seems meant to rhyme. It is in the same rhetorical style. He says, that she,

Beata Maria  
Virgo perpetua ;  
Hortus conclusus,  
Fons signatus :  
Virgula radiceis :  
Gerula floris :  
Aurora solis :  
Nurus patris.

Sanctarum socrus animarum,  
Supernorum regina civium—  
—Obsidem seculi,  
Monarcham mundi,  
Rectorem poli ;  
Redemptorem soli ;  
Archangelo promentrante,  
Paracleto adumbrante ;

Genetrix et Germana  
Filii simul que sponsa ;

S. 40.

deserved to be expiated upon.

<sup>29</sup> They who desire to know when the name Venerable was

in the kingdom of Northumbria. His simple life will be best told in his own unaffected narration. He was born in 673.

C H A P.  
VI.

“ Born in the territory of the same monastery, when I was seven years of age, I was, by the care of my relation, committed to the reverend abbot Benedict to be educated, and then to Ceolfrid. I passed all the time of my life in the residence of this monastery, and gave all my labours to the meditation of the Scriptures, and to the observance of regular discipline, and the daily care of singing in the church. It was always sweet to me to learn to teach and to write.

“ In my 19th year I was made deacon; in my 30th, a priest; both by the ministry of the most reverend bishop John, by the direction of the abbot Ceolfrid.

“ From the time of my receiving the order of priesthood, to the 59th year of my life, I have employed myself in briefly noting from the works of the venerable fathers these things on the Holy Scriptures for the necessities of me and mine, and in adding something to the form of their sense and interpretation.”

THE works which he then enumerates are,

“ Commentaries on most of the books of the Old and New Testament, and the Apocrypha.

Two books of Homilies.

A book of Letters to different Persons; one on the Six Ages—on the Tabernacles of the Children of Israel—on a passage in Isaiah—on the Bissextile—on the Equinox according to Anatolius.

The Life and Passion of St. Felix the Confessor, translated into prose from the metrical work of Paulinus.

The Life and Passion of St. Anastasius, corrected from a bad translation of the Greek.

The Life of St. Cuthbert, in verse and prose.

The History of the Abbots, Benedict, Ceolfrid, and Huaetberct.

The Ecclesiastical History of England.

A Martyrology.

A book of Hymns in various metre or rhythm.

A book of Epigrams in heroic or elegiac metre.

---

applied to Bede, may consult the Appendix to Smith's Bede, p. 106.

**B O O K** Book on the Nature of Things and Times.

**IX.**

Another book on Times.

A book on Orthography.

A book on the Metrical Art.

And a book on the Tropes and Figures used in Scripture."<sup>20</sup>

BESIDES these works, Bede wrote others, on Grammar, Arithmetic, Music, Astronomy, and Astrology.

HIS theological works occupy nearly six folio volumes out of eight. He has commented on every book of the Scriptures, from Genesis to the Revelations; and he introduces on each as much learning and knowledge as any one individual could then, by the most patient research, accumulate.

HIS treatise on the Trinity is a commentary on the tract of Boethius on that subject. His homilies and sermons occupy the seventh volume. His meditations on the last words of our Saviour display great devotional sensibility.

ALL his remarks show a calm and clear good sense, a straight-forward mind, occasionally misled to imitate or adopt many of the allegorical interpretations of the Greek fathers, but usually judging soundly. They evince a most extensive reading, and presented his age with the best selections from the best authors on the passages which he expounds.

HIS moral taste and wisdom appears in his excellent selection of moral sentences from the works of the ancients. He has collected all that was known of the theory and practice of chronology, of natural philosophy, of the popular part of astronomy, and of the theory and practice of music; the laws of Latin prosody, the chief topics of gram-

<sup>20</sup> Smith's Bede, p. 222.

mar, rhetoric, and arithmetic<sup>31</sup>; and the main facts and dates of general history.<sup>32</sup> His calculations for the calendar are very elaborate; his treatise on blood-letting displays some of the universal superstitions of his countrymen, as to proper days and times<sup>33</sup>; and in another work, he tells us that trees ought to be cut in the third week of the moon, or they will be corroded by worms<sup>34</sup>; but it is St. Ambrose, not himself, who is responsible for this fancy. He states of the tides, that they followed the moon; and that, as the moon rises and sets every day four-fourths or four-fifths of an hour later than the preceding, so do the tides ebb and flow with a similar retardation.<sup>35</sup>

CHAP.  
VI.

THE style of Bede in all his works is plain and unaffected. Attentive only to his matter, he had little solicitude for the phrase in which he dressed it. But though seldom eloquent, and often homely, it is clear, precise, and useful. His treatise on the Six Ages gives a regular series of Jewish chronology, and then of general chronology, carried down to the year 729. His History of England is the only contemporary document we have of the transactions of the Anglo-Saxon octarchy, and it furnishes us with many particulars not to be found

<sup>31</sup> In his tract on arithmetic, p. 104. he gives the *Mensa Pythagorica*, which is, in fact, the multiplication table, invested with so proud a title. His notation is the Roman. He says, that what the Latins called *numerus*, and the Hebrews *nonna*, the Macedonians named *calculus*, from the little stones which they held in their hands when they reckoned, p. 113. Hence our calculation.

<sup>32</sup> Bede also teaches the *indigitatio*, or the manner of telling and computing with the fingers, p. 167.

<sup>33</sup> Op. vol. i. p. 472.

<sup>34</sup> Ib. vol. ii. p. 115.

<sup>35</sup> Ib. vol. ii. p. 116.

**B O O K**  
**IX.**

elsewhere. His Lives of Religious Persons are disfigured with those legends which degrade his history ; but as they were the object of general admiration and belief in his day, his credulity was the credulity of his age. His works poured an useful flood of matter for the exercise and improvement of the Anglo-Saxon mind, and collected into one focus all that was known to the ancient world, excepting the Greek mathematicians, and some of their literature and philosophy which he had not much studied. To have written them in such a period of ignorance, with means so imperfect, displays an ardent intellect, unwearied in its exertions; and by their popularity among the clergy, contributed to diffuse a taste for literature, which other causes in due time matured. His life was of great importance to his age, in his scholars ; for he educated four men, who greatly promoted literature in France in the following age : Alcuin, Claudius, Rabanus, and Erigena.

He died in the year 735, and his death is thus described by his pupil Cuthbert :

His death.

“ He was attacked with a severe infirmity of frequent short breathing, yet without pain, about two weeks before Easter day ; and so he continued, joyful and glad, and giving thanks to Almighty God day and night, indeed hourly, till the day of Ascension. He gave lessons to us his disciples every day, and he employed what remained of the day in singing of psalms. The nights he passed without sleep, yet rejoicing and giving thanks, unless when a little slumber intervened. When he waked, he resumed his accustomed devotions, and with expanded hands never ceased returning thanks to God. Indeed I never saw with my eyes, nor heard with my ears, any one so diligent in his grateful devotions. O truly blessed man ! He sang the passage in St. Paul, ‘ It is a fearful thing to fall into the hands of the living God ;’ and many other things from the Scripture, in which he admonished us to arouse ourselves from the sleep of the mind. He also recited something in our English language ;

for he was very learned in our songs ; and, putting his thoughts into English verse, he spoke it with compunction. ‘ For this necessary journey no one can be more prudent than he ought to be, to think before his going hence what of good or evil his spirit after death will be judged worthy of.’ He sang the Antiphonæ according to our custom and his own, of which one is, ‘ O King of Glory, Lord of virtues, leave us not orphans, but send the promise of the Father, the Spirit of Truth, upon us. Alleluia.’ When he came to the words Spirit of Truth, he burst into tears, and wept much ; and we with him. We read and wept again ; indeed we always read in tears.” After mentioning that he was occupied in translating St. John’s Gospel into Saxon, his pupil adds — “ When he came to the third festival before the Ascension Day, his breathing began to be very strongly affected, and a little swelling appeared in his feet. All that day he dictated cheerfully, and sometimes said, among other things, ‘ Make haste — I know not how long I shall last. My Maker may take me away very soon.’ It seemed to us that he knew well he was near his end. He passed the night watching and giving thanks. When the morning dawned he commanded us to write diligently what we had begun. This being done, we walked till the third hour with the relics of the saints, as the custom of the day required. One of us was with him, who said, ‘ There is yet, beloved master, one chapter wanting ; will it not be unpleasant to you to be asked any more questions ?’ He answered, ‘ Not at all ; take your pen, prepare it, and write with speed.’ He did so. At the ninth hour he said to me, ‘ I have some valuables in my little chest. But run quickly and bring the presbyters of our monastery to me, that I may distribute my small presents.’ — He addressed each, and exhorted them to attend to their masses and prayers. They wept when he told them they would see him no more ; but he said it was time that he should return to the Being who had formed him out of nothing. He conversed in this manner cheerfully till the evening, when the boy said, ‘ Dear master, one sentence is still wanting.’ ‘ Write it quick,’ exclaimed Bede. When it was finished, he said, ‘ Take my head in your hands, for I shall delight to sit opposite the holy place where I have been accustomed to pray, and where I can invoke my Father.’ When he was placed, on the pavement he repeated the Gloria Patri, and expired in the effort.”<sup>36</sup>

<sup>36</sup> Smith’s Bede, 793.

**BOOK**  
**IX.**

**BEDE** was very highly respected in his day. Boniface, whose life we shall next detail, asks for his works, and speaks of him as a man enriched by the divine grace with a spiritual intellect, and as irradiating his country. Pope Sergius wished his presence in Rome, for the benefit of his counsel.

**Boniface.**

**BONIFACE**, the Anglo-Saxon missionary, whose Latin poems have been before alluded to, and who, in the eighth century founded the principal bishoprics, and the abbey of Fulda, and several monasteries in Germany, was born in Devonshire. His name was <sup>37</sup> Winfrith. He calls himself German Legate of the Apostolic See<sup>38</sup>, and mentions that, "born and nourished in the nation of the English, we wander here by the precept of the Apostolic Seat."<sup>39</sup> From another letter, we find that he had visited Rome, to give an account of his mission, and that the Pope had exhorted him to return and persevere in his efforts.<sup>40</sup> He was in the archiepiscopal dignity from 745 to 754. His activity was exerted with the greatest success between the Wezer and the Rhine. He anointed Pepin king of the Franks in 752. During his absence abroad he kept up an extensive correspondence in England. We have several of his letters to the kings of the Anglo-Saxon octarchy. He wrote to Ethelbald, king of Mercia, begging his assistance to the friend who carried his letter, and sending him some presents. To the same king he addressed a longer letter of moral rebuke and religious exhortation. Ethelbert, the king of Kent, sent to him a complimentary letter, mentioning his rumoured

<sup>37</sup> Bon. Ep. 16 Mag. Bib. p. 71.

<sup>38</sup> Ib. 52.

<sup>39</sup> Ib. 51.

<sup>40</sup> Ib. 60.

successes in the conversion of the Germans, and presenting him with a bowl of silver gilt. Sigebald, a king of the octarchy, wrote to him to request that he would be one of his bishops; and Æbuald, king of East Anglia, also addressed him in a very kind and respectful manner.<sup>41</sup>

His letters to Nothelm, archbishop of Canterbury, to the Anglo-Saxon bishops, Daniel and Ecberth, and to several abbots and abbesses, are yet preserved. His correspondence with the son of Charles Martel, with Pepin, king of France, and with the popes Gregory II. and III., and Zachary, also exists. He appears to have been a man of considerable attainments, of earnest piety, and the most active benevolence. His last Christian labours were in East Friesland, where he was killed with fifty companions.<sup>42</sup>

EDDIUS, surnamed Stephanus, is described by Bede<sup>43</sup>, as the first singing master in the churches of Northumbria, and as having been invited from Kent by Wilfrid. He flourished about 720, and wrote the life of bishop Wilfrid: he addresses his work to bishop Acca and the abbot Tatbert. Eddius begins it with a ridiculous prodigy. While the mother of Wilfrid was in labour with him, the house where she lay seemed to those without to be

<sup>41</sup> See these letters, 16 Mag. Bib. Pat.

<sup>42</sup> Three of the books that he had then with him are still preserved in the monastery of Fulda. The Gospels in his own hand-writing; an harmony of the New Testament; and a volume stained with his blood, containing a letter of Pope Leo, St. Ambrose, on the Holy Ghost, with his treatise *de bono mortis*, "on the advantage of death." Alb. Butler's *Lives*, vol. vi. p. 88.

<sup>43</sup> Bede, lib. iv. c. 2.

**BOOK** in flames. The neighbours hastened with water <sup>IX.</sup> to extinguish them. But the fire was not real; it was only a type of Wilfrid's future sanctity and honour. The miracles of his mature age were of course not less extraordinary. To restore a dead child to life, and to heal another with his arms and thighs broken by a fall from a scaffold; a dark dungeon supernaturally illuminated; St. Michael coming from heaven to cure him of a malady; a withered hand restored by touching the cloth in which his corpse had been laid; an angel appearing with a golden cross to hinder his chamber from being burnt; are some of the effusions of Eddius's fancy, with which he feebly attempts to adorn his composition and its object.<sup>44</sup>

THE style is not so plain as Bede, nor so affected as Aldhelm; but is seldom above mediocrity.

**Alcuin.**

ONE of the pupils formed by Bede, and who became the literary friend and preceptor of Charlemagne, Alcuin, called also Albinus, is entitled to the most honourable notice among the Saxon literati of the 8th century. He was born in Northumbria, and studied at York under Egbert. He says of himself, that he was nourished and educated at York<sup>45</sup>, and that he went in his youth to Rome, and heard Peter of Pisa dispute on Christianity with a Jew.

HE was sent on an embassy from Offa to Charlemagne, and after this period the emperor was so highly attached to him, that in 790 he went to France, and settled there. Here he composed many works on the sciences and arts, which were

<sup>44</sup> See his Life of Wilfrid, in 3 Gale Scrip. p. 40.

<sup>45</sup> Malmsh. de Gest. Reg. p. 24.

valued in that day for the use and instruction of Charlemagne. These still exist, and a number of letters and poems also appear in his works, addressed to Charlemagne, on a variety of topics, under the name of David, and written in the most affectionate language. He was indefatigable in exciting the emperor to the love and encouragement of learning, and in the collection of MSS. for its dissemination. His efforts spread it through France, and his reputation contributed much to establish it in Europe. After the enjoyment of imperial affection and confidence to a degree which literature has never experienced in any other instance, he retired to the abbey of Saint Martin, at Tours, where he died in 804.<sup>46</sup>

He attained great affluence from the favour of his imperial friend. He remarks that a Spanish ecclesiastic, whose erring opinions he had censured, blamed him for the multitude of his riches, and for the number of his servi or bondsmen, being 20,000. Alcuin does not contradict the fact, but denies that it had corrupted his mind: "It is one thing to possess the world; it is another to be possessed by it."<sup>47</sup>

He seems to have been much afflicted with illness, for he often mentions his headaches, the daily pains of his weak body, and a species of continual fever.<sup>48</sup>

THE merit of Alcuin's poetry we have already ex-

<sup>46</sup> See his works, published by Du Chesne, at Paris, in 1617.

<sup>47</sup> Alb. Op. p. 927.

<sup>48</sup> Op. p. 1505 — 1511.; and "the wicked fever scarcely, scarcely suffers me to live on earth. It seeks to open for me the road to heaven. Health leads me to seek its precious treasures amid the fields and hills, and verdant meadows." P. 1509.

**B O O K** hibited. His prose is entitled to the praise of learning, eloquence, and more judgment than any of his contemporaries exhibited. He had a correct and high feeling of morals and piety ; his taste was of an improved kind, and his mind was clear and acute. But it must be recollected of him, as of all the writers of the Anglo-Saxon period, that their greatest merit consisted in acquiring, preserving, and teaching the knowledge which other countries and times had accumulated. They added little to the stock themselves. They left it as they found it. But they separated its best parts from the words and lumber with which these were connected, and thus prepared the ground for further improvement ; and their efforts, examples, and tuition contributed to excite the taste, and to diffuse the acquisition. Unless such men had existed, the knowledge, which the talents of mankind had been for ages slowly acquiring, would have gradually mouldered away with the few perishing MSS. which contained it. Europe would have become what Turkey is, and mankind would have been now slowly emerging into the infancy of literature and science, instead of rejoicing in that noble manhood which we have attained. Several Irish ecclesiastics at this time attained eminence, and assisted to instruct both France and Italy. Of these Claudius, also a disciple of Bede, and friend of Albinus, Dungal and Duncan were the most conspicuous. All these were patronised by Charlemagne.

**Erigena.**

ANOTHER disciple of Bede, and one of the literary companions of Alfred, Johannes Erigena, or John the Irishman, was distinguished by the acumen of his intellect and the expanse of his knowledge. Though a native of the west of

Europe, he was well skilled in Grecian literature<sup>49</sup>, for he translated from the Greek language a work of Dionysius, called the Areopagite<sup>50</sup>, and the Scholia of Maximus, on Gregory the theologian.<sup>51</sup> He dedicated this last work to Charles, the French king, at whose command he had undertaken both.<sup>52</sup> At the request of Hincmar, the archbishop, and another, he wrote on predestination against Gotheschalcus<sup>53</sup>; he composed also a book

<sup>49</sup> Bouquet, in his recueil of the ancient French chronicles, says, that after Charlemagne had obtained the Empire of the West, and an epistolary intercourse had taken place between the Franks and Greeks, "*Cepit occidentalibus nosci et in usu esse lingua Græca.*" T. viii. p. 107.

<sup>50</sup> That the works ascribed to Dionysius, the Areopagite, are supposititious, and were written after the fourth century. See Dupin, vol. i. p. 100—111. ed. Paris, 1688. They suited the genius of Erigena, for their "*principal but est de parler des mystères d'une manière curieuse et recherchée, de les expliquer suivant les principes de la philosophie de Platon et en des termes platoniciens,*" p. 104.

<sup>51</sup> This was Gregory Nazianzen. Maximus, opposing some theological opinions which the imperial court approved, perished 662. Dupin, t. vi. John's translation was published by Dr. Gale, at the end of his treatise *De Divisione Naturæ*, ed. Ox. 1681.

<sup>52</sup> So he declares in his dedication. He tells the king, "*Difficillimum prorsus (orthodoxissime regum) servulo vestro imbecilli valde etiam in Latinis quanto magis in Græcis, laborem injunxistis.*" He states, that what he found in Dionysius obscure and incomprehensible, Maximus had very lucidly explained. He particularizes instances which are certainly among the most recondite, and happily most useless topics of theological logic.

<sup>53</sup> Fab. Bib. Med. l. ix. c. 401. This brought upon John, besides Prudentius Tricassimus, Florus of Lyons, who attacked him in the name of the Church at Lyons. Fab. l. iv. c. 194.; and Cave, Hist. Lit. 447.

BOOK  
IX.

De Visione Dei<sup>54</sup>; and another, de Corpore et Sanguine Domini.<sup>55</sup> This last was written at the request of Charles the Bald, who was a great patron of letters.<sup>56</sup> This book was peculiarly unfortunate. It was assailed by several ecclesiastics, and adjudged to the flames.<sup>57</sup>

His principal work was, his Treatise De Divisione Naturæ, a dialogue which is distinguished for its Aristotelian acuteness, and extensive information. In his discussions on the nature of the Deity, and in considering how far his usual attributes describe his nature, or but metaphorically allude to it, he manifests great subtlety.<sup>58</sup> On the applicability of the categories of Aristotle, to the same Being, he is also very acute and metaphysical; and he concludes that none of the categories are in this case applicable, except perhaps that of relation, and even this but figuratively.<sup>59</sup> In his consideration,

<sup>54</sup> Mabillon found this in MS. It begins, "Omnes sensus corporei ex conjunctione nascuntur animæ et corporis." Fab. Med. l. ix. p. 401.

<sup>55</sup> Fab. p. 404.

<sup>56</sup> Heric, the bishop of Austin, says, in his letter to Charles in 876, "Quidquid igitur literæ possunt, quidquid assequuntur ingenia vobis debent." Bouquet, vii. p. 563. The editor quotes a monk of Saint Denys, in the same age, who says, "Karolus — disciplinas adeo excoluit ut earum ipse quarundam munere sagacissime fungeretur," *ibid.* A passage of Heric's letter deserves quotation, because what he hints of the emigration of Irish literature may account for Erigena's being in France: "Quid Hiberniam memorem, contempto pelagi discrimine, pene totam cum grege philosophorum ad littora nostra migrantem — quorum quisque peritior est, ultro sibi indicit exilium ut Solomoni sapientissimo famuletur ad votum." Bouq. vii. p. 563.

<sup>57</sup> In 1050 and in 1059, an old Chronicler speaks apparently of this book, when he says of Berengarius, "Joannem Scotum igni comburens, cujus lectione ad hanc nefariam devolutus fuerat sectam." Fab. p. 404.

<sup>58</sup> De Divisione Naturæ, p. 6—11.

<sup>59</sup> *Ibid.* p. 13.

whether the category place be a substance or an accident, he takes occasion to give concise and able definitions of the seven liberal arts, and to express his opinion on the composition of things.<sup>60</sup> In another part, he inserts a very elaborate discussion on arithmetic, which, he says, he had learnt from his infancy.<sup>61</sup> He also details a curious conversation on the elements of things, on the motions of the heavenly bodies, and other topics of astronomy and physiology. Among these, he even gives the means of calculating the diameters of the lunar and solar circles.<sup>62</sup> Besides the fathers, Austin, the two Gregorys, Chrysostom, Basil, Epiphanius, Origen, Jerome, and Ambrosius, of whose works, with the Platonising Dionysius, and Maximus, he gives large extracts: he also quotes Virgil, Cicero, Aristotle, Pliny, Plato, and Boetius; he details the opinions of Eratosthenes<sup>63</sup>, and of Pythagoras on some astronomical topics<sup>64</sup>; he also cites Martianus Capella.<sup>65</sup> His knowledge of Greek appears almost in every page.

THE *Divisione Naturæ* certainly indicates great curiosity and research of mind, though it rather

<sup>60</sup> De *Divisione Naturæ*, p. 18, 19.

<sup>61</sup> Ibid. p. 111.

<sup>62</sup> Ibid. p. 144—149.

<sup>63</sup> Ibid. p. 146, 147, 149.

<sup>64</sup> Ibid. p. 145—149.

<sup>65</sup> Ibid. p. 147, 148. This ancient author, whose era is not ascertained, (though he must have preceded Gregory of Tours, who mentions him), left nine books, two de *Nuptiis Philologię*, the other seven on the seven liberal arts. His work was twice printed with innumerable mistakes. Grotius, in his fourteenth year, astonished the world, by correcting justly almost all the errors. The recollection of this induced Vossius to say, "*Quo Batavo — nihil nunc undique eruditius, vel sol videt, vel solum sustinet.*" Hist. Lat. 713. How highly Capella was once esteemed, may be inferred from the panegyric of Gregory of Tours, lib. x. c. 31. p. 243. Barthius, one of those great scholars whose race is now extinct, says of him, "*Jam ante ipsos mille annos tanta Capellę hujus auctoritas, ut qui eum teneret, videretur omnium artium arcana nosse.*" *Adversaria*, c. 23. p. 409. Barthius describes his work thus: "*Tota fere ibi Cyclopędia novem chartis absoluta est, cum innumeris interioris sapientię mysteriis versu atque prosa oratione indicatis et propositis,*" ib. p. 960. For what is known of Capella, see Fab. Bib. Lat. iii. p. 213—224.

**B O O K** exercises ingenuity than conveys information. In  
 IX. a future age, when such disquisitions were offensive to that anti-christian despotism which was spreading its clouds over the European hemisphere, a pope, Honorius III. issued a bull to declare, that it "abounded with the worms of heretical depravity." He complains, that it was received into monasteries, and that "scholastic men, more fond of novelty than was expedient, occupied themselves studiously in reading it." He therefore commands, that they "solicitously seek for it every where; and, if they safely could, that they send it to him to be burnt, or to burn it themselves." He excommunicates all such as should keep a copy fifteen days after notice of this order.<sup>66</sup> As all inquiries of the human mind must be accompanied by many errors, it is a lamentable abuse of power to pursue the speculative to death or infamy for efforts of thinking, which, if wrong, the next critic or literary opponent is best fitted to detect and overthrow. No error, if left to itself, will be a perennial plant. No power can prevent, though it may retard, the growth of truth.

ERIGENA was in great favour with Charles. The king, one day as they were feasting opposite to each other, took occasion to give him a gentle rebuke for some irregularity, by asking him, "What separates a Scot from a sot?" The philosopher, with ready wit, retorted, "The table."<sup>67</sup> The king

<sup>66</sup> See this bull at length in Fab. Bib. Med. lib. ix. 402. It is dated 10 Kal. Feb. 1225.

<sup>67</sup> Matt. West. 393. Malmsb. 3 Gale, 360. The Latin words which John so readily converted into a pun that retorted the king's sarcasm on himself, are, "Quid distat inter sotum et Scottum?"

had the good sense and friendship to smile at the turn.

CHAP.  
VL

At another time, when he was at table, the servants brought in a dish containing two large fishes, and a very small one. John was a thin little man, and was sitting near two ecclesiastics of vast size. The king bade him divide the dish with them. John, whose cheerful mind was always alive to pleasantries, conveyed the two large fishes into his own plate, and divided the little one between the ecclesiastics. The king accused him of an unfair partition. "Not so," says John. "Here are two large fishes," pointing to his plate, "with a small one," alluding to himself. "There are also two large ones," looking at the divines, "and a little one," pointing to their plates.<sup>68</sup>

AFTER Charles's death, he was invited to England by Alfred, whose munificence rewarded his talents; he placed him at Malmsbury<sup>69</sup>, and also at Ethelingey.

THE life of John ended unfortunately; he was stabbed by the boys he taught.<sup>70</sup> That he died violently, will not be questioned; but a controversy accompanies the catastrophe.<sup>71</sup>

<sup>68</sup> Malmsb. 3 Gale. 361. That John was an inmate in Charles's palace, we also learn from his contemporary, Pardulus, who says, "*Scotum illum qui est in palatio regis Johanne nomine.*" Testim. prefixed.

<sup>69</sup> Venitque ad regem Elfredum cujus munificentia illectus et magisterio ejus, ut ex scriptis regis intellexi, sublimis Mel-duni resedit. Malmsb. 361.

<sup>70</sup> So Malmsb. 361. The same words are in Matt. West. 334.; and Hoveden, 419.; and Fordun, 670.

<sup>71</sup> The question is, whether Erigena, whom William kills at Malmsbury, is the same of whom Asser says, that he was placed by Alfred over his new monastery at Ethelingey, and

BOOK  
IX.

THE proficiency and examples of Bede and Alcuin, and their pupils and friends, seemed to promise an age of literary cultivation; and the prosperity of Egbert's reign, which immediately followed, was favourable to the realisation of this hope. But the fierce invasions of the Northmen now began. Their desolating bands spread fire and

---

that some malicious monks hired two lads to kill him at midnight, when he came to pray alone at the altar, p. 61. My own opinion is, that they are not two persons; 1st. Asser, in page 47. talks of a John, who, by the traits he gives, was Erigena. He there styles him merely "*Johannem presbyterum et monachum,*" and he has the same phrases of the John killed at Ethelingy, in p. 61. 2d. Ingulf expressly places Erigena at Ethelingy, p. 27. 3d. Asser says, the John of Ethelingy was stabbed by two French lads, "*duos servulos,*" 62.; and it is rather improbable that another John should at the same time be killed in the same place by lads. 4th. The ancient epitaph quoted by Malmsbury says he was *martyred*, which is an expression very suitable to Asser's account of his being stabbed at the altar when praying, and of the assassins intending to drag his body to a prostitute's door. 5th. Asser's account agrees with Malmsbury's, as to his assassins being lads, *whom he taught*; for Asser says, that Alfred placed in that monastery French children to be taught. 6th. The mode of the assassination is the same in both. Malmsbury says, 361., "*Animam exiit tormento gravi et acerbo ut dum iniquitas valida et manus infirma sæpe frustaretur et sæpe impeteret, amaram mortem obiret.*" I understand this to imply many wounds, and not immediate death. Asser says, "*Et crudelibus afficiunt vulneribus,*" p. 63., and that the monks found him not dead, and brought him home so, "*semivivum colligentes cum gemitu et merore domum reportaverunt,*" p. 64. I think it is improbable that two persons of the same name and station should at the same time have experienced the same singular catastrophe. I would rather suppose that Erigena had been abbot of both places, and therefore the memory of the crime was preserved at both. Asser had the property of two monasteries given to him by Alfred, p. 50.

sword over the most cultivated parts of the country. Monasteries and their libraries were burnt. The studios were dispersed or destroyed. The nation was plundered and impoverished; and warfare, avenging or defensive, became the habit of the better conditioned. One man, our Alfred, made the efforts already noticed to revive literature in the island, in the midst of these destructive storms; but even he could not obtain a sufficient interval of peace for its diffusion. The attack of Hastings in the latter part of his life, when he could have done most for letters, again renewed through his kingdom the necessity of great martial exertions; and his earls, thanes, and knights, as well as their dependants, were, for their own preservation, compelled to make warlike education and exercises the great business of life. The occupation of one-third of England by the Northmen colonisers of Northumbria and East Anglia; their hostile movements, and the attempts of similar adventurers, kept the country in the same state of martial efficiency and employment, which precluded that enjoyment of peaceful leisure in which letters flourish, and they accordingly declined. The monastic friends of Edgar endeavoured to revive them; but scarcely had Edgar acquired and transmitted a full and prosperous sovereignty, in which the Anglo-Danes and Anglo-Saxons had become melted into one nation; and Dunstan, and his friends Ethelwald and Oswald, were exerting themselves to revive literature, and to multiply its best asylums, the monastic establishments, when, under his second son, the calamities of desolating invasions of Danes and Norwegians again overspread

**BOOK IX.** the country, and ended in the establishment of a Danish dynasty on the throne of Alfred. This event spread a race of Danish lords over the English soil, and the mutual jealousy and bickerings between them and the old Saxon proprietary body kept all the country in an armed state, which made warlike accomplishment and exercises still the first necessity and occupation of all. The reign of Edward the Confessor began a new era of peace and harmony, and literature would have again raised her head among the Anglo-Saxons; but, in the next succession, their dynasty was destroyed. Thus, though important political benefits resulted from the invading fanaticism of the North, yet their continued attacks, and the consequences that attended them, intercepted and diverted, for above a century and an half, the intellectual cultivation of the Anglo-Saxon nation.

HENCE the historian has no progressive development to display in the farther contemplation of the Anglo-Saxon mind. The sufferings of the nation carried the thinking students of the day strongly towards religious literature: and little else than sermons and homilies<sup>72</sup>, penitentiaries and confessions<sup>73</sup>, lives of saints<sup>74</sup>, and translations and expositions of the Scriptures<sup>75</sup>, with some authen-

<sup>72</sup> The Anglo-Saxon MSS. of these are enumerated by Wanley in his Catalogue, pp. 1—48. 52—63. 69. 72. 81. 86—88. 90. 92. 97. 111. 116. 122. 131—144. 154—176. 186—211, &c. &c. &c. Their number exceeds by far all the other topics.

<sup>73</sup> As p. 50. 112. 145. and the Rule of Benedict, 91. 122.

<sup>74</sup> Wanley's MSS. p. 79. Martyrologies, &c. 106. 185.

<sup>75</sup> As MSS. of the Gospels, p. 64. 76. 211.; the Heptateuch, 67.; Psalter, 76. 152.; Paraphrases of the Lord's Prayer, Creed, Gloria Patri, p. 48. 51. 81. 147, 148.; Prayers, 64. 147. 202.;

tic but plain and meagre chronicles<sup>76</sup>, formularies of superstitions<sup>77</sup>, and medicinal tracts<sup>78</sup>, were produced in the century preceding the Norman conquest. The only individuals who are entitled to be selected from the general inferiority and uniformity are the two Elfrics; Elfric Bata, and his scholar Elfric, the abbot and bishop, of whom the latter only deserves notice here; for whose works, chiefly grammars, translations from the Scriptures, homilies, and lives of saints, we refer the reader to Wanley's Catalogue of the Anglo-Saxon MSS. But his exhortations to his fellow clergymen to study and to diligence in their duties, ought to be remembered to his honour. To the archbishop Wulstan he writes :

“ It becomes us bishops that we should unclothe that book-learning which our canons teach, and also the book of Christ to you, priests ! in English speech, because all of you do not understand Latin.”<sup>79</sup>

To bishop Wulfsin he wrote : —

“ You ought often to address your clergy, and reprove their negligence, because by their perversity the statutes of the canons and the religious knowledge of the holy church is almost destroyed.”<sup>80</sup>

His translations from the Heptateuch into An-

Jubilate, 76. 168. 182, 183. ; Hymns, 98, 99. 243. ; Judith. 98. ; and the Pseudo-Gospel of Nicodemus, 96.

<sup>76</sup> As the MS. Chronicles mentioned, p. 64. 84. 95. 130., &c.

<sup>77</sup> Their expositions of dreams, prognostications, charms, exorcisms, and predictions on the moon, thunder, birth, health, &c. abound. See p. 40. 44. 88, 89, 90. 98. 110. 114. 194, &c.

<sup>78</sup> As the MS. in p. 72—75. and 176—180. See also Apuleius de Herbis, p. 92. This latter is very valuable from the English or Saxon names of the plants which are given to the Latin ones of the original.

<sup>79</sup> Elfric MSS. Wanley, p. 22.

<sup>80</sup> Ibid. p. 58.

BOOK  
IX

glo-Saxon he addressed to the ealdorman Ethelwerd.<sup>81</sup> His letter, with other religious treatises, to Wulfget, and another to Sigwerd, show that the Anglo-Saxon language had acquired the name of ENGLISH in his time : —

“ I, Elfric, abbot, by this *English* writing, friendlily greet Wulfget, at Ylmandune, in this, that we now here speak of those English writings which I lend thee. The meaning of those writings pleased thee well, and I said that I would yet send thee more.”<sup>82</sup> —

“ Ælfric, abbot, greets friendlily Sigwerd at East Heolon. I say to thee truly that he is very wise who speaketh in works : and I turned these into *English*, and advise you, if you will, to read them yourself.”<sup>83</sup>

“ I, Elfric, would turn this little book (his grammar) to the *English* phrase from that *ƿæp-cƿæpƿe* (art of letters) which is called grammatica, because *ƿæp-cƿæpƿe* is the key that unlocks the meaning of books.”<sup>84</sup>

His anxiety for the good and correct writing of his books is thus expressed : —

“ Look ! you who write this book : write it by this example ; and for God’s love make it that it be less to the writer’s credit for beauty than for reproach to me.”<sup>85</sup>

“ I pray now if any one will write this book, that he make it well from this example, because I would not yet bring into it any error through false writers. It will be then his ault, not mine. The un-writer doth much evil if he will not rectify his mistake.”<sup>86</sup>

<sup>81</sup> This was printed by Thwaite.

<sup>82</sup> Elfric MSS. Wanley, p. 69.

<sup>83</sup> Ibid.

<sup>84</sup> Ibid. p. 84.

<sup>85</sup> Ibid. p. 69.

<sup>86</sup> Elfric MSS. Wanley, p. 85. He begins his letter prefixed to his translation of Genesis, thus. “ Elfric monk humbly greets Æthelwærd ealdorman. You bade me, dear, that I should turn from Latin into English the book Genisia. I thought it would be a heavy thing to grant this, and you said that I need not translate more of the book than to Isaac, the son of Abraham, because some ðther man had translated this book from Isaac to the end,” &c. Of his translations from the

AMONG the Anglo-Saxon MSS. that remain may be remarked the History or rather Romance of Apollonius, king of Tyre, which yet exists in our ancient language.<sup>87</sup>

CHAP.  
VI.  
Anglo-Saxon Romance of Apollonius.

first seven books of the Old Testament, he says, "Moses wrote five books by wonderful appointment. We have turned them truly into English. The book that Joshua made I turned also into English some time since, for Ethelwerd ealdorman. The book of Judges men may read in the English writing, into which I translated it." He adds of Job, "I turned formerly some sayings from this into English." Elfric de Vet. Testam. MS., and cited by Thwaites.

<sup>87</sup> It is among the MSS. at Cambridge. It is mentioned by Wanley, p. 147., and is there said to have been first written in Greek, and then turned into Latin during the time of the emperors. A Greek MS. of it is said to be at Vienna, with a version in modern Greek.

## CHAP. VII.

*The Sciences of the ANGLO-SAXONS.*BOOK  
IX.

THE most enlightened nations of antiquity had not made much progress in any of the sciences but the mathematical. During the Anglo-Saxon period, the general mind of Europe turned from their cultivation, to other pursuits more necessary and congenial to their new political situation. Happily for mankind, they were attended to during this period more efficiently in the Mahomedan kingdoms. The Arabian mind being completely settled in fertile countries and mild climates, enjoyed all the leisure that was wanted for the cultivation of natural knowledge; its acuteness and activity took this direction, and began preparing that intellectual feast which we are now lavishly enjoying, and perpetually enlarging.

THE history of the sciences among the Anglo-Saxons can contain little more information than that some individuals successively arose, as Aldhelm, Bede, Alcuin, Joannes Scotus, and a few more, who endeavoured to learn what former ages had known, and who freely disseminated what they had acquired. Besides the rules of Latin poetry and rhetoric, they studied arithmetic and astronomy as laborious sciences.

Arith-  
metic.

IN their arithmetic, before the introduction of the Arabian figures, they followed the path of the ancients, and chiefly studied the metaphysical distinctions of numbers. They divided the even numbers into the useless arrangement of equally equal, equally unequal, and unequally equal; and the

odd numbers into the simple, the composite, and the mean. They considered them again, as even or odd, superfluous, defective, or perfect, and under a variety of other distinctions, still more unnecessary for any practical application, which may be seen in the little tracts of Cassiodorus and Bede. Puzzled and perplexed with all this mazy jargon, Aldhelm might well say, that the labour of all his other acquisitions was small in the comparison with that which he endured in studying arithmetic. But that they attained great practical skill in calculation, the elaborate works of Bede sufficiently testify.

C H A P.  
VII

As all human ideas occur to the mind in some natural order of succession, and always connected with some previous remembrances and associations, the Anglo-Saxons could not become attached to the investigations of natural science, before preceding agencies had led them to attend to it. But all the impulses which were acting on their minds, were operating in very different directions; and no general current in the world around them led them to anticipate the Arabs in the rich and unexplored country of experimental knowledge.

YET our venerable Bede made some attempts to enter this new region; and his treatise on the nature of things<sup>1</sup> shows that he endeavoured to introduce the study of natural philosophy among the Anglo-Saxons.

Bede's  
natural  
philoso-  
phy.

THIS work has two great merits. It assembles into one focus the wisest opinions of the ancients on the subjects he discusses, and it continually re-

<sup>1</sup> This is printed in the second volume of his works, p. 1., with the glosses of Bridferth of Ramsey, Joannes Noviomagus, and another.

**BOOK** IX. **IX.** fers the phenomena of nature to natural causes. The imperfect state of knowledge prevented him from discerning the true natural causes of many things, but the principle of referring the events and appearances of nature to its own laws and agencies, displays a mind of a sound philosophical tendency, and was calculated to lead his countrymen to a just mode of thinking on these subjects. Although to teach that thunder and lightning were the collisions of the clouds, and that earthquakes were the effect of winds rushing through the spongy caverns of the earth were erroneous deductions, yet they were light itself compared with the superstitions which other nations have attached to these phenomena. Such theories, directed the mind into the right path of reasoning, though the correct series of the connected events and the operating laws had not then become known. The work of Bede is evidence that the establishment of the Teutonic nations in the Roman empire did not barbarise knowledge. He collected and taught more natural truths with fewer errors than any Roman book on the same subjects had accomplished. Thus his work displays an advance, not a retrogradation of human knowledge; and from its judicious selection and concentration of the best natural philosophy of the Roman empire, it does high credit to the Anglo-Saxon good sense. The following selections will convey a general idea of the substance of its contents.

Expressing the ancient opinion, that the heavens turned daily round, while the planets opposed them by a contrary course<sup>2</sup>: He taught that the stars borrowed their light from

---

<sup>2</sup> De Rer. Nat. p. 6.

the sun; that the sun was eclipsed by the intervention of the moon, and the moon by that of the earth; that comets were stars with hairy flames, and that the wind was moved and agitated air.<sup>3</sup> He said that the rainbow is formed in clouds of four colours, from the sun being opposite, whose rays being darted into the cloud is repelled back to the sun. The rain is the cloud compressed by the air into heavier drops than it can support, and that these frozen make the hail. Pestilence is produced from the air, either by excess of dryness, or of heat, or of wet.<sup>4</sup> The tides of the ocean follow the moon, as if they were drawn backwards by its aspiration, and poured back on its impulse being withdrawn. The earth is surrounded by the waters; it is a globe. Hence we see the northern stars but not the southern, because the globous figure of the earth intercepts them.<sup>5</sup> The volcano of Etna was the effect of fire and wind acting in the hollow sulphureous and bituminous earth of Sicily, and the barking dogs of Scylla were but the roaring of the waves in the whirlpools, which seamen hear.<sup>6</sup> He had remarked the sparkling of the sea on a night upon the oars, and thought it was followed by a tempest. So the frequent leaping of porpoises from the water had caught his notice, and he connected it with the rise of wind, and the clearing of the sky.<sup>7</sup> He remarks, in another work, that sailors poured oil on the sea to make it more transparent.<sup>8</sup> He describes fully his ideas on the influence of the moon on the tides, and intimates that it

---

<sup>3</sup> De Rer. Nat. p. 28. 30, 31.

<sup>4</sup> Ibid. p. 38.

<sup>5</sup> Ibid. p. 39. 41. 43.

<sup>6</sup> Ibid. p. 49.

<sup>7</sup> Ibid. p. 37. He adds his presages on the weather. 'If the sun arise spotted or shrouded with a cloud, it will be a rainy day; if red, a clear one; if pale, tempestuous; if it seem concave, so that, shining in the centre, it emits rays to the south and north, there will be wet and windy weather; if it fall pale into black clouds, the north wind is advancing; if the sky be red in the evening, the next day will be fine; if red in the morning, the weather will be stormy; lightning from the north, and thunder in the east, imply storm; and breezes from the south, announce heat; if the moon in her last quarter look like gold, there will be wind; if on the top of her crescent black spots appear, it will be a rainy month; if in the middle, her full moon will be serene.' De Nat. p. 37.

<sup>8</sup> De Temporum Ratione, p. 56.

**B O O K**  
**IX.**

also affects the air.<sup>9</sup> He speaks again of the roundness of the earth like a ball, and ascribes the inequality of days and nights to this globular rotundity.<sup>10</sup> He thinks the Antipodes a fable; but from no superstition, but because the ancients had taught that the torrid zone was uninhabitable and impassable. Yet he seems to admit, that between this and the parts about the south pole, which he thought was a mass of congelation, there was some habitable land.<sup>11</sup> It was the probability of human existence in such circumstances, not such a local part of the earth, which Bede discredited.<sup>12</sup>

For the credit both of Bede and the Anglo-Saxons, I should have been glad to have been convinced that the four books de Elementis Philosophiæ, printed as his in his works, were actually his composition; for they display a spirit of investigation, a soundness of philosophical mind, and a quantity of just opinions on natural philosophy, that would do credit to any age before that of friar Bacon. But its merit compels us to suspect the possibility of its belonging to the eighth century.<sup>13</sup>

<sup>9</sup> De Temporum Ratione, p. 110. 115.

<sup>10</sup> Ibid. p. 125.

<sup>11</sup> Ibid. p. 132. St. Austin had also denied the Antipodes, or persons with their feet below us, and their heads in the sky, as an incredible thing. - He thought that this part of the globe was either covered with sea, or if dry land, was not inhabited. De Civ. Dei. L. 16. c. 9.

<sup>12</sup> There are some tracts printed as Bede's, which would seem not to be his. As the Mundi Constitutio, in which he is himself quoted 'Secundam Bedam de temporibus,' vi. p. 375. And in the Argumenta Lunæ, the calculation is made for the year 936, or two hundred years after he lived, p. 197. The Astrolabium, p. 468, contains Arabic names, and the Prognostica foretells battles and pestilence at Corduba, p. 463.

<sup>13</sup> The author speaks of England, p. 333., as if he belonged to it; but he also mentions the Antipodes as if he believed their existence, p. 336. He also says that a comet is not a star, p. 333: both these opinions are different from Bede's. I have since observed that Fabricius ascribes it to Guilielmus

THEIR astronomy was such as they could comprehend in the Greek and Latin treatises which fell into their hands on this subject. Bede was indefatigable in studying it, and his treatises were translated into the Anglo-Saxon, of which some MSS. exist still in the Cotton Library. He appropriated all the practical results and reasonings of the Roman world, but did not cultivate the mathematical investigations of the Alexandrian Greeks. All the studious men applied to it more or less, though many used it for astrological superstitions. It was indeed then studied by all men of science in two divisions, and that which we call astrology, the legacy of the Chaldeans, was for a long time the most popular. It was perhaps on this account, rather than from a love of the nobler directions of the science, that our ancient chroniclers are usually minute in noticing the eclipses which occurred, and the comets and meteors which occasionally appeared. <sup>14</sup>

THEIR geographical knowledge must have been much improved by Adamnan's account of his visit to the Holy Land, which Bede abridged; and by the sketch given of general geography in Orosius, which Alfred made the property of all his countrymen, by his translation and masterly additions. The eight hides of land given by his namesake for a MS. of cosmographical treatises <sup>15</sup>, of wonderful

Their geography.

---

de Conchis, Bib. Med. p. 502., a Norman who lived in the reign of Henry II.

<sup>14</sup> Even Bede says, the comet portends 'change of kingdoms, or pestilence, or wars, or tempest, or drought.' De Nat. Rer. p. 30.

<sup>15</sup> Bede, 299.

**B O O K** workmanship, may have been conceded rather to **IX.** the beauty of the MS. than to its contents. But, notwithstanding these helps, the most incorrect and absurd notions seem to have prevailed among our ancestors concerning the other parts of the globe, if we may judge from the MS. treatises on this subject, which they took the trouble to adorn with drawings, and sometimes to translate. Two of these are in the Cotton Library, and a short notice of their contents may not be uninteresting, as a specimen of their geographical and physical knowledge.

The MS. Tib. B. 5. contains a topographical description of some eastern regions, in Latin and Saxon. From this we learn there is a place in the way to the Red Sea, which contains red hens, and that if any man touches them, his hand and all his body are burnt immediately : also, that pepper is guarded by serpents, which are driven away by fire, and this makes the pepper black. We read of people with dogs' heads, boars' tusks, and horses' manes, and breathing flames. Also of ants as big as dogs, with feet like grasshoppers, red and black. These creatures dig gold for fifteen days. Men go with female camels, and their young ones, to fetch it, which the ants permit, on having the liberty to eat the young camels.<sup>16</sup>

The same learned work informed our ancestors that there was a white human race fifteen feet high, with two faces on one head, long nose, and black hair, who in the time of parturition, went to India to lie in. Other men had thighs twelve feet long, and breasts seven feet high. They were cannibals. There was another sort of mankind with no heads, who had eyes and mouths in their breasts. They were eight feet tall and eight feet broad. Other men had eyes which shone like a lamp in a dark night. In the ocean there was a soft-voiced

---

<sup>16</sup> This was probably a popular notion ; for it is said, among their prognostics, that if the sun shine on the fourth day, the camels will bring much gold from the ants, who keep the gold hoards. MSS. CCC. Cant. Wanl. 110.

race, who were human to the naval, but all below were the limbs of an ass. These fables even came so near as Gaul; for it tell us that in Liconia, in Gaul, there were men of three colours, with heads like lions, and mouths like the sails of a windmill. They were twenty feet tall. They run away, and sweat blood, but were thought to be men. Let us however, in justice to our ancestors, recollect that most of these fables are gravely recorded by Pliny. The Anglo-Saxons were, therefore, not more credulous or uninformed than the Roman population.

The descriptions of foreign ladies were not very gallant. It is stated that near Babylon there were women with beards to their breasts. They were clothed in horses' hides, and were great hunters, but they used tigers and leopards instead of dogs. Other women had boars' tusches, hair to their heels, and a cow's tail. They were thirteen feet high. They had a beautiful body, as white as marble, but they had camels' feet. Black men living on burning mountains; trees bearing precious stones; and a golden vineyard which had berries one hundred and fifty feet long, which produced jewels; gryphons, phoenixes, and beasts with asses' ears, sheeps' wool, and birds' feet, are among the other wonders which instructed our ancestors. The accounts in the MS. Vitellius, A. 15. rival the phenomena just recited, with others as credible, and are also illustrated with drawings.

We cannot now get at the national opinions of the Anglo-Saxons on physical subjects in any other way than by observing what things they thought worthy to be committed to writing. They who could write were among the most informed part of the Saxon society, and as their parchment materials were scanty, it seems reasonable to suppose that what they employed themselves in writing stood high in their estimation. We will add a few things which are in Anglo-Saxon in a MS. in the Cotton Library.

"Istorius said that this world's length is twelve thousand miles, and its breadth six thousand three hundred, besides the islands. There are thirty-four kinds of snakes on the earth;

**B O O K** thirty-six kinds of fish, and fifty-two kinds of flying fowls. The name of the city to which the sun goes up is called Jaiaca ; the city where it sets is Jainta. Asguges, the magician, said that the sun was of burning stone. The sun is red in the first part of the morning, because he comes out of the sea ; he is red in the evening, because he looks over hell. The sun is bigger than the earth, and hence he is hot in every country. The sun shines at night in three places ; first in Leviathan the whale's inside. He shines next in hell, and afterwards on the islands named Glith, and there the souls of holy men remain till doomsday. Neither the sun nor the moon shines on the Red Sea, nor does the wind blow upon it." Some excellent moral and prudential maxims follow in the MS. <sup>17</sup>

Their  
views on  
philoso-  
phy.

THE Anglo-Saxon scholars, though defective in actual knowledge, had just conceptions of the objects of philosophy. Thus Alcuin defines it to be the research into natural things, and the knowledge of divine and human affairs. He distinguishes it into knowledge and opinion. He describes it to be knowledge, when a thing is perceived with certainty, as that an eclipse of the sun is caused by the intervention of the moon ; but that it is only opinion when it is uncertain, as the magnitude of heaven or the depth of the earth. <sup>18</sup>

HE divides philosophy into three branches ; physics, ethics, and logic. But in his further considerations he exhibits not so much the deficiencies of the Anglo-Saxon mind, as the imperfect state of the knowledge which former times had handed down to it ; for all the subjects which he comprises in physics are : arithmetic, geometry, music, and astronomy. That extensive field of science to which we now almost exclusively apply the name of physics, natural philosophy, had not been dis-

<sup>17</sup> MS. Cott. Lib. Julius, A. 2.

<sup>18</sup> Alc. Dialectica, p. 1356.

covered or attended to by the Greeks and Romans ; C H A P.  
VIL  
and still less chemistry, mineralogy, and the analogous sciences. The Anglo-Saxon scholars formed themselves chiefly on the Roman writers, and in general did not go beyond them. Alcuin gives us another train of definitions in physics. —

“ Physic is nature ; physica is natural : it discusses the nature and contemplation of all things. From physica proceed arithmetic, astronomy, astrology, mechanics, medicine, geometry, and music.

Arithmetic is the science of numbers.

Astronomy is the law of the stars, by which they rise and set.

Astrology is the reason, and nature, and power of the stars, and the conversion of the heavens.

Mechanics is the first skilfulness of the art of working in metals, wood, and stones.

Medicine is the knowledge of remedies discovered for the temperament and health of the body.

Geometry is the science of measuring spaces, and the magnitudes of bodies.

Music is the division of sounds, the varieties of the voice, and the modulation of singing.”<sup>19</sup>

It is amusing to observe, in the absence of solid knowledge, on what elaborate trifling the Anglo-Saxons sometimes employed themselves. The following is a dialogue of Alcuin, with prince Pepin, the son of Charlemagne. It is the scholar who questions.

“ What is a letter ? — The keeper of history.

What is a word ? — The betrayer of the mind.

What produces words ? — The tongue.

What is the tongue ? — The scourge of the air.

What is air ? — The preserver of life.

What is life ? — The gladness of the blessed ; the sorrow of the wretched ; the expectation of death.

What is death ? — The inevitable event ; the uncertain pil-

---

<sup>19</sup> Alb. Op. p. 1353.

**BOOK IX.** grimage ; the tears of the living ; the confirmation of our testament ; the thief of man.

What is man ? — The slave of death ; a transient traveller ; a local guest.

What is man like ? — An apple.

How is man placed ? — As a lamp in the wind.

Where is he placed ? — Between six walls.

What ? — Above, below, before, behind, on the right, and on the left.

How many companions has he ? — Four.

Whom ? — Heat, cold, dryness, wet.

In how many ways is he changeable ? — Six.

Which are they ? — Hunger, fulness ; rest, labour ; watchings and sleep.

What is sleep ? — The image of death.

What is man's liberty ? — Innocence.

What is the head ? — The crown of the body.

What is the body ? — The home of the mind.

What are the hairs ? — The garments of the head.

What is the beard ? — The discrimination of sex ; the honour of age.

What is the brain ? — The preserver of the memory.

What are the eyes ? — The leaders of the body ; vessels of light ; the index of the mind.

What are the ears ? — The collators of sounds.

What is the forehead ? — The image of the mind.

What is the mouth ? — The nourisher of the body.

What are the teeth ? — The millstones of our food.

What are the lips ? — The doors of the mouth.

What is the throat ? — The devourer of the food.

What are the hands ? — The workmen of the body.

What is the heart ? — The receptacle of life.

What is the liver ? — The keeper of our heat.

What is the spleen ? — The source of laughter and mirth.

What are the bones ? — The strength of the body.

What are the thighs ? — The capitals of our pillars.

What are the legs ? — The pillars of the body.

What are the feet ? — Our moveable foundation.

What is blood ? — The moisture of the veins ; the aliment of life.

What are the veins ? — The fountains of flesh.

What is heaven ? — A rotatory sphere.

What is light ? — The face of all things.

What is day? — The incitement of labour.

What is the sun? — The splendour of the world; the beauty of heaven; the grace of nature; the honour of day; the distributor of the hours.

What is the moon? — The eye of night; the giver of dew; the prophetess of the weather.

What are the stars? — The paintings of the summit of nature; the seaman's pilots; the ornaments of night.

What is rain? — The earth's conception; the mother of corn.

What is a cloud? — The night of day; the labour of the eyes.

What is wind? — The perturbation of air; the moving principle of water; the dryer of earth.

What is the earth? — The mother of the growing; the nurse of the living; the storehouse of life; the devourer of all things.

What is the sea? — The path of audacity; the boundary of the earth; the divider of regions; the receptacle of the rivers; the fountain of showers; the refuge in danger; the favourer of pleasures.

What are rivers? — Motion never-ceasing; the refection of the sun; the irrigators of the earth.

What is water? — The ally of life; the washer of filth.

What is fire? — Excess of heat; the nourisher of the new-born; the maturer of fruits.

What is cold? — The ague of the limbs.

What is frost? — The persecutor of herbs; the destroyer of leaves; the fetter of the earth; the source of the waters.

What is snow? — Dry water.

What is winter? — The banishment of summer.

What is spring? — The painter of the earth.

What is summer? — The re-clothing of earth; the ripener of corn.

What is autumn? — The granary of the year.

What is the year? — The chariot of the world.

What does it carry? — Night and day; cold and heat.

Who are its drivers? — The sun and moon.

How many are its palaces? — Twelve.

What is a ship? — A wandering house; a perpetual inn; a traveller without footsteps; the neighbour of the sands.

What is the sand? — The wall of the earth.

What makes bitter things sweet? — Hunger.

What makes men never weary? — Gain.

**BOOK**  
**IX.**

What gives sleep to the watching? — Hope.  
What is a wonder? — I saw a man standing; a dead man walking who never existed.

How could this be? — An image in water.

An unknown person, without tongue or voice, spoke to me, who never existed before, nor has existed since, nor ever will be again: and whom I neither heard nor knew? — It was your dream.

I saw the dead produce the living, and by the breath of the living the dead were consumed? — From the friction of trees fire was produced, which consumed.

I saw fire pause in the water unextinguished? — From flint.

Who is that whom you cannot see unless you shut your eyes? — He who sneezes will show him to you.

I saw a man with eight in his hand, he took away seven, and six remained? — School-boys know this.

Who is he that will rise higher if you take away his head? — Look at your bed and you will find him there.

I saw a flying woman with an iron beak, a wooden body, and a feathered tail, carrying death? — She is a companion of soldiers.

What is that which is, and is not? — Nothing.

How can a thing be, yet not exist? — In name and not in fact.

What is a silent messenger? — That which I hold in my hand.

What is that? — My letter.”<sup>20</sup>

Their astronomy.

THE astronomical opinions which they had imbibed from their classical masters were probably as good as their books could supply, or their scholars understand. Elfric has transmitted to us, out of Alcuin, their acquired opinions on the motions of the heavens, which may be thus translated:—

“The earth consists of four creatures, or elements; fire, air, water, and earth. The nature of fire is hot and dry; of air, warm and wet; of water, cold and wet; of earth, cold and dry. Heaven is of the nature of fire, and it is always turning the stars. Foreign writers have said that it would fall, on account of its

---

<sup>20</sup> Alb. Op. p. 1385 — 1392.

swiftness, if the seven wandering stars (*dweligidan steorran*) did not resist its course. The stars of heaven are always turning round the earth from east to west, and strive against the seven wandering stars. These are called erring or wandering stars, (*dweligende or worigende*;) not because of any error, but because each of them goeth on in its own course, sometimes above, sometimes below, and are not fast in the firmament of heaven, as the other stars are. The farthest the heathen calls Saturnus; he fulfilleth his course in thirty years. The one beneath Saturn they call Jove, and he fulfilleth his course in twelve years. The third, that goeth beneath Jove, they call Mars; and he fulfilleth his course in two years. The fourth is the Sun; she fulfilleth her course in twelve months; that is, three hundred and sixty-five days. The fifth is called Venus; he fulfilleth his course in three hundred and sixty-eight days. The sixth is Mercury, great and bright; he fulfilleth his course in three hundred and twenty-nine days. The seventh is the Moon, the lowest of all the stars; he fulfilleth his course in twenty-seven days and eight hours. These seven stars move to the east, in opposition to the heavens, and are stronger than they are." <sup>21</sup>

C H A P.  
 VII.

IT would be absurd to talk about their chemistry, as they had none; but their methods of preparing gold for their gold writing may be mentioned, as they were in fact so many chemical experiments.

Their chemistry.

One method. "File gold very finely, put it in a mortar, and add the sharpest vinegar; rub it till it becomes black, and then pour it out. Put to it some salt or nitre, and so it will dissolve. So you may write with it, and thus all the metals may be dissolved."

THE gold letters of the Anglo-Saxon MSS. are on a white embossment, which is probably a calcareous preparation. Modern gilding is made on an oil size of yellow ochre, or on a water size of gypsum, or white oxide of lead, or on similar substances. For gilding on paper or parchment, gold

<sup>21</sup> Elfric's Lives of the Saints, MS. Cott. Julius, E. 7.

**BOOK IX.** powder is now used as much as leaf gold. Our ancestors used both occasionally.

Another method of ancient chrysography: "Melt some lead, and frequently immerse it in cold water. Melt gold, and pour that into the same water, and it will become brittle. Then rub the gold filings carefully with quicksilver, and purge it carefully while it is liquid. Before you write, dip the pen in liquid alum, which is best purified by salt and vinegar."

#### ANOTHER method :

"Take thin plates of gold and silver, rub them in a mortar with Greek salt or nitre till it disappears. Pour on water and repeat it. Then add salt, and so wash it. When the gold remains even, add a moderate portion of the flowers of copper and bullock's gall; rub them together, and write and burnish the letters."

OTHER methods are mentioned, by which even marble and glass might be gilt. These descriptions are taken by Muratori from a MS. of the ninth century, which contains many other curious receipts on this subject.<sup>22</sup>

THEY had the art of secret writing, by substituting other letters for the five vowels: thus,

b	f	k	p	x
a	e	i	o	u

THE MS. in the Cotton Library gives several examples of this: <sup>23</sup>

nʃr thkʃ ʃʃʃʃʃ ʃʃllk thknc to ʃæʃʃʃʃ  
 ʃʃnkʃʃ knkʃkʃʃʃʃ ʃʃʃʃʃ ʃʃʃʃʃ ʃʃʃʃʃʃʃʃʃ  
 kn ʃʃʃʃʃʃ dk ʃʃʃʃʃʃ.

Which are,

nʃr thʃʃ ʃʃʃʃʃ ʃʃllc thinc to ʃæʃʃʃʃ  
 omnium inimicorum suorum dominabitur.  
 In nomine Di summi.

Their  
 Medicine.

AMONG the disorders which afflicted the Anglo-

<sup>22</sup> Tom. ii. p. 375—383.

<sup>23</sup> Vitellius, E. 18.

Saxons, we find instances of the scrofula, the gout, or foot adl; fever, or gedrif; paralysis, hemiplegia, ague, dysentery; consumption, or lungs adl; convulsions, madness, blindness, diseased head, the head-ach (heafod-ece), and tumours in various parts.<sup>24</sup> But if we consider the charms which they had against diseases as evidence of the existence of those diseases, then the melancholy catalogue may be increased by the addition of the poccas (pustules), sore eyes and ears, blegen and blacan blegene (blains and boils), elfsidenne (the night-mare), cyrnla (indurated glands), toth-ece, aneurisms (wennas et mannes, heortan), and some others.<sup>25</sup> The king's evil is mentioned in a letter from pope Zachary to Boniface.<sup>26</sup>

C H A P.  
VII.

NATIONS in every age and climate have considered diseases to be the inflictions of evil beings, whose power exceeded that of man. Adapting their practice to their theory, many have met the calamity by methods which were the best adapted, according to their system, to remove them; that is, they attacked spells by spells. They opposed charms and exorcisms to what they believed to be the work of demoniacal incantations. The Anglo-Saxons had the same superstitions: their pagan ancestors had referred diseases to such causes; and, believing the principle, they resorted to the same remedies. Hence we have in their MSS. a great variety of

<sup>24</sup> Malmsh. 285. Bonif. Lett. 16. M. B. 115. Bede, 86. 509. 3 Gale, 470. Eddius, 44. Bede, 372. iv. 23. 31. iii. 12. iv. 6.; 224. 236. 256. Ingulf, 11. Bede, 297. iii. 11.; iv. 3.; 10. v. 2.: 246.; 235. iv. 19.

<sup>25</sup> Cal. A. 15. CCC. Cant. Wanley, 115. Tit. D. 26. Wanley, Cat. 304, 305.

<sup>26</sup> Mag. Bib. Pat. vol. xvi. p. 115.

**B O O K** incantations and exorcisms, against the disorders  
 { **IX.** } which distressed them.

**WHEN** some of their stronger intellects had attained to discredit these superstitions, and especially after Christianity opened to them a new train of associations, this system of diseases originating from evil spirits, and of their being curable by magical phrases, received a fatal blow. It had begun to decline before they were enlightened by any just medical knowledge; and the consequence was, that they had nothing to substitute in the stead of charms, but the fancies and pretended experience of those who arrogated knowledge on the subject. Before men began to take up medicine as a profession, the domestic practice of it would of course fall on females, who, in every stage of society, assume the kind task of nursing sickness; and of these, the aged, as the most experienced, would be preferred.

**BUT** the Anglo-Saxons, so early as the seventh century, had men who made the science of medicine a study, and who practised it as a profession. It is probable that they owed this invaluable improvement to the Christian clergy, who not only introduced books from Rome, but who, in almost every monastery, had one brother who was consulted as the physician of the place. We find physicians frequently mentioned in Bede; and among the letters of Boniface there is one from an Anglo-Saxon, desiring some books *de medicinalibus*. He says they had plenty of such books in England, but that the foreign drawings in them were unknown to his countrymen, and difficult to acquire.<sup>27</sup>

<sup>27</sup> 16 Mag. Bib. Pat. 82.

WE have a splendid instance of the attention they gave to medical knowledge, in the Anglo-Saxon medical treatise described by Wanley, which he states to have been written about the time of Alfred. The first part of it contains eighty-eight remedies against various diseases; the second part adds sixty-seven more, and in the third part is seventy-six. Some lines between the second and third part state it to have been possessed by one BALD, and to have been written at his command by Cild. It is probably a compilation from the Latin medical writers. Wanley presumes that Bald wrote it; but the words imply rather possession than authorship.<sup>28</sup> Their construction is ambiguous.

WE find several Saxon MSS. of medical botany. There is one, a translation of the Herbarium of Apuleius, with some good drawings of herbs and flowers, in the Cotton Library. Their remedies were usually vegetable medicines.<sup>29</sup>

WE have a few hints of their surgical attend-  
tions, but they seem not to have exceeded those  
common operations which every people, a little  
removed from barbarism, cannot fail to know and  
to use.

Their  
Surgery.

WE read of a skull fractured by a fall from a horse, which the surgeon closed and bound up<sup>30</sup>; of a man whose legs and arms were broken by a fall, which the surgeons cured by tight ligatures<sup>31</sup>; and of a diseased head, in the treatment of which the medical attendants were successful.<sup>32</sup> But we

<sup>28</sup> Bald habet hunc librum Cild quem conscribere jussit.

Wanl. Cat. 180.

<sup>29</sup> MS. Cott. Vitel. c. 3.

<sup>30</sup> Bede, v. c. 6.

<sup>31</sup> Eddius, p. 63.

<sup>32</sup> Bede, v. 2.

BOOK  
IX.

find many cases in which their efforts were un-  
availing : thus in an instance of a great swelling  
on the eyelid, which grew daily, and threatened the  
loss of the sight, the surgeons exhausted their skill  
to no purpose, and declared that it must be cut  
off.<sup>33</sup> In a case of a great swelling, with burning  
heat, on the neck, where the necklace came, it  
was laid open to let out the noxious matter ; this  
treatment gave the patient ease for two days, but  
on the third the pains returned, and she died.<sup>34</sup>  
Another person had his knee swelled, and the mus-  
cles of his leg drawn up till it became a contracted  
limb. Medical aid is said to have been exhibited  
in vain, till an angel advised wheat flour to be  
boiled in milk, and the limb to be poulticed with  
it, applied while warm.<sup>35</sup> To recover his frozen  
feet, a person put them into the bowels of a  
horse.<sup>36</sup>

VENESECTION was in use. We read of a man  
bled in the arm. The operation seems to have been  
done unskilfully, for a great pain came on while  
bleeding, and the arm swelled very much.<sup>37</sup> Their  
lancet was called *æder-seax*, or vein-knife. But  
their practice of phlebotomy was governed by the  
most mischievous superstition ; it was not used  
when expediency required, but when their super-  
stitions permitted. They marked the seasons and  
the days on which they believed that bleeding  
would be fatal. Even Theodore, the monk, to  
whom they owed so much of their literature, added  
to their follies on this subject, by imparting the  
notion that it was dangerous to bleed when the

<sup>33</sup> Bede, iv. 32.

<sup>34</sup> Ibid. p. 19.

<sup>35</sup> Ibid. p. 230.

<sup>36</sup> Malmsb. 201.

<sup>37</sup> Bede, v. 2.

light of the moon and the tides were increasing.<sup>38</sup> According to the rules laid down in an Anglo-Saxon MS., the second, third, fifth, sixth, ninth, eleventh, fifteenth, seventeenth, and twentieth days of the month were bad days for bleeding. On the tenth, thirteenth, nineteenth, twenty-first, twenty-third, twenty-fourth, twenty-fifth, twenty-sixth, and twenty-eighth days, it was hurtful to bleed, except during certain hours of the days. The rest of the month was proper for phlebotomy.<sup>39</sup> They had their tales to support their credulity. Thus we read of "sum læce, or a physician, who let his horse blood on one of these days, and it lay soon dead."<sup>40</sup>

C H A P.  
VII.

WE will add, as a specimen of their medical charms, their incantation to cure a fever.

"In nomine dni nri Ihu Xpi tera tera tera testis contera taberna gise ges mande leis bois eis andiēs mandies moeb leb lebes Dns ds adjutor sit illi ill eax filiax artifex am."<sup>41</sup>

Two of their medicines may be added, one for the cure of consumption, the other for the gout.

With lungen adle. — "Take hwite hare hunan (white horehound) and ysypo (hyssop) and rudan (rue) and galluc (sowbread), and brysewyr, and brunwyr (brown wort), and wude merce (parsley), and grundeswylian (groundsel), of each twenty penny-weights, and take one sester<sup>42</sup> full of old ale, and

<sup>38</sup> Bede, v. 3.

<sup>39</sup> MS. Cott. Lib. Tiber. A. 3.

<sup>40</sup> Ibid. 126.

<sup>41</sup> Ibid. 125.

<sup>42</sup> The quantity of a sester appears, from the following curious list of Anglo-Saxon weights and measures, to have been fifteen pints: —

Punb elef gepihth xii penexum læffe thonne punb pæter.  
Punb ealoth gepihth vi penexum mape thoñ punb pæter.  
Punb pinef gepihth xv penexum mope thoñ I punb pæter.  
Punb huniger gepihth xxxiv penexum mope thoñ punb pæter.

**B O O K** see the herbs till the liquor be half boiled away. Drink  
 IX. every day fasting a neap-full cold, and in the evening as much  
 warm."

With fot adle (the gout). — "Take the herb datulus or titu-  
 losa, which we call greata crauleac (tuberosa isis). Take the  
 heads of it, and dry them very much, and take thereof a penny-  
 weight and a half, and the pear-tree and roman bark, and cum-  
 min, and a fourth part of laurel-berries, and of the other herbs  
 half a pennyweight of each, and six pepper-corns, and grind  
 all to dust, and put two egg-shells full of wine. This is true  
 leechcraft. Give it to the man to drink till he be well." <sup>43</sup>

---

Punb butepan gepihth lxxx penegum læffe thoñ punb pætper.  
 Punb beoper gepihth xxii penegum læffe thoñ punb pætper.  
 Punb meloper gepihth cxv penegum sæffe thoñ punb pætper.  
 Punb beana gepihth lv penegum læffe thoñ punb pætper.  
 Anb xv punb pætper zach to Septe.

Saxon MS. ap. Wanley Cat. p. 179.

<sup>43</sup> MS. Cott. Lib. Vitell. c. 3.

# CHAP. VIII.

## *The ANGLO-SAXON Metaphysics.*

**T**HE three men of letters among the Anglo-Saxons who handled any branch of the metaphysical subjects, besides Alfred, were Bede, Alcuin, and Joannes Erigena. CHAP. VIII.  
Their Metaphysics.

IT is in the tract on substances that Bede's metaphysical tendencies appear. Bede on substances

He compares the three inseparable essences of the Trinity to the circularity, light, and heat of the sun. The globular body of the sun never leaves the heavens; but its light, which he compares to the Filial Personality, and its heat, which he applies to the Spiritual Essence, descend to earth, and diffuse themselves every where, animating the mind, and pervading and softening the heart. Yet, although universally present, light seems never to quit the sun, for there we always behold it; and heat is its unceasing companion. As circles have neither beginning nor end, such is the Deity. Nothing is above; nothing is below; nothing is beyond him; no term concludes him; no time confines him.<sup>1</sup>

He pursues the same analogies in other parts of nature. In water he traces the spring; its flowing river, and terminating lake. They differ in form, but are one in substance, and are always inseparable. No river can flow without its spring, and must issue into some collecting locality.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Bede de Subst. vol. ii. p. 304—306.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. p. 307. His view of nature is not displeasing. "Observe how all things are made to suit, and are governed: heat by cold; cold by heat; day by night; and winter by summer. See how the heavens and the earth are respectively adorned: the heavens by the sun, the moon, and stars; the earth by its beautiful flowers, and its herbs, trees, and fruits. From these mankind derive all their food; their lovely jewels; the various pictures so delectably woven in their hangings and valuable cloths; their variegated colours; the sweet melody of strings.

## BOOK

## IX.

Alcuin on  
the soul.

IN his treatise on the soul, Alcuin, in a short but rational essay, discusses its faculties and nature. A few selections may interest.

He distinguishes in it a three-fold nature: the appetitive; the rational, and the irascible. Two of these we have in common with animals; but man alone reasons, counsels, and excels in intelligence. The rational faculty should govern the others: its virtues are, prudence, justice, temperance, and fortitude; and if these be made perfect by benevolence, they bring the soul near to the Divine nature.<sup>3</sup>

"The memory, the will, and the intelligence, are all distinct, yet one. Though each be separate, they are perfectly united. I perceive that I perceive, will, and remember; I will to remember, perceive, and will; and I remember that I have willed, perceived, and recollected."<sup>4</sup>

"We may remark the wonderful swiftness of the soul in forming things which it has perceived by the senses. From these, as from certain messengers, it forms figures in itself, with inexpressible celerity, of whatever it has perceived of sensible things; and it lays up these forms in the treasury of its memory.

"Thus, he who has seen Rome figures Rome in his mind, and its form; and when he shall hear the name of Rome, or remember it, immediately the animus of it will occur to the memory, where its form lies concealed. The soul there recognises it, where it had hidden it.

"It is yet more wonderful, that if unknown things be read or heard of by the ears of the soul, it immediately forms a figure of the unknown thing; as of Jerusalem. When seen it may be very different from the figure of our fancy: but whatever the soul has seen in other cities that are known to it, it imagines may be in Jerusalem. From known species it images the unknown. It does not fancy walls, houses, and streets in a man; nor the limbs of a man in a city, but buildings, as are usual in

---

and organs; the splendor of gold and silver, and the other metals; the pleasant streams of water, so necessary to bring ships, and agitate our mills; the fragrant aroma of myrrh; and, lastly, the interesting countenance peculiar to the human form." Bede de Subst. vol. ii. p. 308.

<sup>3</sup> Albini Opera, p. 770.

<sup>4</sup> Ibid. p. 773.

cities. So in every thing. The mind from the known forms the unknown. C H A P.  
VIII.

“ While I think of Jerusalem, I cannot, at that moment, think of Rome; or when I think of any other single thing, I cannot then think of many; but that thing only is present to my mind which I deliberate upon, till, sooner or later, this departs and another occurs.

“ This lively and heavenly faculty, which is called mens, or animus, is of such great mobility that it does not even rest in sleep. In a moment, if it chooses, it surveys heaven; it flies over the sea, and wanders through regions and cities. It places in its sight, by thinking, all things that it likes, however far removed.<sup>5</sup>

“ The mind, or soul, is the intellectual spirit, always in motion, always living, and capable of willing both good and evil. By the benignity of its Creator it is ennobled with free will. Created to rule the movements of the flesh, it is invisible, incorporeal; without weight or colour; circumscribed, yet entire in every member of its flesh. It is now afflicted with the cares, and grieved with the pains of the body; now it sports with joy; now thinks of known things; and now seeks to explore those which are unknown. It wills some things; it does not will others. Love is natural to it.

“ It is called by various names: the soul, while it vivifies; the spirit, when it contemplates; sensibility, while it feels; the mind, when it knows; the intellect, when it understands; the reason, while it discriminates; the will, when it consents; the memory, when it remembers; but these are not as distinct in substance as in names: they are but one soul. Virtue is its beauty; vice its deformity. It is often so affected by some object of knowledge, that, though its eyes be open, it sees not the things before it, nor hears a sounding voice; nor feels a touching body.

“ As to what the soul is, nothing better occurs to us to say than that it is the spirit of life; but not of that kind of life which is in cattle, which is without a rational mind. The beauty and ornament of the human soul is the study of wisdom. What is more blessed to the soul than to love the Supreme Good, which is God? What is happier to it than to prepare itself to be worthy of everlasting beatitude, knowing itself most truly to be immortal?”<sup>6</sup>

<sup>5</sup> Albinus Opera, p. 773—775.

<sup>6</sup> Ibid. p. 776—778.

## BOOK

## IX.

Erigena on  
the divi-  
sion of na-  
ture.

BUT the most metaphysical treatise that appeared among the Anglo-Saxons was the elaborate work, or dialogue, of Joannes Scotus, or Erigena, the friend of Alfred and Charlemagne, on nature and its distinctions. It emulates the sublimest researches of the Grecians. It is too long to be analysed; but a few extracts from its commencement may be acceptable, to show his style of thought and expression:—

“ Nature may be divided into that which creates, and is not created; that which is created, and creates; that which is created, and does not create; and that which neither creates nor is created.<sup>7</sup>

“ The essences (or what, from Aristotle, in those days they called the substance) of all visible or invisible creatures cannot be comprehended by the intellect; but whatever is perceived in every thing, or by the corporeal sense, is nothing else but an accident, which is known either by its quality or quantity, form, matter, or differences, or by its place or time. Not what it is, but how it is.

“ The first order of being is the Deity: He is the essence of all things.

“ The second begins from the most exalted, intellectual virtue nearest about the Deity, and descends from the sublimest angel to the lowest part of the rational and irrational creation. The three superior orders are, 1st, The Cherubim, Seraphim, and Thrones. The 2d, The Virtues, Powers, and Dominations. The 3d, The Principalities, Archangels, and Angels.

“ The cause of all things is far removed from those which have been created by it. Hence the reasons of created things, that are eternally and unchangeably in it, must be also wholly removed from their subjects.

“ In the angelic intellects there are certain theophanies of these reasons; that is, certain comprehensible, divine apparitions of the intellectual nature. The divine essence is fully comprehensible by no intelligent creature.

“ Angels see not the causes themselves of things which subsist in the Divine essence; but certain divine apparitions, or theophanies, of the eternal causes whose images they are. In

---

<sup>7</sup> Joan. Erig. de Divisione Naturæ, p. 1.

this manner angels always behold God. So the just in this life, while in the extremity of death, and in the future, will see him as the angels do.

C H A P.  
VIII.

“ We do not see him by Himself, because angels do not. This is not possible to any creature. But we shall contemplate the theophanies which he shall make upon us, each according to the height of his sanctity and wisdom.” <sup>s</sup>

---

<sup>s</sup> Joam. Erig. de Divisione Naturæ, p. 1—4.

## CHAP. IX.

*The Arts of the ANGLO-SAXONS.*BOOK  
IX.Their  
Music.

**T**HE art of music has been as universal as poetry; but, like poetry, has every where existed in different degrees of refinement. Among rude nations, it is in a rude and noisy state; among the more civilised, it has attained all the excellence which science, taste, feeling, and delicate organization can give.

WE derive the greatest portion of our most interesting music from harmony of parts; and we attain all the variety of expression and scientific combination which are familiar to us, by the happy use of our musical notation. The ancients were deficient in both these respects: it has not been ascertained that they had harmony of parts, and therefore all their instruments and voices were in unison; and so miserable was their notation, that it has been contended by the learned, with every appearance of truth, that they had no other method of marking time than by the quantity of the syllables of the words placed over the notes. Saint Jerome might therefore well say on music, "Unless they are retained by the memory, sounds perish, because they cannot be written."<sup>1</sup>

THE ancients, so late as the days of Cassiodorus, or the sixth century, used three sorts of

<sup>1</sup> Jerom. ad Dard. de Mus. Instr. — Guido, by his invention of our musical notation, removed this complaint.

musical instruments, which he calls the percussionalia, the tensibilia, and the inflatila. The percussionalia were silver or brazen dishes, or such things as, when struck with some force, yielded a sweet ringing. The tensibilia he describes to have consisted of chords, tied with art, which, on being struck with a plectrum, soothed the ear with a delightful sound, as the various kinds of cytharæ. The inflatila were wind-instruments, as tubæ, calami, organa, panduria, and such like.<sup>2</sup>

THE Anglo-Saxons had the instruments of chords, and wind-instruments.

IN the drawings on their MSS. we see the horn, trumpet, flute, and harp, and a kind of lyre of four strings, struck by a plectrum.

IN one MS. we see a musician striking the four-stringed lyre, while another is accompanying him with two flutes, into which he is blowing at the same time.<sup>3</sup>

IN the MSS. which exhibit David and three musicians playing together, David has a harp of eleven strings, which he holds with his left hand while he plays with his right fingers; another is playing on a violin or guitar of four strings with a bow; another blows a short trumpet, supported in the middle by a pole, while another blows a curved horn.<sup>4</sup> This was probably the representation of an Anglo-Saxon concert.

THE chord-instrument like a violin was perhaps that to which a disciple of Bede alludes, when he expresses how delighted he should be to have "a

<sup>2</sup> Cassiod. Op. ii. p. 507.

<sup>3</sup> MS. Cot. Cleop. C. 8.

<sup>4</sup> MS. Cott. Tib. C. 6.

**BOOK** IX. **IX.** player who could play on the cithara, which we call *rotæ*.”<sup>6</sup>

OF the harp, Bede mentions, that in all festive companies it was handed round, that every one might sing in turn.<sup>6</sup> It must have therefore been in very common use.

DUNSTAN is also described by his biographer to have carried with him to a house his cythara, “which in our language we call hearpan.”<sup>7</sup> He hung it against the wall, and one of the strings happening to sound untouched, it was esteemed a miracle.

THE organ was in use among the Anglo-Saxons. Cassiodorus and Fortunatus mention the word organ as a musical instrument, but it has been thought to have been a collection of tubes blowed into by the human breath. Muratori has contended, that the art of making organs like ours was known in the eighth century only to the Greeks; that the first organ in Europe was the one sent to Pepin from Greece in 756; and that it was in 826 that a Venetian priest, who had discovered the secret, brought it into France.<sup>8</sup>

A PASSAGE which I have observed in Aldhelm’s poem, *De Laude Virginum*, entirely overthrows these theories; for he, who died in 709, and who never went to Greece, describes them in a manner which shows that he was acquainted with

<sup>6</sup> 16 Mag. Bib. p. 88. Snorre calls the musicians in the court of an ancient king of Sweden “Leckara, Harpara, Gi-giara, Fidlara.” Yng. Saga, c. xxv. p. 30.

<sup>6</sup> Bede, lib. iv. c. 24.

<sup>7</sup> MS. Cleop.

<sup>8</sup> Murat. de Art. Ital. ii. p. 357.

great organs made on the same principle as our CHAP.  
IX.  
own : —

*Maxima millenis auscultans organa flabris  
Mulcent auditum ventosis follibus iste  
Quamlibet auratis fulgescant cætera capsis.\**

This is, literally,

“ Listening to the greatest organs with a thousand blasts, the ear is soothed by the windy bellows, while the rest shines in the gilt chests.”

ANOTHER evidence of the antiquity of organs among the Anglo-Saxons has occurred to my observation in the works of Bede, a contemporary and survivor of Aldhelm. The passage is express, and also shows how they were made : —

“ An organum is a kind of tower made with various pipes, from which, by the blowing of bellows, a most copious sound is issued ; and that a becoming modulation may accompany this, it is furnished with certain wooden tongues from the interior part, which the master's fingers skilfully repressing, produce a grand and also a most sweet melody.”<sup>10</sup>

He also describes the drum, cymbals, and harp : —

“ The DRUM is a tense leather, stretched on two cones (metas) joined together by their acute part, which resounds on being struck.”

“ The CYMBALS are very small vessels composed from mixed metals, which, struck together on the concave side, with skilful modulation, give a most acute sound, with delectable coincidence.”<sup>11</sup>

“ A skilful HARPER, stretching many chords on his harp, tempers them with such sharpness and gravity, that the upper suit the lower in melody. Some having the difference of a semi-tone, some of one tone, some of two tones. Some yield

<sup>9</sup> 13 Max. Bib. Pat. 3.

<sup>10</sup> Bede, Op. vol. viii. p. 1062.

<sup>11</sup> Ibid. p. 1061, 1062.

**BOOK IX.** the consonancy diatessaron, others the diapente, others the diapason.

“ Having the harp in his hand, arranged with suitable strings (chordis), he urges some to an acute sound, and others he governs to a graver one. Thus he disposes them by the application of his fingers. He strikes them in what manner he pleases, so that each adapted to the others yield the consonancy diapason, which consists of eight strings (chordis). The diapente consists of five chordis, and the diatessaron of four.” <sup>12</sup>

BEDE also mentions “ the minor intervals of the voices, which sound two tones as one, or a semi-tone ; and that the semi-tone was used in the high-sounding as well as the grand-sounding chords.” <sup>13</sup> He mentions the organ in another place, with the viola <sup>14</sup> and harp <sup>15</sup>, and reasons much on the action of a bow on a tense string ; and he adds these remarks on the effects of music : —

“ Among all the sciences this is more commendable, courtly, pleasing, mirthful and lovely. It makes a man liberal, cheerful, courteous, glad, amiable ; it rouses him to battle ; it exhorts him to bear fatigue ; it comforts him under labour ; it refreshes the disturbed mind ; it takes away head-aches and sorrow, and dispels the depraved humours and the desponding spirit.” <sup>16</sup>

DUNSTAN, great in all the knowledge of his day, as well as in his ambition, is described to have made an organ of brass pipes, elaborated by musical measures, and filled with air from the bellows. <sup>17</sup> The bells he made have been mentioned before. About the same time we have the description of an organ made in the church at Ramsey : —

<sup>12</sup> Bede, Op. vol. viii. p. 1070.

<sup>14</sup> Ibid. p. 417.

<sup>16</sup> Ibid. p. 417, 418.

<sup>13</sup> Ibid.

<sup>15</sup> Ibid. p. 408.

<sup>17</sup> 3 Gale, 366.

“ The earl devoted thirty pounds to make the copper pipes of organs, which, resting with their openings in thick order on the spiral winding in the inside, and being struck on feast days with the strong blast of bellows, emit a sweet melody and a far-resounding peal.”<sup>18</sup>

C H A P.  
IX.

IN 669, Theodore and Adrian, who planted learning among the Anglo-Saxons, also introduced into Kent the ecclesiastical chanting, which Gregory the Great had much improved. From Kent it was carried into the other English churches. In 678, one John came also from Rome, and taught in his monastery the Roman mode of singing, and was directed by the pope to diffuse it amongst the rest of the clergy, and left written directions to perpetuate it. Under his auspices it became a popular study in the Saxon monasteries.<sup>19</sup>

WE have a pleasing proof of the impressive effect of the sacred music of the monks, in the little poem which Canute the Great made upon it. As the monarch, with his queen and courtiers, were approaching Ely, the monks were at their devotions. The king, attracted by the melody, ordered his rowers to approach it, and to move gently while he listened to the sounds which came floating through the air from the church on the high rock before him. He was so delighted by the effect, that he made a poem on the occasion, of which the first stanza only has come down to us.<sup>20</sup>

THERE are many ancient MSS. of the Anglo-Saxon times, which contain musical notes.

THE musical talents of Alfred and Anlaf have been noticed in this history.

<sup>18</sup> 3 Gale, 420.    <sup>19</sup> See Bede, iv. 2. 18.; v. 22.

<sup>20</sup> See before, p. 273.

## B O O K

## IX.

Their  
painting.

THE progress of the Anglo-Saxons in the art of design and painting was not very considerable. The talents of their artists varied. The numerous coloured drawings of plants to the Herbarium of Apuleius have merit for the time; but the animals in the same MS. are indifferent.<sup>21</sup> There are also coloured drawings of the things fabled to be in the East, in two MSS.<sup>22</sup> The drawings to Cædmon show little skill.<sup>23</sup> Many MSS. have the decorations of figures; as the Saxon Calendar, the Gospels, Psalters, and others.<sup>24</sup> The account of the stars, from Cicero's translation of Aratus, contains some very elegant images.<sup>25</sup> A portrait of Dunstan is attempted in one MS.<sup>26</sup> They all exhibit hard outlines.

ROME, the great fountain of literature, art, and science, to all the west of Europe, in these barbaric ages, furnished England with her productions in this art. Augustin brought with him from Rome a picture of Christ; and Benedict, in 678, imported from Rome pictures of the Virgin, and of the twelve Apostles, some of the histories in the Evangelists, and some from the subjects in the Apocalypse. These were placed in different parts of the church. In 685 he obtained new supplies of the graphic art. Bede calls them pictures from the Old and New Testament, "executed with wonderful art and wisdom." He mentions four of these, which were believed to have a typical concordance. The picture of Isaac carrying the wood on which he was to be sacrificed, was placed near

<sup>21</sup> Cott. Lib. MSS. Vitel. C. 3

<sup>22</sup> MS. Tib. B. 5.

<sup>23</sup> Cott. MSS.

<sup>24</sup> Ibid.

<sup>25</sup> MS. Cal. A. 7. Tib. B. 5. Nero, D. 4.

<sup>26</sup> MS. Claud. A. 3.

the representation of Christ carrying his cross. So the Serpent exalted by Moses was approximated to the Crucifixion.<sup>27</sup> C H A P.  
IX.

DUNSTAN excelled in this as in the other arts. He is stated to have diligently cultivated the art of painting, and to have painted for a lady a robe, which she afterwards embroidered.<sup>28</sup> There is a drawing of Christ, with himself kneeling at his feet, of his own performance, in the Bodleian Library.<sup>29</sup>

THE Anglo-Saxons were fond of beautifying their MSS. with drawings with ink of various colours, coloured parchment, and sometimes with gilt letters. The Gospels, Nero, D. 4., exhibit a splendid instance of these ornaments. The Franco-theotisc Gospels, Calig. A. 7., are also highly decorated. Many Saxon MSS. in the Cotton Library exhibit very expensive, and what in those days were thought beautiful illuminations. The art of doing these ornaments has been long in disuse; but some of the recipes for the materials have been preserved.

THEY prepared their parchment by this rule:—

“ Put it under lime, and let it lie for three days; then stretch it, scrape it well on both sides, and dry it, and then stain it with the colours you wish.”<sup>30</sup>

To gild their skins, we have these directions:—

“ Take the red skin and carefully pumice it, and temper it in tepid water, and pour the water on it till it runs off limpid. Stretch it afterwards, and smooth it diligently with clean wood. When it is dry, take the white of eggs, and smear it therewith thoroughly; when it is dry, sponge it with water, press it, dry

<sup>27</sup> Bede Abb. Wer. 295. 297.

<sup>28</sup> MS. Cleop. B. 13.

<sup>29</sup> Hickes, p. 144.

<sup>30</sup> Muratori, t. ii. p. 370.

**B O O K** it again, and polish it; then rub it with a clean skin, and polish  
**IX.** it again, and gild it."<sup>81</sup>

THE receipts for their gold writing have been mentioned in the chapter on their sciences.

Of their sculpture and engraving we know little. Their rings and ornamented horns, and the jewel of Alfred, found in the isle of Athelney<sup>82</sup>, show that they had the art of engraving on metals and other substances with much neatness of mechanical execution, though with little taste or design.

Their  
 architecture.

THAT the Anglo-Saxons had some sort of architecture in use before they invaded Britain cannot be doubted, if we recollect that every other circumstance about them attests that they were by no means in the state of absolute barbarism. They lived in edifices, and worshipped in temples raised by their own skill. The temple which Charlemagne destroyed at Eresberg, in the 8th century, is described in terms which imply, at least, greatness; and if we consult their language, we shall find that they had indigenious expressions concerning their buildings, which is evidence that the things which they designate were in familiar use.<sup>83</sup>

THE verb, which they commonly used when they spoke of building, satisfactorily shows us that their ancient erections were of wood. It is getymbrian, "to make of wood." Where Bede says of any one

<sup>81</sup> Muratori, t. ii. p. 376.

<sup>82</sup> See Hickes's Thesaurus.

<sup>83</sup> Their term for window is rather curious; it is *eh-chýpl*, literally an eye-hole. Dr. Clarke says of the poorer sort of Russian towns, "A window in such places is a mark of distinction, and seldom seen. The houses in general have only small holes, through which, as you drive by, you see a head stuck as in a pillory." This description may explain the Saxon "*eh-chýpl*."

that he built a monastery or a church, Alfred translates it *getimbrade*. So appropriated was the word to building, that even when they became accustomed to stone edifices, they still retained it, though, when considered as to its original meaning, it then expressed an absurdity; for the Saxon Chronicle says of a person, that he promised to *getembrian* a church of stone<sup>34</sup>, which literally would imply that he made of wood a stone church. Alfred uses it in the same manner.

THE first Saxon churches of our island were all built of wood.<sup>35</sup> The first church in Northumbria was built of wood. So the one of Holy Island.<sup>36</sup> The church at Durham was built of split oak, and covered with reeds like those of the Scots.<sup>37</sup> In Greensted church in Essex, the most ancient part, the nave or body of this church, was entirely composed of the trunks of large oaks split, and rough-hewed on both sides. They were set upright and close to each other, being let into a sill at the bottom, and a plate at the top, where they were fastened with wooden pins. "This," says Ducarel, "was the whole of the original church, which yet remains entire, though much corroded and worn by length of time. It is 29 feet 9 inches long, and 5 feet 6 inches high on the sides, which supported the primitive roof."<sup>38</sup>

REMAINS of Roman architecture have been found in various parts of England. In Mr. Carter's *Ancient Architecture of England*, and in the publications of Mr. Lysons, may be seen several fragments of a Roman temple and other buildings

<sup>34</sup> Sax. Chron. p. 28.

<sup>35</sup> Bede, iii. 25.

<sup>36</sup> Bede, iii. 4.

<sup>37</sup> Ibid.

<sup>38</sup> Ducarel's *Anglo-Norman Antiquities*, p. 100.

**B O O K** lately dug up at Bath and elsewhere; which show  
**IX.** that our ancestors, when they settled in England, had very striking specimens of Roman architecture before them, which must have taught them to despise their own rude performances, and to wish to imitate nobler models.

THE circles of stones which are found in Cornwall, Oxfordshire, and Derbyshire, as well as the similar ones in Westphalia, Brunswick, and Alsatia, which Keysler mentions<sup>39</sup>, show rather the absence than the knowledge of architectural science. They are placed by mere strength, without skill; they prove labour and caprice, but no art.

STONEHENGE is certainly a performance which exhibits more workmanship and contrivance. The stones of the first and third circles have tenons which fit to mortises in the stones incumbent. They are also shaped, though into mere simple upright stones, and the circles they describe have considerable regularity. But as it is far more probable that they were raised by the ancient Britons than by Anglo-Saxons, they need not be argued upon here.

IF the Roman buildings extant in Britain had been insufficient to improve the taste, and excite the emulation of the Saxons, yet the arrival of the Roman clergy, which occurred in the 7th century, must have contributed to this effect.

IT is true, that architecture as well as all the arts declined, even at Rome, after the irruption of the barbaric tribes. It is however a just opinion of Muratori<sup>40</sup>, that the arts, whose exercise is necessary to life, could never utterly perish. To build

<sup>39</sup> Antiq. Septent. p. 5—10.

<sup>40</sup> De Art. Ital. t. ii. p. 353.

houses for domestic convenience, and places, how-  
 ever rude, for religious worship, exacted some con-  
 trivance. But there is a great distinction between  
 the edifices of necessity and those of cultivated  
 art. Strong walls, well-covered roofs, and a di-  
 vision of apartments; whatever simple thought;  
 profuse expense, and great labour could produce,  
 appeared in all parts of Europe during the barbar-  
 ian ages: but symmetry and right disposition of  
 parts, the plans of elegant convenience, of beauty  
 and tasteful ornament, were unknown to both Ro-  
 man and Saxon architects, from the 6th century  
 to very recent periods.

BUT if the science and practice of Roman and  
 Grecian architecture declined at Rome, with its  
 political empire, and the erections of barbaric igno-  
 rance and barbaric taste appeared instead; the ef-  
 fect, which we are to expect would result from our  
 ancestors becoming acquainted with the Roman  
 models, was rather a desire for great and striking  
 architecture, than an exact imitation of the beauty  
 they admired. Correct and elegant architecture  
 requires that the mind of the designer and superin-  
 tendant should be cultivated with a peculiar degree  
 of geometrical science and general taste. Masons,  
 capable of executing whatever genius may con-  
 ceive, are not alone sufficient. Of these there must  
 have been no want, in the most barbarous ages of  
 Europe. They who could raise the stupendous  
 monasteries and cathedrals which we read of or  
 have seen, could have equally reared the more ele-  
 gant buildings of ancient art, if an architect had  
 existed who could have given their labour and in-  
 genuity the requisite direction. A Wren, or a

C H A P.  
 IX.

**B O O K** Vitruvius, was wanted, not able workmen. The  
 IX. disciplined mind and cultured taste, not the manual  
 dexterity.

THE arts of life are found to flourish in proportion as their productions are valued and required. When the Anglo-Saxons became converted to Christianity, they wanted monasteries and churches. And this demand for architectural ability would have produced great perfection in the art, if the state of the other arts and sciences had permitted a due cultivation of genius in this; but no single art can attain perfection if every other be neglected, or if general ignorance enfeeble and darken the mind. Patronage, therefore, though it called forth whatever mechanical labour and unlettered mind could fabricate, could not miraculously create taste and regular science. The love of sublimity is more congenial to the rude heroism of infant civilisation, and therefore our ancient architecture often reached to the sublime; but while we admire its vastness, its solidity, and its magnificence, we smile at its irregularities, its discordancies, and its caprice.

THE chief peculiarities of the Anglo-Saxon architecture, of which several specimens, though in fragments, exist, are declared to be a want of uniformity of parts, massy columns, semi-circular arches, and diagonal mouldings.<sup>41</sup> Of these the two first are common to all the barbaric architecture of Europe. But the semicircular arches and diagonal mouldings seem to have been more peculiar additions to the Saxon building.

THAT the round arches were borrowed from

<sup>41</sup> See Carter's Ancient Architecture.

Roman buildings, is the prevailing sentiment. It is at least a fact, that the Saxons must have seen them among the numerous specimens of the imperial architecture which they found in England. C H A P.  
IX.

THE universal diagonal ornament, or zig-zag moulding, which is a very distinguishing trait of the Saxon architecture, is found disposed in two ways; one with its point projecting outwards, and the other with its point lying so as to follow the lines which circumscribe it, either horizontal, perpendicular, or circular.<sup>42</sup>

ON this singular ornament an etymological remark may be hazarded, as it may tend to elucidate its origin. The Saxon word used to denote the adorning of a building is *gefrætwan*, or *frætwan*; and an ornament is *frætew*; but *frætan* signifies to gnaw or to eat; and upon our recollecting that the diagonal ornament of Saxon building is an exact imitation of teeth, we can hardly refrain from supposing that the ornament was an intended imitation of teeth. *Frætew* and *frætwung*, which they used to signify ornament, may be construed *fret-work*, or *teeth-work*. The teeth which the Saxon diagonals represent, are, I believe, marine teeth. If so, perhaps they arose from the stringing of teeth of the large sea animals.

WE will mention a few of the ancient Saxon buildings we meet with, and show how they are described.

In 627, Paulinus built the first Christian church, in Northumbria, of wood; it was afterwards rebuilt on a larger scale, and with stone: he also built a stone church at Lincoln. His church at York was not very skilfully erected; for in less than

---

<sup>42</sup> See Carter's Ancient Architecture, p. 15.

B O O K  
IX.

a century afterwards, Wilfrid found its stony offices half destroyed; its roof was permeable to moisture. It had windows of fine linen cloth, or latticed wood-work; but no glazed casements, and therefore the birds flew in and out, and made nests in it.<sup>43</sup> So Bede says of his church at Lincoln, that though the walls were standing, the roof had fallen down.<sup>44</sup>

In 676, Benedict sought cementarios, or masons, to make a church in the Roman manner, which he loved. But the Roman manner seems not to express the Roman science and taste, but rather a work of stone, and of the large size which the Romans used. It was finished in a year after its foundation.<sup>45</sup>

At this period, glass-makers were not known among the Saxons. But Benedict had heard of them, and he sent to Gaul for some, to make latticed windows to the porticoes and cænaculum of the church. From those whom he employed, the Saxons learned the art.<sup>46</sup>

In the 7th century, Cuthbert built a monastery, which is described. From wall to wall it was of four or five perches. The outside was higher than a standing man. The wall was not made of cut stone, or bricks and cement, but of unpolished stones and turf, which they had dug from the spot. Some of the stones four men could hardly lift. The roofs were made of wood and clay.<sup>47</sup>

As their architectural practice improved, they chose better materials. Thus Firman took from the church at Durham its thatched roof, and covered it with plates of lead.<sup>48</sup>

About 709, Wilfrid flourished. He, like many others, had travelled to Rome, and of course beheld the most valuable specimens of ancient art. He brought thence some masons and artificers.<sup>49</sup> Though he could not imitate these, he sought to improve the efforts of his countrymen. The church of Paulinus, at York, he completely repaired. He covered the roof with pure lead, he washed its walls from their dirt, and by glass windows (to use the words of my author) he kept out the birds and rain, and yet admitted light.

At Ripon, he also erected a church with polished stone, adorned with various columns and porticoes. At Hexham, he made a similar building. It was founded deep, and made

<sup>43</sup> Malmsb. 149.<sup>44</sup> Bede, ii. 16.<sup>45</sup> Ib. p. 295.<sup>46</sup> Bede, p. 295.<sup>47</sup> Ib. p. 243.<sup>48</sup> Ib. p. 25.<sup>49</sup> Malmsb. lib. iii.

of polished stones, with many columns and porticoes, adorned with great length and height of walls. It had many windings, both above and below, carried spirally round. It was superior to any edifice on this side of the Alps. In the inside was a stony pavement, on which a workman fell from a scaffold of enormous height.<sup>50</sup>

C H A P.  
IX.

In 716, we read of Croyland monastery. The marshy ground would not sustain a stony mass. The king, therefore, had a vast number of piles of oak and alders fixed in the ground, and earth was brought in boats, nine miles off, to be mingled with the timber and the marsh, to complete the foundation.<sup>51</sup>

In 969, a church was built. The preceding winter was employed in preparing the iron and wooden instruments, and all other necessities. The most skilful artificers were then brought. The length and breadth of the church were measured out, deep foundations were laid on account of the neighbouring moisture, and they were strengthened by frequent percussions of the rams. While some workmen carried stones, others made cement, and others raised both aloft by a machine, with a wheel. Two towers, with their tops, soon rose, of which the smaller was visible on the west, in the front of the church. The larger in the middle, with four spires, pressed on four columns, connected together by arches passing from one to the other, that they might not separate.<sup>52</sup>

It is supposed that many specimens of ancient Saxon architecture yet remain; as part of St. Peter's at Oxford, part of St. Alban's abbey church, Tickencote church, near Stamford, in Lincolnshire, the porch on the south side of Shireburn minster, Barfreton church, in Kent, Iffley church, and some others. But the works and delineations of professional men must be consulted on this subject.

<sup>50</sup> Eddius, Vita Wilfridi, 59—63.

<sup>51</sup> Ingulf, p. 4.

<sup>52</sup> 3 Gale, 399.

## BOOK X.

*Their RELIGION.*

## CHAP. I.

*Utility and Decline of Saxon Paganism, and the Introduction of Christianity among the ANGLO-SAXONS. — Its general Effect. — Religious Passages in the Welsh Bards.*

**BOOK**  
**X.**

**T**HE religion of the Saxons, while on the Continent, has been delineated in the Appendix to the first volume of this history. With that martial superstition they came into Britain. They found the island in a peculiar state on this impressive subject. In many towns and stations, they met with tomb-stones, altars, and other lapidary inscriptions; images, temples, and public works dedicated to several of the imaginary deities, which Rome, in her paganism, and her allies, had worshipped. The majority of the Britons were professing Christianity, and had sent bishops to the councils on the Continent. But the Druidism which yet had its regular temples in Bretagne, was lingering in some corners of the island, and was still, by its traditions and mysticisms, materially affecting the minds of the British bards of that period. Many of the remaining poems of Taliesin, and some passages in those of Llywarch Hen, show that mixture of the ancient Druidical feeling with their Christian faith, which evinces that their minds were a confused medley of opinions and sentiments from both sources, and therefore too fantastic to benefit or interest their Saxon conquerors,

or to care for their improvement. The British clergy, as drawn by one of themselves, at that time, were by their vices, ignorance, and profligacy, still less qualified than the bards to impress the fierce descendants of Odin with either the morals or the belief of Christianity. CHAP.  
I.

WHEN we observe the many forms of idolatrous superstitions that have governed and still interest the human mind in so many parts, and for so many ages, and reflect on the vast reasoning powers of man, and on the highly-gifted individuals who have believed and supported such errors and absurdities, we are astonished at their predominance. But the fact of their long prevalence, is evidence that they must be connected with some of the natural tendencies of the human mind, and with some of the circumstances of ancient society, and will induce the unprejudiced philosopher to hope that their long-continuing errors have not been altogether unuseful.

WE may refer the rise and diffusion of the various systems to many causes. Accident, caprice, reasoning, imagination, policy, hope, fear, and the love of agitation and enjoyment, have suggested many rites and notions. Vanity, enthusiasm, craft, and selfishness, have given rise to others. But, perhaps, the desire of the human heart to have deities like itself, and as little above human nature as possible, — and its shrinking from a holy, just, all-knowing, and perfect God, — and its aversion to have any moral governor and legislator, principally led mankind to all their ancient polytheism. Yet the feelings of the sincere votaries, even of idolatry, have been always natural, and, though often gross and ignorant, usually well-intentioned. The dread

**B O O K** of evil, and the expectation of averting it;  
 { **X.** gratitude for good enjoyed, anxiety at the vicissitudes of life, and the desire of a protector; grief under poignant sorrow, and the heart's craving for a comforter; regret for faults committed; a sense of imperfection and unworthiness; an awful impression of the majesty, as well as the power of the invisible Deity; the wish for an intercessor; the bitterness of disappointment, and the sentiment of the ultimate insufficiency of the riches, pleasures, and ambition of life to satisfy the mature and experienced mind;—these feelings have, in all times and places, concurred with other impressions to lead mankind to adopt with eagerness whatever system of deprecation, adoration, expiation, reconciliation, and supplication was most accessible, most habitual, or most recommended to their attention. It is upon their feelings, rather than upon their reason, that mankind base their belief, not in religion alone, but in all things which they accredit or uphold; and belief will be always greatly coloured by the fancies, state of knowledge, exigencies, cultivation, and customs of the day.

No paganism could, according to the nature of things, have subsisted long, or would have been permitted to subsist, unless some temporary utility had accompanied it. The religion of every country being the creature, or the adoption, of its feelings and intellect, must correspond with their state and tendencies. It must partake of their imperfections, and improve as they do. But all forms of paganism, though frequently at variance with morality, are yet the antagonists of atheism, and of its counterpart, a disbelief of the moral govern-

ment of the Deity. Although paganism attaches the feelings and opinions to imaginary beings, yet it preserves, in the general mind, the impression of a Divine power and providence, interested by human conduct, and superintending human concerns; commanding nature, punishing crimes, imposing precepts; irresistible yet placable; and on whose distribution all the good and evil of life continually depend. It fills nature with Deity, though it combines it with phantoms of its perverted imagination. It is undoubtedly true that the greatest mistakes of reasoning and conduct have been connected with idolatry and polytheism. But, with all these evils, they have kept both the uncultivated and refined mind of the world from surrendering the command of its energies and feelings to the government of atheism; and thus have preserved society from that dreadful state of selfishness, bloodshed, violence, and profligacy, which must have resulted if universal disbelief of a creating and presiding Deity had pervaded it; and which, as far as reasoning can extend its foresight, must accompany the universal diffusion of a system so disconsolatory.

BUT, independently of this general benefit, almost every system of paganism, if closely examined, will be found to contain some valuable principles or feelings that half-redeem its follies. The lofty theism, and sublime, though wild, traditions of the Northmen we have already noticed from their *Voluspa* and *Edda*. It is most probable that in these we read the sentiments of our Anglo-Saxon forefathers. It would indeed seem that both the British Druids and the Saxon Pagans had as high a sense of the Supreme Deity as some of the Or-

## BOOK

## X

phic verses show to have existed in some of the minds of ancient Greece. I infer this, as to the Britons, from the remarkable circumstance that the most ancient British bards, and those of the middle ages, whatever be the subject of their poems, made it their usual custom to begin them with an address to the Deity, or to insert some expressions of veneration to him, containing not only ideas derived from Christianity, but often others that are more referable to the notions of their Druidical ancestors.<sup>1</sup> In the Saxon poems that

<sup>1</sup> The poems of Taliesin, Meilyr, Gwalchmai, Meilyr and Einion his sons, Cynddelw, Llywarch ap Moc, Casnodyn, Dafydd y Coed, Griffith ab Maredwg, and others, abound with instances of this poetical piety, of which the following are given as specimens:

TALIESIN.  
Sovereign of heaven and of  
every region!  
We knew not  
Who thou wert.

To God the Defyer:  
To God the Regulator:  
The prophet of Mercy!  
The Great; the Wonderful;—  
When thou gavest protection  
Thro' the waves  
To the path of Moses;  
Sovereign principle of all  
movement,  
Thine is the country of heaven,  
To thee it belongs,  
Thine is the peace of heaven.  
To thee  
There is neither covering  
Nor want  
In thy region, O Regulator!  
Nothing can be made,

Nothing can be separated,  
Nothing can be protected  
But by him.

Great was his atonement  
And thy liberality  
And mercy.  
Lord of the tribute of the  
world!  
May we also be  
Received together  
In the cities of the heavens.

No one can be enriched  
Without the power of the  
Trinity.

I will praise the Fountain of  
Love;  
The Lord of every nation,  
The Sovereign of hosts and of  
energies  
Around the universe.

remain, we find, in the same spirit, many metaphors and much periphrasis on the Deity, which seem to

C H A P.  
I.

TALHAIARN.

O God! Grant me protection!  
and with thy protection,  
strength: and with strength,  
discretion; and with discre-  
tion, integrity; and with inte-  
grity, love; and in love, to love  
thee, oh my God: and loving  
thee, to be affectionate to  
every thing.

MEILYR.

The King of Kings!  
It shall be pre-eminently my  
duty  
Freely to praise Him.  
To my loftiest Lord,  
I will lift up my prayer.

Sovereign of the region of  
necessity!  
Of the exalted circle of fel-  
icity!  
Excelling one!  
Make a reconciliation  
Between me and thee.

The re-echoing groan re-  
turns  
At the memory how thou wast  
insulted  
For me.  
But may my penitence be ef-  
fectual,  
Thou hast satisfied punish-  
ment  
In the presence of God, the  
Creator;

VOL. III.

My atonement! but my prayer  
Is without service.

Yet I will serve thee,  
O my eternal King!  
Ere I vanish from my earthly  
frame,  
A prophecy of truth  
Toward Adam and his offspring  
The prophets predicted;

The existence of Jesus  
In the womb of Martyrdom!  
That the good Mary  
Should carry the embryo bur-  
then.

I have heaped up to excess  
A burthen of sins.  
I am in tumult!  
I have been greatly agitated  
By their conflicts.

Sovereign of all Life!  
How good to those who wor-  
ship thee!

I will worship thee.  
May I become completely  
purified

Before I am punished.  
The King of every dominion,  
He knows me;  
He will not refuse me:  
He will have mercy  
On my evil deeds.

Often have I obtained  
Gold and velvet from frail  
chiefs  
For loving them,

G G

**B O O K** be the effusions of their more ancient feelings ; and  
 { **X.** fragments, or mutations, of some part of their pagan hymns.

But after the gift of the muse  
 It is now otherwise.  
 Poor is now my tongue,  
 In its silence.

I, Meilyr, the poet,  
 Am a Pilgrim to Peter.  
 To a Porter who regulates  
 All qualities appropriately.

The time will be  
 The appointed season of resurrection  
 To all that are in the grave.  
 I foresee it.  
 Tho' I shall be in my dwelling  
 Awaiting the call,  
 The Goal is secure,  
 There, I shall be preserved.

My rest shall be in a solitude  
 Not won by the traveller.  
 The bosom of the briny sea  
 Shall be around my sepulchre,  
 In the pleasing island of Mary,  
 The holy island of the pure :  
 The image of our rising up  
 Is beautiful in her.

Christ, whose cross was predicted  
 Will there know me ;  
 Will there guard me  
 From the uproar of hell ;  
 The abode of the separated,  
 The Creator who formed me  
 Will admit me  
 Among the holy society  
 Of the community of Eulli.

**GWALCHMAI.**

To us there is a Physician  
 Who can deliver us from falsehood.

Let us place then upon him  
 our dependance.

It is the Lord of heaven  
 Who hath the power  
 To free us from vice even after  
 its extremity.

**EINIION AB GWALCHMAI.**

By conquering reconciliation  
 for my errors,  
 Before I am in my sepulchral  
 course

Among the graves,  
 Before the period of the bitter  
 tales approaches,  
 Before the sighing for my sins  
 returns upon me,  
 God in his kind love  
 Will preserve me in the cities  
 of heaven,  
 God will hear my voice ;  
 For my thoughts ascend to  
 Him.

**MEILYR SON OF GWALCHMAI.**

May the Supreme not leave me  
 With the forsaken part !  
 The Deity gave us our beginning  
 In the delicious circle of paradise,  
 In light never ceasing,  
 He caused us peculiarly to exist  
 Without any wants.

But all the religious systems of the ancient pagan world were naturally perishable, from the C H A P.  
I.

The Transcendant Eternal!  
Thy government is our refuge.  
Lord of all wealth! Light of  
the world!  
Creator of the heavens!  
Grant me strength from thee,  
Rewarder of all!  
To behold the banquet  
Of the bliss of our renovation.

The best state of protection,  
of glorious support,  
Is to deserve a recompence by  
meditating on him.  
For the value thou hast given  
me,  
Hearken! O mortal man,  
I give thee counsel free from  
malice.  
When God shall please  
To divest thee of thy present  
form,  
And from the dwelling of dread  
May the gift of his treasures of  
light be upon thee.

O loftiest First Principle!  
Thy government is my refuge,  
Lord of all wealth!  
Luminary of the world!  
Grant me,  
Creator of heaven,  
Strength from thee,  
That in due time I may behold  
Thy banquet of felicity with-  
out end.

May I attain thy sacred rest,  
O holy King of Saints,

In thy kingdom of glory.  
Sovereign of heaven and earth!  
And of the great universe!  
Benign Lord  
Of the radiating emanation!  
The king of pure intellect and  
of the stars,  
May he endow me with sense.

GRIFFITH AB MAREDWY.  
Hear me,  
My self-exciting Lord!  
Who sittest above the stars!  
Hear in thy heaven,  
Protector of the system of the  
course  
Of the region of felicity,  
Convert me from my falling  
state  
To thy eternity.  
Thou art our hope,  
O Son of Mary!  
Dispenser of happiness!  
Teacher of our joy!  
Our gracious Creator!

I will fix my home;  
I will prepare for the paths of  
light,  
By adoring my sovereign Lord  
As long as I exist.

Intercede for us!  
O make us perfect,  
Triune Deity!  
O Lord!  
Hearken to my prayer!

Lord of the course of the wind

**B O O K** quantity of false opinions, and vicious habits and  
 X. ceremonies and bad morals that were attached to

And the wild torrents of the sea!  
 Great is Thy grace;  
 Great are Thy wonders.

LLYWARCH PRYDYDD A P MOCH.  
 May I not totally lose God  
 From the impulse of the world!  
 He has not entirely lost heaven  
 Who is not insane.

Mighty Leader!  
 Most royally supreme!  
 The Governor of the blissful  
 mansions of heaven!

I implore strength from thee,  
 The prosperity of every kindred!

I love to praise thee,  
 Greatly splendid, mysterious  
 One!

O Sovereign most benign!

O Christ! the Creator!  
 The Governor of the host of  
 earth

And also of heaven!

Protect me from sorrow.

Christ! thou mysterious One,

May I be retired and gentle  
 Before

O Son of Mary!

Prepare for me from the four  
 elements,

A genius, penetrating and un-  
 daunted,

O Son of God!

Christ the Creator,  
 Self-causer of motion!

Mysterious One!  
 Thou column of tranquillity!  
 O Son of Mary!  
 Prepare for me

A pure fountain of intellect  
 Before iniquity affects it.

CYNZELW.

May the Deity conduct me  
 For my proportioned honor  
 To his blissful kingdom,  
 To his grace, to his own do-  
 minion.

DAFYDD Y COED.

Jesus

The earth-born King!

The mysterious One!

The fountain of love!

The faithful! The great!

Emperor of sea and land!

May I obtain heaven.

That seat of all tranquillity.

CASNODYN.

The God of mystery is Three!

The column of emanations;

Thro' his grace,

And the benign One

The subject of our song!

Surpassing in power is He

The Father of heaven!

Lord of the glorious attributes

Above all the creatures

Of most excelling virtues!

O Regulator!

Perfect organizer of the sun  
 and moon!

them. Human judgment may, for a time, be deceived, corrupted, or overpowered; but its tendency to right action is so strong, and so indestructible, that no error can be permanent. The reign of what is untrue or unjust may be longer or shorter, according to the pressure of incumbent circumstances; but the mind is always struggling to attain every attainable good, and therefore to appropriate to itself every new truth that becomes visible. Hence, as we have before remarked, it had begun to discern the imperfections of its Saxon paganism before Christianity came within its reach; and as soon as this new system was presented fully to its contemplation, the Anglo-Saxon mind discerned its superiority, and was not unduly tardy in adopting it. It was impossible for Christianity to be presented to the world, and for idolatry to exist in credit against it. Hence Polytheism fell in Greece and Rome, as it is now declining in India and the South Sea Islands.

C H A P.  
I.

It has been remarked of the Christian religion, that it neither arose from ambition, nor was propagated by the sword. It appealed unoffendingly to the reason, the sensibility, the virtue, and the interest of mankind; and, in opposition to all that was venerated or disputed, maintained by power, or believed by the populace, it peaceably established

Thou didst arrange and form  
In thine enlarged purpose  
The finely connected powers  
Of the lips that sing.

And the seas of fluctuating  
tides.

Thou hast arranged the mighty  
earth,

With its surface, all complete

Thou rulest the swamps of hell

And the disposition of Satan.

Thousands in concert  
Are uttering thy praise.  
Thou hast arranged the stars,

**B O O K** <sup>X.</sup> itself in every province of the Roman empire ; as, by the same means, it is now penetrating every region of the globe.

AMONG the Anglo-Saxons, its conquest over the fierce paganism which our ancestors upheld, was not begun till both Ireland and France had submitted to her laws ; but it was accomplished in a manner worthy of its benevolence and purity, as we have already detailed in the reigns of Ethelbert and Edwin.

GENUINE piety led the first missionaries to our shores. Their zeal, their perseverance, and the excellence of the system they diffused, notwithstanding some peculiarities which, in conformity with their own taste, and with that of their age, they attached to it, made their labour successful.

How long the Saxon paganism continued among individuals in each district, after it ceased to be the religious establishment of the government, there are no materials for ascertaining. It was too irrational to have maintained a protracted contest with Christianity ; but though it may have ceased to have had its temples and priests, or any visible existence, yet the influence of its prejudices, and of the habits it had generated, continued long to operate. These became insensibly mixed with so much of Christianity as each understood and produced that motley character in religion and morals, which was so often displayed in the Anglo-Saxon period.

BUT Christianity was a positive benefit to the nation, in every degree of its prevalence. Wherever it has penetrated, like the Guardian Angel of the human race, it has meliorated the heart and enlightened the understanding ; and hence has be-

come the religion of the most cultivated portions of the globe. C H A P. I.

EVERY part of its moral system is directed to soften the asperities of the human character, to remove its selfishness, to intellectualise its sensualities, to restrain its malignity, and to animate its virtues. If it did not eradicate all the vices of the Anglo-Saxon by whom it was professed, it taught him to abandon many. It exhibited to his contemplation the idea of what human nature ought to be, and may attain. It gradually implanted a moral sense in his bosom, and taught his mind the habit of moral reasoning, and its application to life. It could not be known unless some portion of literature was attained or diffused. It therefore actually introduced learning into England, and taught the Anglo-Saxons to cultivate intellectual pursuits.

ON the enslaved poor of the country its effects were most benign. It was always contributing to their emancipation, by urging their lords to grant this blessing as an act beneficial to their state after death; and while slavery continued in the country, the master was humanised, and the bondmen consoled, wherever Christianity was admitted and obeyed.

THE effects of Christianity, in diminishing the superstitions of the day, were also considerable. The credulous fancies of an unlettered people are very gross, and usually hold the understanding in chains, from which it is difficult to emerge. The conversion of the nation destroyed this brutish slavery, and greatly strengthened and enlarged its general intellect. Monkish superstitions introduced other follies; but the literature which accom-

B O O K

X

panied them dispelled them as it spread, and reason in every age gained new conquests, which she never lost. Indeed, in nothing was the new religion more strikingly beneficial, than by introducing a moral and intellectual education. This could have neither been known nor understood till Christianity displayed the value, imparted the means, and produced the habit of adopting it.

THE political effects of Christianity in England were as good as they could be in that age of general darkness; but it must be confessed that they were not so beneficial as its individual influence; and yet we are indebted for it to chivalry, and the high-minded tone of spirit and character which that produced. We owe to its professors all the improvement that we have derived from the civil law, which they discovered, revived, explained, and patronised. Nor has Christianity been unserviceable to our constitutional liberty: every battle which the churchman fought against the king or noble, was for the advantage of general freedom; and by rearing an ecclesiastical power, which at one time opposed the king, and at another the aristocracy of the chiefs, it certainly favoured the rise of the political importance and influence of the middle and lower classes of the people. The independence, and even the ambition, of the church, could not be asserted without checking the royal power; and such opposition repeatedly compelled the crown to court popularity as its surest defence.

THE defects which often accompanied these benefits, were the faults of a very partially enlightened age; of tempers sometimes sincerely zealous, and sometimes ambitiously selfish, but always violent and irascible; and of the system

into which Christianity was distorted. They did not spring from the religion inculcated by the Scriptures. Monkish and papal Christianity became, in every age after the seventh, something different from Apostolical Christianity. Religion is enjoined by its Divine Author to be made the governing principle of life, but its true spirit and utility declines or disappears, when superstition, imposture, politics, folly, or violence is combined with it. Formed to suit, to influence, and to adorn every class of society, true piety mixes gracefully with every innocent pleasure which virtue sanctions; with every accomplishment which refined intellect values; and with all that business which life requires, and which enlightened prudence would cultivate. It forbids only, in every pursuit, that monopolising absorption of mind which cannot be indulged without debasing ourselves or injuring others. It aims to form us to a species of celestial intellect, and celestial sensibility. Its true offspring is not the gloomy ascetic fasting into atrophy in the solitude of a desert: nor the self-tormenting monk mortifying himself into imbecility, and mistaking delirium for inspiration. Its object is to lead us to a gradual approximation towards the Divine perfections; and its tuition for this purpose, is that of parental tenderness and affectionate wisdom, imposing no restraints but such as accelerate our improvements; and distressing us with no vicissitudes but those which tend to make our happiness compatible with our virtue, and to render human life a series of continual progression. Inattentive to these great objects of the Christian Legislator, the papal hierarchy, though often producing men of the holiest lives and of the most

**B O O K**  
**X.**  
spiritual devotion, yet has, from accident, fanaticism, and policy, pursued too often a spurious plan of forcing mankind to become technical automata of rites and dreams; words and superstitions; and has supported a system which, if not originally framed, was at least applied to enforce a long-continued exertion of transferring the government of the world into the hands of ecclesiastics, and too often superseding the Christianity of the Gospels by that of tradition, policy, half delirious bigotry, feelings often fantastic, and unenlightened enthusiasm. These errors could not always support the noble aspirations of devout sensibility which were sometimes combined with them. But the mischievous additions usually formed the prevailing character of the multitude.

## CHAP. II.

ANGLO-SAXONS become Missionaries to other Nations.

**S**OON after the Anglo-Saxons had been converted to Christianity they became anxious to spread its consolations among their Continental ancestors, and the neighbouring nations.

C H A P.  
II.

Their conversion of other nations.

WILLEBROD, with eleven of his companions, went as missionaries from England to Heligoland and Friesland in 692; and was made bishop of the city now called Utrecht. His associates spread Christianity among the Westphalians and their neighbours.<sup>1</sup> Boniface, in 715, left our island to convert the Germans: he preached to the Thuringians, Hessians, and others. He founded the bishoprics of Wurtzburg, Buraburg, Erfurt, and Erchstadt. In 744 he raised the celebrated monastery of Fulda; and in 746, was made archbishop of Mentz. Returning to Friesland, in 755, he was there murdered, with fifty ecclesiastics who accompanied him. He had converted above one hundred thousand Germans.<sup>2</sup> Lebuin was another Englishman who attempted to become a missionary; and Adalbert, son of a king of the Northumbrian kingdom of Deiri, in 790, went to Germany for the same purpose.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Alcuin, Vita Willeb.

<sup>2</sup> See his Letters. 15 Bib. Mag. Pat.; and see Mosheim Eccl. Hist. cent. 8.

<sup>3</sup> Tanner, Not. Mon. 4. Ireland was also successful in its missionary exertions. Its Columbanus taught in Gaul, and among the Suevi and Boioi; one of his companions, St. Gall, converted many of the Helvetii and Suevi; and St. Kilian visited the Eastern Franks.

## BOOK

## X.

WE have an intimation of the plan of instruction which they adopted for the change of the pagan mind, in the following judicious directions of Alcuin for a progressive information : —

“ This order should be pursued in teaching mature persons :  
1st. They should be instructed in the immortality of the soul ; in the future life ; in its retribution of good and evil, and in the eternal duration of both conditions.

“ 2d. They should then be informed for what sins and crimes they will have to suffer with the Devil everlasting punishments ; and for what good and beneficial deeds they will enjoy unceasing glory with Christ.

“ 3d. The faith of the Holy Trinity is then to be most diligently taught : and the coming of our Saviour into the world for the salvation of the human race. Afterwards impress the mystery of his passion ; the truth of his resurrection ; His glorious ascension ; His future advent to judge all nations, and the resurrection of our bodies.

“ Thus prepared and strengthened, the man may be baptized.”<sup>4</sup>

## CHAP. III.

*View of the Form of Christianity introduced among the ANGLO-SAXONS; and of some of the Religious Rites and Notions.*

**T**HE form and spirit of Christianity introduced among the Anglo-Saxons by Gregory's monks were unquestionably the best which he and the Roman church then knew and valued. And as the form and spirit of every institution arise from the mind and disposition of some portion of its contemporaries, and are adapted to their feelings or occasions, so we may assume that the doctrines, rites, and formulæ of Christianity, which the papal see established in England in the seventh century, were congenial with the mind, character, taste, and circumstances of the nation, and of Europe at that period. It is therefore no reproach to the memory of Gregory or of his missionaries, if we now appreciate differently the merit of what they taught with the most benevolent integrity and with merited success. The world has become a new world of knowledge, feeling, taste, habit, and reason since that period. Their religious education suited their comparative babyhood of knowledge and intellect, and formed an interesting and improving child. New agencies occurred afterwards to rear this infant to a noble youth. Better views of religion have since united with expanded science and progressive reason to conduct the national character and mind to a still superior manhood. Each preceding stage was necessary to the formation of the subsequent. Each has produced its appropriate

C H A P.  
III.

BOOK

X.

utilities, and each has passed away from our estimation as soon as higher degrees of improvement were attained, and better systems became visible. The Scriptures are the imperishable records of our faith and hope; and if their lessons only had been allowed to be the guides of man's opinions and practice, all the absurdities and superstitions which we lament or ridicule would have been prevented or soon removed. But in every age the human mind has chosen to blend religion with its own dreams and passions; and has made these, and not the Gospel, the paramount, though always erring, dictators of our theological knowledge and religious sensibility. It is the glory of the present age, that the cultivated understanding is emancipating itself from all the dogmatism and prejudices both of scepticism and superstition, and is advancing to those just and clear views of impartial truth, of human weakness, and of the need and efficacy of divine assistance, which will unite faith with philosophy, knowledge with hope, divine love with moral beauty, and self-comfort with an active, kind, and magnanimous charity.

WITH these views we may smile without insult at some of the questions, and condemn without bitterness others, on which Augustine requests the directions of Gregory, as to the ecclesiastical government, discipline, rules, and restrictions to which he is to subject his new converts. We are surprised that some of the points adverted to should have been made the subjects of sacerdotal notice; but the gravity and earnestness with which they are put and answered, show that they were then deemed proper objects of such attention, and were consi-

dered by priest and votary to be important and interesting to the consciences of both.<sup>1</sup> C H A P.  
III.

THE detail of all the ecclesiastical rites and notions of the Anglo-Saxon ecclesiastics would be tedious and unimproving in a general history. They have been discussed and disputed professionally by some, and as matters of antiquarian curiosity by others. The present chapter will be limited to the selection of a few points, on which some original information can be given, and which may be more interesting to the philosophical reader.

AMONG the religious institutions of the Anglo-Saxons, their monastic establishments attained a

<sup>1</sup> See Bede's 27th chapter of his first book, of which the eighth and ninth articles are the most objectionable. But there is a liberality in the pope's answer to the second question that deserves notice. "You knew the custom of the Roman church, in which you remember you was brought up. But I am willing, if you have found any thing in the Roman or Gallican, or in any other church, which will be more pleasing to the Almighty, that you carefully select it; and infuse into the English church, which is yet new in the faith, in its leading institution, those things which you may have collected from many churches. Things are not to be loved for places, but places for good things. Choose then from every church whatever things are pious, religious, and right, and, collecting them as into a bundle, place them as a habit in the minds of the English." Bede, lib. i. c. 27. If the papal see had continued to act on this wise rule, as society advanced, it would have improved with every succeeding age, and have still held the dominion of the religious world. But it ever afterwards deviated into a narrow, peculiar, and unchangeable system, that has become in every following generation more incompatible with the human progress; and thus it has irretrievably lost the government of the intellectual world. A new and wiser system, that has yet to receive its being, can alone obtain that universal sceptre to which both ancient and modern Rome so long aspired, and for a brief interval attained.

BOOK

X.

great though fluctuating popularity. In the first period of their Christianity, when a general ardour of belief impelled those who sincerely embraced it, several kings and nobles withdrew from the business and vexations of the world to enjoy the devout serenity of the cloister. Such a taste has been too hastily censured as a mental imbecility. The system of monasteries, though pernicious when abused, and defective in its intellectual regulations, yet contained much that was fairly interesting both to the imagination and the heart of the Anglo-Saxons, and that actually contributed to increase the happiness of life in their day. Even now, in the opinion of many thinking men, if they were confined to the middle and declining periods of life; if they were frequented by those only, who, after having discharged all their social duties, desired to withdraw from the occupations, troubles, and fascinations of the world, to a halcyon calm of mind, uninterrupted study, tranquil meditation, or devotional sensibility; if they were not shackled by indissoluble vows of continuance, imprisoning the repining; if they were made seminaries of education, and allowed to be temporary asylums of unprovided youth; and if their rules and habits were framed on such moral plans and religious formulæ as should be found worthy of an intellectual age, which seeks to combine the fancy and the feeling in a sweet harmony with its knowledge and its reason: thus formed and directed, such institutions might again contribute to the happiness of the aged, the destitute, the sorrowful, the lonely, the abstracted, the studious, the pensive, the unambitious, the embarrassed, and the devout, as well as to the instruction of the young, the relief of the

poor, and the revival of religious sensibility in the community at large. The spiritual piety of the more fervent sympathies had the advantage of these asylums under the catholic institutions.

C H A P.  
III.

BUT when monasteries were founded among the Anglo-Saxons, mankind had not attained or noticed the experience of all their effects; and the visible good which they achieved, prevented their evils from being felt; or if they were discerned, no better means then occurred of acquiring elsewhere their manifest advantages. Our ancestors did not perceive that they were opposed to the social duties and general improvement of mankind, by admitting the young and active; by compelling the self-sacrifice to last for life; by a series of religious ordinances that became mechanical rote; by a slavish discipline and unimproving habits; by their discouragement of liberal feelings and an enlarged cultivation of the intellect; and by legends, bigotry, superstitious tenets and prejudices, which as much poisoned the mind, as the increasing corruptions and ambition which they fed and fomented deteriorated the conduct. Of these ill effects, many were the growth of time, others of ignorance, and some of the circumstances in which former ages had been involved. But as they began the mental and moral education of the country, and carried it on successfully to a certain point; as they fostered and diffused that religious spirit, without which, as without them, the Anglo-Saxons would not have long retained their Christianity; and as they made the hierarchy a stronger bulwark against the violence of the great at one time, and the oppressions of the throne at another; these establishments were for a long time of incalculable utility.

**BOOK X.** Having become incompatible with the improved reason, new state, and present duties of mankind, the downfall of their ancient system in the present age was as necessary as their elevation had been expedient. To suit the present wants and progress of society, they must, if ever introduced again, be entirely new-created; and upon a wiser plan, and under an intelligent and benevolent administration, they would be the retreat of serene happiness to many.

THE monastic scheme which the Anglo-Saxons adopted was that of St. Benedict; and it is impossible to read his rule without perceiving that it was the product of a mind aiming to do what seemed wisest and best. For above a century the Anglo-Saxons warmly patronized monasteries; but the industry of their fraternities so much improved their possessions, that they tempted the avarice, not only of the less religious great, but of the other dignitaries of the church; and I have found among the works of our venerable Bede this complaint of their spoliation and decay in his time:

“The possessions of monasteries were given to the monks, that they and their servitors, and the poor and strangers who may arrive, should be nourished thereout. This care belongs to all Christians; but, I grieve to say it, nothing is more difficult to be believed, as well by the clergy as by laics, than that it is a sin to plunder the possessions of the monasteries, and to alienate them.—Attend, I beseech you, O rulers! Be exhorted to restore the destroyed monasteries: first, that the spoilers may return to the monks the property taken from them; then, that they who fear God and walk in his ways may be preferred to those who do not; for God is greatly offended, that those places which were emancipated and consecrated to him, and his saints, should be destroyed from the carelessness of the governors. If those serving God in monasteries had whatever was necessary to them, they could pursue their divine

duties with more alacrity ; they could more devoutly intercede for the king, for the safety of the bishops and princes, and for all the church. But all these things are treated with such neglect by most bishops, that if a pure prayer, or rebuke, or reasonable admonition should be necessary, they disdain to notice it: caring only that pleasing and assiduous duties be done to themselves.

C H A P.  
III.

" It is to be much lamented, that since the lands which were formerly delivered to monasteries by religious princes are now taken away by kings or bishops, no alms can be given there, and no guest or stranger refreshed.

" If they find monasteries destroyed by neglect of their spiritual or corporal provisions, they not only take no care to meliorate them, but even encourage the destruction." <sup>2</sup>

ALCUIN has a passage which intimates the same decline. <sup>3</sup>

THE ravages of the Danish invaders, who, being martial pagans, exulted in burning Christian churches and cloisters, destroyed many monastic establishments: and though Alfred, by his example, encouraged the taste of building them, few were erected again till the reign of Edgar. Dunstan led his young mind to become their earnest patron ; and the zeal for re-establishing them on the reformed plan, which had been adopted at Fleury, in France, urged both the sovereign and his mitred preceptor to the greatest violences against the then existing clergy. Ethelwold, whom Dunstan procured to be made a bishop, had land given him for making a translation of the Latin Rule of St. Benedict into the Anglo-Saxon ; and it was the boast of the king and his council, that they had founded forty monasteries by their exertions. We have a detail of the formation of one of these, from

<sup>2</sup> Bede Op. vol. viii. p. 1071.

<sup>3</sup> " We have seen in some places the altars without a roof, fouled by birds and dogs." Ep. p. 1487.

**B O O K** which some particulars are worth selecting, to preserve a memorial of the manner and progress by which such endowments were effected, and the principles on which they were recommended and patronized.

X.

“ On the death of a favourite nobleman of Edgar’s court, his brother, an ealdorman, expressed to Bishop Oswald his desire to pursue a better system of life than his worldly occupations permitted. Oswald assured him that his secular affairs would but give him so many opportunities of doing good, if he was careful to observe a conscientious spirit of equity, a merciful moderation, and a constant intention of right conduct. But he added, that they only were free, serene, and released from all danger and anxiety, who renounced the world; and that their piety brought blessings on their country. ‘By their merits, the anger of the Supreme Judge is abated; a healthier atmosphere is granted; corn springs up more abundantly; famine and pestilence withdraw; the state is better governed; the prisons are opened; the fettered released; the shipwrecked are relieved; and the sick recovered.’ Oswald ended his speech by advising him, if he had any place in his territory fitted for a monastery, to build one upon it, promising to contribute to its maintenance.

“ The ealdorman replied, that he had some hereditary land surrounded with marshes, and remote from human intercourse. It was near a forest of various sorts of trees, which had several open spots of good turf, and others of fine grass for pasture. No buildings had been upon it, but some sheds for his herds, who had manured the soil.

“ They went together to view it. They found that the waters made it an island. It was so lonely, and yet had so many conveniences for subsistence and secluded devotion, that the bishop decided it to be an advisable station. Artificers were collected. The neighbourhood joined in the labour. Twelve monks came from another cloister to form the new fraternity. Their cells and a chapel were soon raised. In the next winter, they provided the iron and timber, and utensils that were wanted, for a handsome church. In the spring, amid the fenny soil, a firm foundation was laid. The workmen laboured as much from devotion as for profit. Some brought the stones; others made the cement; others applied to the

wheel machinery that raised them on high: and in a reasonable time, the sacred edifice, with two towers, appeared, on what had been before a desolate waste; and Abbo, celebrated for his literature, was invited from Fleury, to take charge of the schools that were appended to it. Such was the formation of the Ramsey monastery." <sup>4</sup>

C H A P.  
III.

THE monastic establishments of Edgar were effected with too much violence and injustice to have good results: the truth is as old as the world, though rarely palatable to it, that evil means will have evil consequences. The former clergy were driven into an irascible opposition against the new system, and the discords which ensued from it, among the nobles and nation, led to the second series of Danish invasions. From these, so many disorders followed, that both monks and clergy declined into that low state of morals and mind, from which the Norman conquest afterwards rescued the religion of the country.

THE form of the hierarchy established among the Anglo-Saxons was episcopal. An archbishop, and bishops subordinate to him, and receiving the confirmation of their dignity, or their spiritual investiture, from the pope, were the rulers of the church; yet subject, both to their own national as well as to general councils, and also in many points to the witenagemot, of which they were a part, and, in their temporal concerns, to the king. Under the episcopal aristocracy, deans, archdeacons, canons, prebends, and the parochial clergy, enjoyed various powers and privileges. The monks and nuns were governed by their own abbots, abbesses, and priors, assisted, and, in some respects, controlled, by conventual chapters; subject to,

<sup>4</sup> Hist. Ram. p. 396—400.

**B O O K** yet not always submitting to the pope, and claiming an independence on the episcopal clergy.  
 X.  
 There were no friars or mendicant orders among the Anglo-Saxons; but they encouraged hermits and pilgrims, and severe penances, and loved relics, and venerated saints, to whose number they largely contributed; and they practised excommunications.

Our limits will not allow us to give a full portraiture of the Anglo-Saxon hierarchy, and its rites and doctrines. A few points only can be mentioned here. But it may be remarked, as some excuse for visible imperfections, that our Anglo-Saxon ancestors had every thing to construct on these subjects. Except some valuable gleams of patriarchal theism, which their poetical epithets for the Deity, that seem to have emanated from their paganism, imply that they retained, there was nothing in the idolatry of their ancestors that could assist them in the formation of their Christian system. They had every thing to learn on this new theme of mind; and they had to begin their pupilage in times of storm and darkness, both within and without them.

Reading  
of the  
Scriptures.

THEY were strongly exhorted to study the Scriptures: instead of withholding these, their clergy earnestly pressed their frequent perusal, and gave the example themselves. Bede employed himself, like our Alfred, in making moral and religious selections from them, and also commented on each of their books. Alcuin repeatedly presses their perusal, especially the Gospels<sup>4</sup>; and urges the

<sup>4</sup> To one he says, "Scribe Evangelicum in corde tuo," p. 1635. To another, "I wish the four Gospels, instead of the twelve Æneids, filled your breast," p. 1549. "Read diligently, I beseech you, the Gospels of Christ," p. 1561. "Be studious

contemplation of our Saviour's life and precepts.<sup>6</sup> His high and just estimate of the Psalms is very interestingly expressed.<sup>7</sup> Every priest was ordered to have the "halgan bec," the sacred books, that "he might teach his people rightly who looked up to him;" and he was to take care that they were well written.<sup>8</sup> Very ancient MSS. of Saxon translations of the Gospels, written between Alfred's times and Harold's, still exist.<sup>9</sup> It was not only to gratify an Anglo-Saxon ealdorman<sup>10</sup>, but also to enable the people at large to hear or read it<sup>11</sup>, that

---

in reading the sacred Scriptures," p. 1583. "The reading of the sacred books is necessary," p. 1546.

<sup>6</sup> Alcuin writes to a friend: "Study Christ as foretold in the books of the Prophets, and as exhibited in the Gospels; and when you find him, do not lose him; but introduce him into the home of thy heart, and make him the ruler of thy life. Love him as thy Redeemer, and thy Governor, and as the dispenser of all thy comforts. Keep his commandments, because in them is eternal life." Op. p. 1637.

<sup>7</sup> See it in his Op. p. 123—126.

<sup>8</sup> Lib. Can. Eccl. Wilk. p. 156.

<sup>9</sup> Wanley mentions, of Saxon MSS., one in the Bodleian library, p. 64.; two at Cambridge, p. 116 and 152.; and one in the British Museum, p. 211., in Latin and Saxon, p. 81. He notices one in the Bodleian, p. 250.; and the very beautiful MSS. just before mentioned, Nero, D. 4.; as also several Latin copies written in the Saxon times. One of these is the actual copy given by king Ethelstan to the church at Durham. It was in the British Museum, Otho, B. 9.

<sup>10</sup> Elfric, in his prefatory Saxon epistle, says to him, "Thou badeest me, dear one, that I should turn this book of Genesis from Latin to English." MSS. Camb. Wan. p. 162.

<sup>11</sup> In his Latin preface, Elfric says, he has translated the Scriptures from the Latin in the ordinary tongue, "for the edification of the simple, who know only this speech."—"We have therefore put it not into obscure words, but into simple English, that it may easier reach the heart of those who read or hear it." MSS. Camb. Wan. 153.

**BOOK X.** Elfric undertook his translation of the Scriptures from the Latin, about the end of the tenth century. From the different styles of the Anglo-Saxon versions of the Gospels, they must have been translated oftener than once.

Transubstantiation.

It is certain that the transubstantiation of the Eucharist was not the established or universal belief of the Anglo-Saxons. In a MS. of Saxon Ecclesiastical Constitutions, it is declared, "the hurel (the sacrament) is Christ's body, *not bodily, but spiritually*; not the body in which he suffered, but the body about which he spoke when he blessed the loaf and wine."<sup>12</sup>

Their relics.

THEY imbibed the well-intentioned but unwise taste for relics; a taste not only objectionable for the misplaced veneration of things not deserving of it, and fostering mysterious superstitions, which differed in name only from the magic and witchcraft which they were taught to execrate, but also reprehensible for having falsehood for its basis, and, like their legends, confounding all history and truth. The list of relics revered in one church, and stated to have been collected from abroad, and given to it by Athelstan, will afford a complete illustration of these remarks.<sup>13</sup>

<sup>12</sup> See it printed from a MS. at Cambridge, written about the time of the Conquest, in Wilkins, p. 159. It adds:—"Understand now, that as the Lord before his suffering might change the loaf to his body, and the wine to his blood, spiritually, so the same is daily blessed through the hands of the priest, the loaf to his body, and the wine to his blood spiritually," p. 160. The same passage is given in Wanley, Cat. p. 111.

<sup>13</sup> It would be too long to give the whole of this Anglo-Saxon document. Some of its chief articles are: a piece of the actual cross; a part of our Saviour's sepulchre; of his clothes;

ALTHOUGH they used the sign of the cross and its actual representation, they were taught not to pray to the wood, but to the divine Personage who had suffered on it.<sup>14</sup>

THAT the Anglo-Saxons were not contented with mere ceremonial religion, the lives and works of Aldhelm, Bede, Alcuin, Elfric, and others abundantly show. The character which Alcuin expected from an Anglo-Saxon archbishop of Canterbury, he has thus drawn at full length in a letter to one that was his contemporary : —

“ Be the comforter of the wretched, a father to the poor, and affable to all, that you may understand what you are to answer, and let your answers be always seasoned with wisdom ; never rash, but honourable ; not verbose, but moderate. Let your manners excel in courtesy, be praised for their humility, and be amiable for their piety. Teach not only by words, but by examples, all who live with you, or may visit you. Let your hand be liberal in alms, ready to requite, and frugal in receiving. Provide yourself with treasure in heaven. Make

C H A P.  
III.

Their use  
of the  
cross.

Moral du-  
ties of  
their  
clergy.

of the manger in which he was laid ; of the spear that wounded him ; of the table where he supped ; of the mount he ascended from ; of Mount Sinai ; of the burning bush ; of the candle lighted by an angel on the eve of our Saviour's resurrection ; of Mount Olive, where he prayed ; of his cap and hair ; of the Virgin's dress ; of the body and garments of the Baptist ; of St. Peter's beard and hair ; St. Paul's neck bones ; St. Andrew's stick ; St. Bartholomew's head ; St. Stephen's blood, and of the stone that killed him ; of the coals that roasted St. Lawrence ; the bones of a great many martyrs ; the teeth of St. Maurice and St. Basil ; the arms and ribs of other saints ; the finger of Mary Magdalen ; the cheek of St. Brigida ; the veil of St. Agatha, &c. &c. &c. See the whole Saxon list in Dugdale, Monast. vol. i. p. 223—225.

<sup>14</sup> Elfric's words are ; “ The sign of the Holy Cross is our blessing ; and to this cross we pray ; yet not to the wood, but to the Almighty Lord that was hanged for us upon it.” MSS. Camb. Op. Wanl. p. 118.

**B O O K** your wealth the redemption of your soul. It is more blessed to give than to receive. Have the Scriptures often in your hands. Be assiduous in prayer. Let virtue dignify your life, and impressive preaching your faith and hope."<sup>15</sup>

Legal  
duties en-  
joined to  
their  
priests.

**THE** Canons of Edgar record the duties which were exacted from the Anglo-Saxon clergy.

"They were forbidden to carry any controversy among themselves to a lay tribunal. Their own companions were to settle it, or the bishop was to determine it.

"No priest was to forsake the church to which he was consecrated, nor to intermeddle with the rights of others, nor to take the scholar of another. He was to learn sedulously his own handicraft, and not put another to shame for his ignorance, but to teach him better. The high-born were not to despise the less-born, nor any to be unrighteous or covetous dealers. He was to baptise whenever required, and to abolish all heathendom and witchcraft. They were to take care of their churches, and apply exclusively to their sacred duties; and not to indulge in idle speech, or idle deeds, or excessive drinking; nor to let dogs come within their church inclosure, nor more swine than a man might govern.

"They were to celebrate mass only in churches, and on the altar, unless in cases of extreme sickness. They were to have at mass their corporalis garment, and the subucula under their alba; and all their officiating garments were to be woven. Each was to have a good and right book. No one was to celebrate mass, unless fasting, and unless he had one to make responses; nor more than three times a day; nor unless he had, for the Eucharist, pure bread, wine, and water. The cup was to be of something molten, not of wood. No woman was to come near the altar during mass. The bell was to be rung at the proper time.

"They were to preach every Sunday to the people, and always to give good examples. They were ordered to teach youth with care, and to draw them to some craft. They were to distribute alms, and urge the people to give them, and to sing the psalms during the distribution, and to exhort the poor to intercede for the donors. They were forbidden to swear,

---

<sup>15</sup> Al. Op. p. 1534.

and were to avoid ordeals. They were to recommend confession, penitence, and compensation ; to administer the sacrament to the sick, and to anoint him if he desired it ; and the priest was always to keep oil ready for this purpose and for baptism. He was neither to hunt, or hawk, or dice ; but to play with his book as became his condition.<sup>16</sup>

C H A P.  
III.



WE have another review of their duties transmitted to us in the exhortations of Elfric.

Elfric's  
statement  
of their  
duties.

" Priests ! you ought to be well provided with books and apparel as suits your condition. The mass priest should at least have his missal, his singing book, his reading book, his psalter, his hand book, his penitential, and his numeral one. He ought to have his officiating garments, and to sing from sun-rise, with the nine intervals and nine readings. His sacramental cup should be of gold or silver, glass or tin, and not of earth, at least not of wood. The altar should be always clean, well clothed, and not defiled with dirt. There should be no mass without wine.

" Take care that you be better and wiser in your spiritual craft than worldly men are in theirs, that you may be fit teachers of true wisdom. The priest should preach rightly the true belief ; read fit discourses ; visit the sick ; and baptise infants, and give the unction when desired. No one should be a covetous trader, nor a plunderer, nor drunk often in wine-houses, nor be proud or boastful, nor wear ostentatious girdles, nor be adorned with gold, but to do honour to himself by his good morals.

" They should not be litigious nor quarrelsome, nor seditious, but should pacify the contending ; nor carry arms, nor go to any fight, though some say that priests should carry weapons when necessity requires ; yet the servant of God ought not to go to any war or military exercise. Neither a wife nor a battle becomes them, if they will rightly obey God and keep his laws as becomes their state."<sup>17</sup>

THE Anglo-Saxon clergy sometimes made very earnest addresses to the people. Some specimens of one of these, about nine hundred years old, will show the tone and feeling they displayed.

An Anglo-Saxon  
sermon.

<sup>16</sup> Wilk. Leg. 85—87.

<sup>17</sup> Ibid. 169—171.

## B O O K

## X.

"Dearest men! I intreat, and would humbly teach you that you should grieve now for your sins, because in the future life our tears will tell for nought. Hear the Lord now, who invites and will grant us forgiveness. Here he is very gentle with us; there he will be severe. Here his mild-heartedness is over us; there will be an eternal judgment. Here is transient joy; there will be perpetual sorrow.

"Study, my beloved, those things which are about to come to you. Humble yourselves here, that you be not abased hereafter. Ah! dearest men! who is so hard of heart, that he cannot weep at the punishments that may succeed, and dread their occurrence? What is better to us in this world than to be penitent for our transgressions, and to redeem them by almsgiving? This world and all within it pass away, and then with our soul alone we must satisfy the Almighty God. The father cannot then help the son, nor the child the parent, but each will be judged according to his own deeds.

"O man! what are you doing? Be not like the dumb cattle. O think and remember how great a separation the Deity has placed between us and them. He sends to us an understanding soul, but they have none. Watch, then, O man! Pray and intreat while thou may. Remember that for thee the Lord descended from the high heaven to the most lowly state, that he might raise thee to that exalted life. Gold and silver cannot aid us from those grim and cruel torments, from those flames that will never be extinguished, and from those serpents that never die. There they are whetting their bloody teeth, to wound and tear our bodies without mercy, when the great trumpet shall sound, and the dreadful voice exclaim, 'Arise, and behold the mighty and the terrible King! You that have been stedfast and are chosen, arise! Lo! your heavenly Master comes. Now you shall see him whom you loved before you became dust. Come, and partake a glory which no eye has seen, and no ear has heard of. But, you wicked and impious, arise you, and fall abandoned into that deep and infernal pit, where misery for ever must be your happiness and honour.'

"O! how miserable and joyless will those become who neglected the divine commandments, to hear this fearful sentence! Always should these things be before our eyes. Where are the kings that once triumphed, and all the mighty of the earth? Where are their treasures? Where is their splendid apparel? Oh, for how short a life are they now brought to

an endless death! For what a transient glory have they earned a lasting sorrow! How paltry the profit for which they have brought these wretched torments! How momentary was the laughter that has been changed to these bitter and burning tears!"<sup>18</sup>

C H A P.  
III.

THE teacher enforced these ideas by introducing a legendary tale, which displays some strength of imagination.

"A holy man had once a spiritual vision. He saw a soul on the point of being driven out of a body, but she dared not leave it, because she saw an execrable fiend standing before her. 'What are you doing,' cried the Devil. 'Why do you not come out? Do you hope that Michael the archangel will come with his company of angels, and carry you soon away?' Then another devil answered, and said, 'You need not fear that. I know his works, and, day and night, was always with him.'

"The wretched soul, seeing this, began to shriek and cry, 'Wo! wo! wretched me, why was I ever created? Why did I ever enter this foul and polluted body?' She looked at her body, and exclaimed, 'Miserable corpse! it was thou that didst seize the wealth of the stranger, and wast ever heaping up treasure. It was thou that wouldst deck thyself with costly raiment. When thou wast all scarlet, I was all black; when thou wast merry, I was sad; when thou didst laugh, I wept. O wretched thou, what art thou now but a loathsome mass, the food of worms! Thou mayest rest a considerable time on the earth, but I shall go groaning and miserable to hell.'

"The Devil then exclaimed, 'Pierce his eye, because with his eye-sight he was active in all injustice. Pierce his mouth, because with that he eat and drank and talked, as he lusted. Pierce his heart, because neither pity, religion, nor the love of God was ever in it.'

"While the soul was suffering these things, a great splendour shone before her, and she asked what the brightness meant. The Devil told her it came from the celestial regions. 'And you shall go through those dwellings most bright and fair, but must not stay there. You shall hear the angelic choirs,

---

<sup>18</sup> Wilk. Leg. 173, 174.

**BOOK** and see the radiance of all the holy; but there you cannot  
**X.** dwell.' Again the wretched soul exclaimed, 'Woe to me,  
 that I ever saw the light of the human world!' "<sup>19</sup>

THE address thus concludes:—

"My dearest men! Let us then remember that the life we now live is short, sinful, frail, falling, wretched, and deceitful to all that love it. We live in trouble, and we die in sorrow; and when it ends, they also who would not repent and give alms, must go to torment, and there suffer an immeasurable punishment for their misdeeds. There the afflicted soul will hang over hot flames, and be beaten, and bound, and thrown down into the blackest place, especially they who will show no mercy now. But let us turn ourselves to a better state, and earn an eternal kingdom with Christ and his saints, for ever and ever, world without end, Amen." "<sup>20</sup>

Their  
 ideas of  
 Heaven.

THE future world is thus painted in another of the Anglo-Saxon homilies.

"Let us reflect on the happiness we may lose. Let us resolve to earn that brightest of all places, and that most beautiful felicity with angels and high-angels, and with all the sainted ones in the rapture of heaven's kingdom. There it will last for ever. There is eternal life. There is the King of all kings, and the Ruler of all rulers, and the Creator of all creatures. There is peace without sorrow, light without darkness, and joy without an end. There will be the beginning of everlasting happiness; the beauty and delight of all that is holy; youth without age; the inexhaustible glory of the spirit in the highest splendour; peace and comfort; health unvarying; a most blissful throne; the most lovely fruits, and the most exalted power." "<sup>21</sup>

<sup>19</sup> Wilk. Leg. p. 175.

<sup>20</sup> Ib. p. 176.

<sup>21</sup> MSS. Cant. Wan. p. 117. A shorter description occurs in another. "There will be our eternal recompence between angels and high-angels for ever in heaven's kingdom. There love will never err, nor enmity disturb. There the sacred societies will always dwell in beauty and glory and pleasure. There will be mirth and majesty, and everlasting bliss with the Deity himself." MSS. Cant. Wan. p. 140.

THEY have left us several paraphrases and translations of the Pater noster<sup>22</sup>, and the Creed<sup>23</sup>; some in poetry and some in prose, as if it had been a favourite exercise of their devotional leisure. There are others of the Doxology.<sup>24</sup>

C H A P.  
I H.

Para-  
phrase of  
the Lord's  
Prayer and  
Creed.  
Their con-  
fessions.

WRITTEN specimens of the questions and answers at their scrift and andetnes, or confession, have also survived to us, some of which are interesting to read.<sup>25</sup>

WHEN one of the great Danish armies landed in England, the following penitentiary injunctions were issued:—

Proclam-  
ation for  
an Anglo-  
Saxon  
public fast.

“We all need that we should diligently strive to obtain God's mercy and mild-heartedness, and that we, by his help, may withstand our enemies.

“Now it is our will that all folk should do general penance for three days, on bread, herbs, and water; that is, on (Donanbaȝ, Tiperbaȝ, Wobnerbaȝ,) Monday, Tuesday, and Wednesday before Michaelmas; and let every man come barefoot to church, without gold and ornaments, and go to confession (ŕþaȝt), and all go out with the holy relic, and call inwardly in their heart diligently on Christ; and let every man set apart a hide-penny, or a penny's-worth, and bring it to church, and afterwards divide it into three before the confessor and the town-gerefa, and, if he will not perform this, let him pay, according to law, a bunda, or villager, thirty pence; a throel, or slave, by his hide; a thegn, thirty shillings. For the three days let them be freed from work, and in every minster let all the company sing their Psalter the three days,

<sup>22</sup> Of the Lord's Prayer, see the Saxon paraphrases from MSS. in Wanley, p. 48. 147. 267. Translations of it are in Ib. p. 51. 81. 160. 197. 202. 221. There are several homilies upon it.

<sup>23</sup> Of the Creed, see the poetical paraphrase in Wanley, p. 48. and various translations, p. 51. 202. 221., &c.

<sup>24</sup> Wan. MSS. p. 148. 48. 51.

<sup>25</sup> See various confessions at length from a MS. in Wanley, p. 50. 145.; and several others.

**B O O K**  
**X.** and let every mass-priest say mass for our lord, and for all his people; and there, besides, let men say masses every day, in every minster one mass separately for the necessities that surround us, till things become better: and at every tide-song let all the assembly, with bended knees, before God's altar, sing the third Psalm; and every year henceforth do this, till the Almighty pity us, and grant us to overcome our enemy. **GOD HELP US. AMEN.**"<sup>26</sup>

Their  
 other peni-  
 tentiary  
 systems.

THE Anglo-Saxon ecclesiastics visited most crimes with appropriate penance, and especially homicides, both voluntary and involuntary, and even the intention to commit them. What they called their deeplike, or severe penance, is thus described:—

"He must lay aside his weapons, and travel barefoot a long way; nor be sheltered of a night. He must fast and watch and pray both day and night, and willingly weary himself, and be so careless of his dress that the iron should not come to his hair or nails.

"He must not enter a warm bath, nor a soft bed; nor eat flesh, nor any thing by which he can be intoxicated; nor may he go inside of a church, but seek some holy place, and confess his guilt, and pray for intercession. He must kiss no man, but be always grieving for his sins."<sup>27</sup>

Liberty to  
 buy off  
 penance.

IT was an invention of deep policy, though of suspicious piety, that they allowed the wealthy to purchase a removal of the penances imposed. This gave the church an interest that crimes should be committed, as well as that the penances should be too severe to be personally performed; yet this dangerous privilege was used for the best purposes. The following is one of their regulations on this subject:—

"Many men may redeem their penances by alms:

<sup>26</sup> MS. C. C. Cantab. ap. Wanley, p. 138.

<sup>27</sup> Leges Edgari, Wilk. p. 94.

"He that hath ability may raise a church to the-praise of God; and, if he has wherewithal, let him give land to it, and allow ten young men, so that they may serve in it, and minister the daily service. He may repair churches where he can, and make folk-ways, with bridges over deep waters, and over miry places; and let him assist poor men's widows, and step-children, and foreigners. He may free his own slaves, and redeem the liberty of those of other masters, and especially the poor captives of war; and let him feed the needy, and house them, clothe and warm them, and give them bathing and beds." <sup>28</sup>

C H A P.  
III.

It is impossible to praise too highly the benevolence of these substitutions.

The permission to buy off penance by money could not but become a source of the greatest abuses; nor was it less objectionable to commute them, if at all useful, for certain quantities of repetitions, by rote, of some devotional forms; which, thus reiterated, could have little more meaning or efficacy than the same amount of unintelligible nonsense, or of a parrot's exclamations.

The law thus provided for it:—

"A man may redeem one day's fasting by a penny, or by repeating two hundred Psalms. He may redeem a twelvemonth's fasting by thirty shillings, or may set a man free who is of that worth. And for one day's fast he may sing six times the Beati Immaculati, and six Pater-nosters; or for a day's fast he may kneel and bend sixty times to the earth, with a Pater-noster; or he may bend all his limbs to God, and fifteen times sing 'Miserere mei Dominus,' and fifteen Pater-nosters." <sup>29</sup>

That the Anglo-Saxons continued the error of the ancient world, in referring the phenomena of nature almost always to supernatural agency, though with the substitution of saints, angels, and demons, for the gods and goddesses, heroes, genii, and daemons of antiquity, is a true assertion as to the nation

Their  
Saints.

<sup>28</sup> Leges Edgari, Wilk. p. 95.

<sup>29</sup> Leg. Edg. p. 96.

B O O K

X.

at large, and as to their religious instructors, with few exceptions. Their ignorance of natural science led them to this mistake, as its abundance with us has urged our philosophy into the opposite extreme. Our ancestors were inclined to ascribe nothing to natural causes; and we tend to attribute to these every phenomenon. They saw nothing but the Divinity acting around them; and some of us exclude Him wholly from His creation. Both extremes are erroneous. The probability is, that the Supreme does every thing by the natural causes which He has organised to act for the general good, so far as their agency will from time to time produce it; but where their operation becomes at any time insufficient to achieve His purposes, they are assisted by His immediate interference, or by the introduction of new effective agents that are more suited to the new circumstances that arise, and the new improvements that He intends to establish. He, as our Great Alfred suggested, binds himself in no chains as to the future guidance of nature, but keeps Himself free, at all times, to do whatever His wisdom finds to be successively most expedient for the benefit of His whole creation, and therefore for every part of it; for the whole cannot be benefited unless the portions partake of the advantage.

BUT the Anglo-Saxons pursued the custom of the day in venerating those who, after death, were invested by the ecclesiastical authorities with the dignity of saints; they had several of these of native origin, who were held in great estimation, and whose lives were written with zealous enthusiasm.\*

\* As St. Guthlac, St. Edwin, St. Oswald, St. Boniface, St. Swithin, St. Neot, St. Edmund, St. Chad, St. Winifreda, St. Dunstan, St. Ethelwald, St. Edward, and many others.

They ascribed to their saints great powers over nature and disease, and human life, as the classical nations had done to their fabulous divinities; and thus impeded their own progress in natural philosophy, by substituting imaginary agents for natural causes. Our ancestors also respected hermits, who lived in woods or cells, retired from the world.<sup>31</sup>

C H A P.  
III.

THE evil personage called Anti-christ, who, it is supposed, will accompany the last ages of the world, was a frequent subject of contemplation among the Anglo-Saxons. They thought that he was about to come in the tenth and eleventh centuries.<sup>32</sup> One of their discourses upon him begins with "Beloved men! there is great need that we should be aware of the fearful time that is now approaching. Now, very soon will be the times of Anti-christ; therefore we ought to expect him, and carefully think upon him." A long detail then follows on this subject<sup>33</sup>; but the most curious account of him

Their  
views of  
Anti-  
christ.

<sup>31</sup> That the lives of the Saxon hermits, or anchorites, were not unusefully employed, we have a very splendid proof in the Saxon MS. of the Gospels in the British Museum, Nero, D. 4. Wanley justly calls this, "an incomparable specimen of Anglo-Saxon calligraphy," p. 253. It is beautifully illuminated and decorated: Billfrith, *the anchorite*, was the person who so adorned it. He is mentioned by his Saxon coadjutor, Aldred, to have ornamented it with gold and gems, and with silver gilt over. Turgot, the Anglo-Saxon, also declares him to have been "in aurificii arte precipuus." Wanl. ib. It seems to have been written about the time of Alfred.

<sup>32</sup> Elfric thought, from the calamities of Ethelred's reign, that the end of the world was near: "By this we may understand that this world is passing away, and very nigh its end." MSS. Vesp. D. 14.

<sup>33</sup> The Sermon is printed, with a Latin translation, in the Appendix to the Saxon Dictionary.

**B O O K** is that of Albinus, which he addresses to Charle-  

**X.** **magne.**<sup>31</sup>

<sup>31</sup> A few particulars of Alcuin's fancy may amuse: "He is to be born of a most flagitious robber and harlot, with the aid of the Devil, at Babylon. He will pervade Palestine: convert kings, princes, and people; and send his missionaries all over the world. He will work many miracles: bring fire from heaven; make trees vegetate in a moment; calm and agitate the sea at his will; transform various objects; change the course of rivers; command the winds; and apparently raise the dead. He will bitterly persecute Christianity. He will discover hidden treasures, and lavish them among his followers: a dreadful period of tribulation will follow. He will not come till the Roman empire has entirely ceased, and that cannot be while the kings of the French continue. One of the French kings is, at last, to obtain the whole Roman empire, and will be the greatest and the last of all kings. He is to go to Jerusalem, and lay down his crown and sceptre on Mount Olivet. Then Anti-christ is to appear, and Gog and Magog to emerge. Against them this French king of the Romans is to march; to conquer all nations, destroy all idols, and restore Christianity. The Jews are to be restored," &c. &c. Alc. Op. 1211—1215.

## CHAP. IV.

*The ANGLO-SAXON Te Deum; Jubilate; Magnificat; and Specimens of their Prayers.*

**T**HE, Lof, þe heofa, the, Ðrihten, þe ansettað.

The, æcne fæder, eal eorþa eorþthath.

The, ealle englas, the, heofenas and ealle anwealdum.

The, cherubim and seraphim unablunnenlice sefne clypath C H A P.  
IV.  
Their  
Te Deum.

Ðalig! Ðalig! Ðalig! Ðrihten, Lof þe þe þa!

Fulla gýnt heofenas and eorþe mægen-þrýmme pulþer  
þine.

The, pulþorful eorþacena þe þe,

The, wírgena heofenlic getel,

The, cýþra seýne heofa þe,

The, emþhýrft eorþena halig andet gefomnung,

Fæder, onmæter mægen-þrýmme!

Æppurthe þinne soðne and anlicne sunu;

Ðaligne wíðlice sefþeowenre Læst.

Thu, cýng pulþer cýniges' Christe,

Thu, fæder ece thu eart sunu.

Tha to alýenne thu ansege mann, thu ne afeceost fæmnan  
innath.

Thu ofsefþeowum deaðes anga; Thu onlýrðe geýfeþum  
wicu heofena.

Thu on tha wíðþan healfes Lofes sete on pulþe fæderes.

Ðema thu eart geýfþe sefan tofeow,

The eorþlice þe halgaþ þinum theowum gehelp, tha of  
ðeorfþum bloðe thu alýrðe.

Ece to mib halgum þinum pulþor beon forgyfen.

Ðal to soð þin; and bletþa ýrfeowenryge þine.

And sepece hy and upahof hy oð on ecnecýrge.

Thurh gýnþeowes ðas þe bletgaþ the

And þe heofa naman þinne on worulde and a woruld.

Gemeþema ðe þe þinum buton gýnne of gehelpan.

Gemiltþa ufe, Gemiltþa.

Sý mibheowenryge þin of þe of þa þa þe hýltaþ on the.

On the ic hýlta; ic ne heo gefcýnþ on ecnýrge.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> MS. Cott. Lib. Vespasian, A. 1.

B O O K  
X.The Jubi-  
late.

Ðrýmæth ðrúhtne ealle eopthan; theopíath ðrúhtne on blisse;  
Ingath on gefíhtne hīr on blithneſſe.

Witath forþham the ðrúhten he iſ Loð; he forþhte uſ, and na  
we gýlfe uſ; ſole hīr and ſceap forþopnoðer hīr.

Ingath zacu hīr on anbætnesſe, ceapetunar hīr on ymenum  
anbbettath

Ðeríath namam hīr; forþham the pynſum iſ ðrúhtne, on  
ecneſſe milbheoptner hīr, and oth on cýnpene and cýnpene  
rothpærtneſſ hīr.<sup>2</sup>

The Mag-  
nificat.

Wun ſapel meſſrath Ðrúhten 7 min gaſt gebliffube on Loðe  
minum Ðælenðe.

Forþham the he gereah hīr thínene eab-mobneſſe, rothlice  
heonun-forþ me eabige ſeegath ealle cneopeſſa.

Forþham the me mycele thiſg byðe ſe the mihtig iſ 7 hīr  
nama iſ halig.

7 hīr milb-heoptner of cneopeſſe on cneopeſſe hine on-  
bræbenðum.

De forþhte mægne on hīr eapne. De to-bælte tha oſepmoban  
on mote hýra heoptan.

De aſeapp tha pican of ſetle and tha eab-moban upahof..

Þingriðenðe he mið gobum gefýlðe 7 oſep-mote iðele forþlet.

De aſeng Iſrahel hīr cniht 7 gemunðe hīr milb heoptneſſe.

Ðra he ſppæc to upum ſæberum Abrahame and hīr ſæbe on a  
peopulð.<sup>3</sup>

THE following addresses to the Deity are selected from the Anglo-Saxon remains, to complete the picture of their minds; and to show that, notwithstanding the illiterate age in which they lived, and the superstitions which prevailed, yet that the language of their devotion was not discreditable to their general intellect. These instances will indicate that they studied to connect it both with their feelings and their reason. They are in a poetical form:—

<sup>2</sup> MS. Cott. Vitell. E. 18. Another version from Vespas. A. 1. may be seen in Wanley's excellent Catalogue of the Saxon MSS. p. 222.

<sup>3</sup> Saxon Gosp. Luc. c. 1.

Oh Lord beloved !  
 Oh God our judge !  
 hear me :  
 Everlasting Ruler !  
 I know that my soul  
 with sins is wounded.  
 Heal thou it,  
 O Lord of heaven !  
 And restore thou it,  
 O Governor of life !  
 For thou most easily may,  
 Physician of us all !  
 of all that exist  
 far or wide.

## 2.

O Sovereign of radiance !  
 Creator of man !  
 benign be thy mind  
 to me for good.  
 Give me thy pardon,  
 and thy pity.

May he be merciful,  
 that on earth here  
 we may resist the devil,  
 and work his will !  
 Woe to him for his jollity  
 when he the retribution  
 shall have and see,  
 unless he from the evil  
 has previously ceased.

But happy will he be  
 who here on earth,  
 day and night,  
 obeys the Lord,  
 and always works his will.  
 Well to him will be this work  
 when he the retribution  
 shall have and see,  
 if he continues it  
 to a good end.

## 3.

O Light of light !  
 Oh joy of life !  
 grant it to me.  
 Blessed King of Glory !  
 what I for my soul  
 pray of the heavens  
 for the eternal honour.

Thou art the benign God ;  
 thou hast and rulest  
 One over all.  
 Earth and heaven,  
 of their various creatures,  
 Thou art the true Creator ;  
 One over all  
 those living on the earth,  
 as in heaven above ;  
 thou art the Saviour God.

Nor may any man  
 profit thee  
 that are collected together  
 over the wide ground ;  
 men on the earth,  
 over all the world.  
 Nor can we ever say,  
 nor indeed know,  
 how noble thou art,  
 Eternal Lord !

Nor though the host of an-  
 gels  
 up in heaven,  
 in their assembled wisdom,  
 should begin to say it,  
 might they ever narrate,  
 nor the number know,  
 how great thou art,  
 Mighty Lord !  
 But vast is still the wonder,  
 Governor of Angels,  
 if thou thyself should excite  
 them.

C H A P.  
IV.

Anglo-  
 Saxon  
 Prayers.

**B O O K** Chief of Victory,  
 { **X.** how glorious thou art,  
 mighty and strong in power!  
 King of all kings!  
 the living Christ!  
 Creator of all the worlds!  
 Ruler of angels,  
 Noblest of all nobility,  
 Saviour Lord!

Thou art the Prince  
 that on former days,  
 the joy of all women,  
 fair wast born  
 at Bethlehem,  
 that city,  
 a comfort to mankind!  
 an honour to all  
 the children of men!  
 To them that believe  
 on the living God,  
 and on that eternal light  
 up in the skies.

Thy power is so great,  
 Mighty Lord!  
 so that none truly know it,  
 nor the exaltation  
 of the state of the angels  
 of the King of heaven.

I confess thee,  
 Almighty God!  
 I believe on thee,  
 beloved Saviour!  
 that thou art  
 the great one,  
 and the strong in power,  
 and the condescending  
 of all gods,  
 and the Eternal King

of all creatures;  
 and I am  
 one of little worth,  
 and a depraved man,  
 who is sinning here  
 very nearly  
 day and night.  
 I do as I would not;  
 sometimes in actions,  
 sometimes in words,  
 sometimes in thought,  
 very guilty  
 in conscious wickedness  
 oft and repeatedly.

But I beseech thee now,  
 Lord of heaven!  
 And pray to thee,  
 best of human-born,  
 that thou pity me,  
 Mighty Lord!  
 High King of Heaven!  
 and the Holy Spirit;  
 and aid me  
 Father Almighty!  
 that I thy will  
 may perform,  
 before from this frail life  
 I depart.  
 Refuse me not,  
 Lord of Glory!  
 But grant me,  
 blessed, illustrious King!  
 permit me, with angels,  
 up to ascend  
 to sit in the sky;  
 and praise the God of heaven  
 with the tongue of the holy  
 world without end.<sup>4</sup> Amen.

---

<sup>4</sup> See the original Saxon in Cedmon, App.

OF the Latin prayers at the end of every psalm in the Saxon and Latin Psalter, the following may be selected as specimens of the Anglo-Saxon private devotions in prose:—

CHAP.  
IV.

“ O Lord! our King, and our God! propitious, hearken unto the voice of thy petitioners. Deign to hear them devoutly approaching thee in the morning hour, that through the greatness of thy mercy, and cleansed from all the stain of sins, we may enter thy house, and every where sing thy praises in thy fear.”<sup>5</sup>

“ What is man, O Lord! that thou art mindful of him, or the son of man, unless thou shouldest redeem him, that he may not perish for ever? Impart therefore to us the help we need; Thou who hast given thy precious blood for us! Oh, grant that those whom thy death has redeemed may glorify thee in their lives.”<sup>6</sup>

“ Regard and hear us, O Lord, our God! and illuminate, by the contemplation of thy presence, the eyes of our mind, that we sleep not in death; assist these our endeavours to please thee, which thou thyself has afforded to us. Give us the full accomplishment of that good work, who hast given us its first principle, the will to do it. Grant that we may be able to complete it, Oh, thou who hast imparted the wish to begin it.”<sup>7</sup>

“ Make known to us, O Lord! the ways of life, and fill us with the delights of thy right hand. Place thy yoke upon us, which is so sweet under thy direction, and grant to each of us that he may bless thee with the affection of his heart, and glorify thee by his intellect, through,” &c.<sup>8</sup>

“ Oh Lord! our strength, and the horn of our salvation! impart to us the fervor of thy love, that our minds may love thee with unwearied affection; and by the effect of this attachment to thee may be turned towards our neighbour with benig- nity, through,” &c.<sup>9</sup>

“ Govern us, O Lord! and then we shall want nothing; for what is there to be desired under thy government but thyself alone? What is there to be sought for while thou sparest us, but thy glory? Lead us then through the path of justice,

<sup>5</sup> Spelman's Anglo-Saxon Psalter, addit. to psalm v.

<sup>6</sup> Ibid. ad. ps. viii.

<sup>7</sup> Ibid. ad. ps. xii.

<sup>8</sup> Ibid. ps. xv.

<sup>9</sup> Ibid. ps. xvii.

## BOOK

## X.

and convert our souls from every evil action to virtue. May we, under thy protection, neither fear the adversities that may assail us, nor dread the approach of the shadow of death or its evils.<sup>10</sup>

"Lord! strong and mighty! Lord of the virtues! King of Glory! cleanse our heart from every sin; keep our hands guiltless; and separate our souls from all vanity, that we may be fit to receive in thy holy place blessings from thee, O Lord, our God."<sup>11</sup>

"O Lord, our King! who continueth for ever; to whom all the earth is deservedly resounding with the voices of praise, and singing thy glory and honour; grant, we beseech thee, strength to thy people, against the evils of the present day, that we may enjoy prosperity here, and trust in thine eternal promises hereafter, through," &c.<sup>12</sup>

"O Lord, our Redeemer! O God of truth! who hast redeemed mankind, sold to sin, not by silver or gold, but by the blood of thy precious Son, be our protector, and look down upon our lowliness; and because great is the multitude of thy kindnesses, oh, raise our desires always to partake them, and excite our minds to explore them, through," &c.<sup>13</sup>

"O Lord! who hast become our refuge before the mountains were made, or the dry land was formed: Author of time, yet without any limit of time thyself! In thy nature there is no past. To thee the future is never new. There everlasting virtue is always present. There immutable truth endures for ever."<sup>14</sup>

"For thy name's sake, O Lord! extend to us thy mercy. What is sweeter than that by which thou hast freed us from death, and made us thine associates in immortality! By which thou suppliest our helplessness, and grantest to us to continue in the fulness of holiness. May it now render us acceptable to thee, as it has already reconciled thee to us when alienated from thee,"<sup>15</sup>

"O Lord! who dwellest in the loftiest space; whose ineffable Godhead is confined to no created circuit, nor can be described by any mortal breath; look down, we implore thee, on thy humble servants, both in heaven and on earth. May no

<sup>10</sup> Spelman's Anglo-Saxon Psalter, addit. psalm to xxxii.

<sup>11</sup> Ibid. ps. xxiii.

<sup>12</sup> Ibid. ps. xxviii.

<sup>13</sup> Ibid. ps. xxx.

<sup>14</sup> Ibid. ps. lxxxix.

<sup>15</sup> Ibid. ps. cviii.

pride ~~creep into~~ our thoughts or actions which ~~can~~ ~~are~~ from ~~as~~ the eyes of thy mercy! May that sincere humility and submission be within us, which may ~~make~~ us worthy of thy regard, and raise us to the reward of thy future glorification." <sup>16</sup>

"O God of heaven and earth! whose all-seeing providence is everlasting! O God, by whose death even Tartarus was illuminated; by whose resurrection the multitude of thy holy ones was gladdened; at whose ascension the host of angels exulted; we implore the excelling virtue of thy glory, that, directed by thee into the way of eternal life, we may be defended by that arm, under whose protection those who are honoured by thy favour magnify thee in heaven." <sup>17</sup>

"Purify, O Lord, our God! our heart and reins by the fire of the Holy Spirit, that we may serve thee in chastity of heart and body. Free us from all vice, and have mercy upon us, whom thou hast redeemed by thine inestimable intercourse." <sup>18</sup>

THE prayer to the 49th Psalm concludes thus:—

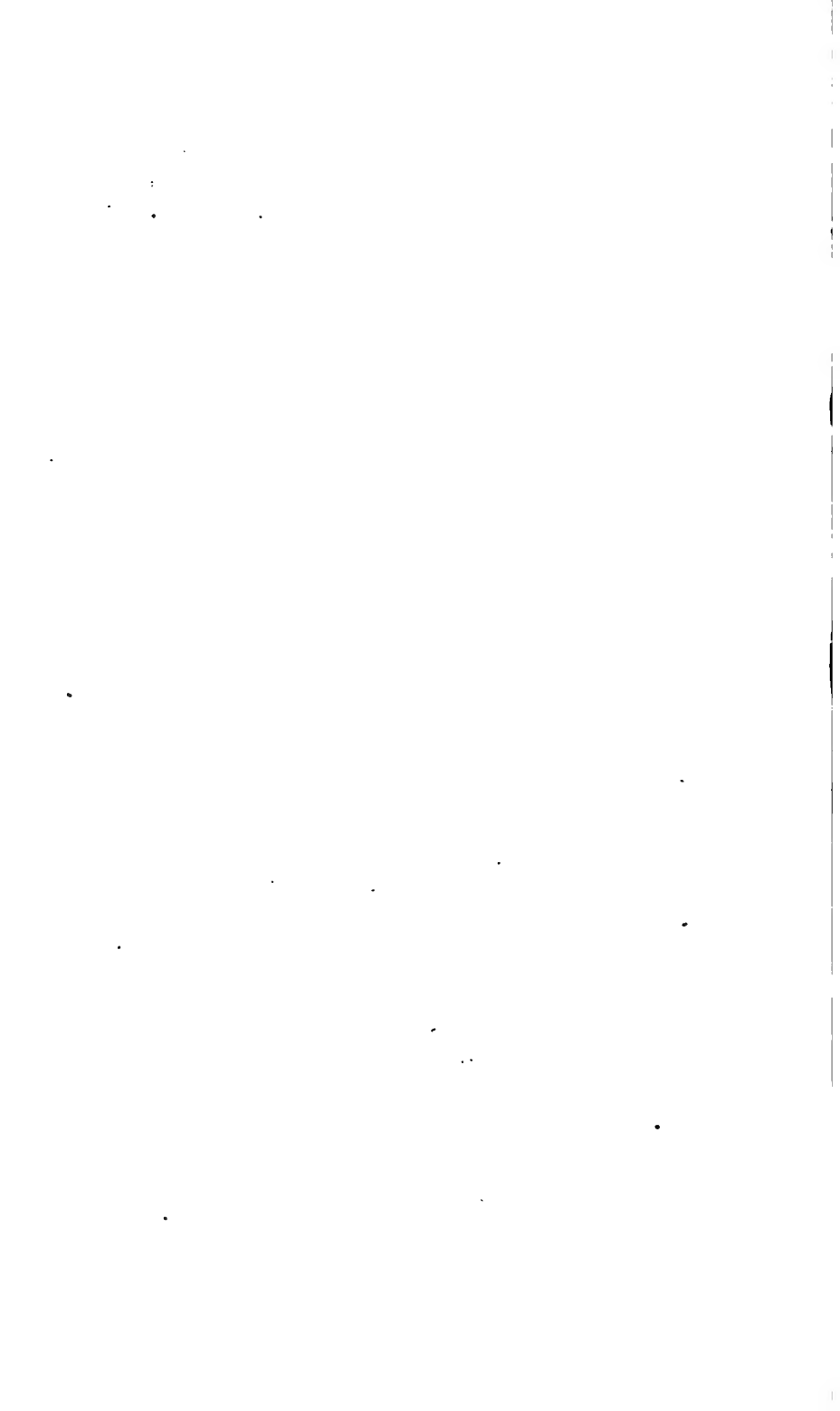
"Despise not our contrite and humble heart; and by the ineffable power of the Trinity, may there be the testimony of the One Divinity that, strengthened by the Father, renewed by the Son, and guarded by the Holy Spirit, we may rejoice in thee." <sup>19</sup>

<sup>16</sup> Spelman's Anglo-Saxon Psalter, addit. to ps. cxii.

<sup>17</sup> Ibid. ps. cxxxviii.

<sup>18</sup> Ibid. ps. xxv.

<sup>19</sup> Ibid. ps. xlix.



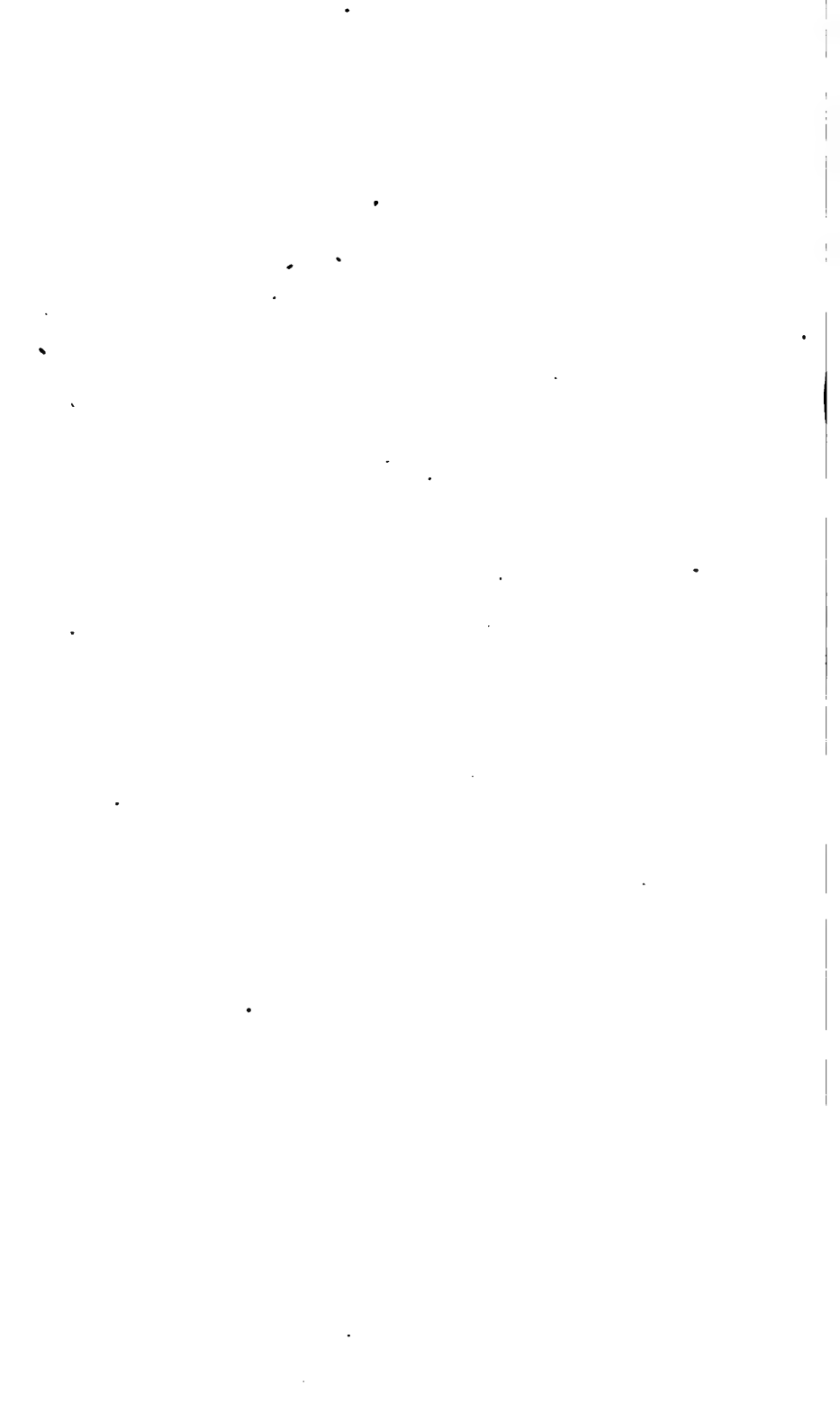
A  
VINDICATION  
OF THE  
GENUINENESS  
OF THE  
ANCIENT BRITISH POEMS  
OF  
ANEURIN, TALIESIN, LLYWARCHHEN,  
AND MERDHIN,  
WITH  
*SPECIMENS OF THE POEMS.*

---

By SHARON TURNER, F.A.S.

---

SECOND EDITION.



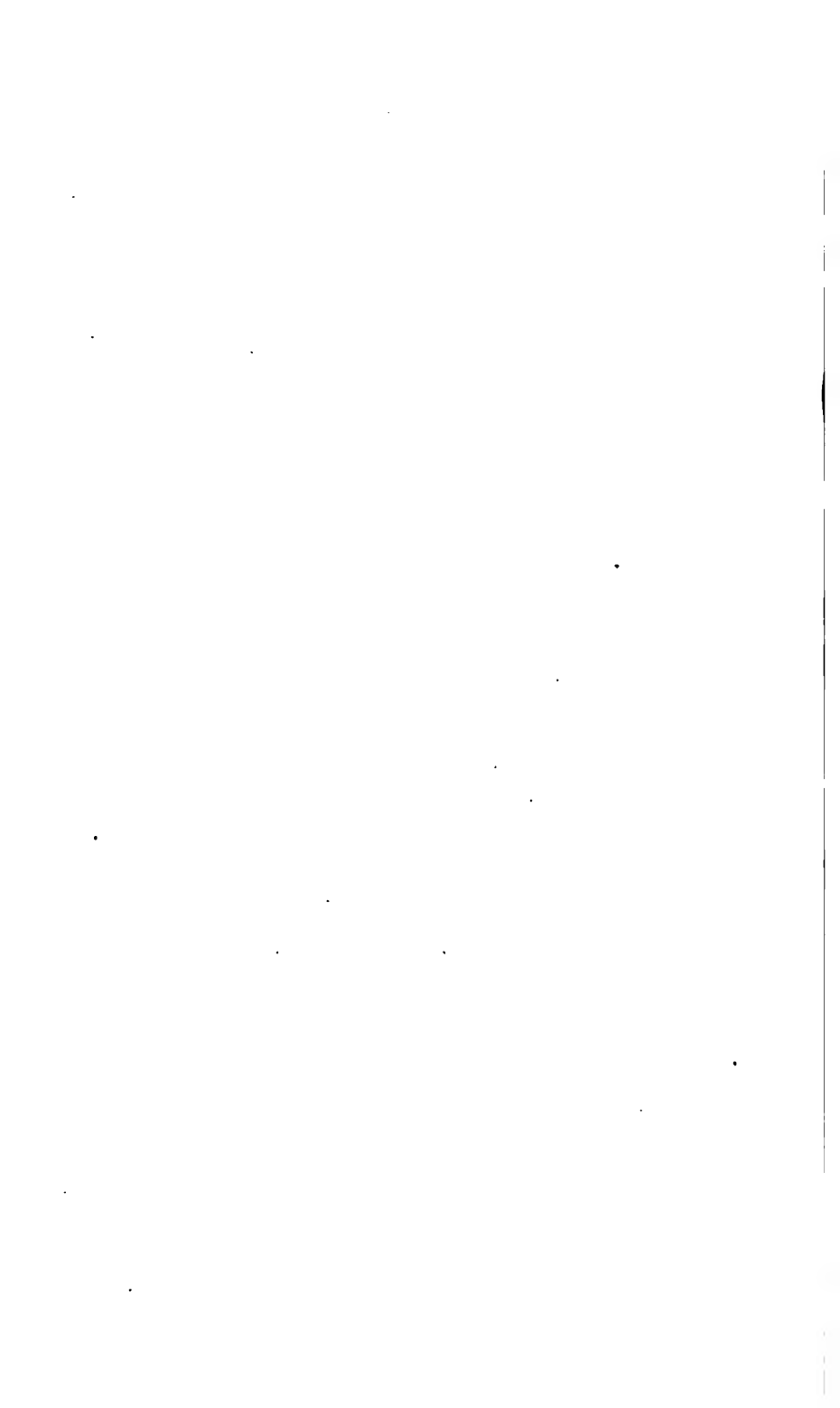
## P R E F A C E.

---

**T**HE genuineness of these poems has been publicly impeached by Mr. Pinkerton in his preface to *Babour*, and in a Review (not distinguished by the urbanity of its style, or the correctness of its criticism) of my *Anglo-Saxon History*, published in the *Critical Review* for January, 1800. Mr. Malcolm Laing has also attacked them in a note to his *Dissertation on Ossian's Poems*, and some other gentlemen in private societies have occasionally depreciated them.

The hostility of men, respectable for their literary talents, could not be continued against these poems, without much injury to their credit. It was, therefore, necessary to abandon them to undeserved neglect, or to vindicate them from the objections of their enemies, by a series of legitimate reasoning.

Having quoted them in the first volume of the *Anglo-Saxon History*, I was charged with gross credulity for accrediting them. Thus, unexpectedly involved in the controversy, I hope to be pardoned for intruding on the public with a publication on the subject. As I am an Englishman, I have no patriotic prejudice in their favour; but as an amateur of literature, I think them deserving of attention, and for the reasons which I shall proceed to state, I believe those to which I have alluded to be genuine.



## TABLE OF CONTENTS.

---

	Page
GENERAL remarks on the old British poems.....	499
The proposition discussed in the essay .....	504
Aneurin's poem .....	<i>ibid.</i>
Taliesin's poems .....	505
Llywarch Hên .....	<i>ibid.</i>
Merdhin .....	<i>ibid.</i>

### THE EXTERNAL EVIDENCE.

I. The old MSS. existing of these poems .....	508
II. That these poems, or some of them, and their authors, have been mentioned or alluded to by a series of bards, whose works still exist undisputed from before the twelfth century to a recent period .....	515
Summary of the preceding Evidence .....	541
III. That there were bards among the Britons in the sixth century...	545
On the Lays and Bards of Bretagne .....	551
IV. That Aneurin, Taliesin, Llywarch Hên, and Merdhin then existed .....	559
V. That the Britons had then the art of writing.....	572
VI. That other writings of the sixth century have come down to us	576
VII. That the genuine writings of another Briton of the sixth century have reached us, which are suspected by no one .....	<i>ibid.</i>
VIII. That in the twelfth century there were writings of old British bards extant, then called ancient .....	577

### THE INTERNAL EVIDENCE.

I. That the subjects of this poetry could answer no purpose of interest in the twelfth century .....	581
II. That their subjects were the most unlikely of all others for a forger to have chosen.....	<i>ibid.</i>

	Page
III. That Arthur is spoken of in a manner inconsistent with the sup- positions of forgery .....	584
IV. That these subjects and allusions are such as, if genuine, might be expected from their real authors .....	586
V. That the language is not obvious to modern Welshmen, and has therefore an important feature of the language of the times to which they pretend .....	605
VI. That their historical allusions are true .....	606
VII. That the manners they express are consistent .....	610
VIII. That the form and composition of the poems omit the period... ..	611
 The ancient British doctrines on the soul's transmigrations .....	 620
Taliesin's poem, Preiddaw Annwn .....	626
His poems on Urien, or the Battle of Argoed Llwyfain .....	629
Objections against these poems answered .....	632
Rise of rime traced to the fourth, sixth, and seventh centuries.....	633
Some poems of the seventh, eighth, and tenth centuries still existing...	641
Regular establishment of bards mentioned in Howel Dha .....	642
Chasms in the literature of all countries .....	644

A

# VINDICATION

OF THE

## GENUINENESS

OF THE

### *ANCIENT BRITISH POEMS.*

---

It is not unknown to the curious reader, that there are Welsh poems extant, which are stated to have been written by Aneurin, Taliesin, Llywarch Hên, and Merdhin, who lived in the sixth century. Other literary impostures having subjected these poems also to a similar suspicion, and many gentlemen having desired to be informed of the nature of the evidence, on which they can be ascribed to authors so remote, it may perhaps be acceptable to literary men, to have the evidence in their favour, and the arguments by which they may be supported, fairly and dispassionately stated.

Many persons are better qualified for this office than myself; but as no one has yet particularly discussed the subject, I think I shall not impertinently apply some part of the leisure of the summer to its consideration. I quoted these poems, in the History of the Anglo-Saxons, because I thought them genuine; and the objections which this occasioned, have induced me to investigate the question as carefully as I was able. I will adduce with temper, and I hope with fairness, the evidence in their favour: and I will notice, in the proper places, all the arguments which I have heard against them. The cool and steady judgment of the public, which, after due reflection, never decides wrongfully between contending partizans, will determine the dispute.

The subject is unquestionably important. So much gloom rests upon the history of our island, during the period of the

Saxon invasions, that the discovery of any authors, contemporary with that period, could not but be a valuable present to our curiosity. If these poems be genuine, they must furnish very interesting matter for the contemplation of the antiquary and the philosopher, even although their rude and martial strains should want those elegancies which delight the refined taste. Their general subject is, above all others, interesting: it is the struggle of the ancient Britons against the invading Saxons. They describe the battles of which all other memory has perished. They celebrate many patriotic warriors, whom time has almost defrauded of their fame. They exhibit curious, and striking, manners. They throw much light on the history of their æra, and they contain many passages which poets need not disdain to applaud. Indeed the celebrity which they have for ages enjoyed among their own countrymen, is an ample testimony of their genius.

But if they had no other merit, they would be highly valuable for their language. What can gratify the philologer more than to have such specimens of the language of the ancient inhabitants of these islands? The language of the British bards, in the sixth century, must have been substantially the same with the language of the Britons who withstood the valour of Cæsar, and of course must present us with a venerable image of, perhaps, the earliest language that appeared in Europe. The philosopher who loves to trace the progress of intellect, and to observe its original associations, and selected forms, in those barbarous times when the arts of mental cultivation were little understood, will highly appreciate the works of men who flourished at a period so early and so singular. If these poems be genuine, they are of the greatest value; and it cannot be a matter of small moment, to inquire if they be genuine.

These ancient poems, and their advocates, have been arraigned with a severity which, on literary subjects, is always very blameable. Whatever latitude may be given to the angry feelings in political controversy, where the magnitude of the contending interests becomes an apology for occasional warmth, there can be no justification of asperity on a point of antiquarian doubt. Indeed, any anger between literary men is not only unbecoming, but absurd. The world takes no part in their animosity. It will always form its own conclusions, not from the language, but the facts of the controversy. We who now read with disgust, the viru-

lence even of a Milton, or a Scaliger, and who turn, with abhorrence, from the malignity of a Schioppius, cannot doubt but that our inferior works will be as revolting to the taste of our posterity, if virulence contaminate the pages, which ought to be sacred to fair statement, to forbearing civility, and dispassionate reasoning. It is a disgrace to no one to disbelieve the genuineness of the ancient Welsh poetry, if the evidence does not satisfy his judgment; but neither can they be culpable for accrediting it, who think that the balance of probabilities is decisively in its favour.

These poems have not become known to us under the circumstances which attended those of Chatterton and Macpherson, or the pseudo-Shakspeare. They are not works now starting up suddenly for the first time to our knowledge. They do not owe their discovery to any individual. No friendly chest — no ruinous turret — no auspicious accident — has given them to us. No man's interest or reputation is connected with their discovery. Their supporters are, therefore, at least, disinterested. They have been in existence, and have been known to be so for many centuries, but they have never been brought forward to answer any purpose of private interest, or national vanity. Their countrymen have long fondly cherished them, but have been, till very lately, even censurably careless whether any of their neighbours either knew or respected them. Such indifference as this, about documents so curious, never yet has attended any forgery. Nothing can be more favourable to their cause — nothing can more strongly mark the difference which subsists between these poems and all those writings which are known to have been fabricated.

It may be reasonably asked, Why, as they have been so long in existence and credit in Wales, have they not become more known to the world before our time?

The observation applies, however, not to these bards only, but to all the Welsh literature; for although that has been long in existence, though above 1000 MSS.<sup>1</sup> of its different branches are still in being, yet which of them has been consulted or spoken of by Englishmen? The Welsh have poems, romances, chronicles, grammars, treatises on music,

---

<sup>1</sup> This number of MSS. of course includes many transcripts of the same compositions.

agriculture, and astronomy, theological, ethical, and medical works of different authors, from the time of the bards, to our own, which are nevertheless as little known in England, or in Europe, as the compositions of the Chinese. — With the writings of most of the nations on the Continent we are familiar; but we have permitted ourselves to be ignorant of the literature of our neighbours, who are only parted from us by the Severn and the Wye. Has this been our fault or theirs? Let us inquire.

Almost all the men who cultivated literature in Wales before the sixteenth century, unfortunately for our indolent curiosity, wrote in their native language. The bards of the twelfth, and succeeding centuries, whose genuineness no man affects to doubt, their chronicles, their clergy, and their authors on other subjects, did not extend their views of fame beyond their petty principality, and therefore composed in Welsh. But the Anglo-Normans, and their descendants, would as willingly have studied Coptic as Welsh. Such, at least, was the opinion of the *polished* and *elegant* Anglo-Saxon about it, that in one of their grants of land in Cornwall, the king, after mentioning the Saxon name of the place, says, “which the inhabitants there called *barbarico nomine*, by the barbarous name of Pendyfig.”<sup>2</sup> This barbarous name was Welsh!

The unvarying neglect of this language, and its authors, descended from the Anglo-Saxons to the Anglo-Normans, and of course the knowledge of Welsh literature was confined to the Welsh counties.

It is a truth, which certainly casts some disgrace on our national curiosity or our candour, that unless Welshmen had themselves introduced their authors to our notice, we should to this day have been as ignorant of their literature as we are of the MSS. and monuments now existing in Great Tartary. The curious and interesting catalogue of the Welsh MSS. which Edward Lhwyd made from personal inspection, and printed in his *Archæologia*, first made Europe acquainted with the nature and extent of his countrymen's compositions. It is greatly to be lamented, that Lhwyd was patronized so meanly, and that misfortune was permitted to shed so much evil on his life. He was one of those few men, whose liter-

---

<sup>2</sup> MSS. Cott. Lib. Claud. B. 6. p. 38.

ary exertions have merited the liberal gratitude of their country. He was one of the many who never experienced it.

The political circumstances of the Anglo-Saxons having driven the Britons into Wales, and of perpetually warring with them afterwards, created so much hostility and hatred between the two nations, that each undervalued the other, and despised both its language and its literature. When these envenomed feelings abated, the habit of neglect long survived the hostility.

The Welsh language is also peculiar and original. Men who have enjoyed a classical education, pass with ease and pleasantness to French, Italian, or Spanish. But the Welsh is so unlike the other languages of Europe, and its mutations present so many difficulties, or at least the appearance of them, to a learner, that even antiquaries have been, and are, deterred from acquiring it. Interest, ambition, and fame, which have led some to explore the Sanscreeet, and the Chinese, have been found so little allied to any proficiency in Welsh knowledge, that even these Syrens have never influenced any to do that justice to Wales, which strange and distant nations have frequently obtained. Welshmen, on the other hand, have been too proud, and too reclude. They did not forgive the seizure of their country, and they despised too much the warriors who acquired and kept it. Hence what Englishmen would not learn Welsh to know, the natives of the principality would not translate.

Better feelings have at last predominated. Some individuals appeared in the last century, who wished the literature of their country to be more diffused. The idea was too novel to be much attended to. A spirit of literary patriotism has begun, however, to diffuse itself, and has reached many individuals, whose exertions have contributed to put the public in possession of the Welsh remains. Among these the gentleman who has nearly published a new Welsh dictionary, who has given us a translation of the poems of Llywarch Hên, who edited those of David ab Gwilym, and the Cambrian Register, and what is still more important, who has essentially contributed to the preservation and notoriety of Welsh literature, by editing, with two other Cambrian patriots, its most ancient and important remains, is well entitled to our praise.

By this publication, entitled "The Myvyrian Archaiology

of Wales, collected out of ancient MSS." <sup>3</sup> the public have, for the first time, before them, in a printed form, the Works of the ancient Poets, whose genuineness I hope to vindicate, and those of the succeeding poets, down to the end of the fourteenth century. These occupy the first volume. The second contains their curious historical triads, some genealogies, and historical chronicles. In the third are printed the moral aphorisms ascribed to Cato the wise; the maxims, and old sayings, and proverbs of the Welsh; their triads on the laws of poetry; the triads on naval, political, and intellectual subjects, called the Triads of the Bards of Britain; triads on their most ancient laws; a copy of the laws of Heweldha, from a MS. of the twelfth century; extracts on their music, and a collection of ancient British music in an obsolete notation. It is stated, that other pieces of their literature will in due time appear. No other nation but the Hebrew can show such a body of ethical and intellectual thought, and of versified composition of the same antiquity.

THE PROPOSITION, WHICH IS THE SUBJECT OF THIS  
ESSAY, STATED.

The proposition, which I shall proceed to support is this :  
 " That there are poems now existing in the Welsh, or ancient British language, which were written by Aneurin, Taliesin, Llywarch Hên, and Merdhin, who flourished " between the years 500 and 600."

The poems, which have been ascribed to these authors, occupy the first 153 pages of the Welsh Archæology, and are entitled " The Cynveirdd," or the most ancient Poets.

The great poem of Aneurin is entitled the Gododin. Its subject is the battle of Catteraeth, in which he fought against the Saxons. He was a British chieftain in some part of the North, probably among the Ottadini, in the sixth century. The Saxons conquered in the battle with such slaughter, that Aneurin was one of three who were the only survivors of the distinguished men who led the Britons to the conflict. The poet was afterwards killed treacherously by one Eiddyn.

---

<sup>3</sup> Printed in 1801, in two volumes, large octavo. The volume of poetry contains 584 pages of double columns. The other, of prose, extends to 628 pages. A third volume has been since published.

His poem contains 920 lines, of varied measure, but all rhimed. Its object appears to be to commemorate the brave patriots who were engaged in the battle. Another poem on the Months also bears his name; and of two poems, entitled "The Incantation of Mælderw," that in some MSS. have Taliesin's name, it may be doubted if one be not more properly referable to Aneurin.<sup>4</sup>

The poems of Taliesin are on different subjects. The most important, are those which concern the battles between the Britons and the Saxons; and these are the poems for whose genuineness I argue. He lived in the sixth century. His principal patron was Urien, king of a little state called Reged, of which the position is not certain. To this king ten poems are devoted, which celebrate his patriotic battles. There are also elegies of Taliesin, on other British warriors, as Owain, the son of Urien, Ercwlf, Madawc the bold, and Erov the fierce; Aeddon of Mon, Uther Pendragon, and Corroi, the son of Dairy. His other poems are of less value. Some are unintelligible, because full of Bardic or Druidical mysticism, and perhaps some are ascribed to him, of which he was not the author. These, however, may, from internal evidence, and other circumstances, be discriminated by a careful and intelligent critic, well acquainted with the language. All that bear his name have been printed in the *Archaiology*.

Llywarch Hên lived both in the sixth and seventh centuries. He was a prince of Argoed, in Cumberland. He visited the court of Arthur, and consumed his most vigorous years in opposing the Anglo-Saxons. As they advanced, he took refuge with his surviving children in Powys, and shared in the wars of the hospitable Cynddylan. Most of his poems are of historical utility. One is an elegy on Geraint, a Devonshire leader — another is an elegy on Urien, king of Reged — another on his patron Cynddylan — another on Cadwallon, the son of Cadvan. The poem on his own great age, and the fate of his children, who perished in the wars, is very interesting.

Merdhin the Caledonian, also surnamed Wyllt, or the Salvage, has not left much. He was taught by Taliesin, and of course lived in the sixth and seventh centuries. His *Afallenau*, or a Poem on an Orchard, which had been given

---

<sup>4</sup> See them in *Archaiology*, pp. 61. and 84. The poem on the Months is after the *Gododin*, p. 14.

to him, contains some allusions to the events of his time, which are curious. As this bard had the reputation of a prophet, there are some things ascribed to him which he never wrote, and some which he did write have been interpolated.<sup>5</sup> The dialogue between him and his sister is obviously surreptitious; nor do I accredit all the Hoianau. Judicious criticism will easily detect the spurious poems.

I will now state the course of argument which I shall adopt to prove the proposition above mentioned, and I hope to make it as satisfactory as the case will admit. The reader will, in justice to the subject, recollect its antiquity, and therefore neither expect the unerring precision of mathematical reasoning, nor the accumulation of evidence overpowering doubt, which might be adduced, if the authors in question had been modern poets.

The evidence in favour of any ancient author may be divided into two sorts — The external, and the internal. I shall first consider

#### THE EXTERNAL EVIDENCE.

I will begin this by mentioning,

1st, The old MSS. which now exist of these poems, and then show,

2dly, That these poems, or some of them, and their authors, have been mentioned, or alluded to, by a series of bards, whose works still exist undisputed, from before the twelfth century, to a recent period.

These facts will show that they are at least no modern forgery, and that they were in existence in the twelfth century. The question will then become this — Were these poems existing genuinely in the twelfth century, or were they then forged?

To decide this great question, it will be important to inquire,

3dly, If there were any bards among the Britons in the sixth century; and,

4thly, If such bards as Aneurin, Taliesin, Llywarch Hên, and Merdhin, then existed.

If we shall find that the Britons had bards so early, and in particular these individual bards, we shall have gained one

---

<sup>5</sup> Giraldus expressly states this — his words will be quoted presently.

step in our researches, and this step will not be an inconsiderable one.

But as the question will turn on the probability of these bards leaving MSS. as well as on their existence, it will be necessary to consider,

5thly, If any writing of a century so remote as the sixth have come down to us.

6thly, If the Britons had then the art of writing.

7thly, If the writing of any other Briton of this period, whose genuineness is undisputed, has come down to us.

Should these questions be satisfactorily answered in the affirmative, another step in our progress will be gained. If the genuine composition of any other Briton of this age has survived to us, so might the works of these British bards.

I think I shall make a third advance, if I show, from incontrovertible authority,

8thly, That in the twelfth century there were writings of old British bards extant, which were *then* called *ancient*.

This chain of proofs appears to me to make the external evidence as strong as the case will admit. I submit that we receive the poems of Homer as genuine, on a degree of external evidence not more satisfactory.

I presume that I shall have acquired at least a right to say, that after this series of facts in favour of these poems, nothing but their internal evidence counteracting them can warrant us in discrediting them. On

#### THEIR INTERNAL EVIDENCE,

I will endeavour to state,

1st, That the subjects of this poetry could answer no purpose of interest in the twelfth century.

2dly, That their subjects were the most unlikely of all others for a forger to have chosen.

3dly, That Arthur is spoken of in a manner inconsistent with the supposition of forgery.

4thly, That the subjects are such as, if genuine, might be expected from their real authors.

5thly, That the language is not obvious to modern Welshmen, and has therefore an important feature of the language of the times to which they pretend.

6thly, That their historical allusions are true.

7thly, That the manners they express are consistent.

8thly, That the form and composition of the poems suit the period.

I shall then attempt to answer the main objections, which have been urged against them; and conclude with showing that the forgery could not have been practised without detection, in those times; that there is nothing extraordinary in the fact, which this essay is directed to substantiate, that these poems are attested by an unvaried stream of national belief, and that any scepticism about them has been of recent origin.

---

#### “THE OLD MANUSCRIPTS NOW EXISTING OF THESE POEMS.”

If there had been no ancient MSS. of this poetry to have produced, it would not alone have been a conclusive argument against it, because the ancient MSS. are usually superseded by subsequent transcripts, and because men often admit works to be genuine, without possessing very ancient MSS. of them. Of the numerous Greek and Latin works, which we possess, how few are there of which very ancient MSS. can be adduced!

Time and accident consume MSS. as well as buildings and men. Old copies decay or are lost, and new ones succeed. When families die, their libraries become dispersed, and many a MS. and book, which were once hoarded as treasures, have mouldered on stalls, or have been used as waste paper. Sons very often inherit neither the taste nor the knowledge of their fathers; and they who squander the estates of their ancestors, are not very likely to be careful of their books.

A great curiosity has, in the last century, been cherished for the oldest MSS. of authors. In former times, however, there was no such anxiety to preserve ancient transcripts. Some MSS. were preferred to others for the costliness of their decorations, and some for the beauty of the writing; but the mere age was not in former times particularly appreciated. Even they who valued the authors they preserved, were not aware of the importance of the earliest MSS. because when no one dreamt of doubting the genuineness of a work, they would make no provisions for proving it to a future generation.

It is therefore a matter of pure chance, that any ancient MSS. of a book has descended to us.

We should be somewhat surprised, if we inquired minutely into the evidence on which we accredit the genuineness of the numerous ancient authors of Greece and Rome, because in many cases we should find, that far as antiquity of MSS. was concerned, it is very slight. I believe that we have in no case the MSS. actually penned by the author, scarcely any in the author's time, and very few within two or three centuries after him. We have often adopted the title of the MSS. we have found, and have ascribed them to the authors whose names were prefixed. In some of the most celebrated, we can attest the genuineness by a series of quotations and allusions of succeeding ages. In many we only find notices that such authors wrote on such topics. Several have been received without either of these protections. And yet we have generally admitted them to be genuine, and laugh at the extravagance of Hardouin, who rashly pronounced the classics to be modern forgeries.

The fact which I have urged, that these poems have passed in Wales from age to age unquestioned, operates against the existence of many ancient MSS. They could not have anticipated doubt in a case where they neither had any, nor heard of any; and could not therefore have provided against it by carefully hoarding the most ancient MSS. for their posterity to produce. The doubt, however, having been raised in our times, there can be no question but that the old MSS. now remaining will be henceforward very anxiously preserved.

There is another reason why old MSS. cannot be expected to abound in Wales. This is, that for so confined a district, it has been very often the object of military spoil. It was invaded and ravaged by many Anglo-Saxon kings. It had mourned the depredations of the Irish, and still more of the North men. Our Harold renewed their distresses in the angriest form before the Norman conquest. It suffered under William and the other Norman kings; and no one can forget the conquest of Edward the First. Welsh history abounds with civil feuds, and their correspondent ruin. The destruction of the superb library at Raglan Castle occurred in the time of Cromwell, and many other libraries were dispersed or destroyed.

Yet notwithstanding these losses, there are two, if not three ancient MSS. extant, which have no appearance of having been written later than the twelfth century. One of these is

the Black Book of Caermarthen, which, with the other, is now in the library at Hengurt, in Merionethshire. There is also another MS. in the Red Book of Hergest in Jesus College, Oxford, which seems to have been written in the fourteenth century.

The MSS. in the library at Hengurt are described by Lhwyd in his *Archæologia Britannica*, published 1707.

Mr. Lhwyd says, that the library of Hengurt, collected in the reign of Charles the First by that learned and candid antiquary Robert Vaughan, of Hengurt, esquire, consists of about seventy old MSS. on parchment, and a considerable number of others on paper.

"The oldest MSS. I saw at Hengurt, is y Lhyvyr dy o Gaer Vyrddyn, or the Black Book of Caermarthen. It is a quarto of fifty-four leaves, containing poems of the sixth century, by Myrdhyn Wyllt, Taliesin, Llywarch Hên, and Elaeth. The former part of this book is in a large fair character, and seems considerably older than the latter, and the latter might possibly have been transcribed by that noted Bard Cyndhelu Brydydh Mawr, or at least in his time, which was about the year 1160. I am sensible Dr. Davies places this poet ninety years later; but in this MS. fol. 52., I find he writes an elegy on the death of Madog ab Mredydh, Prince of Powys, which was in the year 1158." — P. 225.

That Lhwyd is correct in placing Cyndhelu about 1160 there can be no doubt. His poems prove it.

In another part of his catalogue, he expresses himself in Welsh of this same MS. what may be literally translated thus:

"The Black Book of Caermarthen, a volume of fifty-four leaves quarto, parchment, in the library of Mr. Vaughan, at Hengurt. The first half of this seems to have been written in a very ancient large hand. The rest is in a later hand, but ancient."<sup>6</sup> He then specifies its contents. Among these are the principal poems of Merddhin and Llywarch Hên, with some of Taliesin. The more recent hand-writing comes in at fol. 45.

From those who have lately inspected this MS. I understand that the first part is written like prose, without the distinctions of the poetical lines, which is a mark of its antiquity. The Welsh Archæology enables me to give the reader a spe-

---

<sup>6</sup> P. 261.

cimen of this, as the editors have printed some pages out of it with exactness. It is in a large hand.

Gogonedauc argluit  
hanpich guell. Athue  
dicco de egluis. achagell A  
kagell. ac egluis. A vast-  
ad. a diffuis. A. Teir fin-  
haun yssit. Due uch guit.  
ac un uch eluit. A. yris-  
gaud ar dit. A. siric ap'  
wit, Athuendiguiste aw-  
raham pen fit. A. Vuchet  
tragiuit. A. adar aguen-  
en. A. attpaur a dien.<sup>7</sup>

It requires some attention to distinguish the lines and their rhimes, which are these :

Gogonedauc argluit hanpich guell  
Ath uedicco de egluis achagell.  
A. kagell ac egluis  
A. vastad a diffuis  
A. Teir finhaun yssit  
Due uch guit  
Ac un uch eluit  
A. yris gaud ar dit  
A. siric ap' wit  
Ath uendiguiste awraham pen fit  
A. Vuchet tragiuit  
A. adar aguenen  
A. attpaur a dien.

The first part, by the style of writing, seems, as I am informed, to be the production of the tenth century, or thereabouts. The latter part resembles in the hand-writing other MSS. which are known to have been written in the time of Cyndhelu, who flourished in the middle of the twelfth century.

Another ancient MS. in this library, Lhwyl concisely mentions under the title of "The Book of Taliesin<sup>8</sup>," because it contains most of his poems. It is a parchment MS. The writing is ancient. I have not myself seen it, but I am assured that it has the appearance of a MS. of the twelfth cen-

<sup>7</sup> Archaeology, p. 575.

<sup>8</sup> P. 261.

ture. From the report, which I have heard of the liberality of its present proprietor, Colonel Griffith Howel Vaughan, I believe I do not err in stating, that no gentleman, whose curiosity should lead him to Hengurt, would be refused the liberty of seeing these two curious MSS.

In the time of Lhwyd there was another ancient MS. in this library, which he entitles "The Book of Aneurin."<sup>9</sup> It was an octavo, and contained the Gododin, and some other poems ascribed to Aneurin.

This was also in parchment, and I am informed had the appearance of a MS. of the twelfth century. It continued in the Hengurt library from the days of Lhwyd to our time, but within the last twenty years has disappeared from it. I will presume that it has been only borrowed, and that it will be honourably returned to the collection at Hengurt.

The Red Book of Hergest is still in the library of Jesus College, at Oxford. Lhwyd says that it is in parchment, in folio, containing 465 leaves<sup>10</sup>; that it exhibits antiquities of various kinds, and was written at the end of the fourteenth century.<sup>11</sup> It contains the poems of Llywarch Hên, some of Merdhin, and Taliesin, besides many poems of the following centuries.<sup>12</sup>

In the Hengurt library are two more recent transcripts of these old poems, which may be also mentioned. One MS. was written by Sir Hugh Pennant, in the time of Henry the Eighth. It contains the poems of Merdhin and many others.<sup>13</sup>

Another copious transcript, entitled "Y Kynveirddh Cym-

<sup>9</sup> Pp. 261. and 254.

<sup>10</sup> According to the account of a gentleman who inspected this MS. in 1783, Lhwyd has stated the pages inaccurately. This gentleman's remark is, "Y Llyfr Coch is a folio, containing 360 leaves, 720 pages, and 1440 columns."

<sup>11</sup> Pp. 254. and 261.

<sup>12</sup> It also contains three Welsh chronicles, an ancient Welsh grammar, and some Welsh romances, as Buchedd Carlemain, of Charlemagne Ystori Bown, (or Bevis,) o Hamtwn, Ystor i Cilydd fab Celyddon Wledig, or the history of Cilydd, son of King Celyddon, Ystori Efrauc Iarll y Gogledd, or the History of Efrauc, Earl of the North, Ystori Gereint fab Erbin, or the History of Gereint, the son of Erbin. The Mabinogi, or original Welsh tales, and the Ystori y Seithwyr Doethion, or the History of the Seven Wise Men. It has also the ancient Welsh medical treatise called Meddygon Myddfai, and the Triads, entitled Trioedd Ynys Prydain.

<sup>13</sup> Lhwyd, 256.

reig, or the Ancient Welsh Bards," was written by Mr. Robert Vaughan, in the time of Charles the First. It contains the Gododin; most of Taliesin's songs; those of Llywarch, and some others.<sup>1</sup>

There is another transcript called Kutta Kyvarwydh.<sup>2</sup>

In noticing these MSS. I am only stating the contents of the Hengurt library, and of the one at Jesus college. There are many other Welsh collections, which contain MSS. or transcripts of these ancient poems, of various ages before and since the 14th century. The Welsh MSS. in the library of the earl of Macclesfield are not yet known. They were collected by the Rev. Moses Williams, who left them to Mr. William Jones, the father of the late celebrated Sir William Jones. Mr. Jones bequeathed them to the late earl of Macclesfield, but they have not been yet allowed to be publicly inspected.

As they who wish to investigate the subject of the MSS. more closely, may desire to know the best places for their research, I will refer them to the "General Advertisement" to the Welsh Archæology, which contains a statement of the principal collections, not of these bards only, but of all the Welsh literature.

I do not propose this work to be a vindication of all the poems that have been generally attributed to Aneurin, Taliesin, Merdhin, or Llywarch Hên, or promiscuously published as theirs. My object is to authenticate the genuineness of such of them as I think beyond all dispute; and they are the following:

Of ANEURIN,

The Gododin.

Of LLYWARCH HEN,

The Elegy on Geraint ab Erbin.

Ditto on Urien Reged.

Ditto on Cynddylan.

Ditto on Cadwallon.

The Poem on his old age.

Ditto to Maenwyn.

Ditto to the Cuckoo.

Of MERDWIN.

The Avallenau.

<sup>1</sup> Lhwyd, 258.

<sup>2</sup> 257.

## OF TALIESIN.

The Poems to Urien, and on his battles.

His Dialogue with Merdhin.

The Poems on Elphin.

And his Historical Elegies.

In selecting the above, I do not mean to insinuate that some others, which are ascribed to these authors, may not be genuine likewise. I am satisfied that some are not genuine, and that some have been interpolated. There are several others, however, especially of Taliesin, which may be genuine. But I conceive that the question which presses is, not whether this or that poem is to be accredited, because a simpler investigation of its evidences might determine that if a given number had been already admitted, but whether there are *any* which ought to be placed in an age so early. The prevailing scepticism denies that there are any genuine poems of the sixth century extant. It asserts, that every Welsh poem, referred by Welshmen to this ancient period, is a factitious composition of the twelfth or succeeding century. My duty, therefore, if I attempt to impugn this scepticism, is to shew that there are genuine works of the sixth century now in existence. I adduce the poems above selected as such. If my arguments are successful as to these poems, then any others may be added to the accredited number, which judicious and learned criticism shall allow to be genuine, after due consideration.

Now of the Gododin, I have mentioned, that, until very lately, a MS. of it was in the Hengurt library, which seemed to be of the handwriting of the twelfth century. I am informed that it was in handwriting and appearance very similar to the book of Taliesin, which is yet in the library, and may be seen by any one. A complete transcript of the Gododin was made by Mr. Vaughan, in the time of Charles the First, and many copies of it, of various dates, exist in Welsh collections.

The poems of Llywarch Hên, above mentioned, are in the Black Book of Caermarthen, and in the Red Book of Hergest. They are a part of Mr. Vaughan's transcript, and of others.

The Avalleuau of Merdhin is in the Black Book of Caermarthen, with others that are ascribed to him. It is in Sir Hugh Pennant's transcript, made in the time of Henry the Eighth, in the Kutta Kyvaruydh, and in other transcripts.

Of Taliesin, the Dialogue with Merdhin, the Graves of the Warriors, and a few others, are in the Black Book of Caermarthen. Most of those, which I have mentioned to be his are, with others in the MS. called the Book of Taliesin, in the Hengurt library, which is placed in the twelfth century, or nearly so. Some are in the Red Book of Hergest, and all are in Mr. Vaughan's transcript, and many in y Kutta Kyvaruydh.

What other ancient MSS. of any of the works of these Bards, are in the Macclesfield or other collections, I cannot state, because I am not informed. But I conceive, that from the above statement, I am authorized to affirm, that there are MSS. of poems of these four Bards now extant, which were written in or before the twelfth century. I will confirm this assertion by shewing,

- II. THAT these poems, or some of them, and their authors, have been mentioned or alluded to by a series of Bards, whose works still exist undisputed, from before the twelfth century, to a recent period.

There is a poem which bears the same name with one of Taliesin's, but which is attributed to Golyddan. It is called Arymes Prydein Vawr. From its internal evidence, it seems to have been written in the end of the seventh, or in the eighth century. He mentions that the Britons will recover their country again, and adds <sup>1</sup>, "Dysgogan Merddin,"—Merddin foretells it. This is a direct allusion to that passage of the Avallenau, which we shall hereafter quote, and which Jeffery has imitated. In this passage Merdhin foretells the return of the Britons.

In an ancient composition, which is usually placed in the tenth century, called Englynion y Clywaid, we find Llywarch quoted as a Bard:

"Hast thou heard what *Llywarch* sang  
(The intrepid and brave old man)  
Greet kindly, tho' there be no acquaintance."

A glyweisti a gant Llywarch,  
Oedd henwr drud dihavarch:  
Onid kyvarwydd cyvar ch.

*Arch. Cynveirdd, p. 173.*

---

<sup>1</sup> Welsh Archaeology, p. 156.

In the same poem we find Taliesin mentioned as a Bard, and his son quoted :

“ Hast thou heard what Avaon sang  
(The son of *Taliesin*, whose muse was just.)  
The countenance cannot conceal the sorrow of the heart.”

A glyweisti a gant Avaon,  
Vab Taliesin gerdd gyvion :  
Ni chel grudd gystudd calon. P. 173.

None of the poems of Avaon have survived.

In another of the same poems, we find Aneurin incidentally mentioned, and as a Bard :

“ Hast thou heard the saying of Kennyd  
The son of *Aneurin*, the well-skilled Bard :  
There are none free from care but the provident.”

A glyweisti çwedył Cennyż  
Vab Aneurin varz celvyż :  
Nid dioval ond dedwyż.

In the same poem, both Taliesin and Merdhin are distinctly specified, and as contemporaries :

“ Hast thou heard the saying of *Taliesin*  
In conversation with *Merdhin*.  
‘ It is natural for the indiscreet to laugh immoderately.’ ”

A glyweisti çwedył Taliesin,  
Yn ymzizan â Merzin :  
Gnawd i anghall traçwerthin.

In another poem of the same age, or perhaps earlier, we find an obvious allusion to the poem of Aneurin on the battle of Cattraeth :

“ Like Cattraeth great and glorious.”

Eilywod Gattræth vaur vygedauc.

*Welsh Arch.* p. 180.

Why was Cattraeth great and glorious? Not from the event, for that was peculiarly disastrous to the Britons; but it was made glorious by the much celebrated poem of Aneurin upon it. Unless we presume this poem to have then existed, the line has no meaning.

These six notices of these ancient Bards are taken from poems which, according to the general consent of the best Welsh critics, were written before the twelfth century.

The allusions to these Bards in the authors of the *twelfth century* are very numerous. There are not fewer than fourteen passages distinctly referring to these Bards, or some of their poems, in the works of the twelfth century. I will produce them as nearly as possible in the order of their chronology.

1. Between the years 1140, and 1172, was HYWEL, the son of Owen, of Gwynedh. His father was honoured with some of the best poems of Gwalchmai<sup>1</sup> and Cynddelu<sup>2</sup>, the two stars of the Welsh Parnassus; and to his son Hywel, whom I am going to quote, Cynddelu also addressed an ode.<sup>3</sup>

This prince wrote some odes on Love, and some on War. In one, which is entitled Gorhofedh, or his Delights, he mentions Merdhin, and speaks of him as a Bard.

“ To construct an ancient or primitive song,  
A song of praise, such as *Merdhin sang*.”

Kyssylltu canu kyssevin  
Kert volyant val y cant Mertin.

*Welsh Arch.* p. 278.

Here the prince explicitly mentions Merdhin, not merely as a Bard, but as one in his days, (or in the twelfth century,) ancient or primitive. To construct an ancient song, such as Merdhin sang, is, in effect, to say that Merdhin's songs were ancient.

The expressions seem to indicate that Merdhin's poetry existed in his time; for how could he have talked of constructing or putting together a song like Merdhin's, unless some of Merdhin's poetry was in being.

CYNDDELU was a Bard who lived between 1150 and 1200, and whose genius, although various, yet excelled in the bolder strains of heroic poetry. His compositions were numerous. Forty-nine of his pieces have descended to us.

2. In his elegy on Rhiryd, he mentions Taliesin by name, and as a distinguished Welsh Bard. The passage will speak for itself:

<sup>1</sup> Archaiol. p. 196—198.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. 204—207.

<sup>3</sup> Ibid. p. 258.

" Whilst there was the solemn feast, and suitable wealth,  
 To me no one would speak but agreeably ;  
 To me the mild chief intermitted not his numerous gifts ;  
 To me the valiant one made not the two cheeks of disgrace :  
 The song was not a voice of disgrace to the people of Cynvarch.  
 " From the head of *Taliesin*, in bardic learning exalted,  
 A bardic lay shall come to me."

Tra vu vyg kyvet yg kyuoeth yawn,  
 Nym llauarei y nep nam bei digawn  
 Nym ditolei y lary o lower dawn ;  
 Nym goruc deur wr deurut warthlawn :  
 Ny bu warthlef kert kynverching werin.  
 O benn *Taliesin* bartrin beirtrig  
 Barteir om kyveir.

CYNDDELU, *Maruad Ririd*. p. 230.

3. In another poem, an elegy on Owen of Gwynedd, Cynddelu visibly alludes to the poem of *Taliesin* on the battle of Argoed Llwyfain :

" Hastening mutually to urge on,  
 In heroic manner, in the great field so illustrious,  
 The horned array of the winged warrior  
 Was the energy, the heroism of Owen.  
 In the tumult, the leader of slaughter heaps carcasses,  
 As in the bloody conflict of *Argoed Llwyfain*."

Yn ebrwyd gyfarwain  
 Ygwrfoes yg orfaes cyfrgain  
 I gornawr gwriawr goradain  
 Ygwrial ygwryd Owain  
 Ygorun aergun aergyfrain  
 Yn aergad yn Argoed Llwyfain.

CYND. *Mar. Ow. Gwyn*. p. 207.

The namesake of the hero of Cynddelu had been praised by *Taliesin* in his poem on the battle of Argoed Llwyfain on this occasion.

The Britons, under Urien and his son Owen, were invaded by a Saxon leader, whom *Taliesin* names *Flamddwyn*. This word literally means *flame-bearing*, and therefore is probably not the real name of the Saxon general, but an angry epithet descriptive of his ravages. *Taliesin* mentions that he made an insolent demand of hostages and submission from the Britons :

"Flamddwyn demanded with great impetuosity,  
Will they give hostages — are they ready?"

Atorelwis Flamddwyn fawr drybestawd :  
A ddodynt yngwystlon : a ynt parawd?

TALIESIN, *Gwaith Arg. Ll. 53.*

He then distinguishes the eager courage of Owen, who was the first to give the answer of patriotism to the invaders :

"He was answered by Owen, Let the gash appear —  
They will give none — the hostages are not, shall not be ready."

Yr atebwys Owain ddwyrain fossawd  
Nid dodynt, nid ydynt, nid ynt parawd.

*Ibid.*

The poet then mentions the furious conflict which followed from this refusal of submission.

Now the compliment which Cynddelu paid to the hero of his elegy, Owen of Gwynedh, by alluding to the battle of Llwyvain, was this: the refusal and defiance to Flamddwyn was given by Owen, the son of Urien; and this spirited conduct produced the celebrated conflict which followed. By comparing the battle of his Owen with that in which the Owen of Taliesin had distinguished himself, Cynddelu appears to have meant to have exalted the character of his own hero, by assimilating it to the merit and celerity of his recorded namesake.

4. This same author, Cynddelu, also alludes in another place to the poem of Taliesin on the battle of Argoed Llwyvain:

"He hurried on impetuously to the assault like the flame-spreading Flamddwyn."

Ffwyr ffysgiad fal ffeimiad Flamddwyn.

CYND. *Dadol. Rhys. 235.*

Who was this Flamddwyn? It has been already mentioned that it is the descriptive name of the Saxon hero in the poem of Taliesin, on the battle of Argoed Llwyvain; and it is remarkable that he is distinguished by Taliesin for the circumstance, to illustrate which his name is here introduced.

The point of the simile is the hurrying to the attack — he hurried impetuously to it like Flamddwyn. Now when Taliesin

mentions *Flamddwyn*, it is with the same circumstance of impetuosity and haste : thus, when he first mentions him, he says,

*Dygryslowys Flamddwyn.*

“ *Flamddwyn hastened quickly*”  
to his hostile object.

When he mentions him again, he says,

*Atorelwis Flamddwyn fawr drybestawd.*

“ *Flamddwyn demanded with great impetuosity.*”

It seems that *Cynddelu* introduced the simile of *Flamddwyn* from recollecting this poem and these expressions of *Taliesin*.

5. *Cynddelu* also mentions *Merdhin*. I will quote the passage at length, that the reader may have some idea of the manner of these Welsh Bards. The subject of the poem from which this extract is made, is the death of *Owen*. The poem is an elegy on the death, the effect of which, on many, he now proceeds to describe :

“ On the progeny of *Run* lie the red earth and stones :  
Ominous, not glad tidings, was the fate of the Chief :  
It is an omen of the pain of agitated terror,  
To the finger from the splendour of the palace,  
To the minstrels whose requests were for *slender coursers*.<sup>1</sup>  
But to the crimsoned wolf of terror, and to the ravens, it was a boon.

Frequently will it come to the memory of the profound Bards ;  
To *Cynddelu* it forbodes delay to his claims of honour.  
Of the honour'd sovereign — the armour of the host of raging slaughter —  
Of *Owen*, God has determined the day ;  
Of the venerated head appropriately predominating in Britain.  
Thus in the conflict of *Arderydd*, wrath stalked through the battle,

<sup>1</sup> Literally “ for the *slender-bodied ones*.” The Welsh poetry has frequently instances of descriptive adjectives being used to express noun substantives. Thus the Bards sometimes put *meinir* for a charming woman. The word literally means any thing slender and lively. For the same interesting object, they have also the compound *elliw-manod*, or “ resembling in mien the light driven snow.”

Amid ruin and falling slaughter  
Over myriads of men, over *Merdhin*, who was illustrious."

Ar hil Run rud weryd a main  
Y dragon coeling nid coelfain ei dwyn  
Ys coel brwyn braw dilain  
I gerdawr a'm preidiawr a'm prain  
I eilwyon am eirchion archfain  
I flaid rud i fraw fud i frain  
I feird dwfn dyf yd a gofain  
I Gyndelw oed ardelw urdain  
Urd Wledig llnrig llu aergrain  
Urdws Duw diwyrnawd Owain  
Urdawl ben priawdnen Prydain  
Mal gwaith Arderyd gwyth ar dyrfain cad  
In argrad yn aergrain  
Uch myrd wyr uch Myrdhin oed cain.

*Mar. Ow. Gwyn. 207.*

He goes on to describe the motions of the birds of prey on the battle, which I will add for its strong imagery :

" Over the hawk's station, over the hawk's banquet of heads  
Over the quivering of the spears reddening was the wing.  
Over the howling of the storm the course of the seagull was  
manifest.  
Over the blood whirling, the blood flowing, the exulting ravens  
were screaming.  
Over the blood gushing, over the treasure of the fierce-wing'd  
race,  
Was the clamour of the apt energy, aptly spreading thro' the sky.

Uch gwalchlan uch gwalchlad pennain  
Uch gwayw ryn yn rudaw adain  
Uch gwaed gwynt golau hynt gwylain  
Uch gwaed lryr gwaedlanw gwaedai gigfrain  
Uch gwaed frau uch adnau ednain  
Yg gawr huysgwr huysgain yn wybyr.

*Mar. Ow. Gwyn. 207.*

In this passage we see *Merdhin* mentioned as being illustrious or splendid, and as having been in the battle of *Arde-rydd*. Now *Merdhin* the Bard was in this battle; and why was he particularized with the epithet "illustrious?" The poem, already quoted, of *Howel* explains it. It was the effect of his bardic fame.

6. Another princely Bard was Owen Cyveilioc. He flourished between 1150 and 1197. He was the prince of Powys. He was engaged in some intestine conflicts with Howel<sup>1</sup>; he fought with our Henry, and at last excited against himself Owen of Gwynedd, the hero of the poetry of Gwalchmai and Cynddelu. This hero defeated and expelled Owen Cyveilioc in 1166 from Powys, to which, however, he was re-admitted.

This Owen of Powys has written a very interesting poem called "*Hirias*," or the Blue long Horn; and in this we meet with an undeniable allusion to the poem of Aneurin on the battle of Cattraeth. The poem is given in English among Evans's specimens<sup>2</sup>; but as his translation is too free to suit the severity of documents for accurate reasoning, I will turn it into more literal English.

After speaking of Madawc and Meilir, as "men habituated to tumult," as "the shields of their army," "the teachers of battle," he suddenly introduces,

"Hear how with their portion of mead, went with their Lord to  
Cattraeth

Faithful the purpose of their sharp weapons,

The host of Mynydauc, to their fatal rest.

They obtained the recording, tho' pernicious to their active  
leader.

They did not, like my warriors in the hard struggle of Maelor,  
Liberate the prisoner, yet their praise has been established."

Kigleu am dal met myned dreig Kattraeth

Kywir eu harvaeth arveu lliveid

Gosgort Vynytauc am eu cysgeid

Kawssant y hadrawt cas vlawt vleinieid

Ni wnaeth a wnaeth vynghedwyr ynghalet Vaelor

Dillwng karcharor dullest voleid.

*Hirias Eucin*, 266.

I think that this passage affords very satisfactory testimony to the existence of the Gododin at this period, even though Aneurin's name is not here mentioned.

My reasons for the opinion are these:

1. The prince alludes to the warriors who went with Mynydauc to Cattraeth, as having drank their mead. Now the great topic perpetually recurring in the Gododin is, that

<sup>1</sup> See Wynne's History of Wales, 187.

<sup>2</sup> P. 7. See it better translated in Southey's Madoc.

the Britons lost the battle of Cattraeth, and suffered so severely because they had drank their mead too profusely. The passages in the *Gododin*, on this point, are numerous: for example,

"Men went to Cattraeth; loquacious were their hosts;  
Pale mead had been their feast, and was their poison."

Gwyr aeth Gattræth oed fraeth y lu  
Glasved eu hancwyn æ gwenwyn vu.

ANEURIN, *Gododin*, p. 2.

"They had drank together the sparkling mead by the light of  
rushes:

Pleasant was it's taste, long was it's woe."

Cyt yven vedd gloew wrth liw babir  
Cyt vei da ei vlas y gas bu hir.

*Gododin*, p. 3.

"In fair order round the banquet they feasted together;  
Wine, mead, and mirth they enjoyed."

Gloyw ddull y am drulyt gytvaethant  
Gwin a mel a mal amuesant.

*Ibid.* p. 9.

2. The prince mentions that the Britons went to Cattraeth under the conduct of Mynydauc, their leader, and he calls them Gosgordd Mynydauc, the host of Mynydauc. Now Aneurin, in many places, mentions Mynydauc as the leader of the Britons, and in no fewer than five places uses the very phrase to express them, which Owen selects as if borrowing from him. I mean Gosgordd Mynydauc. Thus Aneurin said,

"The warriors went to Cattraeth with the dawn:  
They strove in the flight daringly:  
Eleven hundred and three hundred were hurling  
Drenched in blood; they were vehement in the darting  
of the lance:

They stationed themselves with manly gallantry  
From the host of Mynydauc the courteous.  
The warriors went to Cattraeth with the dawn,  
Confident in exposing themselves to their inevitable fate:  
They had drank the yellow, sweet ensnaring mead.  
Merry had been the hours, merry the singers;  
Réd became their swords and plumage,

Their white shining blades, and square helmets,  
From the host of Mynydauc the courteous."

Gwyr a aeth Gattræth gan wawr  
Travodynt yn hed yn hovnawr  
Milcant a thrychant a em daflawr  
Gwyarllyt a gwynodynt waeulawr  
Ef gorsaf eng gwriaf eng guriawr  
Rac *Gosgordd Mynyddawc* mwynvawr.

Gwyr a aeth Gattræth gan wawr  
Dygymyrrus eu hoet eu hangenawr  
Med yvynt melyn melys maglawr  
Blwydyn bu llewyn llawen cerdawr  
Coch eu cledyfau na phlwawr  
Eu llain gwynygalch a phedryolet benawr  
Rac *Gosgordd Mynyddawc* mwyn vawr. *Gododin*, p. 2.

The *Gosgordd Mynydauc*, and the sad effects of the mead,  
are mentioned by Aneurin again :

" The warriors had hastened swift all running together ;  
Short were their lives drunk over the distilled mead.  
The host of Mynydauc abounding with gold were in distress.  
The price of their banquet of mead was their lives."

Gwyr a gryssiasant buant gytneit  
Hoedlvyrion medduon uch med hidleit  
*Gosgordd Vynyddawc* eurawc yn rheit  
Gwerth eu gwledd o vedd vu eu heneit. *Ibid.* p. 6.

Aneurin mentions the *Gosgordd Mynydauc* twice more, as,

" Of the host of Mynydauc none escaped,  
Except one weapon altogether weak and precipitated."

O *Osgordd Vynyddawc* ni ddiangwys  
Namyn un arf amddiphyrf amddisfws. *Ib.* p. 11.

And,

" From Cattræth their army was loquacious,  
Of the host of Mynyddawr, great in misery,  
Of three hundred, but one man came out ;  
From the wine-feast ; from the mead-feast they had hastened."

Rac Cattræth oedd fraeth eu llu  
O *osgordd Vynyddawr* vawr dru  
O drychant namyn un gwr ny ddyvu  
O winveith a meddveith est gryssiasant. *Ibid.* p. 9.

3. When to the above remark it is added that the prince of Powys says this tribe of Mynydauc had "obtained a recording," and that their praise was established, can we doubt that he spoke of the Gododin of Aneurin, and had taken from it the allusion, which has been cited from him. In the Gododin, these unfortunate Britons have obtained a recording, and their mead is distinctly mentioned as the cause of their calamity. Hence I consider this passage in Owen's poem as a satisfactory testimony of the existence of the Gododin in his time. The prince has also a line in his poem which is so similar to one in the Gododin, as to warrant the supposition that it was borrowed from it:

Nid yn hyn dihyll nam hen deheu.

The line in the Gododin is this:

Ni bu hil dihyll na hen deheu.

Before I dismiss the prince of Cyveilioc, I cannot but crave permission to mention a very interesting and original elegiac turn which occurs in his poem of the Hîrlas.

The prince was a turbulent warrior, generally fighting with some of his neighbours. His Hîrlas, however, shews that he possessed a strong poetic genius, and applied it to celebrate the warriors who accompanied him in his quarrels. The plan of the poem is ingenious and picturesque. He fancies himself surrounded by his chiefs at the festive table, rejoicing in their victory; and he orders his cupbearer to pour out the generous beverage to those whom he intends to celebrate, and whom he selects and describes successively. Two of his accustomed companions, and favourite warriors, were Moreiddig and Tudyr, who had just perished in a preceding battle. In the ardour of his festivity and panegyric, he forgot that they were no more. Therefore, after directing the horn of mead to be sent to his warriors, and after addressing each of them with appropriate praise, he proceeds to send it to Moreiddig and Tudyr. He recites their merit — he turns to greet them — but their place is vacant — he beholds them not — he hears their dying groan — he recollects their fate — his triumphant strains cease — his hilarity flies, and the broken tones of mournful exclamation suddenly burst out. Shall I be pardoned if I digress awhile to insert the passage in a close translation.

To enhance the compliment which he is going to pay, he threatens death to his cupbearer if he execute his office unskilfully.

“ Fill, cup-bearer, seek not death —  
 Fill the horn of honour at our banquets,  
 The long blue horn, of high privilege, of ancient silver,  
 That covers it not sparingly;  
 Bear to Tudyr, eagle of slaughter,  
 A prime beverage of florid wine.  
 Thy head shall be the forfeit if there come not in  
 The most delicious mead  
 To the hand of Moreiddig, encourager of songs :  
 May they become old in fame before they leave us !  
 Ye blameless brothers of aspiring souls,  
 Of dauntless ardour that would grasp ev'n fire ;  
 Heroes, what services ye have achieved for me !  
 Not old disgustingly, but old in skill ;  
 Unwearied, rushing wolves of battle ;  
 First in the crimsoned rank of bleeding pikes,  
 Brave leaders of the Mochnantians, from Powys,  
 The prompt ones, in every need,  
 Who rescue their borders from violence,  
 Praise is your meed, most amiable pair !  
 Ha ! — the cry of death — And do I miss them —  
 O Christ ! — how I mourn their catastrophe —  
 O lost Moreiddig — how greatly shall I need thee ! ”

*Hirias Eucia, p. 266.*

7. In the same century, from the year 1160 to 1220, lived the bard LLYWARCH AB LLYWELYN, or as he has been most commonly called, Llywarch Prydyd y Moch. He has left thirty-two poems.

In one of his odes to the son of Iorwerth, this bard mentions Taliesin as a bard, and also a circumstance, which is the subject of one of Taliesin's poems, to which therefore Llywarch P. y Moch must be supposed to be alluding. The words of Llywarch are :

“ I will address my Lord  
 With the greatly greeting muse,  
 With the dowry of Cyridwen,  
 The ruler of Bardism,  
 In the manner of Taliesin  
 When he liberated Elphin  
 When he overshadowed the bardic mystery  
 With the banners of the bards.

Cyvarchaf ym ren  
 Cyvarchvawr awen  
 Cyvreu Kyridwen  
 Rhwyf bartoni  
 Yn dull Taliesin  
 Yn dillwng Elfin  
 Yn dyllest bartin  
 Beirt vanyeri.

LLYWEL. y *Canu Bychan*, 303.

The poem of Taliesin, which he wrote to obtain Elphin's release from the prison where his uncle Maelgwn had confined him yet, exists. It is called the Mead Song. It has considerable merit, and may be thus faithfully translated :

#### TALIESIN'S MEAD SONG.

" I will implore the Sovereign, Supreme in every region,  
 The Being who supports the heavens, Lord of all space,  
 The Being who made the waters, to every body good ;  
 The Being who sends every gift and prospers it,  
 That Maelgwn of Mona be inspired with mead, and cheer us  
 with it

From the mead horns—the foaming, pure and shining liquor  
 Which the bees provide, but do not enjoy.

Mead distilled I praise—its eulogy is every where,  
 Precious to the creature whom the earth maintains.

God made it for man for his happiness ;

The fierce and the mute, both enjoy it.

The Lord made both the wild and the gentle,

And has given them clothing for ornament,

And food and drink to last till judgment.

I will implore the Sovereign, Supreme in the land of peace,

To liberate Elphin from banishment,

The man that gave me wine, ale, and mead,

And the great princely steeds of gay appearance,

And to me yet would give as usual :

With the will of God, he would bestow from respect

Innumerable festivities in the course of peace.

Knight of Mead, relation of Elphin, distant be thy period of  
 inaction."

*Arch. p. 22.*

Golychaf wledig pendefig pob wa  
 Gwr a gynneil y hef Arglwydd pob tra  
 Gwr a wnaeth y dwfr i bawb yn dda  
 Gwr a wnaeth pob llad ac ai llwdda  
 Meddwer Maelgwn Mon ag an meddwa  
 Ai feddgorn ewyn gwerlyn gwymha

As gynnul gwenyn ac nis mwynha  
 Med hidleid moleid molud i bob tra  
 Lleaws creadur a fag terra  
 A wnaeth Duw i ddyr ei ddonha  
 Rhaidrud rhai mud ef ai mwynha  
 Rhai gwyllt rhai dof Dofydd ai gwna  
 Yn dillig iddynt yn dillad ydd a  
 Yn fwyd yn ddiawd hyd frawd yd barha  
 Golychaf i wledig pendefig gwlad hedd  
 I ddillwng Elphin o alltudedd  
 Y gwr am rhoddes y gwin ar cwrwf ar medd  
 Ar meirch mawr modur mirein eu gwedd  
 Am rothwy etwa mal y diwedd  
 Trwy fodd Duw y rhydd trwy enrhydedd  
 Pump pemhwnt calan ynghaman hedd  
 Elffinawg farchawg medd hwyr dy ogledd.

TALIESIN, *Canu y medd*, p. 22.

Taliesin wrote two other poems concerning Elphin which are yet extant. One called "The Consolation of Elphin;" the other entitled "To the Wind;" but I think the Mead Song was the poem which Llywarch P. y Moch had in his contemplation, when he said he would address the Lord, like Taliesin, to liberate Elphin, because the very phrase used by Llywarch in speaking of this poem, "yn dillwng Elphin," "to liberate Elphin," is in ——— the Mead Song.

8. Nor is this all the inference to be deduced from this poem of Llywarch's. The first four lines of Llywarch will be found on a comparison so nearly similar to four commencing lines of another poem of Taliesin, that I think no one can dispute that he borrowed them from Talien.

#### LLYWARCH.

Cyvarchaf ym ren  
 Cyvarchvawr awen  
 Cyvreu Kyridwen  
 Rwyf bartoni.

"I will address the Lord  
 With the greatly greeting Muse,  
 With the dowry of Cyridwen,  
 The ruler of Bardism."

#### TALIESIN.

*Kyoarchaf im Rhen*  
*Ystyriav Awen*  
*Py ddyddwg angen*  
*Cyn no Chyridwen.*

"I will address the Lord  
 With the meditating Muse,  
 That endured necessity  
 Before Cyridwen."<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Cyridwen means literally, "the producing woman." She is one of the beings peculiar to the ancient Welsh mythology, and appears to have been considered by the Bards as the pro-

The first line, and part of the second, are exactly the same in both. The singular idea in the other lines proves the intentional imitation of Llywarch P. Moch. To speak of Cyridwen, a mythological personage very little mentioned elsewhere, could not have happened to both in an introduction so very similar both in metre and words, unless the one had borrowed it from the other. I therefore submit that this imitation of Llywarch attests that this poem of Taliesin, called "The Mab Gyvreu Taliesin," was in being in Llywarch's time. I think also, by Llywarch mentioning Taliesin, and alluding to another poem of his immediately after this imitation of him, that it warrants the assertion, according to the experienced laws of the association of ideas, that Llywarch deemed the lines he was imitating to be Taliesin's. If so, this single passage is evidence that the Mead Song, and the Mab Gyvreu of Taliesin, were existing and accredited as his in the twelfth century.

9. Llywarch P. Moch, in this same poem, gives also an attestation of Merdhin; he says,

"Merdhin prophesied  
That a king would come  
From the Cymry nation,  
Out of the oppressed.  
Druids declared,  
That liberality shall be renewed  
From the progeny of the eagles  
Of Snowdon."

Darogan Mertin  
Dyvod breyenhin  
O Gymry werin  
O gamh wri  
Dywawd derwyton  
Dadeni haelon  
O hil eryron  
O Eryri.

*Ll. Canu Bych. 304.*

ductress of things; in a word, to have borne that character, which Lucretius gives to Venus in his introduction to his *De Natura Rerum*. There are several mythological personages mentioned in ancient Welsh literature, who are worth attending to, because in them we perhaps see some curious remains of the earliest traditions of the western parts of Europe.

This prediction of Merdhin's, of better fortune to Wales, was also noticed by Golyddan, whom we have quoted before. The passage now existing in Merdhin's Avallenau, to which these bards seem to have alluded, will be presently adduced.

10. The same bard has also the following allusion to the Gododin of Aneurin :

" Like Caeawg the foremost hero ministering to the birds of prey."

Adar weinidawc Caeawc cynran drud.

P. 298.

Caeawg is much celebrated in the Gododin, and is several times mentioned there with epithets expressing the same quality as Llywarch in this passage intends to denote. This quality was his eagerness to be the foremost in the battle, which Aneurin signifies by cynhaiawc and cynhorawc, and Llywarch by cynran ; all the three adjectives are nearly synonymous.

As Llywarch P. Moch was one of the most distinguished poets of the twelfth century, it may relieve this tedious detail, if I intermix a specimen of his mode of describing a battle. Battles were the favourite transactions of that age, and therefore engrossed most of the bardic lays. They are usually noticed with some original touches, which to us who are nurtured in a happier state of intellect and society, will seem horrible and disgusting. How much is it to be regretted, that the melioration of our taste should be so distinct from the amendment of our conduct !

" Melancholy it is to us, the bards of the world, that earth lies upon him :

Sorrow is over us :

He was our leader before the wrath of fate separated us.

The ravagers ravaged onwards with fury ;

Dreadful was the crimson gushing from the men before so mild :

Dead was the greatest part in the tumult.

Of the various-coloured waves, broken was the sound of their roar.

They were not silent ;

A briny wave<sup>1</sup>, extensive from exerting rage ;

---

<sup>1</sup> The scene of this conflict was the strait of the Menai, which separates Anglesey from the main land.

Another wave, fierce, of red gore.  
When the leader of the glittering hosts overcame  
Llewelyn, the chief of wide-spreading Alun.  
A myriad was slain—the lure of the ravens incessantly screaming—

All warriors—and a thousand in captivity  
When we passed from Porth Aethwy.  
On the steeds of the sea flood over the great tumult of the waves  
There were thronging spears—awful was their fury—  
Conspicuous was the red rippling blood—  
Terrible was our onset—it was unlovely—  
It was misery—it was death unparalleled:  
It was a doubt to the world, if there were left  
A residue of us for the dissolution of age.”

11. GWYNVARDD BRYCHEINIAWG flourished between 1160, and 1120. He has left us two small poems, one addressed to the Lord Rhys, the prince of South Wales<sup>1</sup>, the other to St. David.

In the one addressed to Rhys, he quotes Merdhin thus, p. 270.

“ For Tegeingyl, for the land of the Angles thronging together  
For the fellow brother of Medrawd, of whom *Merdhin* prophesied.”

Am Degeingyl, am dir Eingyl yn ymdyrru  
Am gydvrrawd Medrawd Merdhin darogan.

Gwyn. Br. p. 269.

Merdhin is here mentioned as prophesying of Medrawd. If we turn to his Avallenau, we shall find that he there so speaks of Medrawd :

“ Sweet apple-tree, conspicuous as the hill of our congress  
Towering above the wood surrounding its roots unshaded!  
I will prophesy the coming again  
Of Medrawd and Arthur, the sovereign of the host,  
As at Camlan, preparing to conflict.”

Asallen beren bren eil wyddsa  
Cyn coed cylch ei gwraidd digwascotva;  
A mi ddysgoganas dyddaw etwa

<sup>1</sup> Wynne's History, p. 193.

Medrawd ac Arthur modur tyrfa  
Camlann darmerthan difieu yna.

MYRD. *Avall.* p. 153.

I submit, that when the passage of Gwynvardd is compared with this of Merdhin, it will seem probable that this part of the Avallennau was alluded to by Gwynvardd, and consequently that the Avallennau was in existence in his time.

---

12. ELIDIR SAIS lived between 1160 and 1220. Eleven of his poems are preserved. In his Dadolwch, or atonement to Llywelyn, the son of Iorwerth, he mentions both Taliesin and Merdhin by name, and speaks of their poetry as being an object of *sight*, consequently existing.

This passage is certainly important, and if the lines were to be cited by themselves, they would be found to express the idea I have suggested. But the true sense of any passage, depends sometimes on the other parts with which it is connected. Now it is proper that I should state, that the part in which these few lines occur is obscure, and of difficult construction. But as it can answer no honourable purpose, to lay before the reader a delusion, where he expects a proof, I will translate the whole poem of Elidir Sais, as literally as possible, and leave it to his own judgment to decide the force of the evidence, which, in my opinion, implies an inspection of existing works :

“ Natural is the quaffing of the clear bright wine  
From the horn of the buffalo,  
From the fold of the bugle :  
Natural is the singing of the cuckoo in the beginning of the  
summer,  
Natural is the increasing growth of the springing blade :  
Natural to the wise is his intellectual wealth ;  
But not natural, not tranquil is it to be sorrowful.

“ Regret has done me great injury  
For the brothers of dignity, the best men of the west ;  
Brothers separated in lamentable terror by foes ;  
Oh God, and Mary, and the sisters ! Can I smile ?  
Can I be rejoiced with a mind wild with anxiety ?

“ He came as a lion with lightning impelling,  
The excelling hawk, the victorious hawk of enterprise ;

Llewelyn, the gentle sovereign,  
Of courteous manners; the director of the filling of the circulating glass.<sup>1</sup>

" I am not accustomed to the habit of soaring;<sup>2</sup>  
I have not been roaming  
*To view<sup>3</sup> the paths of the songs of Taliesin;*  
Lo! I am not so agile  
As, the end of the frail conflict of Breiddin  
*To express, out of the bardic strains of Merdhin.*

" I will give thee counsel: who art most excellent in disposition;  
Whose dread spreads beyond the sea!  
Consider, when you oppress beyond the borders,  
To make every one extend his head to his knees;  
Be to the weak an equal distribution of the spoil!  
Be truly mild to the songs of the right line!  
Be of ardent courage in the slaughter — adhere to thy labour;  
Destroy England, and plunder its multitudes.

" Mercy be to thee in thy stony fortress  
For loving the prophetic Deity."

Gnawd yr yfawdd glyw gloyw win — o fual,  
O fuarth buelin,  
Gnawd cathleu cogeu cyntefin  
Gnawd y tys tywys o egin  
Gnawd y doeth cyfoeth cysyewin  
Ni nawd nid llonydd allwynin  
Hiraeth am ry wnaeth rewin  
Braint brodyr gwellwyr gollewin  
Broder de braw aele elin  
Duw a mair a chwair yn chwerthin  
Dothyw llew a lluchyg gorddin  
Detholwalch buddugfalch byddin  
Llywelyn llyerw freyenhin  
Llary ddefawd llyw gwyrddrawd gwydrin  
Nid wys gynnefawd gynnefin amchwyf  
Ni rybum gerddenin  
Edrych cyrdd cerddau Taliesin  
Edrych ni mor wyf eddein

<sup>1</sup> i. e. Of the banquet.

<sup>2</sup> Literally, "whirling round."

<sup>3</sup> i. e. To track or imitate from inspection, as I conceive; but the word literally means to behold, or to view.

Ry ddarfod brau gysmod Breiddin  
 Ry ddywawd oi farddwawd Ferddin  
 Cyssul ath roddaf oth rin wyd goreu  
 Gorofu tra merin

Ystyrych pan dreisych dros ffin  
 Ystwnge pawb hyd ben ei ddeulin  
 Bydd wrth wann gyfran gywrenhin  
 Bydd iawn llary wrth gorddau iownllin  
 Bydd wrddrud aer ddylud addilin  
 Dilein Lloegr a llwgr oi gwerin  
 Trugaredd ath so oth feinir gaerwedd  
 O garu Duw ddewin.

ELIDR SAIS, *Ded.* 345.

The import of the passage appears to me to be, that the poems of Taliesin and Merddhin existed in this author's time, or how could they be viewed, imitated, or spoken from?

13. This author mentions Merddhin in another place.

" Though polished my bardic style after Merddhin."

Llathreit vy mardeir uedy *Myrddin*. *Awdl i Duw*. p. 302.

How could his style have been formed from that of Merddhin, if poems, believed to have been written by him, had not then existed?

14. This author, in his elegy on the death of Rhodri, has also a passage, which undoubtedly alludes to the Gododin of Aneurin, for the reasons mentioned above of the similar allusion of Owen Cyveilioc, that is, he connects three things together, which are to be met with together in the Gododin, and I believe only there. These were a mead-replenished army, a great disaster, and Cattraeth the scene of it.

" Woe to Britain, and its society!  
 From the loss of Rhodri, how greatly suitors will be straightened!  
 I was honoured by the mead-replenished army;  
 Oh, loss to me! a misfortune far worse  
 Than the ruin in the lands of Cattraeth could have caused."

Gwae Brydain am briodoriaeth  
 O golli Rhodri neud rhygaeth eirchiaid  
 Am parchai llu meddfaeth  
 O golled ym galled mawrwaeth  
 Gallas drais diredd Cattraeth.

ELIDR SAIS, 348.

THIRTEENTH CENTURY.

EINIAWN AB GWGAWN lived between 1200 and 1260. In the poem which he addressed to Llywelyn the Great, often called the son of Iorwerth, he has this passage :

“ Llywelyn, mayst thou be older, and of longer good fortune,  
Than the venerable Llywarch, with the aptly ready flesh-piercer.”

Llywelyn boed hyn boed hwy dichwein  
No Llywarch hybarch hybar gicwein.

EIN. *Canu* : L. 321.

This clearly alludes to Llywarch Hen, the bard. The epithet venerable, is but a synonym to Hen, or Aged ; and the wish of better fortune, applies truly to the afflictions, which his poems so often mention. The other singular expression, which more literally means “ that which is sheathed in flesh,” appears to me to allude to, or rather the idea of the expression was taken from, the remarkable opening of Llywarch’s elegy on Urien Reged. In this the bard, in the full ardour for revenge, begins his poem with this apostrophe to his spear :

“ Let me be guided onward, thou ashen thruster ;  
Fierce thy presence in the mutual conflict ;  
’Tis better to kill than to parley.<sup>1</sup>

“ Let me be guided onward, thou ashen thruster ;  
Fiercely was it said, in the passage of Lech  
Dunawd, the son of Pabo never flies.’

“ Let me be guided onward, thou fierce ashen thruster ;  
Bitter and sullen as the scornful laughter of the sea,  
Was the war of the shouting multitude  
Of Urien Reged, burning and furious.”

Dymcyfarwyddiad ynhwch dywal  
Baran yn nghyvlwch  
Gwell yd llad nog yd ydolwch  
Dymcyfarwyddiad ynhwch dywal  
Dywedydd yn nrws Llech  
“ Dunawd val Pabo ni thech.”  
Dymcyfarwyddiad ynhwch dywal chwern  
Blwng chwerthin mor ryvel dorvloeddiad  
Urien Reged greidiawl gravel.

LLYWARCH HEN, *Mar. Ur.* 103.

<sup>1</sup> Archaiol. p. 103, and in Owen’s Llywarch, p. 22.

Such lines as these might lead a bard to designate Llywarch with a spear, whose sheath was flesh. This apostrophe seems the natural parent of the image.

Between 1200, and 1250, lived PHYLIP BRYDYDD. He has left six poems. In one, called a Contention with the Poetasters, he mentions Taliesin in a very remarkable manner:

“ The *ancient* song of Taliesin, to the King of the Elements.”

Hengerd Talyesin y teyrned elvyd.

PH. BRYD. *Amrys*. 378.

Here is an author, who flourished in 1230, describing Taliesin's poetry as being at that time *ancient*. An ancient song, of course, implies a song written some centuries before the writer who uses the epithet. If about 1230, a bard styled Taliesin's poetry, *ancient* poetry, with what propriety can we say in contradiction to him, that it was not ancient, but had been then recently forged. Surely this bard Phylip, whom we may justly call ancient now, was a better judge of what was ancient in his day, than we are at the distance of almost six centuries after him.

By the song of Taliesin to the King of the Elements, it is highly probable that he means Taliesin's Poem to the Wind, which yet exists.

DAVID BENVRAS lived between 1190 and 1240. He has left twelve poetical pieces, chiefly elegies and heroic odes. One of his odes to Llewelyn the Great, he opens with this invocation.

“ May the Being who made the splendours of the West ;  
The sun and chilling moon, glorious habitations :  
May he that rules above in universal light, graciously grant to me  
The fulness of the glowing muse of Merdhin,  
To sing the praise of heroes, as Aneurin sang  
In the day that he composed the Gododin :  
That I may celebrate the felicity of the people of the happy land  
Of the chief of Gwyned, the prosperous boundary.”

Gwr a wnaeth llewych o'r gorllewin  
Haul a lloer addoer addef iessin  
Am gwnel radd uchel rwyf cyfychwin  
Cyflawn awen âwydd Fyrddin

I ganu moliant mal *Aneurin* gynt  
Dydd y cant *Ododin*.  
Gwynedd bendefig ffynnedig ffin  
Gwanas deyrnas deg cywrenhin.

D. BENVRAS, *Awdd i Llyw*.

We have here a full attestation of these points :  
That in this bard's days there was a poem called the *Gododin*;

That its author was *Aneurin* ;  
That its subject was the praise of heroes ;  
That *Merdhin* had also composed poetry ;  
That *Merdhin's* poetry was then extant,  
For the bard describes it as " the fulness of the glowing  
muse ;"

That both *Aneurin's* and *Merdhin's* poetry was then highly  
estimated.

To feel the complete force of this testimony, let us recollect  
that this bard was born in the twelfth century.

This same bard, *David Benvras*, is also a witness in favour  
of *Taliesin* — for in the same ode he sings,

" If it had happened to me to have been a prophet,  
If I had the bardic style of the primitive bardic genius,  
I could not have narrated the merit of his martial labours ;  
Not *Taliesin* could have done it." P. 308.

Be im byw be byddwn dewin  
Ym marddair mawrddawn gyssevin  
Adrawd ei ddaed aerdrin ni allwn  
Ni allai Daleissin.

*Ibid.*

It is obvious, from the association of the bard's ideas in this  
extract, that he deemed *Taliesin* one of the early bards of his  
country, and that *Taliesin's* muse was directed to describe the  
actions of warriors. It is also my impression, that if *Talie-*  
*sin's* fame had not been upheld by works of his then existing,  
he would not have been so particularised.

The same bard also mentions *Llywarch* ; for in praising  
one *Gruffudd*, he says,

" *Gruffudd* with crimson'd arms will be likened  
In the spear of honour to *Llywarch*, the son of *Elidir*."

*Gruffudd* arfeu rhudd rydebygir  
Greid barch i *Llywarch* fab *Elidir*.

D. BENV. *Mar. Ruffudd*. 320.

The poet Llywarch was the son of Elider Lydanwyn. We have already mentioned how Llywarch distinguished his spear in his elegy on Urien.

---

LLYGAD GWR was a bard, and lived between 1220 and 1270. He has left five poems on warlike subjects. Two are odes to Llywelyn, the son of Gruffudd, the last British prince who ruled in Wales. In one of these he says,

“ His fiery ravages, like those of Flamddwyn, extended far.”

Hirbell val Flamddwyn y flamgyrcheu.

LLYGAD. GWR, p. 345.

This is an allusion to that poem of Taliesin's before mentioned, in which it is said that Flamddwyn spread from Argoed to Arvynydd.

“ Flamddwyn hastened with four bodies of men  
To surround Godeu and Reged ;  
He spread from Argoed to Arvynydd.”

Dygrysowys Flamddwyn yn bedwarllu  
Goddeu a Reged i ymddullu  
Dyfwy o Argoed hyd Arfynydd.

TALIESIN, *Gwaith Arg. Ll.* 53.

---

GWILYM DHU, who flourished between 1280 and 1320, in his poem to Sir Gruffudd Llwyd in prison, also alludes to Flamddwyn, p. 409; and in the same poem expressly mentions Taliesin, p. 410, and Elfin; and is clearly allowed.

After mentioning that his hero, Gruffudd, was a prisoner, he invokes St. David thus :

“ If mine were the power characterised in Taliesin,  
When he fetched Elfin, the breaker of the spear of conflict,  
The impulse should be to the benefit of Gruffudd.”

Pei mau pwyll ddian ddyad Talyesin  
Pan gyrchawdd Elfin par trin trychiad  
Pwyll yudd Ruffudd.

GWILYM DHU i *Syr Gruffudd Llwyd*, 410.

In the same poem he also mentions Llywarch :

“ The contemplated reverence of Llywarch, the ruler of a tribe.”

Myfyr barch Llywarch llywydd ciwdawd.

Ib. 410:

In his elegy on Trahaiarn, he mentions many bards, and among them, he notices Merdhin:

" Good was the fortune of the song to Gwion the divine;  
Good was Merdhin, with his descent from the tribe of Meirchion.  
Good was Llevoed, ever the supporter of morality."

Da fu ffawd y wawd i Wiawn ddewin .  
Da Fyrddin a' i lin o lwyth Meirchiawn  
Da Lefoed erioed da radlawn arddelw.

GWILYM, *Mar. Trahaiarn*, 411.

IORWERTH VYCHAN wrote poetry between 1290 and 1340. In his ode to a pretty woman, he mentions Merdhin as a poet:

" More precious with the splendid bards every long day,  
That when Merdhin, of profound learning, sang of Gwendydd."

Ys mwy gan y beird heird bob hirddyd  
Na fan gant Myrddin mawrddysc Gwendydd. 415.

RHISSERDYN, between 1290 and 1340, composed an ode to Hywel ab Gruffudd. In this he mentions Aneurin as a bard, with whose style of composition he was acquainted, and Merdhin, as an author, whose compositions he possessed and valued.

" A tongue with the eloquence of Aneurin's splendid panegyrics."

" I will preserve, in honoured authority, the memorials of Merd-  
hin."

Tavawt un arawt Aneurin gwawt glaer.

Kaf am urddawl rwysc koven Myrdia.

RHISS. i *Hywel*. 433.

MADOC DWYGRAIG, a poet between 1290 and 1340, has left ten poems. In the verses to a loose woman, he mentions Merdhin, and obviously alludes to his Avallennau. The two first words, Afallen beren, of all Madoc's stanzas, are those which begin almost all the stanzas of Merdhin's Avallennau.

Indeed, Madoc's poem is a complete parody on it. He mentions Merdhin in it twice :

" An apple-tree  
Equally bearing a profusion of leaves was given to Merdhin."

Ail yn dwyn rhyddail i rhodded Fyrddin.  
MADAWG, i *Ferch* 487.

" Shall I become like Merdhin." Ibid. 488.

Of SEVNYN's poems, between 1320 and 1378, three remain. In his elegy on Iorworth Gyrioc, he mentions Merdhin and Aneurin thus : 505—6.

" May I have the gift of amusing language,  
Large as the greatly gifted vineous movements of Merdhin's  
imagination."  
The report of thousands is the praise of Aneurin."

Maith mawrddwyn gwindraith Myrddin geudawd  
Medd cyhoedd miloedd molawd Aneurin.  
SEVNYN, *Mar. Iorw.* 503—4.

This is a strong indication of Aneurin's celebrity.

IORWERTH LLWYD, who lived between 1310 and 1360, mentions Merdhin :

" The eloquent and wisely expressed inquiries of Merdhin."

Hyawdl doethfin hollion Myrddin. P. 506.

and alludes to Elphin, p. 506. on whom Taliesin wrote.

GRUFUDD AB MAREDUDD, who lived at the same period, mentions Llywarch twice, p. 458. and 476.

So David ab Gwilym, one of the favourites of the Welsh muse, in this century, mentions both Merdhin and Taliesin.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See p. 8. 51. and 222, of his Works, edited by Messrs. Owen Jones, and William Owen.

I am sensible that I must have trespassed to my own disadvantage on the patience of the reader, by this long and wearying detail, which has even wearied myself. But such a series of evidence as this, is of the last importance on such a question as the present. A series like this, we should exact and search for, if Pindar or Eschylus had been put upon their trials. It is a series of proof which forgery can never have. It can only attend genuine works, and I adduce it as forming a very substantial part of that column of evidence by which the ancient Welsh poetry must now be supported.

#### SUMMARY OF THE PRECEDING EVIDENCE.

I will beg leave to assist the reader's recollection by a short summary of the preceding.

Before the twelfth century, we have found all the four ancient bards mentioned as bards, and some of their observations recited. In one, Taliesin and Merdhin were mentioned as contemporaries, who conversed together. The Avallenau and the Gododin were in others indirectly alluded to.

In the works of the twelfth century, we found Merdhin's poetry mentioned several times. Once his Avallenau obviously referred to, at another time his works spoken of as extant, and at another time as being then ancient.

Taliesin is not only several times mentioned as a bard of distinction and repute, but his poems were spoken of as having been seen, and of course extant; his poem on the battle of Argoed Llwyvain was three times alluded to, his Mead Song, and his Mab Cyvreu were quoted.

The Gododin of Aneurin was twice indirectly alluded to.

In the thirteenth century, Llywarch was mentioned with epithets and circumstances that seemed borrowed from his poems.

The Gododin was expressly mentioned as Aneurin's, and with high panegyric, and as extant. His power of heroic poetry was twice besides alluded to.

Taliesin is mentioned often as a bard of great celebrity, and who sang heroic poetry. His poem to the Wind was expressly named, and as a poem esteemed *ancient* in this century. His poems on Argoed Llwyvain, and on Elfin, were also alluded to, and his poetic powers are spoken of as objects of emulation. Merdhin is repeatedly mentioned as a bard, and as having left works of great estimation; his Avallenau is even parodied, and his style is mentioned as an object of imitation.

I submit that all this must be allowed, to prove that the works of these bards, for which I am reasoning, were in being in the twelfth century. On this vantage ground I take my stand. It is a great point gained, to shew that this degree of antiquity at least cannot be denied to them. It must afford the reader much satisfaction, I apprehend, to be assured that when his attention is called to these interesting remains, it will not be bestowed on a modern forgery.

---

The questions now to be discussed will be therefore these : Were these poems fabricated in the twelfth century, or before ? or, Are they as genuine as they pretend to be ?

That they could not be fabricated in the twelfth century, will, I hope, appear from some of the leading topics, which I shall arrange by and by, under the head of their internal evidence. But I will take the opportunity now of requesting the reader to remark, and there is not one tittle of evidence extant, that they did first appear in the twelfth century. It is an assertion which cannot be proved, and which, therefore, is gratuitous and visionary. I wish to put this strongly, and for this reason. If there were any sort of direct evidence, to shew that these poems were made in the twelfth century, then all the good effect I could hope to gain, by adducing facts and reasoning, in order to place them in the sixth, would be, that I should present one mass of testimony against another mass of testimony. It would be a case of opposing probabilities. It would be, like what trials about horses, footways, and boundaries too commonly are ; I mean a competition of evidence, in which the court and jury can hardly discern which side they ought in justice to prefer.

But the present argument is not of this species. In considering whether these poems belong to the sixth century, or the twelfth, there is no opposing wall to pull down, no mistaken testimony to refute. The supposition which places them in the twelfth century, has not one fact to warrant it. There are the decisive proofs of MSS. and the series of quotations, which I have already adduced, to prove that they must have been in existence in the twelfth century ; but there is no document existing that confines them to this century, or that imposes any restriction on the liberty of inquiring to what previous century they belong.

No reasoner, and no antiquary, will allow mere guesses, or mere assertions, to be sufficient to limit them to the twelfth, or to any other age. But finding the ground unoccupied, they

will feel themselves free to examine what the period is in which the weight of proof inclines to place the first existence of these poems.

The evidence already adduced to shew that they were extant in the twelfth century, if fairly reasoned from, will compel us to infer that they were in existence anterior to the twelfth. Those MSS. of these poems, which seem to belong to this century, point our attention to a preceding age. They do not adduce the poems as anonymous poems, which might have been the works of authors of the twelfth century, but they state them to be more ancient compositions. So the bards of the twelfth, and other centuries, who cite or allude to them or their authors, do not refer to them as works of their contemporaries, but as of bards whom we know to have belonged to an anterior period. Therefore the natural tendency of the evidence already stated, is to shew that we must inquire into a period preceding the twelfth for the chronology of their authors.

III. The next fact, which I shall proceed to substantiate is, there were bards among the Britons in the sixth century.

It is certainly necessary to ascertain whether there were any bards at all in the sixth century, because if such men did not then exist among the Britons, the question cannot be agitated further.

That there were bards in the sixth century, seems to me to be a position which may be proved two ways; 1st, by inference — that is, proving their existence both before and after that period, and inferring from thence, that they were also in the middle interval; 2ndly, by direct evidence of authors contemporary with the sixth century. I will beg leave to use both species of proof, lest any gentleman should think that the direct evidence is not alone sufficiently conclusive.

It may be therefore first stated, that there were Bards among the Britons, who composed and sang poetry, on the actions of celebrated men, before the fourth century, and in the tenth and twelfth centuries.

The Celtic population of Gaul and Britain was distinguished by a remarkable set of men, whom the classical authors called Druids. Caesar has described them with his usual intelligence, and if we do justice to his inquiring mind, sedate judgment, and military habit of exactness, we shall not doubt his precision. He says, that their singular discipline

flourished most in Britain, and that one of the Druidical practices, was to commit to memory a great number of verses.<sup>1</sup> Other authors have discriminated the Druids into three sorts of persons, who are named the Druids, the Ovates or Vates, and the Bards. These three orders are stated by Strabo<sup>2</sup>, by Diodorus Siculus<sup>3</sup>, and Ammianus Marcellinus.<sup>4</sup> The Bards are called poets, and composers of hymns, by Strabo; and they sung to instruments like lyres, according to Diodorus. Lucan also mentions them as celebrating the deeds of their heroes in verse. His words, literally translated, are, "You also, ye Vates, who transmit to immortality by your praises the spirits of the brave, of those slain in battle; Bards! ye may securely pour your numerous songs."<sup>5</sup>

Other authors speak of them in the same strain. Appian exhibits a Bard as celebrating a king for his descent<sup>6</sup>, as well as for his wealth and courage; and Posidonius declares that the Celts carried Bards with them, as the companions of their table who sang their praises.<sup>7</sup>

Some of these authors lived before the first century; some afterwards. Marcellinus, who flourished in the fourth, says, "The Bards chanted in heroic verses, to the sweet notes of the lyre, the brave deeds of the illustrious."<sup>8</sup>

That these singular people had a degree of knowledge among them, which is not common to barbarous nations, is clear from what Strabo, Cæsar, and Mela state of the Druids. Strabo, after mentioning the Bards, says, that the Ovates sacrifice and contemplate the nature of things, and that the Druids, besides the study of nature, dispute concerning moral philosophy. They thought that neither the souls of men, nor the world, would be destroyed, though they would suffer at some period from fire and water.<sup>9</sup> Cæsar<sup>10</sup>, and Mela<sup>11</sup>, declare that they disputed and taught their youth about the stars and their motion, the magnitude of the world, the nature of things, and the power and energy of the immortal Gods.

That Bards existed in Britain in and before the tenth century, is obvious to all who inspect the laws of Howel Dha. He reigned soon after the year 900.<sup>12</sup> His laws not only

<sup>1</sup> De Bell. Gal. l. vi.

<sup>2</sup> Geog. l. iv. p. 197—302.

<sup>3</sup> l. v. p. 213—308.

<sup>4</sup> l. xv. p. 75.

<sup>5</sup> l. i.

<sup>6</sup> In his Celtico.

<sup>7</sup> Ath. Diep. l. vi. p. 246.

<sup>8</sup> l. xv. c. 9. p. 73.

<sup>9</sup> l. iv. p. 302.

<sup>10</sup> l. vi.

<sup>11</sup> l. iii. c. 2. p. 243.

<sup>12</sup> He went to Rome in 926.

mention the Bards, but speak of them as a regular and established order of men. They are described as being in an organised state in different ranks and degrees, with various duties and emoluments assigned to them, and as forming an important and respected part of the royal household.

The one called *Bardd Teulu*, was the Bard of the family. There was also a *Bardd Cadeirioc*, who was superior to the others.<sup>14</sup> He is also called the *Pencerdd*, the chief of song; and he was the Bard who had obtained the *Cadair*.<sup>15</sup> The other Bards were in some degree subjected to him, for no Bard was to ask for any thing without his leave, while he held the office, excepting bards from other sovereignties.<sup>16</sup>

At the three principal feasts, the family Bard was to sit near the *Penteulu*, the head of the household.<sup>17</sup> The importance of this position, we may estimate by observing a preceding law, which dictates that the *Penteulu* was to be the king's son, or nephew, or brother, or a person of suitable dignity.<sup>18</sup> He was to give the harp to the Bard, who was to sing to him whenever he pleased.<sup>19</sup> The *Bardd Cadeirioc* was one of the fourteen who sat at the king's table, near the judge of the court.<sup>20</sup>

The family Bard enjoyed free land, a horse, and clothing from the king and queen.<sup>21</sup> He was supported by the *Penteulu*, and had other privileges.

When songs were required, the *Bardd Cadeirioc* was to sing first the praise of God, then of the king; after him, the family Bard displayed his powers. When an army was ready to engage, the Bard was to sing the "*Unbeniaeth Prydain*." The monarchy of Britain.<sup>22</sup>

If we advance to the twelfth century, we find the most decisive evidence of their continuing existence and credit. Giraldus Cambrensis, who was born in 1150, mentions, that on a certain day, Llewelyn, prince of Gwynedh, held a great court, at which all his nobles were present. At the end of the dinner, a man of eloquence came forward. Giraldus adds, "He was of that kind which, in the British, as well as in the Latin language, are called *bards*."<sup>23</sup>

<sup>14</sup> *Leges Howel*, p. 36. <sup>15</sup> *Ibid.* 68. <sup>16</sup> *Ibid.* 69. <sup>17</sup> *Ibid.* 35.

<sup>18</sup> *Ibid.* 15. <sup>19</sup> *Ibid.* 16, 17. <sup>20</sup> *Ibid.* 14. <sup>21</sup> *Ibid.* 35. <sup>22</sup> P. 36. See more of them, p. 29. 68, 69.

<sup>23</sup> "*Processit in fine prandii coram omnibus vir quidam lingue dicacis, cujusmodi linguâ Britannicâ sicut et latinâ Bardis*

That these bards applied their muse to historical purposes, is proved by the speech of the Welsh prince, who says, "As long as Wales shall stand, this noble deed will be transmitted with deserved praises and applauses by historical writings, and by the mouths of those singing."<sup>24</sup>

But if we appeal to the Welsh libraries, we shall find that there are poems now remaining of many Bards who lived in the twelfth century. I will name the Bards, and note the pages which their works occupy in the *Welsh Archaeology*<sup>25</sup>, and the times wherein they flourished.

1120—1160	Meilyr,	-	-	-	-	Page 189
1150—1190	Gwalchmai,	-	-	-	-	193
1150—1200	Cynddelu,	-	-	-	-	204
1150—1197	Owain Cyveiliawg,	-	-	-	-	265
1150—1200	Daniel ab Ll. Mew,	-	-	-	-	269
1160—1220	Gwynvardd Brycheiniawg,	-	-	-	-	269
1160—1220	Gwylm Ryvel,	-	-	-	-	274
1140—1172	Hywel ab Owain Gwynedd,	-	-	-	-	275
1160—1220	Llywarch ab Llywelyn,	-	-	-	-	279
1170—1220	Meilyr ab Gwalchmai,	-	-	-	-	329
1170—1220	Einiawn ab Gwalchmai,	-	-	-	-	329
1160—1210	Seisyll,	-	-	-	-	338
1160—1220	Elidyr Sais,	-	-	-	-	345
1170—1210	Dewi Mynyw,	-	-	-	-	543

The succeeding centuries abound with Bards whose works are also extant. I will mention only the poets of the following, or thirteenth century, to give the reader an idea of the Welsh poetry extant.

1220—1280	Llywelyn Vardd,	-	-	-	-	355
1250—1290	Bleddyn Vardd,	-	-	-	-	363
1210—1260	Grufudd ab Gwrgeneu,	-	-	-	-	373
1200—1250	Phylip Brydydd,	-	-	-	-	375
1210—1260	Prydydd Bychan,	-	-	-	-	379

dicuntur unde Lucanus plurima concreti fuderunt carmina Bardi.

GIRALDUS *de Jure et Statu Menev. Ecc. ap. Wharton's Anglia Sacra*, vol. ii. p. 559.

<sup>24</sup> Quod, quamdiu Wallia stabit, nobile factum hujus et per historias scriptas et per ora canentium dignis per tempora cuncta laudibus atque preconiis efferretur. GIRALD. *ib.*

<sup>25</sup> In the first volume.

1230—1270	Einiawn ab Madawg Rhahawd	-	391
1270—1320	Gwerneg ab Clydno,	- - -	392
1240—1280	Hywel Voel ab Griffri,	- - -	392
1263—1300	Grufudd ab yr Ynâd Coch,	- - -	394
1220—1300	Madawg ab Gwallter,	- - -	404
1280—1320	Gwilym Dhu,	- - -	408
1280—1330	Llywelyn Brydd Hodnaut,	- - -	412
1280—1330	Hillyn,	- - -	413
1290—1340	Iorwerth Vychan,	- - -	414
1290—1340	Llywelyn Dhu,	- - -	416
1290—1340	Llywarch Llaety,	- - -	416
1290—1340	Casnodyn,	- - -	421
1290—1340	Rhisserdyn,	- - -	428
1290—1340	Gruffud ab D. ab Tudor,	- - -	477
1290—1340	Madawg Dwygraig,	- - -	481

There are as many Bards in the two subsequent centuries.

#### V. That there were similar Bards in the sixth centuries.

Whoever maturely weighs the circumstances adduced in the preceding argument, will not be unwilling to admit this assertion the moment it is made. Because, if they do not warrant the inference, that Bards *continued* to be in Britain, during the centuries between the fourth and tenth, what a strange supposition must be made? They are proved to have existed here before the fourth, in the tenth, twelfth, and following centuries. To reconcile with these facts a denial of their existence in the sixth, we must believe, that after having flourished in the island, they became extinct; that they re-appeared again about the tenth, to vanish again, and resuscitate in the twelfth century, since which period they have remained till near our times. To explain the frequent vanishings and re-appearances of these apparitions by reasoning or history, will certainly be found much more difficult than to admit the probable inference, that they never disappeared at all, but continued to flourish from the fourth century to the twelfth; an inference which the laws of Howel corroborate, because the Bards appear there in a character of much dignity and credit, with every appearance of a long pre-vipus establishment.

That there were Bards in the sixth century is a more credible fact than even their authenticated existence in the first. Because, between these periods, the Roman conquest

and colonization of the island took place. The Romans continued in Britain till the beginning of the fifth century; and it is expressly stated by Tacitus, of one of their governors, what is probable of most of his successors, that his policy was directed to improve and civilize the Britons. Now it would be a new discovery to make, that Roman civilization would diminish the knowledge or intellectual talents of a semi-barbarous people. Surely, if there had been any literary talent in Britain before the Romans came, it would be rather augmented than destroyed by the literature and intercourse of this polished nation for almost four hundred years.

The continuity of the bardic profession from the days of Cæsar to more recent times, appears to me to be strongly intimated by the continued use and application of the term Bards to the Welsh poets during all the interval. Strabo, Diodorus, and Posidonius, called the poets of the Celtic nations Bardoi. Lucan, and Marcellinus, Bardi. The laws of Howel Dha exhibits the Welsh poets of the tenth century under the same name of Bardd. Giraldus, in the twelfth century, attests that they then also bore the same appellation; and all the Welsh poems and authors existing designate them through every age by the same term. So indigenous is this word in the Welsh language, that it is the root of twenty-two combinations, all alluding to the original meaning. We have also the evidence of a Roman author, that the word was borrowed from the Celtic in Gaul, from which Britain was peopled. Sextus Pompeius Festus says, that Bardus is a word which, in ancient Gaul, signified singer, a man who sung the praises of the brave. He adds, that it was derived from their order of Bards.<sup>1</sup>

Two great events happened in Britain in the fifth century, which peculiarly tended to inspire and perpetuate its Bards. One was the secession of the Britons from the Roman government, and the assertion of their independence, about the year 410.<sup>2</sup> The other was the invasion of the Saxons. What subjects could have given to poetry more energy and importance than these incidents. The Bardic genius must not only have burnt with new zeal and inspiration, but the

---

<sup>1</sup> Bardus, Gallice cantor appellatur, qui virorum fortium laudes canit: a gente Bardorum. *Gloss.*

<sup>2</sup> See History of Anglo-Saxons, vol. i. p. 124.

chiefs must have more liberally encouraged, and the people more enthusiastically applauded it.

We have one direct evidence that there were British poets in the sixth century, who sung the praises of the great, in a casual passage of Venantius Fortunatus. In panegyrising the Dux Lupus, he tells him, that the British Chrotta sings him :

Romanus que lyra plaudat tibi, barbarus harpa  
Græcus anhillata, *chrotta Britanna canat.*<sup>3</sup>

This was the ancient Welsh *crwth*, a sort of violin. It is mentioned in the laws of Howel Dha. It is probably the same to which Cuthbert, in the eighth century, the pupil of our venerable Bede, alludes: "I should like to have a cytharista who could play on the cithara, which we call *Rottæ*, because I have a cithara."<sup>4</sup>

There are two passages of Gildas, who, as well as Fortunatus, lived in the sixth century, which seem to me to be meant of Bards. The first is a part of his violent declamation against the British kings:<sup>5</sup> "By their erected greediness of ears are heard not the praises of God, from the tuneful voice of the youths of Christ sweetly modulating, and the spirit of ecclesiastical melody; but *their own praises*, which are nothing, *from the mouths of scoundrel proclaimers, full of lies, foaming with ardour together, and braying it like bacchanals.*"

If we consider the passage, I think we must perceive that it is an intended contrast between two sorts of vocal music, the ecclesiastical, and that used before chieftains. The first is described with smooth and applausive epithets: the other is not described, but is branded with angry phrase. Now, if we recollect the enmity which at all times subsisted between the Welsh bards and the monks; the custom of the bards, to sing at the feasts the praises of their chiefs; the direction in Howel's laws, that they should do so; and the very virulent phraseology in which Gildas indulges throughout his epistle;

<sup>3</sup> L. vii. p. 169. ed. Mogunt. 1617.

<sup>4</sup> 16 Bibl. Mag. p. 88.

<sup>5</sup> "Arrecto aurium auscultantur captu non Dei laudes canora Christi tyronum voce suaviter modulante, pneumaque ecclesiasticæ melodix; sed propriæ (que nihil sunt) surciferorum referto mendaciis simulque spumanti flegmate—preconium ore, ritu bacchantium concrepante.

GILDAS, Epist. p. 13. Ed. Galt.

I presume it will not be incorrect to say, that he alludes to bards in this paragraph. Gildas is not the first man to whom bards and secular music have been offensive. If Plato could banish Homer; if a prince, to whom Ariosto presented his poems, could ask him where the devil he got such fooleries; if the monks, in the middle ages, could so abuse the minstrels, and they the monks, as we know they reciprocally did, we shall not be surprised that Gildas called the bards scoundrels, and censured their encomiastic songs, as bacchanalian uproar.<sup>6</sup>

In another passage, he says, amidst his inculpation of the British clergy, that they were slow to hear the precepts of the saints; "but strenuous and intent to listen to idle things and the foolish fables of secular men."<sup>7</sup> What were these recited fables of the secular men, for which the clergy deserted their religious reading? Is it any undue construction of the words, to suppose they meant the compositions of the bards?

But why should it be supposed that the Britons had not bards in the sixth and seventh centuries? The Franks then had poets—the Saxons had poets—the Irish had poets.<sup>8</sup> Let us, then, not deny them to the Welsh!

<sup>6</sup> A passage in the *Cyvoesi Merdhin* shews, that if Gildas talked with fury of the Bards of this period, they were as angry with the Monks; for Merdhin says,

I will not receive the sacrament  
From the detestable Monks,  
With their gowns on their haunches:  
May the sacrament be administered to me by God himself.

Ny chymmeras gymun  
Gan ysgymun Veneich  
Ac eu tuygeu ar eu clun  
Am cymuno Duw e hun.

*Arch.* 149.

<sup>7</sup> "Ad præcepta sanctorum—oscitantes ac stupidos et ad ludicra et ineptas secularium hominum fabulas—strenuos et intentos."

GILDAS, p. 23.

<sup>8</sup> Bede, in his *Life of St. Patrick*, mentions two poets in Ireland in the time of the saint. "In memoria Dubtag poetam optimum—quidam adolescens poeta nomine Pheg." *Bede's Works*, iii. p. 320. This passage of Bede, which I met with in going over his works, gives a solid foundation for the belief that there were Irish Poets, or Bards, in the seventh century.

## ADDITIONAL REMARKS.

THAT there were ancient poets and their compositions among the Bretons of Armorica, was the assertion and belief of our ancient English and Anglo-Norman poets and *trouv*eurs and others. Some may be mentioned from M. de la Rue's *Recherches sur les Ouvrages des Bardes Armoricanes*, 8—20.

It is not only Chaucer who says that they made rhimed poems in their language :

These olde gentil Bretons in her dayes  
Of diverse adventures maden layes,  
Rimeyd in hir firste Breton tongue,  
Which layes with hir instrument they songe,  
In Armoricke that called is Bretaigne.

Nor is it only the old metrical romance of *Emare* that notices them,

Ther is on of Brytagne layes  
That was used by olde dayes.

But in the older poem entitled, " *Songe du Dieu d'Amour*," of the twelfth century, they are thus mentioned :

De Rotruenges etait fait tot li pons,  
Totes les planches de dits et de chansons :  
De sons de harpes, les estaces del fons,  
Et les saliies des doux lais des Britons.

*MS. Bib. Paris, No. 7595.*

In the 13th century the French *trouveur* Regnaud declared that he translated his "*Lai d'Ignaures*" from a Breton original. He makes the hero lord of the castle of Auriol, in Bretagne. *MS. ibid.*

Another *trouveur*, in his "*Lai de l'Epine*," says, "It is taken from the histories preserved at Cardiff, in the church of St. Aaron. These stores are equally known in Bretagne, and in other places." *MS. ibid.*

This authority connects the Breton and Welsh compositions of this sort.

Another *trouveur* translated the "*Lai de Graalent Mor*," who was one of the half-historical and half-fabled heroes of

Bretagne; and says that it was sung all over that country MSS. Bib. Paris, 7989.

In the twelfth century, Chretien de Troyes says, in his *Roman du Chevalier au Lion*, "If I agree so much with the Bretons, it is because they have preserved by their songs the memory of the men who acquired honour by their great artists. MS. *ibid.* La Rue, p. 16.

The "Lay of Tristan" also mentions the Breton poems :

Bons lais de harpe vous apris  
Laes Bretons de notre pais.

LA RUE, p. 20.

Mr. de la Rue's book on the Armorican Bards was printed in 1815. But eight years before this, in the year 1807, I published, in the second edition of the *History of the Anglo-Saxons*, the following particulars concerning them, which, having omitted in the next edition to put them into an appendix, I will here reprint.

That the Gothic nations had poets we learn from Tacitus<sup>9</sup>; but when we consider what has been delivered to us of the intellectual cultivation of the Druids, we cannot put the Gothic Scalds into competition with the Keltic Bards, who were one of the most distinguished branches of the Druidical order. We not only find them attending the kings, to sing their genealogies and praises<sup>10</sup>, and recording the actions of the illustrious<sup>11</sup>; but we are also informed, that the lessons of the Druids to their disciples were conveyed in a great number of verses.<sup>12</sup> These must have been numerous indeed, as youth remained twenty years under their Druidical education<sup>13</sup>; and if we recollect that the Druids taught their youth, about the stars and their motion, the magnitude of the world, the nature of things, and the power and energy of the immortal gods, we shall be inclined to think that the Keltic Bards were superior in some respects to the Gothic Scalds, in the degree of their mental cultivation.

The Keltic Bards were not confined to Britain. They had also pervaded France; and more especially were in those parts which the Kelts continued to occupy. As the Romans

<sup>9</sup> De Mor. Germ.

<sup>10</sup> App. in Celtic. — Posid. ap Athen. l. vi. p. 246.

<sup>11</sup> Lucan, l. i. Amm. Marc. l. xv. c. 9 Festus Gloss.

<sup>12</sup> Cæsar de Bell. Gall. l. vi.

<sup>13</sup> *Ibid.* l. vi.

spread their conquest over Gaul, the Keltic customs gave way to Roman civilization, and to Christianity. But there are, in every country invaded by a foreign enemy of dissimilar manners, some corners, to which the more stubborn of the ancient races retire with the prejudices and habits of their ancestors. Cornwall and Wales were the places in Britain in which the Druids sought refuge from the Romans, and the Britons from the Saxons; and Armorica, or Bretagne, seems to have been the part of France which became the last asylum of the ancient Kelts. That the Druids and the Pagan worship were respected in Armorica, in the fourth century, is evident from the poems of Ausonius; who mentions of his friend, as a flattering distinction, that he was a warden of the temple of Belenus, and descended from the Druids of Armorica.<sup>14</sup> The Bards may be, therefore, supposed to have flourished in this region, as a part of the Druidical system.

When the Britons fled from the Saxons, they transplanted themselves in numerous colonies to Armorica, in the fifth and sixth centuries. Ruval settled, with a large body, in the north part of the province, from Leon to Dol.<sup>15</sup> Fracanus, the kinsman of Cato, probably Cai, the friend of Arthur, went thither with his family.<sup>16</sup> We also find Conomer, a British king, in the upper regions of Bretagne; and Weroc, another, ruling at Vannes.<sup>17</sup> Grallon governed in those parts which are called Cornwall.<sup>18</sup> This was the dis-

<sup>14</sup> Nec reticebo senem,  
 Nomine Phœbitium,  
 Qui Beleni ædituus  
 Nil opis inde tulit:  
 Sed tamen, ut placitum,  
 Stirpe satus Druidum,  
 Gentis Aremoricae.

*Prof. 10.*

Also,

Tu, Bagocassis, stirpe Druidorum satus,  
 Si fama non fallit fidem,  
 Beleni sacratum ducis e templo genus;  
 Et inde vobis nomina.

*Prof. 4.*

<sup>15</sup> Lobineau Hist. Bretagne, p. 6, 7.

<sup>16</sup> Vita Winwal. an Armorican MS. ap. Boll. Act. Sanct. 1 Martii 256.

<sup>17</sup> Vita Gildæ ap. Bouquet, t. iii. p. 453.

<sup>18</sup> Vit. Winw. 259.

trict near Brest; of which Quimper was the metropolis.<sup>19</sup> Caradoc Vreichvras, the personal friend and warlike companion of Arthur, and who had governed Cronwall in England under him, also established a kingdom in Bretagne.<sup>20</sup>

These emigrations of some of the most active characters in Britain, must have occasioned a great influx of Bards accompanying their chiefs; because Bards were a regular and established part of every chieftain's family; and their songs made a principal part of all their festivities.<sup>21</sup> Many of their clergy, who were the only other part of the people that attended to intellectual cultivation, went thither also.<sup>22</sup> Gildas, one of their most esteemed literary men of that day, emigrated with the rest.<sup>23</sup> The yellow plague, which raged at that time, increased the frequency and largeness of the emigrations.<sup>24</sup> The turbulent period which afterwards followed in Wales must have made Bretagne, for a long time, a favourite retreat.

From the preceding facts, of the continuance of the Druids in Armorica, and consequently of their Bards, and of the British emigrations, it is clear, that poetry must have flourished more in Bretagne, during the sixth and seventh centuries, than in Britain or any other part of the continent. The Franks having occupied the best part of Gaul, and the Saxons having overspread England, the ruder Gothic manners of both nations diffused much national barbarism, in the countries which they occupied. As the Keltic and British Bards were superior in cultivation to the Gothic Scalds, so the Bards of Bretagne must have been the most improved poets which

<sup>19</sup> Vit. S. David, MSS. of Utrecht ap. Boll. 1 Mart. 139. and see Bolland, 1 Feb. 602.

<sup>20</sup> Vita Paternus, MSS. Cott. Lib. Vesp. A. 14. and Brev. Venet. ap. Boll. 2 April, p. 381. It has been calculated in this year, 1818, that there are about 900,000 persons who still speak the Breton language in France.

<sup>21</sup> Leges Howel Dha, p. 35. 36. 68, 69. and 14—17. Taliesin is stated to have been in Armorica, in Jeffry's poem, MSS. Vesp. E. 4. p. 124.

<sup>22</sup> As St. Teiliaw. Vit. ap. Boll. 1 Feb. 308. The emigrants in Bretagne sent for Sampson from Wales, and made him bishop of Dol. MSS. Vesp. A. 14. p. 47. St. Paternus settled in Armorica, ib. MSS. p. 77—80.

<sup>23</sup> Vita Gild. *ubi supra*.

<sup>24</sup> Vit. S. Teil. Boll. 1 F. 308.

then existed in those parts of Europe, from which the Gothic nations had recently expelled the Romans. Among the Gothic nations, the Christian clergy discountenanced their Scalds, because the Scalds were the advocates of their Pagan superstitions: but the British Bards, having adopted Christianity, always maintained their rank and influence in Wales and Bretagne; though they sometimes bickered with the monks.

From singing warlike odes to flatter the chiefs, or mystical mythology to please themselves, the transition to chanting or reciting more circumstantial or narrative poetry, to please the people, was neither difficult nor improbable. Emigrations and new settlements, and the penury and distress which must have followed such violent changes of former habits, made the chiefs less able to reward their Bards; and must have driven the Bards to increase their means of support by interesting the people as well as their lords.<sup>25</sup> If the metaphors of lyric poetry satisfied the chieftain, the details of narrative fiction would alone be level to the comprehension of the vulgar. To compose in a slavish mixture of alliteration and rhyme, was more laborious than a prose recitation; and therefore the Bards, who sought to interest the people, would begin gradually to use the unlaboured tale, rather than the artificial verse.

That some of the Bards of Wales actually submitted to the composition of tales, is evidenced by their Mabinogion, which still exist<sup>26</sup>: and that the Bards of Bretagne indulged in this species of composition is clear, from Bretagne having

<sup>25</sup> One sentence of the prophecy ascribed by Jeffery to Merlin proves this to be the fact. It says of Arthur, "he shall be celebrated in the popular mouth, and his actions shall be food to those who narrate them." Jeffery, l. vii. c. 9. and Alanus, p. 22. Jeffery tells us, in the first chapter of his work, that the actions of Arthur and other British kings were celebrated by many people, and were recited from memory.

<sup>26</sup> The first four sections of the Mabinogion, which means literally Tales for Youth, are the Story of Pwyll Prince of Dymed—The Story of Bran the blessed—The Story of Manawydan—The Story of Math, the Son of Mathonwy. All these tales are singular and original. But the most elaborate of all, is the Tale of Peredur, which is indeed a regular romance of Arthur, but full of Welsh costume. It is a work of the middle ages; but has not so ancient an air as some of the others.

been made the scene of so many of the old romances. That such tales existed, and were dear to all ranks of people, in the sixth century, seems intimated by a passage in Gildas, who chides the British clergy of that age, for being slow to hear the precepts of the saints, "but strenuous and intent to listen to idle things, and the *foolish fables* of secular men."<sup>27</sup> This seems to allude to the compositions of the Bards; and of these, rather to their narrative tales, than to their elaborate poems. The strange poem of Taliesin, called the Spoils of Annwn, implies the existence of mythological tales about Arthur<sup>28</sup>; and the frequent allusions of the old Welsh Bards, to the persons and incidents which we find in the Mabinogion, are further proofs, that there must have been such stories in circulation amongst the Welsh.

That in the sixth and seventh centuries, there were Bards in Armorica and Wales, who descended from their bardic character, to gain popularity and subsistence by telling stories and amusing the people, seems to be confirmed by a satire of Taliesin; which expresses the most decided hostility to such wandering Bards, or Minstrels.

It may amuse the curious to translate the poem, which describes the ordinary Minstrels not inaccurately, though satirically;

#### GALL FROM THE BARDS.

"The minstrels (cler) exercise themselves in false customs  
 Their praise is not in the regular melody;  
 They sing the fame of insipid heroes;  
 They are always diffusing falsehoods;  
 The commandments, the statutes of God, they break;  
 Married women by their praise,  
 With irrational thoughts they greatly deceive;  
 The beautiful virgins they corrupt,  
 May they beware how they trust such, —  
 And rank them with men of truth!  
 Age and time they consume in vain:  
 In the night they carouse, in the day they sleep;

<sup>27</sup> Gildas, "ad præcepta sanctorum—oscitantes ac stupidos et ad ludicra et ineptas secularium hominum *fabulas*—strenuos et intentos." p. 23.

<sup>28</sup> See Vindication of the Ancient British Poems, p. 239. Some of the persons noticed in this, are the heroes of the two first sections in the Mabinogion.

Idle, they get food without labour ;  
 They hate the churches, but seek the liquor houses ;  
 The false thieves consent together ;  
 For courts and feasts they enquire ;  
 Every indiscreet discourse they detail ;  
 Every deadly sin they praise ;  
 They wander over all the villages, towns, and lands ;  
 They discourse on every filthy trifle ;  
 They despise the commandments of the Trinity ;  
 They respect neither Sundays nor holidays ;  
 They care not for the days of necessity (death) ;  
 From every gluttony they refrain not ;  
 Excesses of eating and drinking is what they desire ;  
 Tenths and family offerings they pay not ;  
 The men appointed, they mock !  
 Birds fly ; bees collect honey ;  
 Fishes swim ; reptiles creep ;  
 Every thing labours for its subsistence,  
 Except minstrels, vagrants, and worthless thieves.  
 Blaspheme not among you teaching, nor the art of song !  
 For God gives anguish and melancholy  
 To those whose habit is false purposes,  
 In mocking the service of Jesus.  
 Be silent, ye Pos-bard ! unprosperous false ones !  
 Ye know not to judge between truth and falsehood ;  
 If ye be primary bards of faith,  
 Of the work of God the artist,  
 Foretell to your king his misfortunes !  
 I am a diviner and universal chief of the bards ;  
 I know every pillar in the caves of the west ;  
 I released Elphin from the stone round tower.  
 Tell your king what will be his security,  
 If the Lord of the sea-coast of Rhianedd come,  
 To avenge iniquity on Maelgwn of Gwynedd :  
 On his hair, on his teeth, his eyes ; his yellow countenance !  
 Thus will he work his revenge on Maelgwyn of Gwynedd !"

TALIESIN, p. 26.

This severe invective against the ambulatory Bards, who sought their subsistence by amusing the people, proves the existence of such a set of men at that time. These Bards, whom Taliesin tauntingly calls Pos-Bards, who disregarded the regular canons of bardic melody ; and whom he distinguishes so carefully from the Prif-Bards, of whom he was one ; were probably the authors of the Mabenogion, and of the romantic tales about Arthur and his friends. This poem of Taliesin and its subject, are alluded to by Phylip Brydydd, who lived about 1200. See his Poems, 1 W. A.

p. 377, 378. As I cannot ascertain the exact meaning of the contemptuous term *Pos-Bard*, I have placed the original expression in the text. Brydydd applies Go-veird, "or less than Bards," to a similar class of persons.

To these evidences of the bardic compositions in Bretagne, may be added the important intimations given by Marie de France, to whom M. de la Rue also refers, and whose ancient Poesies in 1820 were published by M. de Roquefort, with a liberal French translation, in two volumes, 8vo. She refers repeatedly to Breton tales, writings, and songs; and she addressed her lays to our Henry III.; and speaks of the Breton compositions.

In her "*Lai de Gugemer*," she says, "I will briefly relate to you the tales of which the Bretons have made their lays. According to the *letter and the writing*, I will shew you an adventure, which in ancient time happened in little Britain." — Roquefort, p. 50. She ends it with adding, "From this tale the lay of Gugemer was composed, which men recite to the harp and rote.

"It is pleasant to hear the note." p. 112.

This passage shews that the Breton bards sung their lays to the harp.

In her *lai d' Equitan*, she says, "The Bretons were accustomed to make lays of the adventures they experienced for remembrance, and that they might not be forgotten." — *Ib.* p. 114. It ends "Thus the Bretons made a lay of it." p. 136.

In the lay, "*Des Deux Amants*," she mentions here, that "the Bretons made a lay of it," p. 252 and 270, as of *Gracelent*, p. 540.

In her poem of "*The Nightingale*" she here says the same, p. 914 and 926, and she alludes to these lay-makers as 'ancients,' in one on *Melon*, p. 366.

In that of *Eleduc*, she says expressly, that her tale is "from a *very ancient* Breton lay," p. 400 — and adds at its close "of the adventures of those three, the courteous *ancient* Bretons made a lai to commemorate them that they might not be forgotten." P. 484.

In the *lay d' Epine*, she speaks of histories of these adventures being in the monastery of St. Aaron in St. Malo: and that they were sung in Bretagne, p. 542; and ends with asserting, that the Bretons made a lay of it, p. 580.

---

The fair inference from these facts are, that if there were ancient Breton compositions of bards existing in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries, it cannot be improbable that Welsh bards in Britain should have made poems in the sixth and seventh centuries. It is this asserted state of their anterior minds, which accounts for their subsequent writings; — for it is inconceivable to me, how a people so rude in political state, life, and manners, as the Welsh were in the middle ages, could have had such compositions as indisputably existed in the twelfth and following centuries, if their ancestors had not greatly cultivated literature, although of that peculiar sort which their remains exhibit. Its originality, — and no other nation has had such an artificial system of versification as their poems exhibit, — nor that triad form into which they have thrown their thoughts and historical facts. This originality is to me a confirming testimony of their genuineness.

VI. That Aneurin, Taliesin, Llywarch Hên, and Merd-hin, were British bards, who lived in the sixth century, and who left poems like those already mentioned to have been published as theirs.

If these authors had been Persians, instead of Britons, to what authorities should we have referred for information concerning them? Unquestionably to Persian writers — that is, to the writers of the country where they resided — to writers in the language which they used.

What information shall we be able to obtain concerning Calidas, the author of *Sacountala*, a Sanscreeet drama, but from Sanscreeet writers. By what authorities could we examine the genuineness of any writings ascribed to Con-fu-tse, but by Chinese. If any thing could be found about them in the literature of the nations bordering on China, it would be an additional treasure, but it would not be deemed an indispensable requisite. It is therefore obvious, that from the very nature of the case, we must expect to find our proofs of the existence and writings of the Welsh bards, in Welsh authors. It is from among the people for whom they were written, and by whom only they were read or valued, that we must deduce their attestations. We cannot expect to find them noticed by Anglo-Saxons, whom they hated, dreaded, and shunned; and who, as I have already shewn, though sufficiently barbarous themselves, yet thought they had a right to stigmatize Welsh

words as barbarous expressions. If Bede had understood Welsh, he would not have disgraced his taste by such large extracts from Gildas. Bede has neither mentioned the Welsh bards, nor the Saxon poets of his time, except the two who were monks; I mean Cedmon and Aldhelm.

It would not be very easy to prove the existence of any individual poet of these distant periods. There were both Frankish and Saxon poets, but their names have not appeared in history, and cannot now be recovered. How many of the poets and minstrels of Europe are only known by some lays having been transmitted to us under their names; but of their existence what external evidence can be brought?

There is a very long and curious Saxon poem in existence, which of course must have had an author, and have been written in the Saxon times; and yet the poem is mentioned in no writing that has survived to us, nor is the name of its parent known. It is a poem in forty sections, and occupying 140 MS. pages. It describes the wars which Beowulf, a Dane of the Scyldinga race, waged against the Reguli of Sweden. It is in the Cotton library, Vitellius, A. 15. Wanley calls it a *tractatus nobilissimus* — an *egregium exemplum* of the Anglo-Saxon poetry; and so it is. But if any one should take it into his head to pronounce it to be a forgery, and should call upon its advocates to prove its genuineness, how could this be done by any external evidence? How could it be defended by facts taken from other authors, when no other writing mentions it? It could only be supported by some arguments from the antiquity of the writing; from its internal evidence, and the improbability of any person having had sufficient inducements to commit the fraud.

I put these observations, merely to shew the difficulty of proving even those compositions to be genuine, which no one will dispute. — Greater proofs, in favour of the Welsh bards, must not be expected, than such as the nature of the case will admit us to obtain.

Now the reader will have the goodness to recollect the numerous citations made in some pages preceding, from the Welsh bards of the twelfth and thirteenth centuries. Most of these were so many distinct assertions of the existence of these four ancient bards. In most of them, one or other of these bards were quoted by name, and consequently such passages are so many proofs of the belief of their authors, that these ancient bards existed. To say that these witnesses were Welshmen, cannot invalidate their testimony; because, as I

have already intimated, by whom can we expect to find the ancient Welsh bards quoted, but by Welshmen?

We cannot expect to find these Welsh bards noticed by the Anglo-Saxons. I have already given a very striking proof of the contempt of the Anglo-Saxons for the Welsh language, by citing a charter, in which a Welsh word (which was familiarly in use as an epithet of royalty, and sometimes even as an epithet of the Deity,) was expressly denounced as *barbarous*. I will now adduce a cruel instance of the hatred of the Welsh towards the Anglo-Saxons. I take it from the ancient Welsh chronicler, Caradoc Llangarvan.

“The year of Christ, 959, Owain, son of Hoel dda, destroyed the choir of Saint Illtud, in Gorsewennydd, *because* he found in it learned men of the *Saxon* nobility.”

Oed Crist, 959, y torres Owain ab Hywel Dda, gor Llan Illtud yng Ngorsewennydd achaws cael ynddi lenogion pendevig o Saeson. — CARAD. LL. 2 *Arsh.* p. 490.

If the animosity between these two nations produced such effects as these, it will be vain to look for attestations of any part of Welsh literature among the Anglo-Saxons. The singular fact of Bede writing the history of this island, without any other British documents than the poor declamation of Gildas, which happened to be in Latin, is a sufficient indication that Welsh literature and traditions were not known out of Wales. The Normans were as unacquainted with it.

The circumstances with which these ancient bards are mentioned in the poetical passages, already cited, will, if duly attended to, be found to warrant the chronology which I have given to them. Thus, one states Merdhin and Taliesin as contemporaries, and another mentions Merdhin as having been present in the battle of Arderydd, which we know from other documents to have occurred in the sixth century. Another makes Taliesin contemporary with Elfin, whom the Welsh literature places in this century. Llywarch is mentioned as the son of Elidir Lydanwyn, who flourished about this period.

But the ancient Welsh bards are also mentioned in other compositions.

The name of Nennius is well known to us, though his exact chronology is not certain. His editor, Gale, places him in the seventh century. He may have belonged to the ninth.

The ancient, and beautiful MS. of his work, in the Cotton

library<sup>1</sup>, contains a part which is wanting in other MSS. This is not uncommon to ancient MSS. The addition in the Cotton MS. is a regular unbroken continuation of the preceding writing, in the same hand writing, with no interruption of line. The first part of the addition is a genealogy, and the latter is some unconnected notices of British and Saxon history. This part may have been his quotation from a preceding author, or it may be the addition of a subsequent copyist. It suits the broken hints, and disorderly composition of the former part, and is so far like the style of Nennius. But whether it be his or not, it is, at least, a very ancient composition.

The author's testimony to three of these bards is decisive. I will first give his words, as originally, but corruptly printed, and afterwards the passage, as properly amended by Evans.

In speaking of incidents in the sixth century, he says, "Item Talhearn Talanguen in poemate claruit et Nuevin et Taliesin et Bluchbar et Cian qui vocatur Gueinchguant simul uno tempore in poemate Britannico claruerunt."<sup>2</sup> In this imperfect state of the passage, we see Taliesin clearly mentioned among other bards, who flourished at the same time. Two of these others, the Welsh also now recognize, Talhaiarn<sup>3</sup>, and Cian.<sup>4</sup> They had bards of this name;

<sup>1</sup> Vesp. D. 21.

<sup>2</sup> Gale, xv. Script. Vol. III. p. 116.

<sup>3</sup> "Hast thou heard the saying of Talhaiarn  
To Arthur, the pusher of the spear:  
'There is none mighty but God.'"

A glyweisti cwedyl Talhaiarn  
Wrth Arthur yrthwaew tryzarn  
Namyn Duw nid oes gadarn.

*Engl. Clyw.*

The Book of Bardism thus states another fragment of this bard.

#### THE PRAYER OF TALHAIARN.

"O God, grant thy protection; and in thy protection, strength; and in strength, discretion; and in discretion, justice; and in justice, love; in love, to love God; and in loving God, to love all things."

Talhaiarn is also mentioned by Taliesin in his *Angar Cyvyn-dawd*, p. 35, and 36.

<sup>4</sup> Cian is mentioned by Aneurin:

"The son of Cian, from the stone of Gwyngwn," P. 2.

Maban y Gian o vaen Gwyngwn.

but no Nuevin, and no Bluchbar. The emendation of Evans, consists in correcting the names of Nuevin and Bluchbar, into Aneurin and Llywarch, of the justness of which, there can be no doubt. It is obvious, that the transcriber mistook a v. for an r. in Aneurin, which are often very similar in MSS. It is as probable, that Bluchbar was an error of the copyist for Llywarch. So in the surnames of Talhaiarn and Cian. They are also mis-written, and should be not Talanguen, but Tangwn; not Gueinchguant, but Gwyngwn.

The probability that the emendations made by Evans are proper, is apparent, when we see the incorrect manner in which other names are written in the same part. Thus our Penda is written Pantha;

Oswy,	Osguid, and Osbui,
Anna,	Onnan,
Oswald,	Osguald.

The British Urien, Urbgen; and for Deira and Bernicia, we have Deur Oberneich.

The passage, which we have cited, as amended by Evans, stands thus:

“Item Talhaiarn Tatangwn in poemate claruit et Aneurin et Taliesin et Llywarch et Cian qui vocatur Gwyngwn simul uno tempore in poemate Britannico claruerunt.”

I consider this, as one authority, very respectable from its antiquity, for the existence of Aneurin, Taliesin, and Llywarch, as distinguished poets, and as contemporaries.

2nd. There is another curious attestation of Taliesin in an ancient MS. of the laws of Howel Dha, in the Welsh school library. The writing has the character of the twelfth century. It has a passage which is not in the printed copy, and which, on mentioning the privileges of the men of Arvon, cites Taliesin by name thus:

Ac y cant Daliesin  
Kygleu wrth wres eu llawneu

And by Taliesin,

“When Cian had  
Praised many.”

Kian pan ddarfu  
Lliaws gyvolu.  
o o 2

P. 34.

Gan Run yn rudher bydyneu  
Gwyr Arvon rudyon yn rydiheu.<sup>5</sup>

“ And so Taliesin sang :  
Behold, by the wrath of their swords,  
With Rhun amid the tumult of armies,  
The men of Arvon red, and panting.”

This is an important passage. It proves three things : that Taliesin was a poet ; that he left poems on battles, which survived him ; and that he was of such celebrity, that one of his historic poems was quoted in a legal work. I am not certain that the poem has been preserved, in which these lines exist.

3d. To the existence, and high consideration, of Taliesin and Merdhin, there is another evidence in Jeffrey of Monmouth, who lived in the twelfth century. Jeffrey has written a Latin poem on the life of Merdhin, whom he calls Merlin. It contains some passages of harmonious versification, and many very prosaic. It has not yet been printed, but is in MS. in the Cotton library, Vespasian, E. 4. It is addressed to his friend the Bishop of Lincoln. It begins thus :

Vatadici vatis rabiem, musam que jocosam  
Merlini cantare paro, tu corrige carmen  
Gloria Pontificum.

After an introduction, it states the divisions of some of the British princes, and their conflict.

Cōtigit interea plures certamen habere  
Inter se regni procures, bello que feroci  
Insontes populos devastavisse per urbes.  
Dux Venedetorum Peredurus bella gerebat  
Contra Guennolonum Scotiæ qui regna regebat.  
Jamque dies aderat, bello prefixa ; duces que  
Astabant campo, decertabant que catervæ,  
Amborum pariter miseranda cæde ruentes.  
Venit ad bellum Merlinus cum Pereduro ;  
Rex quoque Cumbrorum, Rodarchus, sævus uterque.

I will beg permission of the reader to lay before him some more lines, as well, because the poem is not in the hands of

---

<sup>5</sup> See Welsh Archaeology, vol. iii. p. 384, in which this MS. is printed.

the public, as also because it intimates some of the striking circumstances of Merdhin's life.

It states, that in the battle Merlin's kinsman fell. His grief, at this incident, is represented as admitting of no consolation, and flies maddening to the woods.

Evocat e bello socios Merlinus, et illic  
Precepit in varia fratres sepelire capella;  
Replangit que viros nec cessat fundere fletus;  
Pulveribus crines sparsit, vestes que rescidit,  
Et prostratus humi nunc hac illacque volutat.  
Solatur Peredurus eum, procures que duces que  
Nec vult solari, nec verba precantia ferre.

Jam tribus emensis defleverat ille diebus  
Respuerat que cibos, tantus dolor usserat illum.  
Inde noyas furias cum tot tantisque querelis  
Aera complexisset, cepit furtimque recedit,  
Et fugit ad sylvas nec vult fugiendo videri:  
Ingrediturque nemus gaudet que latere sub ornis,  
Miratur que feras pascentes gramina saltus;  
Nunc has insequitur, nunc cursu præterit illas.  
Utitur herbarum radicibus, utitur herbis;  
Utitur arboreo fructu, morisque rubeti.  
Fit Sylvester homo, quasi sylvis deditus esset.  
Inde per æstatem totam, nulli que repertus,  
Oblitus que sui cognatorum que suorum  
Delituit sylvis, obductus more ferino.

In exact conformity with this account of his madness, Merdhin, in his Avallenau, which we have, and which is one of the poems in question, exclaims,

“ I am a wild, terrible screamer; affliction wounds me — raiment covers me not.”

From these passages of Jeffrey, we get these particulars:

1. The chronology of Merdhin. He is drawn in company with Rodarchus, King of Cumbria, who reigned in the sixth century.

2. That he was a poet, and warrior.

3. That the death of near relations, in battle, occasioned his frenzy.

4. That he fled wild to the woods.

5. That he obtained the surname of Sylvester. All these particulars harmonize with the poems ascribed to him, and with the Welsh traditions about him.

I will quote next two passages from the poem which men-

tions Merdhin's wish to see Taliesin, and that Taliesin came to him.

O dilecta Soror, Thelgesino que venire  
Precipe, namque loqui desidero plurima secum.  
Venit enim noviter de partibus Armoricanis,  
Dulcia que dedit sapienti dogmata Gildæ. P. 124.

Venerat interea Merlinum visere vatem  
Tunc Telyesinus. P. 125.

The two bards then sing and prophecy together. Here is a full testimony to the chronology of Merlin and Taliesin. They are stated to be the contemporaries of Gildas, who flourished in the sixth century; and we must remember, that the ancient Welsh poems also mention their conversing together.

The speech of Merlin, in p. 129, looks like a diffuse imitation of the last stanza of the Avallenau. It is the same sentiment, somewhat amplified. The Avallenau says,

" Sweet apple-tree! most sweet its produce;  
It grows in the solitude of the wood of Celyddon.  
It will be useless to be in competition for its fruit.  
Cadwaladry will come to the conference of the ford of Rheon;  
Cynan will be in opposition, in motion upon the Saxons;  
The Cymry will be triumphant; their chief illustrious;  
Every one will have his right, and Britons will be joyful,  
Singing to the horns of acclamation, the hymn of peace and  
serenity."

Afallen beren beraf ei haeron  
A dyf yn argel yn Argoed Celyddon  
Cyt ceisier ofer fydd herwydd ei hafon  
Yn y ddel Kadwaladr i gynadl rhyd Rheon  
Kynan yn erbyn cychwyn ar Saeson  
Kymry a oruydd kain wydde dragon  
Kaffant pawb ei deithi llawen fi Brythion  
Kaintor cyrn elwch Kathl heddwch a hinon.

*Afall. 153.*

The passage in Jeffrey is thus:

Merlinus ait—  
— Sic sententia summi  
Iudicis extitit, Britones ut nobile regnum  
Temporibus multis amittunt debilitate,  
Donéc ab Armorico veniet temone Conanus,  
Et Cadwaladrus Cambrorum dux venerandus;  
Qui pariter Scotos Cambros et Cornubienses,  
Armoricos que viros sociabunt foedere firmo;

*Amissum que suis reddente diadema colonis  
Hostibus expulsis renovato tempore Bruti,  
Tractabunt que suas sacratas legibus urbes,  
Incipiunt reges iterum superare remotos,  
Et sua regna sibi certamine subdere fato.*

P. 129.

This is such a palpable imitation of the Avalleuau, especially if it be considered that Merlin is made to express it, that I cannot doubt that Jeffrey had it in his recollection; and if so, the Avalleuau must have existed as Merlin, or Merdhin's, before Jeffery.

This is the passage to which it would seem that Golyddan alluded, when he quoted Merdhin as predicting the restoration of the Britons.<sup>6</sup> To this, also, I am induced to believe Llywarch P. Moch referred, when he cited Merdhin to the same sentiment.<sup>7</sup>

We may also remark of this conversation, which Jeffrey states between Merdhin and Taliesin, that one of the Welsh poems, preserved as Taliesin's, is a dialogue between him and Merdhin.<sup>8</sup>

4. But Merdhin, who is indifferently called by his three surnames, Caledonius, Wyllt, and Sylvester, of which, the last two are synonymous, is frequently mentioned by Giraldus Cambrensis, who lived in the twelfth century. (See his *Tracts*, published by Camden in his *Anglica Normannica*, &c. p. 870, 761, 839.) Giraldus says he was called Celedonius, from the wood in which he prophesied; and Sylvester, because, falling into madness, he fled to a wood, and remained there till his death. (p. 870.)

But all this impressive combination of facts is not the whole of the testimony, which bears upon this curious subject.

The Welsh have a very singular collection of historical facts, which they call *TRIADS*. Three events, which have an analogy in some point or other, are arranged together. It is certainly a very whimsical mode of commemorating events, but the actions of man are full of caprice. The fanciful rudeness of the plan, may discredit the taste or judgment of its

<sup>6</sup> See before, p. 37.

<sup>7</sup> See before, p. 64.

<sup>8</sup> Arch. p. 48.

Two years after the above was published, Mr. G. Ellis, in 1805, printed a summary of the Latin poem of Jeffrey, in his *specimens of early English metrical romances*, vol. i. p. 73—85.

He was pleased to consider the *Vindication* as a successful defence of the Welsh bards.

authors; but the veracity of the statements, is not affected by the singularity of the form. If the Welsh have never had a Livy, or a Thucydides; if they have made triads, instead of histories, we may blame the misdirection of their genius; but we cannot try the authenticity of a record by its taste and elegance, or what will become of our special pleading, our bills in equity, and our acts of parliament.

I put these observations to the judgment of the reader, because a gentleman has seriously adduced the oddity of the form of the triads, as a sufficient objection to their historical verity.<sup>9</sup> It is certainly a new discovery in criticism, that excellence of composition is a test of historical truth. If this principle be admitted, then the tales of Hawksworth, and the novels of Mad. D'Arblay, must be accredited as historical documents, because their composition is admirable, while the venerable, but rude and rustic chronicles of our ancestors must be discredited for their barbarism. On this principle, Jeffrey of Monmouth has written authentic history, because his style has been found pleasing, while our ancient Bede must sink into oblivion for ever; because much absurdity, and much puerility may be traced in his legends.

But there can be no doubt, that on maturer reflection, the author of the critique will see the impropriety of his observation; because (independent of other remarks), it must not be forgotten, that the critical merit of any composition must depend, in some measure, on its use and object. Now the object of the triads, was to commemorate the events they state, and the obvious use of the form, was to enable the memory to retain them more easily. A triad is an artificial association of three unconnected events, for the purpose of

---

<sup>9</sup> "The very form and feature of the Welsh triads, to select one example, would be contemplated as a proclamation of absurdity, if it occurred in any other language; for what can be more puerile than to build a variety of historical facts upon the number three. It certainly requires no knowledge, either of the Irish, or of the Welsh languages, to pronounce a judgment upon productions of this kind; and our regard for *historical truth* must induce us to censure the author who shall build on such foundations." — Critical Review, vol. xxxiii. New Arr. p. 122. The quantity of moral wisdom and valuable thought in the triads, published in the third volume of the Welsh Archaology, will shew that peculiarity of manner and great intellectual excellence are very combinable circumstances.

aiding the memory. If the natural associations of events, according to their chronology, was sufficient to make them be recollected, why were such laborious devices as Grey's *Memoria Technica* invented? Has the critic forgotten the elaborate arts of the Roman orators to assist their memory? Did they not connect their topics with various objects before them when haranguing, and use other artificial associations to hinder forgetfulness? The Druids, we learn from Cæsar, made their pupils commit their tuition to memory; and that the ancient Britons should continue the custom, and should use the form of triads to assist the memory, cannot be thought either absurd or inconsistent.

I hope the reader will pardon me for a moment's digression, if I attempt to shew that the form of triads is by no means so "remarkably foreign to good sense." I cannot do this better, than by citing a few of the Welsh poetical triads, which the youths, who aspired to be bards, were directed to commit to memory, to direct their judgment, and assist their composition. Surely they will be allowed to contain many valuable observations, expressed with singular brevity.

The three foundations of genius: the gift of God, human exertion, and the events of life.

The three first requisites of genius: an eye to see nature, a heart to feel it, and a resolution that dares follow it.

The three things indispensable to genius: understanding, meditation, and perseverance.

The three things that ennoble genius: vigour, discretion, and knowledge.

The three tokens of genius: extraordinary understanding, extraordinary conduct, and extraordinary exertion.

The three things that improve genius: proper exertion, frequent exertion, and successful exertion.

The three things that support genius: prosperity, social acquaintance, and applause.

The three things that will ensure praise; amiable manners, scientific learning, and pure morals.

The three qualifications of poetry; endowment of genius, judgment from experience, and felicity of thought.

The three pillars of judgment: bold design, frequent practice, and frequent mistakes.

The three pillars of learning: seeing much, suffering much, and studying much.

The three pillars of happiness; to suffer contentedly, to hope that it is coming, to believe that it will arrive.

The three ornaments of thought: perspicuity, correctness, and novelty.

The three embellishments of song : fine invention, happy subject, and a masterly harmonious composition.

The three properties of song : correct fancy, correct order, and correct metre.

The three ends of song : to improve the understanding, to improve the heart, and to soothe the reflection.

The three things which constitute a poet : genius, knowledge, impulse.

The three honours of a poet : strength of imagination, profundity of learning, and purity of morals.<sup>10</sup>

I would ask the reader, if these triads do not contain much wisdom, and also express it with emphatic conciseness ?

But it is the triads which are called historical, which furnish attestations of the four bards above-mentioned.

The historical triads have been obviously put together at very different periods. Some appear very ancient. Some allude to circumstances about the first population, and early history of the island, of which every other memorial has perished. The triads were noticed by Camden with respect. Mr. Vaughan, the antiquary of Hengurt, refers them to the seventh century. Some may be the records of more ancient traditions, and some are of more recent date. I think them the most curious, on the whole, of all the Welsh remains.

Lhwyd states that there are two MSS. of these historical triads. One in the red book of Hergest, imperfect, written on parchment in the 14th century. It consists of two chapters. One simply called *Trioedh*, or triads. The other, entitled *Trioedh y meirch*, the triad of the horses.

Another MS. of the triads, written about the same time, is in the Hengurt library. There are many other MSS. of the triads in the Welsh collections. The following extract from the preface of the editors of the *Welsh Archaeology*, may not be inapplicable cited.

“ The triads may be considered amongst the most valuable and curious productions preserved in the Welsh language; and they contain a great number of memorials of the remarkable events which took place among the ancient Britons. Unfortunately, however, they are entirely deficient with respect to dates; and, considered singly, they are not well adapted to

---

<sup>10</sup> These triads are, in the ancient MS. called the *Book of Bardism*. I select them from Mr. Owen's preface to his *Llywarch Hên*, with a few slight variations in the translation.

preserve the connection of history. Yet, a collection of triads, combined together as these are, condense more information into a small compass, than is to be accomplished perhaps by any other method; and consequently, such a mode of composition is superior to all others for the formation of a system of tradition."

The historical triads distinctly and expressly mention all the bards whose works we defend.

TRIAD 92d.

The three chief bards of the Isle of Britain.

" Merdhin Emrys;  
Merdhin, the son of Morvryn, and  
Taliesin, the chief of the Bards." <sup>12</sup>

Tri phrif fardd Ynys Prydain.  
Merddin Emrys, Merddin mab Morfryn, a  
Thaliesin ben Beirdd.

TRIAD.

The three princely bulls of the Isle of Britain.

" Elmur, son of Cadair;  
Cynhaval, son of Argad;  
Avaon, son of *Taliesin*. All three were sons of *bards*." <sup>13</sup>

Tri tharw unben Ynys Prydain  
Elmur mab Cadair  
Cynhaval mab Argad.  
Afaon mab Taliesin. Tri meib beirdd oeddynt ell tri.

71st.

The three free and discontented guests of Arthur's court :

" *Llywarch Hen*, *Llemenig*, and *Heledd*." <sup>14</sup>  
Tri thrwyddedawg ac ansoddawg Llys Arthur.  
*Llywarch Hen*, *Llemenig*, a *Heledd*.

86th.

The three counselling knights of the court of Arthur :

" Cynon, son of Clydno, of Eidyn;  
Aron, son of Cynvarch;  
and *Llywarch Hen*, son of Elidir Lydanwyn." <sup>15</sup>

<sup>12</sup> Welsh Archai. vol. ii.

<sup>13</sup> Ib. p. 4.

<sup>14</sup> Ib. p. 16.

<sup>15</sup> Ib. p. 18.

Tri chyingoriad farchog Llys Arthur :  
 Cynan ab Clydno Eiddym,  
 Aron ab Cynfarch,  
 a Llywarch Hên ab Elidir Lydanwyn.

38th.

The three accursed deeds of the Isle of Britain :

" Eidyn, the son of Einygan, who slew *Aneurin*, of splendid panegyric, monarch of the Bards ; Llawgad Trwm, from the borders of Eidyn, who slew Afaon, the son of *Taliesin* ; and Llovan Llawddino, who killed Urien, the son of Cynvarch." <sup>16</sup>

Tair ansad gyflafan Ynys Prydain : Eidyn a laddawd Aneurin Gwawtrydd medyrn beirdd ; Llawgat Trwm, bargawt Eidyn a laddawd Afaon mab Taliesin ; a Llofan Llawdinno a laddawd Urien mab Cynfarch.

39th.

The three accursed blows of the battle-axe of the Isle of Britain.

" The blow of Eidyn, on the head of *Aneurin* ;  
 The blow on the head of Iago, the son of Beli ;  
 and the blow on the head of Golyddan, the Bard."

Teir ansad fwyellawt Ynys Prydain ;  
 Bwyellawt Eidyn ym pen Aneurin,  
 A'r fwyellawt ym pen Iago mab Beli,  
 A'r fwyellawt ym pen Golyddan fardd.

These two last triads are very curious, as they not only attest the existence of Aneurin, but state the particular fact of his violent death, the criminal, and even part of his genealogy.

Thus we perceive that the triads expressly attest the existence of Aneurin, Taliesin, Llywarch Hên, and Merdhin.

I think, from all the evidence assembled under this head, I am entitled to say, " That Aneurin, Taliesin, Llywarch Hên, and Merdhin, were British Bards, who lived in the sixth century, and who left poems like those before mentioned." But although the Britons should be allowed to have such Bards at this period, yet, in order that their works should have descended to us, it is requisite that we know,

V. That the Britons had the use of letters at this æra.

I believe that no antiquary doubts this fact. The numerous Roman inscriptions, which have been found in the island,

---

<sup>16</sup> Welsh Archai. vol. ii. p. 18.

prove that letters were used in Britain very commonly by the Romans; and it would be somewhat miraculous, if this civilized people should have continued so long in the island without imparting their alphabet to the natives. But there are also several inscriptions yet extant, which were made by the Britons in these centuries. I will only refer to two. One is the inscription on the monumental stone raised by Samson, who lived in the sixth century<sup>1</sup>, to the memory of Illtutus. It was found in the church-yard of Lantwit-Major, in Glamorganshire, and may be seen in Camden's *Britannia*, under that county. The other is the inscription on the stone which Mr. Edward Williams, the ingenious Welsh Bard, now living, induced, by a curious local tradition, searched for in 1789, and dug out of the same church-yard. It purports, that Samson prepared it as a memorial of king Iuthahel, and another. It was left on the ground, after the discovery, till the month of August 1793, when Mr. Williams procured assistance to erect it against the east side of the porch, where it may now be seen.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> He was born about 420.

<sup>2</sup> It may not be uninteresting to give a more particular account of the finding of this stone in Mr. Williams's own words, as it is a singular instance of the fidelity of tradition; I may also add, of Mr. Williams's intelligent curiosity.

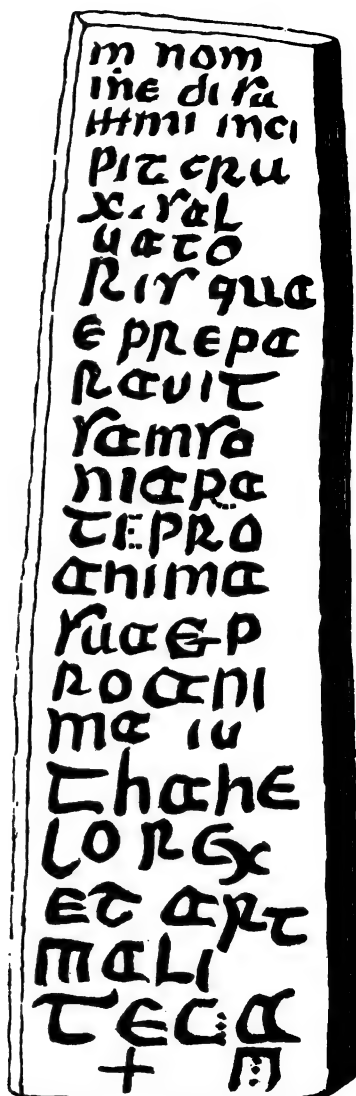
"In the summer of 1789, I dug out of the ground in *Lantwit* church-yard, a large monumental stone; it is the shaft of a cross, and its history affords a remarkable instance of the fidelity of popular tradition. About forty years ago, a very old man, his name *Richard Punter*, was then living at *Lanmais, juxta Lantwin*. He, though only a shoemaker, was more intelligent than most of his own class; he had read history more than many, was something of an antiquary, and had stored his memory with a number of interesting popular traditions. I was then about twelve or fourteen years of age; like him, fond of history and antiquities. He one day shewed me a spot on the east side of the porch of the old church at *Lantwit*, where, he said, a large monumental stone lay buried in the ground, with an inscription on it to the memory of two kings. The tradition of the accident which buried it in the ground, he gave as follows: Long ago, before the memory of the oldest persons that ever he knew (and he was then about eighty), for their knowledge of it was only traditional, there was a young man at *Lantwit*, commonly called *Will the Giant*. He, at seventeen

But if there were bards in those days, who knew the use of writing; yet, is it likely that any writings of this distant, rude, and turbulent period, should have survived to our times? It must therefore be proved,

## VI. That

---

years of age, was seven feet, seven inches high; but, as is usually the case in premature and supernatural growth, he fell into a decline, of which he died at that age. He had expressed a wish to be buried near the monumental stone which stood by the porch; his wishes were complied with; the grave was dug, necessarily much larger than graves are usually, so that one end of it extended to the foot of the stone that was fixed in the ground. Just as the corpse had been laid in the ground, the stone gave way and fell into the grave, filling it up nearly. Some had a very narrow escape for their lives; but as the stone was so large, as not to be easily removed, it was left there, and covered over with earth. After I had heard this traditional account, I had a great desire to dig for this stone, and many times endeavoured to engage the attention of several, and their assistance; but my idea was always treated with ridicule. In the year 1789, being at work in *Lantwit church*, and being one day unable to go on with my business for want of assistance, it being then the height of corn harvest, and not a man to be found that could give me the wanted assistance, I employed a great part of one day in digging in search of this stone, and found it. I cleared away all the earth about it. Mr. Christopher Wilkins, and Mr. David Jones, two very respectable gentlemen farmers, on seeing this stone, ordered their men to assist me, and we with great difficulty got it out of the ground, and on it we found the following inscription:



IN NOM  
INE DI SU  
MMI INCI  
PIT CRU  
X. SAL  
VATO  
RIS QUA  
E PREPA  
RAVIT  
SAMSO  
NIARA  
TI PRO  
ANIMA  
SUATE P  
RO ANI  
MA IU  
THAHE  
LO REX  
ET ART  
MALI  
TEGA  
+ M.

The dimensions of this stone are in length nine feet ; breadth at top twenty-seven inches ; at bottom twenty-eight inches ; thickness fifteen inches.

VI. That writings of the sixth century have come down to us undisputed.

This is an easy task. We have still extant, a numerous collection of poems, by Venantius Fortunatus, who lived in the sixth century in France. We have the history of Gregory of Tours, his contemporary. We have the heroic poem on the creation, by Dracontius, a Spanish presbyter, also of the sixth century. We have the little poems of Columbanus, the Irishman. The poems of Alcimus Avitus, the archbishop of Vienne, on Genesis and Exodus. The works of Ennodius, bishop of Ticenensis. The historical poems, from the Old Testament, of Rusticus Helpidius, physician to the king of the Goths; and the very voluminous works of Pope Gregory; all authors of the sixth century. We have also Anglo-Saxon laws of the same times, which have reached us.

But it can be also shewn,

VII. That even writings of a Briton of the sixth century, are in our hands, and suspected by no one.

This author is Gildas, a Briton; and his works are in most libraries. He wrote in Latin a little work of small merit on the British history, and an invective against the British kings and clergy, which have come safely down to us. If these Latin compositions of Gildas could weather, unhurt, all the storms of time, surely the compositions of Welsh bards, on the most interesting of all subjects to Welshmen, their struggles against their invaders, might be as fortunate. There was nothing but a little historical curiosity to preserve the reproaching monk, but all the passions, the prejudices, and the reason of Wales, were interested by their bards, and ensured perpetuity to their lays. And why should time have inveterately persecuted these poems more than the works of Gildas, and the other authors whom I have named? Why should the Franks have been more interested to preserve the poems of Fortunatus, than the Welsh to perpetuate those of Aneurin or Taliesin? And if we consider the numerous Latin poems of this period, which have been transmitted to us by the monks, where is the wonder that Welsh poetry should have been transmitted to us by Welshmen?

But it can be also proved,

VIII. That in the twelfth century there were writings of old British bards extant in Welsh, which were then called *ancient* and *authentic*, and that Giraldus then found some written compositions ascribed to Merdhin, and which he believed to be his.

The evidence of Giraldus Cambrensis, who lived in the twelfth century, is complete and decisive on this subject: he says, in his description of Wales, "This also seems remarkable to me, that the Cambrian bards, and singers, or reciters, have the genealogy of the aforesaid princes in *their ancient and authentic books*, but also written in Welsh."<sup>1</sup>

In this passage, Giraldus, who was born 1150, attests, that in his days the Welsh bards had authentic books, which were written in Welsh, and which were in that age deemed ancient. What is the meaning of ancient, unless it denotes a period some centuries earlier than that in which he wrote?

Giraldus does not say merely that they had ancient genealogies. He speaks of the genealogies but as a *part* of the contents of these ancient and authentic books, and these books too were books of the *bards*. They are not mentioned generally as being ancient Welsh books in Wales, but ancient and *authentic* books, which were in the possession of the Welsh bards and singers. To remark that the Cambrian bards had these books, and to call them *their books*, seem to me to intimate that the books were written by *bards*. It will be at least curious to recollect the evidence of Posidonius before the first century, that the Celtic bards sung the *γενεα*, the genealogy of their chiefs: because, if Giraldus found the Welsh bards to have ancient books on the same topic in the twelfth century, the fact mentioned by Posidonius sanctions, very forcibly, our arguments of the antiquity of the bardic profession in this country, and gives additional credibility to what is stated in favour of the ancient Welsh literature.

In another passage, Giraldus says that King Henry the Second heard concerning Arthur, "from an *ancient historical singer*."<sup>2</sup> As I cannot inflict on Giraldus the disgrace of

---

<sup>1</sup> Hoc etiam mihi notandum videtur quod Bardi Cambrenses et cantores seu recitatores genealogiam habent prædictorum principum in libris eorum antiquis et autenticis sed etiam Cambrice scriptam. — GIR. CAMB. *Descrip.* p. 883.

<sup>2</sup> Rex Angliæ Henricus secundus, sicut ab historico cantore  
VOL. III. P P

not knowing the meaning of the words he uses, I must presume from this authority, that the ancient British had historical singers, that is, ancient bards who had left historical poems, which, in the days of Henry the Second, were deemed ancient, and referred to, and which, therefore, must have been some centuries old in that age.

We have another witness to the existence of old British authors in the twelfth century. William of Malmesbury, who lived in this period, says, "It is read in the *ancient* accounts of the actions of the Britons." He adds, "these things are from the *ancient books* of the Britons."<sup>1</sup> If such things as ancient British books had not been extant in Malmesbury's days, I cannot persuade myself that he would twice have asserted such a fact.

I believe the book of Jeffrey of Monmouth, who lived also in the twelfth century, to be his own composition, and to abound with fable. But I think he would not have been foolish enough to have asserted, that he had translated from a very ancient book<sup>2</sup> in the British tongue, which the archdeacon of Oxford had given him, unless there had been "*very ancient books*" of the Britons in existence in his time, that is, in the twelfth century.

I think I cannot more decisively prove, that there were extant, in the time of Giraldus, poems of the sixth century, and of Merdhin, than by a literal translation of some other passages from him, on this subject.

These passages are in his "*Prologus in librum tertium Vaticinium*," which is printed by Usher in his "*Veterum Epistolarum Hibernicarum Sylloge*."

"In the former books we inserted the predictions of Merlin Caledonius and Merlin Ambrosius, in suitable places, as occasion required. Ambrosius has been explained<sup>3</sup>, but *Caledonius having not yet put off his British*

*Britone audiverat antiquo.* — Giraldus, as cited by Leland in his *Assertio Arturi*, p. 52.

<sup>1</sup> Legitur in antiquis Britonum gestis — hoc de antiquis Britonum libris sunt. — Wil. Malm. 3 Gall. Scrip. p. 295.

The ancient monk of Malmesbury, quoted by Leland, says of Henry, "*Rex autem hoc ex gestis Britonum et eorum cantoribus historicis frequenter audiverat.* — Ass. Art. 50.

<sup>2</sup> See him, Ll. c. l.

<sup>3</sup> Giraldus apparently alludes here to the oracles of Merlin Ambrosius, inserted by Jeffrey in his history.

*barbarism* has remained to our times, obscure and little known. Hence it seemed to concern our diligence to draw him, by scrutinizing research, from his ancient and hidden shades, into a public and fairer splendor.”<sup>1</sup>

“The fame only of this Merlin, surnamed Caledonius or Silvester, has been hitherto very distinguished. The memory of his prophecies had been retained among the British bards, whom they call poets, verbally by many—in writing by very few.”<sup>2</sup>

“Performing, therefore, the office of an interpreter, and with the assistance of some men, skilled in the British language; I faithfully expressed the sentence in every respect word for word, as far as the difference of idiom would admit. But because, as in other works, so in these, the invidious art of the bards adulterating nature, has added to the true prophecies, many of their own; therefore, having thrown out and reprobated all that breathed the air of modern composition, led by the love of truth alone, the rude and plain simplicity of the ancient style attracted my mind.” He proceeds to add, “I have illustrated the darkness of the barbaric tongue with the light of the Latin language.”<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Quoniam in prioribus libris Merlini vaticinia tam Caledonii quam Ambrosii locis competentibus, prout res exigebat inseruimus; Ambrosio vero dudum exposito nondum. Caledonius Britannicam exutus barbariem usque ad hoc nostra tempora latuit parum agnitus: nostræ videbatur interesse diligentiae tam ipsum ab antiquis et occultis scrutabunda inquisitione latebris ut pulchritas elucescat in commune deducere. — Usher, p. 116.

<sup>2</sup> Erat itaque Caledonii Silvestris solum hactenus fama percelebris; a Britannicis tamen Bardis quos poetas vocant, verbo tenus penes plerimos, scripto vero penes paucissimos vaticiniorum ejusdem memoria retenta fuerat. — Ib. p. 116.

<sup>3</sup> Functus igitur interpretis officio peritis quoque linguæ Britannicæ viris mecum adhibitis, in quantum idiomatum permisit diversitas, verbo ad verbum plurima, sententias autem in singulis fideliter expressi. Sed quoniam sicut in aliis sic in istis bardorum ars invida naturam adulterans multa de suis tanquam prophetica veris adjecit: cunctis moderni sermonis compositionem redolentibus quasi reprobatis et abjectis sola veritatis amica sermonis antiqui rudis et plana simplicitas diligenter excepta mentem allexit. — Barbaræ linguæ tenebras Latini luce sermonis illustravi. — Ib. 117.

These important passages of Giraldus prove these things,

1st. That there were, in his time, works ascribed to Merd-  
hin, one of the four bards I argue for, which works were in  
writing and in the British language.

2d. That these works had in his days the character of the  
age of their author. — I mean that Giraldus, a Welshman,  
found them difficult in their language.

3d. That this Merd-  
hin was then much famed: that many  
of the Welsh bards had his compositions by heart, and some,  
though very few, in writing.

Giraldus also states his belief, that some prophecies were  
ascribed to Merd-  
hin which he had not written. But he also  
expresses that he distinguished these interpolations and addi-  
tions by the modern air of their style.

My opinion is precisely the same with that of Giraldus.  
The prophetic works ascribed to Merd-  
hin, which have come  
down to us, are unquestionably either interpolated or surrep-  
titious. The fame of his being a prophet accounts for it.

The external evidence for these bards may be now closed.

I hope that I have proved,

That there were bards among the Britons in the sixth  
century.

That these four bards, whose works I support, then lived.

That the poems now extant were in MS. in the twelfth  
century, which MSS. ascribed them to these four an-  
cient bards, and some of which MSS. we have.

That these bards were mentioned, and some of their  
poems were quoted, or referred to, by many British  
bards of various ages, from before the twelfth century  
through the following ages to our times.

That in the twelfth century there were writings of old  
British bards extant, which were then called ancient  
and authentic. That Giraldus in that century found  
some written ancient compositions then ascribed to  
Merd-  
hin, and which he believed to be his, and that a  
Welsh bard of the thirteenth century calls a poem of  
Taliesin "the *Ancient* song of Taliesin."<sup>1</sup>

I have strengthened this train of direct evidence, by shewing

That many writings of the sixth century have come down  
to us.

---

<sup>1</sup> See before, p. 536.

That the Britons had then the art of writing; and,  
That the writing of a Briton of that age, whose genuineness no one disputes, has confessedly come down to us, and yet the interest to preserve this was inconsiderable in comparison with the feeling which must have operated to perpetuate these poems.

On this evidence I submit, that unless the internal evidence of these poems is very clearly and decisively hostile to their antiquity, no reasonable man can discredit their genuineness. I proceed to consider this branch of my subject under the heads which I have already stated, p. 19, and which seem to me to be the topics that bear most upon the subject.

### THE INTERNAL EVIDENCE:—

- I. That the subjects of this poetry could answer no purpose of interest in the twelfth century,

will be obvious to all who inspect them. For what are they? They are poems in praise of warriors who lived and fought in the sixth century. What profit could any one have got by praising the warriors mentioned in the *Gododin*? And what living chief was interested in the encomiums of *Caeawg*, *Myndaur*, or the other persons mentioned by *Aneurin*? They form part of no genealogies. — They had not even been Welsh princes. — They were merely warriors in the north parts of the island. What interest could be reaped by any forger taking the trouble to write 920 lines on such an unfortunate conflict as that which is the subject of the *Gododin*? It must have been forgery for the mere toil of forgery if it was so. The same may be said of *Llywarch's* long poem on his *Old Age*, and his *Address to the Cuckow*. Nor do I see, in what a bard could be benefited in throwing away so many poems on *Urien*, a Northern chieftain, as *Taliesin* has done; and, at the same time, leaving unsung so many Welsh kings and warriors, related to the existing princes of the twelfth century.

It appears to me very forcibly,

- II. That the subjects of these ancient poems were the most unlikely of all others for a forger to have chosen.

We can perceive at once, why such poems as those of *Ossian* should be fabricated, even independent of individual advan-

tage. In making a Fingal, an irresistible warrior — an Alexander of the third century who only moves to conquer — whose presence is so decisive of a conflict, that in compassion to the fame of other warriors he keeps awhile out of it. In forming such a character there is an obvious gratification of national vanity.

But the poem of Aneurin is one of the greatest humiliations of national vanity that could be exhibited. It celebrates a conflict so disastrous to the Britons, that very few escaped. It inflicts on them the disgrace of going drunk into the battle. That a bard who had fought in it himself, and had lost the friends whom he extols, should compose his elegiac dirges to their memory I can conceive. But I cannot believe, that if some centuries hence a Frenchman should wish to forge a poem of the present day for French readers, he would chuse for his subject the battle of the Nile. I do not think that an Austrian poet, who wished to impose surreptitious poems on his countrymen, would exactly write them on the battles of Hohenlinden or Marengo.

To make fables as Jeffrey has done on a great character like Arthur is conceivable. To describe a British hero as out-doing even an Alexander in military exploits; to make valour wither at his approach, and armies perish before his sword, would have clouded the fame of any poem with a suspicion, which scarcely any degree of evidence could remove. But the Welsh bards exhibit nothing of this sort. If we take up Llywarch, we find his first poem is an elegy on Geraint, a chieftain of Devonshire, who did not drive the Saxons to the sea, as a vainglorious forger would have depicted, but who perished in the battle. Instead of an Ambrosius, whom history would have allowed them to have celebrated — instead of a Vortimer, from whose actions every Briton had a share of glory; we have a prince perpetually applauded who was really so insignificant as to have almost escaped the notice of history. I mean Urien of Reged. A forger, would not have chosen such a hero; he would not have thought of him. But it is extremely natural, that such a character, even though obscure, should be praised by the bards whom he patronized. In their eyes and in their gratitude he was great and interesting, though on the theatre of human action he was very inconsiderable.

If a forger had chosen a subject, he would have selected the struggles against Hengist, for they were so far successful as to confine this invader to Kent; he would have selected the heroes who confronted the formidable West Saxons, that

established the Anglo-Saxon monarchy; because the contests with them would have inevitably given glory: but he would not have chosen the obscure conflicts in the north, because they were precisely the least interesting and the least noticed in history of the whole.

If these poems appeared to answer any purpose of politics or religion; if they taught any peculiar notions, on either of these subjects, which the passions of the people or the interests of their rulers in the twelfth century, required to have impressed; there would be shewn a reason for the forgery.

But the moment we read these poems, we see that no object of this sort could possibly have been in the view of their authors when they composed them. What political purpose could be obtained? What interest advanced by the praises of the unfortunate Urien, Geraint, or the warriors of the Gododin? Read Merdhin's simple, yet wild and touching complaints on his madness, in his little Avallenau; and let ingenuity discover a single motive, that could have roused any bard to have forged it, or any prince to have exacted the forgery. Men do not forge without some palpable motive. These poems are so simple and so natural as to discover none.

The decisive remark on this topic appears to me to be, that if Welshmen of the twelfth century had forged these poems, it would have been an inevitable consequence, that Wales and Welshmen would have been the objects extolled. But it is singular, that Wales is scarcely mentioned in them, and the most applauded heroes are not Welshmen. Urien, on whom Taliesin has left ten poems, was from a district of Cumbria. The persons commemorated by Aneurin lived as far north as this and some more so. Llywarch has indeed given an elegy to Cynddylan and another to Cadwallon, but his longest elegy is to Urien, and another is devoted to a leader in Devonshire. They, of whom Merdhin principally talks, are also from the Northern Britons. To suppose that Welshmen should have forged to perpetuate the celebrity of other Britons, when there was abundance of Welsh heroes who demanded the patriotic lay, is surely an extravagant idea. Bards usually sing for fame and profit; and if they forged, would most probably have had the same things in view. The enemies of these poems must at least admit, that to forge such poems as these, was the most blundering way they could have chosen to the favourite temples of human wishes.

In the sixth century, these poems besides enshrining the

memory of the friends and warlike companions of the bards, must have also had the good effect of stimulating their countrymen to imitate the flattered dead, by resisting bravely the Anglo-Saxon invaders. But this great contest had been over for ages before the twelfth century; it was over before the time of Alfred, and every succeeding Saxon sovereign, made the re-establishment of the British monarchy more impossible. But when the Normans had spread themselves over England, and added another warlike race to maintain the possession of the island, it is ridiculous to suppose, that any bard would have forged a prophecy of the Welsh recovering it. At the very period, in which the forgery is placed, not only Wales was prostrate before the king of London, but even Ireland was bending to his sway.

That these poems could not have been written in the twelfth century appears to me to be clear, from

### III. The manner in which Arthur is spoken of by them.

The history of Jeffrey, the composition of the twelfth century, shews us how Arthur was in those days considered. The Welsh, compelled to yield their country without hope of recovery, revenged themselves both on the Saxons and on Europe, by creating a phantom of glory, whose gigantic majesty towered above that of every warrior who had appeared since Alexander. It would be a very curious discussion, to trace the first origin of Arthur's fabulous history, and its gradual enlargement, but it would be too digressive from the objects of this essay. I will only express my opinion, that the apparition either first appeared, or at least acquired its magnitude and its terrors in Bretagne. I believe Jeffrey to state the fact, when he says, he found the history of Arthur in a book brought from that country. Perhaps, if any of the lays or legends concerning the Daniel Dremrudd, or red visage, the Alexander of Bretagne, could be found, we might meet the prototype of Arthur.

But that Arthur's fame had acquired a gigantic shape in the twelfth century is undoubted. Alanus de Insulis, was born 1109, and he informs us, that if any was heard in Bretagne to deny that Arthur was then alive he would be stoned: he says, "Who does not speak of him, he is even more known in Asia than in Britain, as our pilgrims returning from the East assure us, both East and West talk of him. Egypt and the Bosphorus are not silent. Rome, the mistress of

cities, sings his actions. Antioch, Armenia, Palestine, celebrate his deeds." <sup>1</sup>

I will allow to any one, that Alanus may be supposed to write hyperbolically in this passage. But Alanus was neither a Welshman nor a Briton; and therefore is decisive evidence that Arthur's fame had been surprisingly amplified before he wrote.

My argument then is, that if these poems had been forged in the twelfth century, they would have betrayed themselves by their panegyrics on Arthur. Some of them would have been devoted to this favourite of fame. In some the miraculous feats of Jeffrey's history would have appeared. The very contrary, however, is found. Not a tittle of this vast celebrity appears. He is just mentioned as distinguished and no more, and mentioned as any other warrior. I hope it will not be indecorous to cite an observation on this point from my History of the Anglo-Saxons.

"This state of moderate greatness suits the character in which the Welsh bards exhibit Arthur; they commemorate him, but it is not with that excelling glory with which he has been surrounded by subsequent traditions. The song sometimes swells with the actions of a warrior; but it was an age of warriors, and Urien of Reged, seems to have employed the harp more than Arthur. Llywarch the aged, who lived through the whole period of slaughter, and had been one of the guests and counsellors of Arthur, yet displays him not in transcendent majesty. In the battle of Llongborth, which Arthur directed, it was the valour of Geraint that arrested the bard's notice; and his elegy, though long, scarcely mentions the commander, whose merit, in the frenzy of later fablers, clouds every other. As his poem was a gift to the dead, it may be supposed to possess less of flattery and more of truth in its panegyric; it speaks of Arthur with respect, but not with wonder; Arthur is simply mentioned as the commander and the conductor of the toil of war, but Geraint is profusely celebrated with dignified periphrasis.

"In the same manner Arthur appears in the Avallenau of Merdhin; he is mentioned as a character well known, but not idolized; yet he was then dead, and all the actions of his patriotism and valour had been performed; not a single

---

<sup>1</sup> Alanus, p. 22.

epithet is added, from which we can discern him to have been that whirlwind of war, which swept away in its course all the skill and armies of Europe. That he was a courageous warrior is unquestionable ; but that he was the miraculous Mars of the British history, from whom kings and nations sunk in panic, is completely disproved by the temperate encomiums of his contemporary bards." <sup>1</sup>

Can any one believe, that Welshmen would have forged the works of the contemporaries of Arthur and not have taken the opportunity of celebrating their favourite chieftain? Would not this be contrary to human nature? When Homer wrote his Iliad and Odyssey he made Achilles, Ajax, Diomed, and Ulysses, his applauded heroes. When Virgil penned his Æneid, he gave the lay to the presumed ancestor of the Roman race. When Macpherson wrote his Fingal, his hero was all-conquering and a Highlander.

IV. That the *subjects* and *allusions* of these poems are such as might be expected from their authors.

Aneurin's poem is upon the fatal battle of Catteraeth, in which he had combated. Its melancholy catastrophe was occasioned by the Britons commencing the contest in a state of intoxication. In this poem he seems to have had two principal objects: one was to celebrate the warriors who had fought with him, and whose merit he sings with all the artlessness of sincerity; the other was to impress on the memory of his countrymen the cause of the disaster. It is said, that Homer composed his Iliad to teach the Greeks the ruinous effects of dissention. He may have done so. But it is much more evident, that one great purpose of the Gododin was to display the mischief of feasting before battle. To impress this conviction with irresistible effect, the bard is perpetually bringing in allusions, very much diversified, to the wine and mead, which had been shared by his countrymen. The whole subject of the Gododin announces its genuineness.

The subjects of the poems of Llywarch Hen, are the deaths of his friend Geraint and of his patrons, Urien, Cynddylan, and Cadwallon, and upon his own old age, and the loss of his children. What can be more natural?

The poems of Taliesin on Urien and Elphin, were in

---

<sup>1</sup> History of Anglo-Saxons, vol. 1. p. 234. 236.

honour of his two patrons. His historical elegies are on the warriors who were known to him. These I think genuine, Of the rest of the poetry ascribed to him, which is so mystical, as to seem very fantastical, I can say nothing. I leave it to its fate. It is scarcely worth being rescued, unless its mythological allusions could be illustrated from other sources. They are not now intelligible.

Merdhin's Avallenau is avowedly on the gift of an orchard which he had received, but it is full of personal allusions to himself and such of his contemporaries, whom he respected or dreaded. Surely all these subjects are natural topics for such bards to have chosen — too natural — too artless, for fraud to have selected.

Much of the lyric poetry of Horace is of this nature. Many of his poems are on Augustus, and some are addressed to Mæcenas and others of his contemporaries.

Several remarks may be made on the allusions in these poems.

1. I will not say, that because the author's name appears in the poems ascribed to him, their genuineness is thereby demonstrated. This would be pushing the argument too far. But I may remark, that Phædrus <sup>1</sup>, that the ancient Ennius <sup>2</sup>, and that the elegant Virgil <sup>3</sup>, have inserted their own names in their compositions; our Cowley <sup>4</sup>, has done the same. So have the Welsh bards of the twelfth century, Gwalchmai <sup>5</sup>, Cyndelw <sup>6</sup>, and Llywarch P. Moch <sup>7</sup>. I am therefore, entitled

<sup>1</sup> *Phædri libellos legere si desideras  
Vaces oportet, Eutyche, a negotiis.*

*PHÆD. Fab. ProL. Lib. 3.*

<sup>2</sup> *Adspicite, O civeis, senis Ennii imagini formam,  
Hic vostrum panxit maxuma facta patrum.*

*His Epitaph.*

<sup>3</sup> *Illo Virgilium me tempore dulcis alebat  
Parthenope, studiis florentem ignobilis ott.*

*Georg. iv. 563.*

<sup>4</sup> *Leave, wretched Cowley! leave  
Thyself with shadows to deceive.*

*Love given over.*

<sup>5</sup> Arch. p. 194.

<sup>6</sup> Ib. p. 207. 216.

<sup>7</sup> Ib. 301. 322. 327.

to say, that to find the name of the author in any poem is to find a circumstance which has often accompanied genuineness, though it does not prove it. Now the ancient Welsh bards have this feature. Then in the poems of Taliesin, the author says,

" I also am Taliesin  
Head of the bards of the West."

Minnau yw Taliesin  
Ben beirdd y Gorllewin.

*Dyhudd. Elph. Arch. p. 21.*

" I am Taliesin,  
With a speech flowing as a diviner."

Mydwyf Taliesin  
Areith lif Dewin.

*Canu y Byd Mawr, p. 25.*

In another place he mentions both his name and habitation, which is a peculiarity rather striking:

" And I, also, Taliesin,  
Of the banks of the lake Ceirionydd."<sup>1</sup>

A minnau Daliesin  
O lan llyn Geirionydd. *Anrec Urien, p. 51.*

So we find Aneurin mentioning himself:

" Inseparable has been lamentation and *Aneurin*."

Anysgarat vu y nad ac Aneurin. *Ib. p. 9.*

And,

" When the earth shall come upon *Aneurin*."

Er pan aeth daiar ar Aneurin." *Ib. p. 13.*

Llywarch Hen also occasionally mentions his own name:

" My wooden crook ! be thou a branch contented  
To support a mourning old man ;  
Llywarch — noted for complaints.

---

<sup>1</sup> Mr. Owen informs me, that the lake of this name is a few miles west of Llanrwst, in the wildest part of the Snowdon Mountains, in Caernarvonshire. There is a small ruin at one end of the lake, which is still traditionally called the House of Taliesin.

" My wooden crook, be thou steady,  
And support me better.  
Am I not Llywarch, from many remote?"

Baglan bren gangen voddawg  
Cynnelyç hen hiraethawg  
Llywarç leverydd nodawg.

Baglan bren, bydd ystywell  
A'm cynnelyç a vo gwell:  
Neud wyv Llywarç lawer pell?

OWEN'S *Llyw.* 120.

" Sweetly sang the birds on the fragrant tree  
Over the head of Gwen, before he was covered with sod.  
He broke the armour of Llywarch Hen."

Teg yd gan yr aderyn ar berwydd bren,  
Uç ben Gwen, cyn ei olo dan dywarç.  
Briwai galç Llywarç Hen.

*Ib.* 134.

So Merdhin,

" There was given to nobody at the dawn of day  
What was given to *Merdhin* before he became old."

A rodde i neb yn un pylgaint  
A roed i *Ferddin* cynnoi henaint.

*Afallen. Arch.* p. 50.

But we certainly gain a material point by having the author's name inserted in a composition. It rescues us from the doubt which must always attend anonymous poetry, whether it may not belong to some other century than that to which we ascribe it. The author's name in a poem narrows the question into this alternative. The poem, then, either must be the genuine work of the author named, or an express forgery made for the purpose of passing to the world as that author's composition. The chances of such a direct wilful forgery, are much fewer than the chances of that possible mistake to which anonymous poetry is liable. But I think that the supposition of a wilful forgery of these poems cannot be supported. I therefore submit that the poems which have the names of these bards, if they were not wilfully forged, must be genuine.

2. That authors, who were contemporaries, should mention each other in their poems, is extremely natural. Thus Horace notices Virgil more than once<sup>1</sup>, and Cowley inscribed a poem to Sir William D'Avenant. This is not indeed a seal of genuineness, which cannot be counterfeited, but it does not strike my mind as one of those obvious precautions which a forger of the twelfth century would use. I therefore adduce this circumstance as very favourable to the genuineness of these poems. Thus Aneurin mentions Taliesin:

" I, *Aneurin*, knew  
What is known to *Taliesin*,  
Who participates in mind."

Mi a wn vi Aneurin  
Ys gwyr Taliesin,  
Oveg cyvrenhin.

God. p. 7.

In the same natural manner Taliesin notices Aneurin in his poems:

" *Aneurin* ! I know his name,  
With his genius of flowing panegyric ;  
And I am *Taliesin*,  
On the borders of the lake of Ceirionydd ;  
May I be blind in age,  
Or in the anguish of death,  
If I praise not Urien."

A wn i enw Aneurin, gwawdrydd awenydd,  
A minnau Daliesin,  
O lan llyn Geirionydd ;  
Ny daliwyf yn hen  
Ym dygyn angau angen  
Oni molwyf Urien.

TAL. *Anrec Urien*, p. 51.

<sup>1</sup> Molle atque facetum  
*Virgilio annuerint gaudentes rure Camoenæ.*

Lib. 1. Sat. 7.

Navis, quæ tibi creditum  
Debes *Virgilium*.

Lib. 1. Carm. 3.

He also mentions Virgil in his Art of Poetry, line 55., and in his journey to Brundisium, line 40.

So Taliesin composed a dialogue between himself and Merd-  
hin, and thus mentions both in it :

“ Since I, Merdhin, am after Taliesin,  
Equally common will be my prophecy.”

Canys mi Myrtin gwydi Taliesin  
Bydded cyffredin fy darogan.

*Ymādan, Arch. p. 48.*

3. Another trait of genuineness is, that they speak of events  
which happened in the age in which they lived, as passing  
under their own eyesight.

Thus Taliesin, on the battle of Gwennystrad, where Urien  
Reged commanded, who we know flourished in the sixth cen-  
tury, exclaims,

“ In the pass of the ford *I saw* the ghost-like men  
Dropping their arms in pallid misery.”

Yn nrrws rhyd *gwelais* i wyr lledraddion  
Eirf dillwng rhag blawr gofidon.

“ *I saw* Urien's brow covered with rage,  
When he attacked the enemy by the white stone of Calysten.”

Gweles i ran reodig gan Urien  
Pan amwyth ai alon yn llech wen Galysten.

*TAL. Gwenyst, p. 52.*

Llywarch thus frequently shews a personal acquaintance with  
the events he describes. Thus on Geraint's battle :

At Llongborth *I saw* the noisy tumult,  
The glory biers,  
And men red from the onsets of the foe.

In Llongborth *I saw* the weapons  
Of the warriors dropping blood.

*I saw* the edges striking together,  
Men in terror, and blood upon the brow,  
From Geraint, the great son of his father.

In Llongborth *I saw* tumultuous struggling  
On the stones — ravens at their feast,  
And on the chieftain's brow a crimson gash.

— — — I saw a confused running  
Of men together, and blood on the feet.  
“ Ye that are the men of Geraint, make haste.”<sup>1</sup>

There is certainly an air of reality in this description. It does not consist of general phrases which are the common appendages of poetical battles. The images selected seem taken from the tumultuous circumstances of a conflict, which the bard had actually witnessed.

The personages mentioned in this battle decide its chronology. The bard styles Geraint the son of Erbin, and he mentions Arthur as the commander of the Britons:

At Llongborth were slain to Arthur  
Valiant men, who hewed with steel.  
He was the emperor and director of the toil.<sup>2</sup>

Thus the chief features of this elegy attest its genuineness. In his elegy on Urien Reged, we meet with the same per-

<sup>1</sup> Yn Llongborth gwelais drydar  
Ac elorawr yn ngwyar  
A gwyr rhudd rhag rhuthr esgar.

Yn Llongborth gwelais i arvau  
Gwyr a gwyar yn dineu.

- - - - Gwelais gymminad  
Gwyr yn ngryd a gwaed ar iad  
Rhag Geraint mawr mab ei dad.

Yn Llongborth gwelais drabludd  
Ar fain brain ar goludd  
Ac ar gran cynran manrudd.

- - - - Gwelais i breithred  
Gwyr ynghyd a gwaed ar draed  
A vo gwyr i Eraint brysied.

*Arch.* p. 101.

<sup>2</sup> Yn Llongborth llas i Arthur  
Gwyr dewr cymmynynt a dur  
Ammherawdyr llywawdyr llavur. *Arch.* p. 102.

sonal assertions, which it is natural for genuine poems to contain :

I bear a head at my side ; the head of Urien ;  
The mild leader of his army —  
Upon his white bosom is the sable raven. <sup>17</sup>

In his elegy on Cynddylan we meet with an idea which it is unlikely that any but the real author of the poem should have conceived. Cynddylan had fallen against the victorious Saxons, and the first image which occurs to his friend and bard is, that his domains and palace are on fire. He sees the flames arising — he anticipates the calamities which the victorious foe will pour upon the country — he calls upon the maidens of Wales to behold the ravage, and to recollect the misery which will attend the married state from the loss of husbands, children, and property :

Stand out, ye virgins, and behold the territory of Cynddylan,  
The palace of Pengwern ! Is it not in flames ?  
Woe to the youthful who wish for social ties. <sup>18</sup>

This is followed by another trait that seems to have been borrowed from real nature. It is that the bard recollects a tree — a favourite object — and expresses his hope that it will escape in the devastation :

One tree, around which the twining woodbine clasps,  
Perhaps will escape —  
But what God wills, be it done ! <sup>19</sup>

In the Gododin of Aneurin, there are also expressions which indicate that the events passed in his sight. There seems much of the particularity of genuineness in these lines :

I beheld the scene from the highland of Odren :  
A sacrifice round the omen-fire which they brought down.

<sup>17</sup> Pen a borthav ar vy nhu ; Pen Urien  
Llary, llyw ei llu  
Ac ar ei vron wen fran ddu. *Arch.* 103.

<sup>18</sup> Sewwç allan vorwynion, a syllwç werydre Cynddylan  
Llys Pengwern neud tandde  
Gwac ieuainc a eiddynt brodre. *Arch.* 107.

<sup>19</sup> Un pren a gwyddvid arno,  
O dianc ys odid  
A vyno Duw dervid. *Arch.* 107.

I saw it as usual on the town of Fleddegein,  
 And the men of Nwythion toiled to excess.  
 I saw men in complete order, by the dawn, from Addoen,  
 And the head of Dyfnwal, ravens were consuming.<sup>20</sup>

Taliesin also avows his personal acquaintance with the events he narrates :

Conspicuously before the sons of Llyr at the outlets of Henvelen ;  
 I saw the oppression of the tumult, and wrath and tribulation :  
 The weapons glittered on the splendid helmets  
 Conspicuously before the Lord of Fame in the dales of the Severn,  
 Before Brochwel of Powys, who loved my muse.

Arch. p. 66.

Ceint rac meibion Llyr yn ebyr Henfelen  
 Gweleis treis trydar ac asar ac anghen  
 Yd lethrynt lasnawr ar bennawr disgywn  
 Ceint rhag udd clodeu yn noleu Hasren  
 Rhag Brochwel Powys a garwys fy Awen.

TALIESIN, p. 66.

4. Many passages may be noticed in these poems which seem to have been taken from objects and incidents then really existing, and which could hardly have occurred to the mind of a fraudulent impostor, especially in those rude ages, when the artful precautions of literary deceit were very little understood.

Urien had a sister named Eurddyl. It was natural, that on Urien's assassination, Llywarch, his friend, should think of the grief which the catastrophe would occasion to his sister, and that the bard should mention the circumstance in his elegy on Urien ; accordingly he twice alludes to her feelings :

Eurddyl will be disconsolate to night,  
 In Aber Lleu Urien was slain.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>20</sup> Gweleis y dull o ben tir Odren  
 Aberth am goelcerth a disgynnyn  
 Gweleis oedd cynnevin ar dref Ffleddegein  
 A gwyr Nwythion rygodesyn  
 Gweleis gwyr dullyawr gan aur addevyn  
 A phen Dyfnwal a breich brein ae cnoyn.

ANEURIN, p. 18.

<sup>1</sup> Handid Eurddyl avlawen henoeth, —  
 Yn aber Lleu lladd Urien.

LL. HEN, Arch. 105.

It seems to me to be likewise a genuine, but not an obvious circumstance, that in the night after the battle, in which his patron Cynddylan fell, the bard should feel himself interrupted by the screams of the birds of prey over their dismal repast. Their cries recall to his recollection his friend, whose remains were at their mercy :

Eagle of Eli, thou dost scream loudly to night ;  
In the blood of men thou dost eagerly swim —  
He is in the wood — heavy is my grief. <sup>2</sup>

Llywarch speaks of an event as having happened on the preceding night. This is a phrase which would hardly have been used in a surreptitious poem :

Gwen, by the Llawen, watched  
*Last night*, with the shield uplifted —  
As he was my son, he did not retreat. <sup>3</sup>

Is not the following passage the description of a man, who had beheld the object he mentions ?

When Pyll was slain, *gasking was the wound*,  
*And the blood on the hair seemed horrible.* <sup>4</sup>

There is much natural representation in the passage of his elegy on Urien, of the confused state of his army after their leader's fall :

On Friday I saw great anxiety  
Among the baptized embattled hosts,  
Like a swarm without a hive. <sup>5</sup>

The account of the pursuit made after Urien's murderer is also very natural :

There is commotion in every region,  
In search of Llofan with the detested hand. <sup>6</sup>

<sup>2</sup> Eryr Eli, gorelwi heno,  
Yn ngwaed gwyr gwynnovi ;  
Ev yn nghoed, trwm hoed i mi. LL. HEN, Arch. 109.

<sup>3</sup> Gwen wrth Lawen ydd wylis  
Neithwyr, a'r ysgwyd ar ygnis ;  
Can bu mab i mi ni ddiengis. Ib. 116.

<sup>4</sup> Pan las Pyll oedd tywyll briw  
A gwaed ar wallt hyll. Ib. 117.

<sup>5</sup> Dyw Gwener gwelais i ddiwyd mawr  
Ar vyddinawr bedydd  
Haid heb vodrydav hy bydd. Ib. 105.

<sup>6</sup> Cyrchyniad yn mhob bro  
Yn wysc Llovan Llawddifro. Ib. 106.

The real Llywarch, seated in the mansion of Urien, when he wrote his elegy, might allude to it as before him, in the manner he does in the following verses, but the images would hardly have occurred to an impostor :

Many a hunting dog and towering hawk  
Have been trained on this floor,  
Before Erlleon became polluted.

This hearth—ah ! will it not be covered with nettles !  
Whilst its defender lived  
It was accustomed to petitioners.

This hearth, will it not be turned up by swine !  
It has been more accustomed to the clamour of men  
And the circling horns of the banquet.<sup>7</sup>

The topics of a forger are more general than these, and more remote from individual reality.

The images of a light fall of snow— of the warriors advancing over it to the combat ; but of Llywarch staying at home, from age, have the semblance of reality in these lines :

Scarcely has the snow covered the vale—  
The warriors are hast'ning to battle.  
I shall not go : infirmity will not let me.<sup>8</sup>

In the poems of Taliesin, there are some passages which seem taken from the life. I would refer to the Mead Song already quoted, on this subject, and will also adduce another passage on his son :

Avagddu, my son, also,  
The blessed Lord caused him to be formed.

<sup>7</sup> Llawer ci geillic a hebawc wryenic  
A lithiwyd ar y llawe  
Cyn bu Erlleon llawedrawr.  
Yr aelwyd hon neus cudd dynad  
Tra vu vyw ei gwarcheidwad  
Mwy gorddyvnasai eirchiad.  
Yr aelwydd hon neus cladd hwch  
Mwy gorddyvnasai elwch gwyr  
Ac am gynr cyveddwch.

LL. HEN, 106.

<sup>8</sup> Otid eiry toid ystrad  
Dyvrysiant cedwyr i gad  
Mi nid av anav ni'm gad.

Id. 119.

In the mutual contention of songs,  
His wit was superior to mine.<sup>9</sup>

This seems a very natural turn of thought for a parent proud of his son.

The apostrophe of Aneurin to the son of Clydno, may be also mentioned :

He would slay the ravagers with the swiftest blade :  
Like rushes would they fall before his arm.  
Son of Clydno ! of extended fame : I will sing to thee  
With praise without bound, without end.<sup>10</sup>

When the same poet, after celebrating the valour of a hero, calls by name on some persons who were present at the battle as witnesses to the truth of his panegyric, it seems to me not to be an artificial thought :

When Caradoc hastened to the conflict,  
Like the boar of the wood fiercely he would tear:  
The bull of battle—he fell'd them down in the struggle.  
He would allure the wild dogs with his hand.  
*My witness* is Owen the son of Eulad,  
And Gwrien, and Gwyn, and Gwriat.<sup>11</sup>

<sup>9</sup> Afagddu fy mab inneu  
Dedwydd Dofydd rhwy goreu  
Ynghysamryson cerddeu  
Oedd gwell ei synwyr no'r fau'. TALIESIN, 68.

The bards frequently contended with each other for pre-eminence, and their patrons adjudged prizes to the superior genius. An instance of these contentions in the twelfth century, was the competition of Cyndelw with Seisyll, for the chair of Madoc, prince of Powys. The poem in the Welsh Archæology, p. 210., is upon this struggle. In the fifteenth century these contentions were very frequent. In the above passage, Taliesin alludes to those of his times.

<sup>10</sup> Ef laddei oswydd a llafn llymmaf  
Mal brwyn yt gwyddynt rac y adaf  
Mab Clytno clothir canaf y ty  
Or clot heb or heb eithaf. ANEUR. p. 9.

<sup>11</sup> Pan gryssyei Garadawc y gat  
Mal baedd coet trychwn trychiat  
Tarw beddin yn trin gomynyat  
Ef lithyei wyd gwn oe anghat  
Ys vy nhyst Ewein vab Eulat  
A Gwrien a Gwyn a Gwriat. ANEUR.

The following account of the escape of the bard from this destructive battle, may be also noticed as an artless indication of the author of the poem being a contemporary and witness of the scene he narrates :

Men went to Cattræth : they were notorious.  
 Wine and mead, from gold, were their liquors :  
 Three heroes, and three hundred and sixty wearing the golden  
     torques.  
 They were of those who hastened after excess of liquor.  
 There escaped only three from the power of their swords.  
 Two war dogs from Aeron and Cynon,  
 And I—from my blood-spilling by the value of my blessed  
     muse.<sup>12</sup>

From the passage which I shall next cite, it would seem that Cenau, the son of Llywarch Hên, had once released Aneurin from a prison. In mentioning this warrior, it was very natural that the bard's gratitude should remember and record the incident to which he had been so much indebted ; but I do not think that the thought would have occurred to a fraudulent impostor, as the author of the Gododin must have been, if he was not Aneurin :

From the power of the sword, illustrious to protect —  
 From the fierce prison of earth he brought me ;  
 From the place of death ; from an unlovely land,  
 Cenau, the son of Llywarch, energetic and bold.<sup>13</sup>

The expressions which Aneurin, before this, used concerning the misfortune to which he here alludes, have an appearance of reality unsuitable to imposture :

I am not turbulent, or self-willed ;  
 I will not revenge my destiny —

<sup>12</sup> Gwyr a aeth Gattræth buant en wawc  
 Gwin a med o eur vu eù gwirawd  
 Blwyddyn yn erbyn wrdyn deawd  
 Triwyr a thri ugeint a thrichant eurdorchaud  
 Or saul yt grysiasant uch gormant wiraut  
 Ny diengei namyn tri o wrhydri flossawt  
 Deu gatci Aeron a Chenon dayar awt  
 A minneu om guatfreu gwerth vy guennaut.

ANEUR. 4.

<sup>13</sup> Onerth y cleddyf clær vy hamuc  
 O garchar anwar daear ym duc  
 O gyvle angheu o anghar dut  
 Ceneu vab Llywarch dihafarch drut.

ANEUR. 8.

In the earthy house,  
With the iron chain  
About the top of my two knees,  
From the mead, from the festive horns,  
From the host at Cattraeth.<sup>14</sup>

It would seem, from this passage, that the bard had been taken prisoner at this unfortunate battle.

It would be intruding too long on the patience of the reader, to discuss this subject in its full extent. I will therefore only notice,

5thly, Those allusions which relate to the personal feelings of these bards. Fictitious poems seldom touch on this topic, because it is not easy to counterfeit true feeling. I can still less suspect any one before the twelfth century to have thought of counterfeiting it.

In the poems of Taliesin upon Urien, there is a perpetual expression of gratitude, which is far more likely to be found in a composition addressed to a living patron, whom such sentiments would gratify, than to have been used in forged poetry.

Several of Taliesin's panegyrical odes close with these earnest phrases of attachment. I will cite three :

I also, Taliesin —  
May I be blind in age,  
Or in the anguish of death,  
If I praise not Urien.<sup>15</sup>

In the future severe death of necessity,  
May I not be in smiles,  
If I praise not Urien.<sup>16</sup>

<sup>14</sup> Nyt wyf vynawc blin  
Ni ddialav vy ordin  
Yn y ty deyerin  
Catuyn heyernin  
Am benn vy deulin  
O ved o vuelin  
O Gattræth wnin.

ANEUR. 7.

<sup>15</sup> A minneu Daliesin —  
Ny dallywyf yn hen  
Ym dygyn aghen  
Oni moluyf Uryen.

TALIES. 51.

<sup>16</sup> Ym dygn angeu angen  
Ni byddif im dirwen  
Na molwyf Urien.

*Ib.* 55.

I am not increasing,  
 But into age I am departing :  
 Yet in the severe death of necessity,  
 May I not be in smiles,  
 If I praise not Urien. <sup>17</sup>

Other expressions of gratitude may be noticed :

There is superior happiness  
 For the illustrious in fame ; for the liberal of praise ;  
 There is superior glory,  
 That Urien and his children exist,  
 He reigns the supreme, the sovereign Lord. <sup>18</sup>

Urien of Reged, the most generous that is, and will be ;  
 And that has been since Adam ; Urien, of the amplest sword. <sup>19</sup>

Another paragraph on Urien is :

I am an old wanderer —  
 I am of cheerful talents —  
 Silence would be envy.  
 Be mine the praise of Urien. <sup>20</sup>

All these expressions are favourable to the argument of the genuineness of the poetry.

Many personal feelings occur in Llywarch's poetry, which attest their own genuineness. I will cite only a few.

<sup>17</sup> — Nad wyf cynnydd  
 Ac yn y fallwyf hen  
 Ym dygn aneu angen  
 Ni biddif ym dyrwen  
 No molwyf Urien.

TALIES. 55.

<sup>18</sup> Ys mwy llawenydd  
 Gan glodfan clodrydd  
 Ys mwy gogoniant  
 Fod Urien ai blant  
 Ac ef yn Arbennig  
 Yn oruchel wledig.

*Ib.* 55.

<sup>19</sup> Uryen o Reget hael ef syd  
 Ac a vyd  
 Ac a vu yr Adaf letaf y gled.

*Ib.* 51.

<sup>20</sup> Wyf carddenhin hen  
 Wyf cyfreu lawen  
 Athaw y dygen  
 Meu molawd Urien.

*Ib.* 40

In his elegy on his patron Cynddylan, who fell in battle, he says :

The hall of Cynddylan is gloomy this night ;  
Without fire ; without a family —  
My overflowing tears gush out.

The hall of Cynddylan pierces me to see it  
Without a covering ; without a fire :  
My general is dead, and I myself alive. <sup>1</sup>

The self-reproach of the last line is striking ! Very natural is the following reflection :

Brethren I have had, who were free from evil,  
Who grew up like the saplings of the hazel —  
One by one they are all departed ! <sup>2</sup>

In his elegy on his old age, and on the loss of his children, he has many very interesting passages :

Before I appeared on crutches, I was comely ;  
My lance was the foremost of the spears ;  
———— I am heavy — I am wretched. <sup>3</sup>

Old age is scoffing at me,  
From my hair to my teeth ;  
And the eye which the young ones loved. <sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Ystavell Cynddylan ys tywyll heno  
Heb dan heb deulu  
Hidyl mau yd gynu  
Ystavell Cynddylan a'm gwan ei gweléd  
Heb doed, heb dan  
Marw vy nglyw byw my hunan. LL. HEN, 114.

<sup>2</sup> Brodyr ambwyad ni vall  
A dyvynt val gwyail coll  
O un i un edynt oll. LL. HEN, 112.

<sup>3</sup> Cyn bum cain vaglawg bum eirian  
Oedd cynwayw vy mhar  
—— wyv trwm wyv truan. Ib.

<sup>4</sup> Yn cymmwedd y mae henaint a mi  
O'm gwallt i'm daint  
A'r cloyn a gerynt yr ieuaint. Ib. 115.

I think there is much beauty in the following image of the helplessness of age :

This leaf, is it not blown about by the wind ?  
Woe to it for its fate !  
Alas, it is old. <sup>5</sup>

There is much nature in the following passages, if we conceive them to have been written by the real Llywarch, whose life extended to a long period :

The four most hateful things to me through life,  
Have met together with one accord :  
Cough, age, sickness, and grief.  
I am aged — I am lonely. I am decrepid — cold —  
After having enjoyed the bed of honour.  
I am rash — I am outrageous.  
They who loved me once, now love me not.  
Maidens love me not. I am resorted to by none ;  
I cannot move myself along —  
Ah, death ! wilt thou not befriend me ! <sup>6</sup>

There is much of a genuine appearance in Aneurin's expression of his feelings in this passage :

Miserable am I after the fatigue of the conflict,  
To suffer the pangs of death in sensibility !  
Twice heavily afflicted am I, to have seen  
The falling of our men in all directions,  
And to have felt the anxious sigh and grief  
For the valiant men of the social land ;  
For Rhuvaun, for Gwgawn, Gwiawn, and Gwilyget ! <sup>7</sup>

<sup>5</sup> Y ddeilen hon neus cynnired gwynt  
Gwae hi o'i thynged  
Hi hen.

LL. 115.

<sup>6</sup> Vy mhedwar priv-gas erymoed  
Ymgyvarvyddynt yn unoed  
Pas a henaint haint a hoed.  
Wyv hen wyv unig wyv anelwig, oer,  
Gwedy gwely ceinmyg.  
Wyv ehud wyv anwar  
Y sawl a'm caroedd ni'm car  
Ni'm car rhianedd nim cynnired neb  
Ni allav ddarymred  
Wi o angau na'm dygred.

LL. HEN, 115.

<sup>7</sup> Truan yw gennyf gwedy lluddet  
Goddef gloes angheu trwy agcyffret

In Merdhin's Avallenau, there is also much display of natural feelings appropriate to his character. The allusion to his insanity is interesting :

I myself am a wild horrible screamer ;  
I am pierced with horrors — I am covered by no raiment ! <sup>8</sup>

The following passages very forcibly display his situation and feelings :

Gwendydd does not love me — she never greets me.  
I am hated by the minister of the favours of Rhydderch.  
I have ruined his son and his daughter.  
Death relieves all — why does it not visit me ? <sup>9</sup>

Since Gwenddolau, no prince honours me,  
No pleasure allures me, no fair one cheers me ;  
Yet in the battle of Arderydd I wore the golden torques,  
Before I was disastrous to her who has the appearance of the  
swan. <sup>10</sup>

I heard the rumour in the first dawn of the day,  
That the minister of the favours of Meuwyd,  
Twice, thrice, and four times in one day —  
Oh, Jesus ! why did not my destruction come,  
Before it happened to my hand to destroy the son of Gwendydd. <sup>11</sup>

Ac eil trwm truan gennyf vy gwelet  
Gogwddai an gwyr ny pen o draet  
Ac ucheneit hir ac eilyuet  
Yn ol gwyr pybyr temyr tutuet  
Rhuvawn a Gwgawn Gwiawn a Gwilyget.

ANEUR. 12.

<sup>8</sup> A minnau wyf gwyllt gorthryfiad  
Im cathrudd cythrudd nim cudd dillad.

MERDDIN, *Afall*. 151.

<sup>9</sup> Mi nim car Gwenddydd ac nim hennyrch  
Wyf cas gan wasawg gwaesaf Ryddyrch  
Ry rewiniats iei fab ef ai ferch  
Angeu a ddwg pawb pa rag nam cyvairch.

MERD. 152.

<sup>10</sup> A guedi Gwenddoleu neb rhiau nim peirch  
Nim gogawn gwarwy nim gofwy gordderch  
Ac yngwaith Arderydd oed aur fy ngorthorch  
Cyn i bwy aelaw heddiw gan eiliw eleirch.

*Ib.* 152.

<sup>11</sup> Chwedleu a gicleu yn nechreuddydd  
Rysorri gwassawg gwaesaf Meuwydd

After predicting that Arthur shall re-appear, and Gwenhwyvar be punished, he exclaims,

Worse has befallen me, without hope of deliverance.  
The son of Gwendydd is slain — my hand did it.<sup>12</sup>

I will close this head of my subject by remarking what appears to me to be a striking instance of identity of composition in the works of Llywarch Hên. Most authors have a style, a manner peculiar to themselves. The poems of Llywarch Hên display such a peculiarity, and as all of them contain it, I will adduce it as a proof that they all spring from one author, which is a circumstance of no small consideration in the question of their genuineness.

It is a favourite habit with Llywarch Hên, when an idea has occurred to him, which he feels to be interesting, to dwell upon the idea for a considerable time, and to recur to it several times before he leaves it. Thus, in his poem on his age, his attention having been excited by the staff which supported him, he begins seven stanzas successively with an address to it, calling it, "Baglan bren," "my wooden crook." P. 114.

In the poem on his children, which is connected in the MSS. with that on his age, (but in my opinion very improperly, as they are clearly two distinct poems,<sup>13</sup>) the idea of his son Gwen occurs to him. He immediately pursues it for six stanzas, beginning each with his son's name. P. 116.

In his elegy on Cynddylan, he begins fourteen stanzas with his friend's name. The recollection of Cynddylan's hall, and its deserted appearance, in consequence of the prince's fall, afterwards comes into his mind, and he begins several stanzas with allusions to it, as he afterwards alludes to the Eagle of Eli, and the churches of Bassa, p. 108, 109.

Dwywaith a theirgwaith pedeirgwaith yn undydd  
Och Iesu! na ddyfu fy nihenydd  
Cyn dyfod ar fy llaw llaith mab Gwendydd.

MERD. 152.

<sup>12</sup> Gwaeth i mi a dderfydd heb ysgorfa  
Lleas mab Gwendydd — fy llaw ai gwna.

Ib. 152.

<sup>13</sup> The poem on his old age contains (I think) only the first twenty stanzas. I think it then ceases, and that what follows is a distinct and separate poem on the loss of his children, which should be printed separately.

In his elegy on Urien, the same practice is observable. He describes himself as having the head of Urien at his side, and he repeats the image for thirteen stanzas.

His elegy on Geraint contains twenty-four stanzas, all commencing with one of three phrases. "Rhag Geraint gelyn" introduces three stanzas. "Yn Llongborth gwelais" begins twelve stanzas, and the first line of the next stanza is common to all that follow.

I do not adduce this peculiarity as a poetical beauty. It is certainly not the offspring of taste, or imagination, but is a trait which identifies all these poems to be the works of one author; and this author, from the poems themselves, appears to have been Llywarch Hên. I think I can account for this peculiarity by saying that alliteration was the rage of the Welsh bards, as I shall presently shew, and that in this peculiarity Llywarch was striving to shew how many varieties of thoughts he could put together under the same idea, and connect with the same words. To begin several stanzas with saying "the hall of Cynddylan," is the same idle play of mind, as to begin several words with the same letters. How much of these practices sprang from the Druidical contrivances to assist their memory while they taught their youths so many verses<sup>14</sup>, without committing them to writing, cannot now be determined.

Aneurin and Merdhin have this habit so much, as to shew it to be a characteristic of the poetry of that day. But Llywarch's poems have it to an unexampled excess, which stamps them all with the same mark.

#### V. ON THE LANGUAGE OF THE BARDS.

On the language of these bards, it is very favourable to the genuineness of their poems, that though they are written in Welsh, they have not been found intelligible by many modern Welshmen. Evans, who has published an essay on the Welsh poetry, mentions this several times. He says of the Gododin, "by reason of its great antiquity, it is not easily understood," p. 17. Again, "many of Taliesin's poems, on account of their great antiquity, are very obscure, as the works of his contemporaries are," p. 18. In speaking of the poem

---

<sup>14</sup> Cæsar says of the Druids, "magnum ibi numerum versuum ediscere dicuntur." — L. vi. c. 13.

of another bard of these times, he again complains of the obscurity and difficulty of these venerable remains, p. 49. He says of the best antiquaries and critics in the Welsh language living in his time, that "they all confess that they do not understand above one half of any of Taliesin's poems," p. 54.

The difficulty of understanding these poems, which Evans so strongly states, and which so many Welshmen have felt and lamented, is just what would be found in genuine poems of the sixth century. I adduce it as an attestation of their genuineness. It is not indeed an insuperable difficulty, because the means to overcome it are open to every one. The writings of one age are the best guides to our understanding those of a preceding. They who are conversant with the poems of the fourteenth century, will understand those of the twelfth, and all who have carefully exercised themselves in the compositions of the twelfth century, will, by patient labour, comprehend and read those of the sixth. Dr. Owen Pughe, whose leisure has been devoted to the ancient literature of his country, has facilitated its study to every one by his new dictionary of its language, in which the diction of the old bards is particularly attended to, and illustrated. The circumstance of the difficulty of the language to modern Welshmen, is surely an important feature of genuineness. On this topic, however, it would be indecorous in me not to speak very diffidently. Welshmen are the only competent judges on this curious point.

It is certainly indispensable to the genuineness of these poems,

#### VI. That their historical allusions should be true.

As far as I have examined these poems, their historical allusions seem to me to be singularly true. I say singularly, because they present none of the fables which we meet with in Jeffrey.

I consider it as a very remarkable circumstance, that the Welsh bards, and the most valuable of the triads, express or imply a train of history very unlike, and sometimes very contradictory to, that of Jeffrey. Such is the difference, that if Jeffrey's facts on many occasions be true, the Welsh bards must be forgeries. If, however, the world be right in its opinion, that Jeffrey is the fabler, then the dissimilarity between him and the bards is a striking circumstance in favour of the poems.

I have already observed, that they completely negative the wonderful history of Arthur. In abiding this test, they stand a very severe and perilous one, from which, if they had been fabricated, they could not have escaped.

They present another trying test of their genuineness in their general subjects. If they had been only on love adventures, or love complaints, descriptions of nature, or mere effusions of sentiment, they could not have been examined on these grounds, because such topics may belong to one age; as well as to another. But historical poems on men, and incidents contemporary with the bards, are such as forgery can never well execute from the individual minutiae they require, and by which they can be detected the more easily. Will any one impeach them on this side, which, if they were factitious compositions, would be their weakest?

It would be a task too long for this essay, to shew the justice of all the allusions point by point. I will only add some general observations, and wait for the attack before I make the defence.

1. As far as authentic history goes, it proves that there were such persons as those to whom many of these poems are addressed, or who are mentioned in them. I mean Urien, Geraint, Cadwallon, Cynddylan, Cian Gwyngwn, Rhydderch, Gwendolau, Owen, Cunedda, Aeddan, and others.
2. The British states in the north of the island, which they particularize, or imply, present a curious train of real historical facts.
3. The numerous little independent kingdoms in other parts of the island, which they also imply, and the civil discords to which they allude, were historical facts.
4. Llywarch's elegy on Urien turns chiefly on his murder. That he was assassinated can be proved from other authorities.

An historical objection has been raised against the Welsh bards, to which a mistake gave rise. The objection is, that the Welsh bards call the English, Allmyn.

The objection is this. The term Allmyn obviously corresponds with the Latin Alemanni, but "at the supposed period of the bards, the terms Allemanni, and Allemannia, were almost restricted to modern Switzerland." The statement is, that the word passed in late times from the French lan-

guage into the Armorican, and thence into the Welsh. The inference is, that poems using this word must have been written much posterior to the sixth century, because the term *Allemannia* was not applied to all Germany till a much more recent period.

The answer is, that the objection does not apply to the four bards I have mentioned, because *none* of them use the term *Allmyn*. It is Golyddan, not Taliesin, who uses the word *Allmyn*.

Neither Aneurin, Taliesin, Llywarch Hên, nor Merdhin, has the word *Allmyn*. Aneurin, in speaking of the invaders, calls them *Saeson*. Taliesin had also *Saeson*, and sometimes *Eingl*. Sometimes he uses the descriptive name of *Alltudion*, or foreigners. He once has the word *Germania*, and once *Saxonia*. Llywarch has *Sais*, *Saeson*, and once *Franc*. Merdhin has *Saeson* and *Frainc* in his *Avallenau*, the only one of his poems that I think free from interpolation.

The objection, therefore, does not impeach the genuineness of these four bards.

I am not, therefore, under a necessity of saying any more on this subject. But as if it be applicable, it will tend to discredit the poem of Golyddan, of which I think favourably. I will make a few remarks on the subject.

To suppose that the Welsh bard used the term *Allmyn* as the French use the term *Allemands*, that is, as the general designation of the German people, or with the full sense of the word in the eighteenth century, is to create a difficulty on purpose to make it an objection. The word, as used by the bard, has no such meaning; and if it has not, the objection is nothing.

The bard, in speaking of the invaders, sometimes calls them *Allmyn*. This is the simple fact. The only question upon it is, what, or whom does he mean by the term? I will presume that the Latin word *Allemanni* was in his mind when he used it. But who were the *Allemanni*, not in the thirteenth century, but in the sixth?

The *Allemanni* made themselves celebrated by many wars against the Romans and their allies. In 360, and 365, their invasions of Gaul were dreadful, and must have diffused their name in terror through Britain, and every country adjacent.

In 496, they assailed the Franks and Clovis. "From the source of the Rhine to its conflux with the Mein and the Moselle, the formidable swarms of the *Allemanni* commanded either side of the river. They had spread them-

selves into Gaul, over the modern provinces of Alsace and Lorraine." Gib. iii. 563.

From this formidable position they invaded the kingdom of Cologne, and the battle of Tolbiac ensued, in which they contended with the Franks for the alternative of empire or servitude. After a long and varying conflict, the Allemanni were totally and irrecoverably defeated. Some fled to other countries, as they who were placed in Rhetia<sup>15</sup>, and with the Ripuarii, and the rest, were subjected to the Franks.

Thus we see that at the end of the fifth century, the great and formidable nation of the Allemanni was humbled for ever. Whether on their conquest by Clovis, any sailed down the Rhine to Britain, as a part travelled to Rhetia, is not stated. But I submit that an indignant British bard would with pleasure use their name to stigmatize the invaders of his country, because in representing them as Allemanni, as those celebrated warriors whom the Franks had at the epoch of the Saxon invasions defeated and dispersed, he strongly exposed them to the contempt of the Britons. Nothing was better fitted to rouse their valour than to have it believed that the invaders were fugitives themselves. Conflicting parties frequently give each other abusive names, which become at last almost historical terms; witness the Cavaliers and Roundheads.

That it was really used as a term of opprobrium, appears to me more probable from the meaning which the Welsh language afforded to the expression. Allmyn signifies foreigners, as well as Allemanni. The most usual name for foreigners, in Welsh, was alltudion, from *all*, another, and *tud*, a country; but the word allmyn has the same import, for *men*, and *man*, is the Welsh for place. Therefore just as all-tud meant another country; so, all-man, another place, was nearly its synonyme.

In the same spirit Milton applied the word Gallus to Salmasius, because it admitted of other allusions besides its obvious meaning.

I think the passages of Golyddan, in which allmyn is connected with alltudedd prove the pun which he intended to make opprobrious.

Ef gyrhau allmyn i alltudedd.

156.

"He would have driven the foreigners to a foreign place."

<sup>15</sup> Marc. ii. 16.

So

Allmyn ar gyrchwyn i alltudydd.

159.

“ The foreigners removing to a foreign place.”

The word *allmyn* being understood to denote foreigners as well as *Allemanni*. Thus it was a contemptuous *paromasia* used by an individual, to convey strong opprobrium, and also to give that alliteration to the line, of which the Welsh bards were so fond.

VII. That the manners which they express are consistent.

In the poems of Ossian we certainly meet with an elegance of sentiment, a refined tenderness and delicacy of feeling wholly incompatible with the period to which Ossian is assigned. The Welsh bards may suffer with the cultured taste for the avowal; but certainly this objection cannot be urged against these poems. These bards were warriors, their songs commemorate warriors, and their feelings and sentiments are wholly martial. I believe there is not one tribute to love in the whole series of the ancient ones. Friendship and grief, and gratitude to patrons, occupy many stanzas; but Venus and Cupid have not received a single compliment. All this is very natural for the turbulent and disastrous period in which these poets lived. In more tranquil times, beauty obtained the most elegant wreaths of the Welsh laurel. Love has sighed in Welsh as profusely as in French, and much new imagery, and much originality of sentiment, abound in the bardic poems of the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries.

As this essay is intended to be concise, I will only select three specimens of the reality of the costume of manners which these poems exhibit. Aneurin, in describing Caeog, a British hero, mentions,

Gwefrawr godrwyawr torchawr am ran.

“ With wreathes of amber twined round his temples.”

This singular fact of the ancient Britons wearing amber-beads, is confirmed by many beads of amber having been found in the barrows on Salisbury plain, which have been recently dug. I understand that in several of these graves, pieces of amber, like beads, have been met with; and in one, as many beads were found as would have made a wreath. These are in the possession of Mr. Cunningham, of Heytesbury, who has explored many tumuli during last summer, and

whose curious museum of British antiquities, as arrowheads, urns, &c. found in these barrows, is highly worthy the notice of the antiquary.<sup>16</sup>

Another part of the British costume which they notice, is the wearing the golden torques. Llywarch mentions it, p. 135:

Four and twenty sons I have had  
Wearing the golden wreath, leaders of armies.

Aneurin mentions it several times :

Of all who went to Cattraeth, wearing the golden torc, or wreath,  
On the business of Mynydauc, courteous to his people,  
There went not, among the Britons  
Of Gododin, a man of war superior to Cynon.

He states, that in the battle of Cattraeth there were

Three hundred and sixty-three who had the golden torques.

In attestation of the reality of this ornament, I cannot do better than cite again from Gibson's Camden the following passage, though it was quoted in the Anglo-Saxon History, p. 222.

"In 1692, an ancient golden torques was dug up near the Castle of Harlech, in Merionethshire. It is a wreathed bar of gold, or perhaps three or four rods jointly twisted, about four feet long, flexible, but naturally bending only one way, in the form of a hat-band. It is hooked at both ends. It is of a round form, about an inch in circumference, and weighs eight ounces." Gibson's Additions to Camden, p. 658., Edit. 1695.

I consider the use of mead, which is mentioned in several of the poems as the drink of their feasts, and of horns as the drinking-vessels, as circumstances of consistent manners: so are the allusions to transmigration, which abound in Taliesin, and many appropriate traits in Aneurin and Llywarch. But on this point I ask the adversaries of the poems to make out objections.

VIII. That the form and composition of the poems suit their period.

---

<sup>16</sup> In one barrow were found beads of amber and jet of various sizes, but corresponding with two horn rings, to which the strings that tied them were probably appended. Wreaths of this sort are also described in Douglas's *Nenia Britannica*.

If they exhibited a complex, or even a regular epic fable, or any mode of arrangement that critical rules would approve; if they were dressed in an elegant costume, or betrayed any skilful polish of manners or sentiment, we might have some room for suspicion. But they have nothing of this sort; they are as inartificial, as humble in design, and as rude in execution, as scepticism could desire. They shew us the real wilderness of nature, with all the discordant mixture of occasional fecundity and intervening aridity. Flowery meads, and cheerless heaths; bursts of light, and the most chilling gloom perpetually succeed each other, without any careful disposition, or judicious contrast. They display no order but that of the natural association of such ideas as they express. If they sing of battles, the heroes are praised without art, and the conflicts are described without method. Not a trace of the fine models of Greece or Rome, not a single imitation of their imagery or their poetical architecture can be discerned. They are just such compositions as such bards, in such an age, would be expected to write. Many traits of glowing poetry abound. Much of the inspired bard will be seen, but no contrivance, no taste, no delicacy, no art, no polish. The Gododin of Aneurin, the longest of the poems, is a very distinguished monument of antiquity, and its internal evidence is peculiar and strong: It is not of easy construction, because its text is much injured; and because it contains much lyrical measure, intermixed with the full heroic rime, and with the singular ornaments of Welsh poetry, of which I shall hereafter speak. The expressions are oftentimes very concise, its transitions very rapid and frequent, its diction strong and figurative; and sometimes made more difficult by the peculiar compound words in which the poet indulges, and which the Welsh language with great facility admits. Though an heroic poem of 920 lines with one subject, it exhibits a strong character of genuine unpolished irregularity. It hath no elegant and artful introduction or invocation: the bard was a warrior, and had fought in the conflict he describes. He was commemorating friends and fellow-soldiers, he had to state what he saw, there is therefore no reflective and refined address. He bursts at once into his subject, and begins it with describing not his plan or purpose, but one of his heroes.

From its genuineness it has also no regular, well disposed fable; no careful concatenation of events, no well placed or skilfully contrasted incidents; the poem is like a real native

forest, wild, impressive, and picturesque, but very devious and irregular. It is rather poetic memoranda of a disastrous conflict, penned by a friend, who had witnessed its events in all the confusion in which they had occurred, than a well conceived, and artfully arranged series of individual conflicts, like the poems of Homer, which though genuine, as to the author, yet contain incidents which the poet's invention has arranged as it pleased.

The Gododin abounds with strong and frequent bursts of feeling highly natural to its alleged author, but which are not so likely to have been shewn in a forged poem, where the author would have to support an artificial character. One topic of this sort which pervades the poem, is that incident which occasioned the loss of the battle; I mean the inebriety of the Britons: to this the bard is perpetually alluding. As he notices the friends who fell around, he cannot drive from his memory the chief cause of their calamity: this was extremely natural.

The poem suddenly opens with the presence of a mounted warrior, whom the bard contemplates and describes:

GREDYV was a youth  
Vigorous in the tumult.  
A swift, thick-maned steed,  
Was under the thighs of the fair youth.  
A shield light and broad,  
Hung on the slender fleet courser.  
His sword was blue and shining;  
Golden spurs and ermine adorned him.<sup>17</sup>

But the poet contemplates him only to sing his elegy; from the next lines we find Gredyv was one of the victims of the day.

It is not for me,  
To envy thee.  
I will do nobler to thee;  
In poetry I will praise thee.  
Alas! sooner will the bloody bier arrive,  
Than nuptial festivity. —

---

<sup>17</sup> Gredyf gwr oed gwas  
Gwhyr am dias  
Meirch mwth myngvras  
Y dan mordhuyt mygr was  
Ysguyt ysgafn llydan  
Ar hedrein mein buan  
Cledyvawr glas glan.  
Ethy aur a phan.

Sooner will the ravens have food,  
 Than the dear friend of Owen  
 Enjoy a family.  
 Perishing in his abode under the ravens  
 Is the courser, by the valley,  
 Where the son of Marco was slain.<sup>18</sup>

From this warrior, the bard turns immediately to commemorate another, who appears to have been a great favourite, as many stanzas are devoted to him :

Caeawg instantly the foremost wherever he came,  
 The portion of mead from the chief lady had held —  
 The point of his shield was pierced. When he heard  
 The shout, he gave no protection. He pressed on,  
 Nor did he retire from the battle when the blood flowed around.  
 Like rushes he cut down the men. He would not depart.  
 The Gododin relates not on the ground of Mordai  
 Before the tents of Madoc when he returned,  
 The return of more than one in a hundred.  
 Caeawg the overwheeler, raised his spear ;  
 He was like the attack of an eagle on the strand when allured.  
 His promise was a token ; most beloved.  
 He nobly executed his purpose : he retreated not  
 From the army of Gododin. He lay hid —  
 Valiant to urge the conflict, he was exalted in it.  
 But neither his figure nor his shield preserved him,  
 He was not able to survive the excessive bruises  
 From the blows of the embattled host.  
 Caeawg the leader, with the countenance of a wolf,  
 With amber wreaths twined over his eye-brows.  
 Fatal was the amber, the ornament of the banquet.  
 Oh ! that he had disdained the strife of the wallowing men ;  
 When Gwyned came to the north to share  
 The counsel of the son of Ysgyran.

<sup>18</sup> Ny bi ef a vi  
 Cas y rhof a thi  
 Gwell gwnaf a thi  
 Ar wawt dy voli  
 Cynt i waet elawr  
 No gyt i neithiawr  
 Cynt y uwyd i vrein  
 Noc yr argynrein  
 Cu cyveillt Euein  
 Cwl y vot y dan vrein  
 March ym pa vro  
 Ladd un mab Marco.

Caeawg the leader, armed in the shout,  
 Though he is not now the hero ardent for deeds of blood,  
 To share in opening the front of the arrayed forces,  
 He overthrew five bands before his blade.  
 Of the men of Deira and Bernicia, the dreadful ones!  
 Twenty hundred of these perished in an hour!  
 Ah! sooner shall the wolf have flesh than thou a wedding;  
 Sooner shall the raven have prey than thou repose again.  
 Sooner shall the hurdle come with the mangled from the bloody  
 earth. —

This was the dismal price of the mead in the pale disastrous  
 hour.

And yet by the skilful he shall be extolled, while there exists  
 a singer.<sup>19</sup>

<sup>19</sup> Caeawc cynhaiawc men y dehai  
 Diphun ymlaen bun medd a dalhei  
 Twll tal i rodawr yn y clywei  
 Aur ni roddei naud meint dilynei  
 Ny chyliei o gamhawn yn y verei  
 Waet mal brwyn gomynai gwyr nyt elhei  
 Nys adrawd Gododin ar lawr mordei  
 Rac pebyll Madawc pan atcor ei  
 Namyn un o gant yn y delei

Caeawc Cynnyvint cyvat erwy  
 Ruthyr Eryr yn y lyr pan lithiwy  
 Yamot a vu not a garwy  
 Gwell a wnaeth y arvaeth ny giliwy  
 Rac bedin Ododin o dechwyt  
 Hyder gymmell ar vreithell vanawyt  
 Ny nodi nac ysgeth nag ysgwy  
 Ny ellir anet rhy vaethuwy  
 Rac ergit cadfannau catwy

Caeawc cynhorawc bleide maran  
 Gwefrawr godrwyawr torchawr am ran  
 Bu guefraur guerthvaur guerth gwinvan  
 Ef gwrthodes gwrys gwyr discrein  
 Yt dyffei Wyned a gogledd ei rann  
 O gyssul mab ysgyran  
 Ysgwyd wr ancyfan  
 Caeawc cynhorawc arawc yggawr  
 Cyn od iw y gwr gwrdd eggwyawr  
 Cyvran yn racwan rac bydinawr  
 Cwydei pym pymunt rac y llafnawr  
 O wyr Dewyr a Bryneich dychrawr  
 Ugeincant eu divant yn unawr

The fate of these two heroes, occasions him to advert to the cause. He proceeds to mention that the Britons had been feasting too plentifully before the battle :

The warriors went to Gododin full of laughter,

To bitter conflict with the clashing swords. —

Short interval of joy indeed !

The son of Botgad lamented it. — Manly was his arm.

But they went in a mass. Their punishment was complete

Both old and young — The bold and the powerful. —

The certain death of the conflict pierced them,

The warriors went to Gododin a laughing phalanx,

Soon the embattled host rose against them, in unlovely contest.

They flew with blades shining, without din,

The puissant column with spears alive, moved on.

They went to Cattraeth. — Loquacious were their hosts,

Pale mead had been their feast, and was their poison.

Three hundred with machines were in array.

But what a calm succeeded to their joy ?

They went in a mass, their punishment was complete ;

The certain death of the conflict pierced them through. <sup>20</sup>

Cynt y gig y vleid nog yt e neithiawr

Cynt e vud y vran noc yt y elawr

Cyn noe argyurein e waet e lawr

Gwerth med ynghcyntedh gan liwed awr

Kyneid hir ermygir tra vo cerdawr.

<sup>20</sup> Gwyr a aeth Ododin chwerthin ognaw

Chwerwyn trin a llain yn ymdulïaw

Byrr vlyned yn hed udynt yndaw

Mab Botgat gunaeth guynyeth gunith e law

Cyt eiwynt y lanneu y benytyaw

A hen a ieueing a hydyr a allaw

Dadyl diheu angeu yn eu treiddïaw

Gwyr a aeth Ododin chwerthin wanar

Digynny ei emm bydin trin diachar

Wy ledi a llavnawr eb vawr drydar

Colovn glyw reithvyw rodi arwar

Gwyr a aeth Gattræth oed fraeth y lu

Glasved eu hancwyn ae gwenwyn vu

Trychant trwy beiriant yn cattau

A gwedy elwch tawelwch vu

Cyt elwynt y lanneu y benytu

Dadyl dieu angeu y eu treudu

These are the first seventy-three lines of the Gododin, and will serve as sufficient specimen of its style and character.

The name of Aneurin has stood very high in the estimation of his countrymen; but all human greatness is relative. The luminary of the sixth century, which shone with transcendent lustre in a rude country, where all around was dark and dreary, will appear but a cloudy orb, when it is presented to our notice in the noontide radiance of modern intellect. We must not approach the ancient Welsh bards as the competitors for the wreath of a Pindar or a Gray. These poets were the offspring of highly cultivated ages; while the ancient Welsh bards were but the descendants of rude ancestors, possessed indeed, for centuries, of the singular institution of Druidism or Bardism, but yet composing for a barbarous people, and confined to the narrow benefit of a local education.

Whoever reads these very ancient poems with attention, will be struck with a very great disparity between their versification and the intellect they display. The versification is formed on one of the most peculiar, difficult, and artificial systems conceivable, and it is executed as elaborately as it was designed.

To instance only from the Gododin, —

One of the practices by which its versification was governed, was rime. This is essential to the poetry. All the poems of the ancient bards are rimed at the end of the line; nor is the riming in couplets, which is comparatively easy, but the same rime is carried on for several lines. Thus in these final rimes in p. 1.

dehai	erwyt	maran
dalhei	lithiwyd	am ran
clywei	garwyt	gwinvan
dilynei	giliwyd	discrein
verei	dechwyd	rann
elhei	vanawyt	ysgyran
mordei	ysgwyd	angcyfan
atcorei	vaethuwyd	
delei	catwyt	

The same rime is sometimes carried on to great length. In p. 9., there are twenty-three lines together riming with *in*: and in p. 7., there are eighteen lines in *enn*.

But besides these final rimes, they also studied to intro-

duce other rining syllables dividing the words of every line. Thus,

*Caeawc cynhaiawc men y dehai*  
*Diphun ymlaen bun medd a dalhei*

This practice was sometimes extended to three rimes in the line, as

*Gwefrawr Godrwyawr torchawr am ran —*  
*Blwyddyn yn erbyn urdyn deawd —*  
*Dadyl dieu aneu y cu treudu —*

In all these examples the rimes are on final syllables.

In addition to these difficult peculiarities, was also the habit of alliteration; or of making two or more words in the line begin with the same letter. Thus in the first line,

*Gredyf gwr oed gwas*

In the third and fourth,

*Meirch mwth myngyras*  
*Y dan mordhuyt mygr was*

Sometimes it was used profusely, as in this line,

*Bu bwyd brein bu bud y yran*

These alliterations are almost as incessant as their final rimes.

Nor were they content with confining their alliterations to the commencing letter, but they often extended them to syllables, making a sort of alliterative rimes. Thus in two lines,

*Bu guefraur guerthvawr guerth gwinvan*  
*Ef gwrthodes gwrys gwyr discrein*

Sometimes it happened, or was contrived, that the same line should exhibit the commencing alliterative rimes, and the final syllables rimes.

*Mab Botgat guaneth guanyeth gunith e law*  
*Ny mynws gwrawl gwydawl chwegrwn*

In selecting these difficulties of the ancient Welsh versification, I state those only which struck me as an Englishman.

I believe there are many other niceties, perceptible and precious to Welsh bards and critics.

That such slavish attention to the incessant consonancy of syllables, could never be exercised without a sacrifice of the most valuable qualities of poetic thought, must be felt by all to whom the lays of Parnassus are familiar. I was therefore not surprised, to find the works of the Welsh bards, beneath my expectations as poems. But I must pay the tribute due to the genius of Aneurin, to say, that notwithstanding the oppressive trammels in which he marched; and notwithstanding the gloom, disasters, and confusion of the period in which he lived, his *Gododin* has many passages which for glowing expression, striking metaphor, genuine feeling, and poetic imagery, must please and interest in every age.

My opinion of the *poetry* of TALIESIN's works, is by no means consistent with his general fame. His power of versification indeed, excites my surprise; it seems to have been as easy for him to rime in all sorts of measures, as for others to write prose, and he introduces frequently, even in his shortest measures, the peculiarities of bardic consonancy. Some of his poems are in what I would call the full heroic rime, like the mead song already quoted, (p. 60.) others in short rimed metres of various lengths. But though he was certainly accomplished in all the arts of bardic versification, he is not very distinguished for genuine poetry of thought and imagery. Sometimes indeed the poet bursts out, as in the following description of the gleam of the steel points of weapons, which is very original and picturesque :

I saw mighty men,  
Who thronged together at the shout !  
I saw blood on the ground,  
From the assault of swords.  
*They ting'd with blue the wings of the dawn,*  
When they threw off the ashen spears. <sup>1</sup>

Several passages of this sort may be found, but he has not

<sup>1</sup> Gweleis wyr gorsawr  
A Ddygyrchynt awr  
Gweleis waed ar llawr  
Rhag rhwthr cleddysawr  
Glesynt esgwyll gwawr  
Esgorynt yn waewawr.

TALIES. p. 40.

always much connection of subject, and very often much bardic mythology appears. This is in nothing more conspicuous than in his allusions to his own transmigrations. As this is a curious subject, I will detain the reader's attention for a short time upon it.

Among the Welsh remains is a MS. of poetical triads. The MS. has been entitled, *Barddas*; or, the book of Bardism. or, *Cyvrinac Beirdd Ynys Prydain*. The triads were collected together at different periods.<sup>1</sup> Some of them state the

<sup>1</sup> That the reader may have some idea of the book from which I am going to quote, I think it right to insert some extracts from its prefaces, with which Mr. Owen has favoured me.

The book was last transcribed and revised by Edward Davydd, who died 1690. His original MS. is yet extant, in the library of Llan Haran, in Glamorganshire, now the property of Mr. Turberville. The collection was made before him, by Llywelyn Sion who flourished in 1580, and died in 1616. I will give a translation of a part of the Welsh preface of D. Davydd, and after that some extracts from the preface of the former collector, Llywelyn Sion; Mr. Owen has only added, in parentheses, the dates of the persons and things mentioned therein.

#### *E. Davydd's Advertisement.*

"Arranged by Edward Davydd, of Margam, in Morganwg, out of the books of bards and learned teachers, lest the materials should become lost; and more particularly the books of Meiryg Davydd, (1560. presd.) Davydd Llwyd Mathew, (1580. disc.) Davydd Benwyn, (1560 presd.) and Llywelyn Sion of Llangewyz, (1560. disc. and presd. 1580.) who were bards graduated of the chair, according to the privilege and custom of the bards of the Isle of Britain; chiefs of science, under the authority of the county and sovereign of all the lordship of Morganwg, Gwent, and Euas.

"This arrangement was adjudged to be just, according to the primitive character of vocal song, and the usage of the primitive bards of the Isle of Britain; and was sanctioned in the congress of vocal song, held at Bewpyr Castle, in Morganwg, on the Monday, Tuesday, and Wednesday of Whitsuntide, in the year 1681, under the protection of Sir Richard Bassett, Knight, Lord of the place, and under the proclamation and notice of a year and a day, through Morganwg, Gwent, and Euas.

"The chiefs of song there, were Charles Bwttn, Esq. Davyz ir Nant, (1680. presd.) Edward Davyz, of Margam, (1620. disc. 1660 presd.) associated with them were the following poets and

bardic doctrines about the Metempsychosis. These triads of course, only prove that the bards of the middle ages had these

bards, according to the privilege and custom of the bards of the Isle of Britain, being teachers of critical judgment :

“ And this, in the Name of God, and all Good.

“ Hywel. Lewys	Dav. Ivan Sion
John Roberts	Charles Dav. Meredydd
Thomas Lewys	Hopcin Llywelyn
Davydd Edward	Lleision Evan
•Sion Padam	Jenkin Richards
Morgan Gruffydd	Bleddyn Sion
	Samuel Jones, Clerk.”

*Beginning of Edward Davydd's Preface.*

“ As I have from my youth taken a delight in the study of bardism, and to search the books of the bards and the best teachers, and more especially the books of the oldest bards of Wales ; and also considering the injunctions given to the bards in the congress of Caerdyv, (1620.) which was held in the castle there, through the protection, licence, and command of the Lord William Herbert, that they should search out, and establish anew the old order and regulation of the art of song and its relations, and as to the privileges and customs of the bards of the Isle of Britain, I fully gave up myself to the enterprize of trying whether I could contribute any kind of benefit to the design.”

*Extracts from the Preface of Llywelyn Sion o Langewydd.*  
(1580. disc. Died, 1616.)

“ The authors, teachers, and judges who sanctioned this system and code, were the druids and bards, after they had come to the faith in Christ ; and they composed on the nine canons, that is, the nine primary principles of vocal song, and on the recurrent pause, the hupyr and warrior triplet, which were with them, metres of authority. Afterwards came Aneurin, Taliesin, Merddin, and others, who were primary bards of the Isle of Britain, who gave unanimous judgment with respect to song, and formed additional metres from the nine primary canons, namely, the two Toddai, Englyn, Proest, Triban Cyrç, Llostawdyl, Clogyrnaç, and Cyngog ; and afterwards were devised all the other metres, until they formed twenty-four in number, each of which originated from a particular and different character, irrelevant to the principles of each other ; and more than that number, of such a nature, there cannot be of metrical principles.

notions, but it is highly probable, that what they believed on this point, they derived from their ancestors, and as we know

---

" In the congress of Caermarthen, (1450.) heterogeneous principles were introduced into the system, by the pertinacity of Dawydd ab Edmwnd. This induced Gwilym Tew, (1460. presd.) Ieuan ab Hywel Swrdwal, (1430. discd.) and J. Getthin, ab J. ab Lleision, (1430. pres.) to oppose such an innovation, and they proclaimed a congress under the notice of a year and a day, to be held on the mountain of Garth Maelog, and in addition to that, they obtained the authority of the country, and Lord Richard Nevill, as the lord paramount of Morganwg; and in that congress the bards of Morganwg, Gwent, and Euas, entered their protest, and repelled the regulation of Caermarthen, as repugnant to the privileges and customs of the bards of the Isle of Britain. From that time forwards, the three provinces before mentioned, maintained by one consent, their primitive regulation of science, and afterwards was obtained the authority for an exclusive congress for these three districts, through the grant of King Henry the Seventh. In the congresses that were held by virtue of this authority, it was given in judgment, and established as a rule, that the old system, with its regulation and principles of science should be maintained; and from that time to this, there has been continued in Morganwg a complete opposition to the regulation of Caermarthen; with an injunction upon the members to search out the ancient practice and regulation of science. But there were not then nearly so many metres in use, because they were not had in common practice; afterwards, however, many were found out, as may be seen in the books of Gwilym Tew, and William Edwad, who were bards of the chair of Morganwg. Since then Lewys Morganwg, (1500. discd. & presc. 1520.) has written amply and more explicitly respecting the metres and the nature of their composition in his book of bardism. Subsequent to this, the bards of the three districts were summoned together in the castle of Caerdyv, under the protection and license of the Lord William Herbert, where a congress was held, (1529.) wherein judgment was given, with order and regulation of the science of song.

" Sometime afterwards, Meiryg Davydd, (1520. discd. 1560, presd. died, 1600.) compiled a book of bardism to his lord, Sir Edward Lewys, of the Van, in which there is seen a faithful view of the art of song, as to its nature and design. This book, I Llywelyn Sion o Langewydd, obtained; and from it I extracted nearly all that is in this book, except the verses by way of exemplifications, which I collected from here and there, out of books, and from different bards, and composed some myself, as well as I could; and in this book of my compiling is seen the system of Morganwg as to vocal song, and its various relations."

that the Druids believed in transmigration, we may consider them as the source of the opinions.

They mention three regions of existence, which it is very curious to observe, they denominate *cylchau*, or circles.<sup>2</sup>

In the *cylch y Ceugant*, or the circle of the all-enclosing circle, there was nothing either alive or dead but God (*Duw*), and he only could pervade it. The circle of *Gwynnyd*, or felicity, is that which men are to pervade after they have passed through their terrestrial changes. But the circle of *Abred*, or evil, is that in which human nature passes through those varying stages of its existence, which it must undergo, before it is qualified to inhabit the circle of felicity.

All animated beings have three states of existence to pass through. The state of *Abred*, or evil in *Annwn*, or the great deep; the state of freedom, in the human form, and the state of love, which is happiness, in the *nev*, or heavens. All beings but God, must therefore undergo three *angen*, or necessities: they must have a beginning in *Annwn*, or the great deep: a progression in *Abred*, or in the state of evil, and a completion in the circle of felicity in heaven.

In the evil state of *Abred* there are three *angen*, or necessities. There must be *existence* in its least possible degree, which is its commencement. — There must be the *matter* of every thing, from which proceeds increase, or progression of existence which cannot be in the other states, and there must be the *forms* of all things whence discriminating individuality.

The three necessary causes of the state of *Abred*, are to collect the matter of every nature, to collect the knowledge of every thing, and to collect power to destroy *Gwrth*, (the opposing,) and *Cythraul*<sup>3</sup>, and to divest ourselves of evil. Unless every state of being be thus passed through, there can be no perfection.

The three chief infelicities attached to the state of *Abred* are, that we incur necessity, oblivion and death; and these

<sup>2</sup> We cannot avoid recollecting here, that the great Druidical temples of Stonehenge and Avebury, the smaller remains in Cornwall, that formerly in Jersey, now removed to Lord Conway's park, and others, exhibit *circles* of stones, as the essential form of their structure.

<sup>3</sup> *Cythraul* is the British name for the devil. It means the destroying principle. It may have been derived from the ancient mythology of the nation: I have therefore preserved the name in the text.

things are the divine instruments for subduing evil (*drwg*), and *Cythraul*. The deaths which follow our changes are so many escapes from their power.

Humanity must necessarily suffer, change, and choose, and as it has the liberty of choosing, its sufferings and changes cannot be foreseen.

In passing through the changes of being, attached to the state of *Abred*, it is possible for man, by misconduct, to fall retrograde into the lowest state from which he had emerged.

There are three things which will inevitably plunge him back into the changes of *Abred*. Pride; for this he will fall to *Annwn*, which is the lowest point at which existence begins. Falsehood, which will re-plunge him to *Obryn*<sup>4</sup>, and Cruelty, which will consign him to *Cydvil*<sup>5</sup>: from these he must proceed again in due course, through changes of being, up to humanity.

From this exposition, we see that the Bardic transmigration was from *Annwn*, through the changes of *Abred* to the felicity of heaven. These changes never ended till man had fitted himself for heaven. If his conduct in any one state, instead of improving his being, had made it worse, he fell back into a worse condition, to commence again his purifying revolutions.

Humanity was the limit of the degraded transmigrations. All the changes above humanity were felicitating.

To acquire knowledge, benevolence, and power, is the object of the human state; and these, as they require liberty and choice, cannot be attained in any state previous to humanity. Knowledge, benevolence, and power, are the arms by which *Drwg* and *Cythraul* are to be subdued. Humanity is the scene of the contest.

I will now only add, that to have traversed every state of animated existence, to remember every state and its incidents, and to be able to traverse every state that can be desired for the sake of experience and judgment, is that consummation which can only be attained in the circle of felicity. In this circle man will be still undergoing rotations of existence, but

<sup>4</sup> *Obryn* literally means "something nearly equivalent." It therefore implies a degraded transmigration adequate to the fault committed.

<sup>5</sup> This literally means "a corresponding animal," or a transmigration into some ferocious animal.

happy ones, because God only can endure the eternities of the circle of infinity without changing. Man's happy changes in the circle of felicity, will exhibit perpetual acquisition of knowledge, beautiful variety, and occasional repose.<sup>6</sup>

He may visit again the scenes of humanity for his pleasure, but cannot incur any moral depravity.

Such is the bardic doctrine of transmigration, as it appears in the Book of Bardism. How far it transmits the tenets of the druids on this subject, or what modifications Christianity introduced, cannot now be ascertained.

By recollecting this doctrine of transmigrations, we may understand many passages of Taliesin. His Hanes Taliesin is a recital of his pretended transmigrations; and when we read in his other poems, that he has been in various animal shapes, as a serpent<sup>7</sup>, a wild sow, a buck, or a crane, and such like, we must call to mind, that those scenes of existence in Abred, which were between Annwn and humanity, were the changes of being in the bodies of different animals. One great privilege of the being who was far advanced in his progression to the circle of felicity, was to remember all the states through which he had passed. Taliesin seems to have been eager to establish his claims to such a successful probation. He is perpetually telling us what he has been. Oblivion was one of the curses of Abred; the recovery of memory was a proof that Drwg and Cythraul began to be overcome. Taliesin therefore as profusely boasts of his recovered reminiscence, as any modern sectary can do of his state of grace and election.

There is so much of Taliesin's poetry which no one can understand, that I cannot but place him, in point of intrinsic merit, below the other bards, although, in the estimation of his countrymen, he seems to have been ranked in a superior class.

His Cad Goddeu, the Battle of the Trees, is eminently incomprehensible, and so are others. That I may not be thought

<sup>6</sup> Copious extracts from the book of Bardism, which contains these tenets, may be found at the end of the second volume of Mr. Edward Williams's poems, with translations. I cannot speak of this gentleman without mentioning his talents with high respect; nor without recommending him earnestly to the attention of his wealthy countrymen. His age enforces the claims of his genius.

<sup>7</sup> Wyf sarph, p. 27. — bum bwch. — bum banhwch. — bum garan, p. 44.

to condemn him unjustly, I will beg leave to present the reader with his poem, called *Preiddeu Annwn*, the spoils of *Annwn*. If its allusions are at all historical, they are too much involved in mythology to be comprehended. In his mead song, there is a connected train of thought. In the following poem, all connection of thought seems to have been studiously avoided.<sup>8</sup>

## PREIDDEU ANNWN.

Praise to the Lord, supreme ruler of the high region,<sup>9</sup>  
Who hath extended his dominion to the shores of the world.  
Complete was the prison of Gwair in *Caer Sidi*,  
Through the anger of Pwyll and Pryderi,

<sup>8</sup> It is, however, fair to remark, that if the *Mabinogion* and all the Welsh remains were to be accurately studied; it is probable, that enough might be gathered from them to elucidate some of the allusions of *Taliesin* to the opinions, tales, and traditions of his day. This would make intelligible many passages now obscure.

<sup>9</sup> Golych wledig pendefig gwad ri  
Pe ledas y pennaeth tros draeth mundi  
Bu cywair carchar Gwair ynghaer Sidi  
Trwy dybostol Pwyll a Phryderi  
Neb cyn nog ef nid aeth iddi  
Yr gadwyn dromlas cywirwas ai cedwi  
A rhac Frieddieu Annwn tost y geni  
Ac yd frawd parahawd yn barddwedi  
Tri lloneid prydwen ydd aetham ni iddi  
Nam saith ny dyrraith o Gaer Sidi  
Neud wyf glod geymyn cerdd o chlywir  
Ynghaer Pedryfan pedyr y chwelyd  
Ynghynueir or pair pan leferid  
O anadl naw morwyn gochynnessid  
Neu pair pen annwfn pwy uynud  
Gwrym am ei oror a Mererid  
Ni beirw bwyd llwrf ni rydyngid  
Kleddyf lluch lleawc iddaw rhyddychid  
Ac yn llaw Lleminawg ydd edewid  
A rhag drws porth Uffern llugyrn lloscid  
A phan aetham ni gan Arthur trafferth ilethrid  
Namyn saith ni ddyrraith o Gear Vediuid  
Neud wyf glod geimyn cerdd glywanawr  
Ynghaer Pedryfan Ynys Pybyrddor  
Echwydd a Muchydd cymysgettor  
Gwin gloyw eu gwirawd rhag ei gosgordd  
Tri lloneid Prydwen ydd aetham ni ar for  
Namyn saith ni ddyrraith o Gaer Rigor

No one before him went to it.  
 A heavy blue chain held the faithful youth,  
 And before the spoils of Annwn gloomily he sings:  
 And till doom shall continue in his lay.  
 Thrice the fulness of Pridwen, we went into it.  
 Except seven, none returned from Caer Sidi.  
 Am I not a candidate for fame to be heard in the song?  
 In Caer Pedryfan, four times revolving,  
 In the first word from the cauldron when it was expressed  
 From the breath of nine damsels it began to be warmed.  
 Is it not the cauldron of the chief of Annwn, in its fashion  
 A ridge round its edge of pearls!  
 It will not boil the food of a coward not sworn  
 A sword bright flashing to him was brought  
 And in the hand of Llainawg was left,

Ni obrynaf lawyr llen llywiadur  
 Tra chaer wydr ni welsynt wrhyd Arthur  
 Tri ugeint canhwr a sefi ar y mur  
 Oedd anawdd ymadrawd ai gwiliadur  
 Tri lloneid Prydwen yd aeth gan Arthur  
 Namyn saith ni ddyrraith o Gaer Goludd  
 Ni obrynaf i lawyr llaes eu cylchwy  
 Ny wyddant hwy py ddydd peridydd pwy  
 Py awr ym meinddydd y ganed Cwy  
 Pwy gwnaeth ar nid aeth dolau Defwy  
 Ny wddant hwy yr ych brych bras ei benrhwy  
 Seith ugein cygwn yn ei aerwy  
 A phan aetham ni gan Arthur afrddwl gofwy  
 Namyn saith ni ddyrraith o Gaer Vandwy  
 Ni obrynaf lwyr llaes ei gevyn  
 Ni wddant py ddydd peridydd pen  
 Py awr ym meinddydd y ganed perchen  
 Py fil a gatwant arian y pen  
 Pan aetham ni gan Arthur afrddwl gynhen  
 Namyn saith ni ddyrraith a Gaer Ochren  
 Mynaich dychnud fal cunin cor  
 O gyfranc uddydd ai Gwiddanhor  
 Ai un hynt gwynt ai un dwfr mor  
 Ai un ufel tan twrwr diachor  
 Myneich dychnud fal bleiddawr  
 O gyfranc uddydd ai gwyddyanhawr  
 Ni wddant pan ysgar deweint a gwawr  
 Neu wynt pwy hynt pwy ei rynnawdd  
 Py va ddifa py dir a plawdd  
 Bed Sant yn ddifant o bet allawr  
 Golychaf i wledig pendefig mawr  
 Na bwyf trist Crist am gwaddawl

And before the passage of the gate of Uffern (or hell)  
The horns of light were burning.

And when we went with Arthur, in his labours like lightning,  
Except seven, none returned from *Caer Veditid*.

Am I not a candidate for fame in the song to be listened to?  
In *Caer Pedryvan*, in the isle of *Pybyrddor*,  
The twilight and the jet of night moved together,  
Bright wine their beverage before their hosts;  
Three times the fulness of *Prydwen* we went on the sea,  
Except seven, none returned from *Caer Rhegor*.

I will not have merit from the multitude with the ensign of the  
governor;

Beyond *Caer Wydr* they beheld not the prowess of Arthur;  
Three times twenty hundred men stand on the wall,  
He will be unprotected who converses with its sentinel.  
Three times the fulness of *Prydwen* we went with Arthur,  
Except seven, none returned from *Caer Coludd*.

I will not have merit from the multitudes with trailing shield,  
They knew not on what day, or who caused it,  
Nor what hour in the splendid day *Cwy* was born;  
Nor who made that he went not to the meanders of *Defwy*:  
They knew not the brindled ox, with his thick head-band,  
Seven score knobs in his collar.  
And when we went with Arthur of mournful memory,  
Except seven, none returned from *Caer Vandwy*.

I will not have merit from the multitudes of drooping courage;  
They knew not what day the chief was caused,  
Nor what hour in the splendid day the owner was born;  
What animal they keep of silver head.  
When we went with Arthur of mournful contention;  
Except seven, none returned from *Caer Ochren*.

Monks pack together like dogs in the choir,  
From their meetings with their witches;  
One has the course of the wind, one the water of the sea,  
One the burning of the fire, of unbounded tumult.

Monks pack together like wolves,  
From their meetings with their witches,  
They know not when the twilight and the dawn divide,  
Nor what the course of the wind, nor who agitates it,  
In what place it dies, on what region it roars,  
The grave of the saint vanishing from the foot of the altar.  
I will pray to the Lord, the great Supreme,  
That I be not wretched — may Christ be my portion.<sup>10</sup>

---

<sup>10</sup> See a note on this poem in the Appendix.

Could Lycophron or the Sibyls, or any ancient oracle be more elaborately incomprehensible?

'In his historical poems Taliesin is more level to our perceptions.

When he sounds his harp in praise of Urien we can understand and applaud the lay. I will give a specimen of this in his

DADOLWCH URIEN.

*The Reconciliation with Urien.*

Be the lion the most implacable !<sup>11</sup>  
 I will not revile him.  
 But Urien I will approach,  
 And to him I will sing.  
 When he who is my assurance comes,  
 I shall obtain superintendence,  
 Of the most excellent part,  
 Under the flow of melody.  
 The endless lineage which I see  
 Concerns me not much ;  
 I shall not go to them nor be with them,  
 I will not address myself to the north,  
 But to my  
 First, if there should be multitudes about  
 That I might see mutual pledging ;  
 Their affection is not necessary to me,  
 For Urien will not refuse me  
 The lands of Llwyfenydd.

---

<sup>11</sup> Lleu uydd echassaf  
 Mi nyw dirmygaf  
 Urien yd gyrchaf  
 Iddaw yd ganaf  
 Pan ddel fyngwaeslaf  
 Cynwys a gaffaf  
 Or part hgoreuhaf  
 Y dan eilassaf  
 Nid mawr nim dawr  
 Byth gweheleith a welaf  
 Nid af attadynt ganthynt ni byddaf  
 Ni chyfarchaf fi gogledd  
 Ar mei teyrnedd  
 Cyn pei am laweredd  
 Y gwelwn gynghwystledd  
 Nid rhaid ym hoffedd  
 Urien nim gommedd

Mine will be their riches,  
 Mine will be their wilds,  
 Mine will be their produce,  
 Mine will be their beauties;  
 And their luxuries,  
 Mead out of bugles,  
 And good inexhaustible,  
 From a splendid prince.  
 The most generous that has been heard of  
 The kings of every language,  
 To thee are all captive.  
 For thee there will be mourning when thy death shall be certain,  
 Whilst it would menace me.  
 After possession I will declare,  
 That there was none I could better love;  
 As far as I could know.  
 At times I behold  
 The extent of what I shall obtain.

---

Llwyfenydd diredd  
 Ys meu eu rheufedd  
 Ys meu y gwyledd  
 Ys meu y llaredd  
 Ys meu y deliedeu  
 Ai goreffrasseu  
 Medd o fauleu  
 A da dieisieu  
 Gan deyrn golau  
 Haelaf rygigleu  
 Teyrnedd pob iaith  
 It off ydynt gaith  
 Rhagot yt gwynir ys dir dy olaith  
 Cydef mynnasswn  
 Gwedy helu henwn  
 Nid oedd wel a gerwn  
 Hyd ys gwybyddwn  
 Weithian y gwelaf  
 Y meint a gaffaf  
 Namyn y Duw uchaf  
 Nis dioferaf  
 Dy deyrn Veibon  
 Haelaf dynedon  
 Wy canau eu hygyron  
 Yn nhiredd eu galon  
 Ac yn y vallwyf hen  
 Ym dygyn angeu angen  
 Ni byddaf im dirwen  
 Na molwyf Urien.

Excepting to God most high,  
I will not renounce  
Thy royal sons  
The most generous of men.  
Their shafts resound  
In the lands of their foes ;  
And until I shall wither old,  
In my severe death of fate ;  
I shall not be happy,  
Unless I am praising Urien.<sup>12</sup>

As Taliesin's poem on the battle of Argoed Llwyfain has been much alluded to by the bards of the middle ages, I will also cite it. *Flamddwyn* is a word implying *flame-bearing*, and is supposed to have been the name by which the Britons distinguished *Ida*. It is certain that *Ida* fought in this quarter.

BATTLE OF ARGOED LLWYFAIN.

In the morning of the day of *Sadwrn* was a great battle<sup>11</sup>  
From when the sun emerged till it flamed on high ;  
*Flamddwyn* hastened quickly with four bodies  
To encompass *Goddeu* and *Reged* :  
He spread from *Argoed* to *Arfynydd*.  
They retained not life till the day expired.  
*Flamddwyn* demanded with great impetuosity,  
" Will they give hostages, are these ready?"

---

<sup>12</sup> I have been much indebted to Mr. Owen for his assistance in my Welsh translations. In every difficulty of construction I have taken his opinion as my guide.

<sup>13</sup> Y bore Dduw Sadwrn Cad fawr a fu  
Or pan ddwyre Haul hyd pan gynnu  
Dygryowys Fflamddwyn yn bedwarllu  
Goddeu a Reged i ymddullu  
Dyfwy o Argoed hyd Arfynydd  
Ni cheffynt eiryoës hyd yr undydd  
Atorelwis Fflamddwyn fawr drybestawd  
A ddodynt yngwystlon a ynt parawd  
Yr atebwys Owain ddwyrain flossawd  
Nid dodynt nid ydynt nid ynt parawd  
A cheneu mab Coel byddai Cymwyawg lew  
Cyn attalai owystl nebawd  
Atorelwis Urien Udd yr echwydd  
O bydd ynghyfarfod am garennnydd  
Dyrchafwn eidoed odduch mynydd  
Ac ymporthwn wyneb odduch emyl

He was answered by Owen, uprising the blow,  
 " They will not give them, they are not, shall not be ready,  
 And Cheneu, son of Coel, would be like an irritated lion  
 But he would withhold hostages from any one."  
 Urien, the lord of peaceful cultivation, exclaimed,  
 " Being assembled for our kindred,  
 Let us elevate our banners above the mountains,  
 And push forward our forces over the borders,  
 And lift our spears over the warriors' heads,  
 And rush upon Flamddywn in his army,  
 And slaughter with him and his followers."  
 From the battle of Argoed Llwyfain was many a corpse  
 The ravens were red from the war of men,  
 And the multitude hastened with the tidings.  
 I will celebrate the year,  
 I am not increasing,  
 But in age am declining,  
 Yet in the severe death of necessity,  
 I shall not be in smiles,  
 Unless I am praising Urien.

Of Taliesin's poetry we may say, in general, that his historical poems are valuable; his others are obscure, but as they contain much old mythology and bardic imagery, they are worth attention, because some parts may be illustrated and made intelligible.

We may now consider the chief objections urged against these poems.

#### FIRST OBJECTION.

They have used rime; but rime, say the objectors, was not known to Europe in the sixth century. " The only opinions which now divide the learned on this subject" are, " whether the use of rime originated from the Saracens, who took pos-

---

A drychafwn beleidr odduch ben Gwvr  
 A chyrechw Fflamddwyn yn ei luydd  
 A lladdwn ag ef ai gyweithydd  
 A rhag Gwaith Argoed Llwyfain  
 Bu llawer Celain  
 Rhuddei frain rhag rhyfel Gwyr  
 A gwerin a gryswys gan einewydd  
 Arinaf y blwyddyn nad wyf Kynnydd  
 Ac yn y fallwyf hen  
 Ym dygn angeu angen  
 Ni byddif ym dyrwen  
 No molwyf Urien.

session of Sicily in the year 828, or arose among the Italian monks in the eighth century." But "it is certain, that it was totally unknown to the ancient language of Europe."<sup>14</sup>

This has been the great objection, the most confidently relied upon, and the most vehemently pressed against the genuineness of these poems. I own when I first heard of it, it sounded very formidably to me. If this account of the use of rime was true, the Welsh bards must have been given up. I therefore took some trouble to enquire into its correctness.

I found that this peremptory opinion, about the use of rime, was a complete delusion. I stated the fruit of my researches in two essays which were last year read before the Antiquarian Society. They have been since printed in its Transactions.

By decisive and authentic examples from authors who were there quoted, the use of rime was traced, from age to age, into the fourth century. It was shewed that it was used in Latin poetry in the very century in which these bards lived, and in the centuries preceding. The subject was pursued into the classical times. I intimated the reasons and the authorities which supported the opinion of Muratori, that rime was an appendage of the vulgar unmetrical poetry of the Romans. And I shewed its great antiquity in the languages of China, Hindostan, and Judea, as well as Arabia.

My examples of rime between the ninth century and the fourth, were taken from these authors.

Ninth Century,

Otfrid.

Eighth Century,

The Song on the Lombards.

Boniface.

Leobgytha.

Cæna.

Seventh Century,

Aldhelm.

The Frankish Song.

Eugenius.

Drepanius Florus.

Columbanus.

And in the Sixth Century,

Venantius Fortunatus.

Of this author I cited two riming poems, and pointed out several riming passages in his other works. This first essay will be added to this Appendix.

---

<sup>14</sup> Critical Review, Jan. 1800.

In my second essay I shewed the use of rime in the fourth century, in the poem of St. Austin against the Donatists. In his short preface to this poem, St. Austin says :

“ Volens etiam causam Donatistarum ad ipsius humillimis vulgi et omnino imperitorum atque idiotarum notitiam pervenire et eorum quantum fieri posset per nos inherere memorie, psalmum qui eis cantaretur per Latinas literas feci sed usque ad v literam, tales enim abecedarios appellant, tres vero ultimas omisi, &c.”

*The Psalm begins thus :*

“ Abundantia peccatorum solet fratres conturbare,  
Propter hoc Dominus noster voluit nos præmonere,  
Comparans regnum cælorum, reticulo misso in mare  
Congreganti multos pisces, omne genus hinc et inde,  
Quos cum traxissent, ad littus tunc cæperunt separare,  
Bonos in vasa miserunt, reliquos malos in mare  
Quisquis recolit Evangelium, recognoscat cum timore  
Videt reticulum ecclesiam, videt hoc seculum mare  
Genus autem mixtum Piscis, justus est cum peccatore,  
Seculi finis est littus, tunc est tempus separare,  
Quando retia ruperunt, multum dilexerunt mare,  
Vasa sunt sedes sanctorum, quo non possent pervenire.”<sup>15</sup>

Twenty similar stanzas of twelve lines each follow the preceding, all ending in e, and each stanza beginning with a successive letter of the alphabet as far as v.

Thus the objection that the Welsh bards are forgeries, because their poems are rimed, is completely overturned. Rime was in being in Europe long before they rimed.

After these facts, can we avoid smiling when we read such a passage as this ?

“ We would assume opposite grounds, and pronounce at once, that the use of rhyme *presents mathematical demonstration* that those poems are glaring forgeries.”<sup>16</sup>

<sup>15</sup> Austin's Works, vol. vii. p. 3. Lyons, 1586.

<sup>16</sup> This gentleman seems to have been fond of this emphatic epithet ; for after assuming, and then asserting, that the poems in question were unknown to Nennius, Geoffrey and Caradoc, he says, “ we may conclude with a *mathematical* certainty, that they are modern fabrications.” Surely *historical* certainty and *mathematical* certainty are not quite identical.

How an *historical* fact, even if it had been as the critic thought, could make a *mathematical*<sup>17</sup> demonstration, he has yet to explain ! But whatever sort of demonstration he meant, the facts, as to the use of rime, instead of proving the poems to be forgeries, are auspicious to their genuineness.

SECOND OBJECTION.

The next objection, which has been so triumphantly used is this :

But Giraldus "does not even mention the use of rhyme among his countrymen ; or if it at all existed, he considered it as rude and rustic when compared with alliteration. Any reader will perceive that this implied neglect in the one case, or positive censure in the other, could never have been expressed by a writer so ardent for the glory of his country, to the actual condemnation of all its illustrious bards. It follows, therefore, that all those pieces ascribed to the early Welsh poets, are *posterior to the days of Giraldus.*"<sup>18</sup>

In support of these objections, a passage of Giraldus is quoted, the import of which is, that the Welsh poets were chiefly fond of such ornaments as alliteration. Giraldus adds, "a Welsh poet, therefore, would thus have expressed himself:"

Digawn duw da y unic  
Wrth bob crybwyll parawd<sup>19</sup>

This objection is not a fact, but an inference, and the reasoning stands precisely thus :

Giraldus either does not mention rime, or considered it as rude and rustic ;

But Giraldus was ardent for the glory of his country :

Therefore he would not have condemned rime if the ancient bards had used it, and therefore all the rimed pieces ascribed to the early Welsh poets are *posterior to the days of Giraldus.*

The logician will not admire the closeness of this reasoning, as applied to a question of fact. To determine the genuineness of these poems by Giraldus's estimation of rime, is as

<sup>17</sup> Critical Review, January, 1800, p. 22.

<sup>18</sup> Ibid. p. 23.

<sup>19</sup> Ibid.

correct a method of reaching the truth, as it would be to decide against the genuineness of Dryden's rimed tragedies, because modern critics prefer blank verse. It is also a modern discovery in criticism, that if an author thinks the ancient poems of his country rude and rustic, he therefore affirms them to be forgeries. The critic argues, that because Giraldus thought the use of rime rude and rustic, therefore these ancient poems which are rimed are forgeries.

If a reasoner ask why is this inference made? the objector's answer is, that a writer so ardent for the glory of his country, would not by such terms as rude and rustic, have condemned its illustrious bards. Therefore these poems could not have existed in the time of Giraldus. This sort of reasoning is in fact an assertion, that the poetry which a patriotic writer calls rude and rustic, cannot be the works of the ancient bards of his country.

But Horace, though a patriot, never hesitated to describe the poems of Ennius or Lucilius as rude and rustic, and yet he thought them genuine. Our Lydgate and Chaucer are rather rude and rustic, and yet no writer, however ardent for the glory of old England, would suspect, that in so considering them, he was impeaching their genuineness.

Nothing can more strongly shew the inapplicability of the objection than the fact, that we have the authority of Giraldus himself, to prove that the works of the old bards of his country, which he actually deemed genuine, he, yet, did think rude and rustic in the strongest sense. The very words in which he speaks of Merdhu's poetry are, "*Britannicam barbariem*," "*British barbarism*." I have already quoted the passage, he does more: he uses the very phrase of the objector; he calls the style, "*the rude and plain simplicity of the ancient style*," and again, "*the darkness of the barbaric tongue*."<sup>20</sup>

But the critic means to insinuate, that Giraldus either did not know that rime was used in Welsh poetry, or thought such rimed poetry rude and rustic. It happens, unfortunately for such an insinuation, that *every* Welsh bard of *every* age used rime. Rime is essential to Welsh poetry. The poems of many bards, in the days of Giraldus, yet exist, and they are all rimed. Could Giraldus then mean to decry

---

<sup>20</sup> *Sermonis antiqui rudis et plana simplicitas — barbaræ linguæ tenebras.* — See before.

rime, to depreciate such poetry as used it, to hint that it was not genuine? The moment any gentleman looks over the first volume of the *Welsh Archæology* and finds 584 pages of poems in double columns all rimed and all written before the fourteenth century, he might answer the question himself on the mere probability of the case.

But Giraldus can also answer this question for himself. So far is it from being true, that Giraldus was ignorant that his countrymen used rime, that Giraldus expressly mentions that they *do* use rime; and what is more — what is scarcely credible — he mentions this fact in the very passage which the angry critic adduces to prove the contrary. I am averse to use harsh words, and will therefore make no observations on this circumstance. It may have arisen from some casual mistake. The beginning of the passage of Giraldus, as the critic translates and quotes it, is, “they are so subtle and ingenious in their songs, verses, and set speeches, that they produce, in their native tongue, ornaments of wonderful and exquisite invention in the words and in their sentences.”<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> In cantilenis, rythmicis, et dictamine tam subtiles inveniuntur ut mire et exquisitæ inventionis lingua propria tam verborum quam sententiarum proferant exornationes. Unde et poetas (quos Bardos vocant) ad hoc deputatos in hac natione multos invenies, juxta illud poeticum :

Plurima concreti fuderunt carmina Bardî.

Præ cunctis autem Rhetoricis exornationibus annominatione magis utuntur, eaque præcipue specie, quæ primas dictionum literas vel syllabas convenientia jungit. Adeo igitur hoc verborum ornatu, duæ nationes Angli scil. et Cambri in omni sermone exquisito utuntur, ut nihil ab his eleganter dictum, nullum nisi rude et agreste censeatur eloquium si non schematis hujus lima plene fuerit expolitum, sicut Britannice in hunc modum.

Digawn duw da y unic,  
Wrth bob crybwyh prrawd.

Anglice vero,

God is together gammen and wisdom. In Latino quoque haud dissimiliter eloquio eandem exornationem frequens est invenire in hunc modum. Virgilius,

Tales casum Cassandra canebat,  
Et illud ejusdem ad Augustum.

Now the words translated, "songs, verses, and set speeches," are in the original "*cantilenis rhythmicis. et dictamine*," not *songs, verses, but rimed songs*. So that Giraldus, instead of discrediting rimed poems, as the critic asserts, begins the passage by saying, that it is of the rimed songs that he speaks, and that it is these rimed songs which possess the ornaments that he proceeds to applaud.<sup>2</sup>

One of the examples, which I cited in the essay on Rime, read in the Antiquarian Society, and which I have not seen elsewhere quoted, will, I think, illustrate the meaning of the word *rhythmicis* in Giraldus, and the true application of his passage.

Aldhelm, the celebrated bishop of the West Saxons, who died 709, in his Treatise on Virginity, has this passage: "ut non inconvenienter carmine *rhythmico* dici queat."<sup>3</sup> Here we find the same adjective, *rhythmicus*, used, as by Giraldus. The example which Aldhelm immediately annexes proves that it exactly corresponds with our word rimed. The example is,

Christus passus patibulo  
Atque læti latibulo  
Virginem virgo virgini  
Commendabat tutamini.

This is precisely a *cantilena rhythmica* composed to the full taste of Giraldus. It has the *annominato* which he loved, just as it frequently occurs in Welsh poetry.

Dum dubitet natura marem, faceret se puellam  
Natus es o pulcher pene puella puer.

In nullis tamen linguis quas novimus, hæc exornatio adeo ut in prioribus duabus est usitata. — Girald. Cambria Descript. p. 889. 890. ap. Camd. Anglica Hibernica, &c. Francf. 1601.

<sup>2</sup> There can be no doubt, that *cantilenis rhythmicis* in the twelfth century, meant rimed songs. There can be as little doubt, that to omit the word *rhythmicis* entirely in the translation and to substitute for it the word *verses*, and to produce the passage thus wrongly translated as an authority, that Giraldus does not even mention the use of rime among his countrymen, was improper. I may remark that *cantilenis rhythmicis*, in the MS. in the Cotton Library, has not in the printed copy a comma between them.

<sup>3</sup> Aldhelm de Virgin. p. 297. Wharton's edition.

There is another proof that Giraldus knew well the use of rime among his countrymen. The two Welsh lines cited by Giraldus —

Digawn Duw da y unic  
and  
Wrth bob crybwyll parawd.

are two distinct unconnected lines, part of two old *riming* stanzas which occur in a poem which is ascribed to the tenth century. The complete stanza, containing the first line, is,

A glyweisti a gant Duinnic  
Milur doeth detholedic  
*Digaun Duw da y unic* <sup>4</sup>

The other lines Giraldus, or his transcriber, has not quoted so correctly. The complete stanza is,

A glyweisti a gant Anaraut  
Milur donyauc ditlout  
Reit wrth amhwyll pwyll paraut. <sup>5</sup>

As the last line stands in the printed Giraldus, it is obviously miscopied. Giraldus adduced it as a specimen of the *annominatio*, but as it is printed in his work,

Wrth bob crybwyll paraud <sup>6</sup>

Where is the *annominatio*? In the real line which I have quoted, we see it in the two similar letters of *pwyll* and *paraut*, and in the similar sounds of *amhwyll* and *pwyll*.

Let us not then be told that Giraldus is evidence, that rime was not used by the Welsh bards. <sup>7</sup>

<sup>4</sup> See the whole poem in the Welsh Archaeology, p. 172.

<sup>5</sup> Ibid.

<sup>6</sup> In the MS. of this tract of Giraldus, in the Cotton Library, Domitian A. I. p. 122. This line is thus quoted : — *rybn dibuilh puilh paraut*. This is somewhat nearer the true line than the printed one.

<sup>7</sup> It is curious to observe, how much stress has been laid on the fancied ignorance of Giraldus of rime in Welsh verse. Mr. Malcolm Laing, in his *Dissertation on Ossian's Poems*, annexed to

What is it then, which Giraldus really says, in the passage so ostentatiously, but so mistakingly quoted? It is this: that the Welsh bards in their rimed songs had those ornaments which he calls, of wonderful and exquisite invention in the words and in their sentences; and of which he particularizes the annominatio; he does not say, that they had these ornaments without rime, but that in their rimed songs they cultivated these ornaments. Now this statement is precisely the real truth. The Welsh poems of all ages are rimed, but have also those alliterative ornaments of which Giraldus was so fond.

It was not poems with rime, which Giraldus called rude and rustic, but it was the poetry which was without alliteration. The alliteration was the beauty which no poems omitted, but such as were rude and rustic.

Therefore, besides the misconstruction of the cantilenis rythmicis, the critic has clearly mistaken the sense of the passage. Giraldus was speaking of alliteration — he quotes Welsh passages which have it, an old English line that has it, and he proceeds to quote two passages of Virgil which have also alliteration. Now, if it had been true, that the old bards had not used alliteration, then the epithets “rude and rustic” would have applied to them.

But the fact is, that the old bards abound with alliteration, though not so frequently as the poets of the following ages, in whose works it is almost incessant. I will now adduce instances in Taliesin and others, of that annominatio which Giraldus so much esteemed.

Creadur cadarn cyn dilyw —  
 Ar meirch mawr modur mirein eu gwedd —  
 Meddwer Maelgwn Mon ag an meddwa —  
 Med hedleid moleid molud i bob tra.

---

his History of Scotland, very decisively says, vol. ii. p. 436., speaking of rime, “In Welsh poetry it was unknown to Giraldus Cambrensis in the twelfth century, a sufficient proof that the rhymes of Taliesin and the Welsh bards are a more recent forgery.” I am much surprised, that any gentleman of character, should speak so positively upon Welsh poetry without knowing any thing about it. Independent of the above proofs from Giraldus himself that he knew of rime; how could it be unknown to him, when Meilyr, Gwalchmai, Cynddelw, Owain Cyveiliawg, Llywarch P. Moch, David Benfras, and Elidyr Sais; all men of great genius and reputation, were using it in all their poems in Giraldus’s lifetime?

These occur with several others in one page.

So Llywarch Hen. In his first elegy are,

A gwedy gawr garw bwylliad —  
A gorvod gwedy gorborth —  
Gwyr ni gilynt rhag ovn gwaew —  
A gwyr rudd rhag ruthr Geraint. —

With several more.

Merddin also uses it, though more sparingly,

Yn gyfoed gyfuch gyhyd gymmaint  
Trwy fron trugaredd y tyseddaint.

Thus we find the ancient bards actually exhibit not only rime, but also these ornaments which Giraldus so much applauded. Of course the passage of Giraldus, which has been so much relied upon, is, in no respect, hostile to their genuineness.

I pass by the objection that Nennius, Jeffrey, and Caradoc, do not mention these bards, because I have already shewn, that Nennius and Jeffrey, and many Welsh writers of the age of Caradoc expressly mention them.

I know but of one more objection, which requires to be answered, and I approach it with respect, because it has been also urged by men of candour and judgment.<sup>8</sup>

It is in substance this: we find these poems placed in the sixth century, and we find none occurring before the twelfth century. This leaves an interval so suspicious, as to operate very strongly against the genuineness of any poetry earlier than the twelfth century. This objection is a fair one, and calls for a satisfactory answer. I hope to give such a one by proving these things.

1. That there are some few poems of the centuries between the sixth and twelfth yet in being.
2. That many bards are recorded to have existed during this interval.
3. That the ravages of time are capricious, and that similar chasms occur in the literary history of other countries.

1. Of the seventh century we have the small poems pre-

<sup>8</sup> See Monthly Review of the Welsh Archaeology.

served to us of Meigant<sup>9</sup>, Elaeth<sup>10</sup>, and Tysilio.<sup>11</sup> Of the eighth century, there is one poem of Golyddan<sup>12</sup>, and two of Cuhelyn.<sup>13</sup> There is also a little piece of Llevoed of the tenth century<sup>14</sup>, and there are some anonymous pieces which seem to belong to the tenth and eleventh.<sup>15</sup>

2. The laws of Howel Dha shew a regular and much-respected establishment of bards in the tenth century, as I have already mentioned.<sup>16</sup> This is a proof, which cannot be controverted, that bards did flourish during the interval which has been thought so unfavourable.

But other documents furnish us with the names of several of these bards. A triad mentions Avan Verddig, the bard of Cadwallon, the son of Cadvan<sup>17</sup> and Dygynnelw, the bard of Owain, the son of Urien. Of the other bards who lived in the sixth century, the aphorisms of six have been preserved: Idloes, Ysgafnell, Ciwg, Ystyfan, Heinin, and Cennydd.

Hast thou heard what Idloes sang,  
A man mild and amiable in his life:  
"The best quality is to preserve manners."<sup>18</sup>

<sup>9</sup> An elegy on Cynddylan and an ode. Welsh Arch. p. 159, 160.

<sup>10</sup> Moral Triplets, p. 161.

<sup>11</sup> A Religious Dialogue, p. 162.

<sup>12</sup> The Destiny of Britain, p. 156.

<sup>13</sup> Two Religious Odes, p. 164. 180.

<sup>14</sup> The Journey of Life, a Moral Piece, p. 154.

<sup>15</sup> As the Dialogue between Arthur Cai and Glewwlyd, Welsh Art. p. 167.

The Englynion y Clyweit, or a collection of the sayings of the earlier bards, p. 172.

The Dialogue between Arthur and Gwenhwyfar, p. 175.

The Dialogue between Arthur and Eliwlod, p. 176.

The Dialogue between Trystan and Gwalchmai, p. 178.

And some fragments.

<sup>16</sup> See before, p. 544, 545.

<sup>17</sup> Archaïol. vol. II. p. 64.

<sup>18</sup> A glyweisti a gant Idloes

Gwr gwar, hygar ei einoes:

"Goreu cynneddv cadw moes."

Cited by Mr. Owen in his *Cambrian Biography*, p. 194, and his *Dictionary*, voce Moes.

Hast thou heard what Ysgavnell sang,  
The son of Dysgyvundod, the impulse of battle?  
"The poor will not be presented with gifts from afar."<sup>19</sup>

Hast thou heard what Ciwg sang,  
The completely wise bard of Gwynhylwg:  
"Who possesses discretion has a long sight."<sup>20</sup>

Hast thou heard the saying of Ystyfan (or Stephen),  
The bard of Teilo of quick reply:  
"Man covets, but God distributes."<sup>1</sup>

Hast thou heard the saying of Heinin,  
The bard of the Bangor of Llanveithin:  
"The brave will not be cruel."<sup>2</sup>

The saying of Cennydd, the son of Aneurin, has been already given.

In the ninth century were Cynllwg and Geraint the Blue Bard, who have left these aphorisms:

Hast thou heard the saying of Cynllwg,  
A hoary bard of extensive sight:  
"He enjoys good, who has not evil."<sup>4</sup>

Hast thou heard the saying of the Blue Bard,  
Giving social counsel:  
"Better the favour of a dog, than his hate."<sup>5</sup>

<sup>19</sup> A glyweisti a gant Ysgafnell,  
Vab Dysgyvundaut Ratgymell:  
"Nyt anregyt tlaut o bell."

*Englyn. y Chyweit. W. A. 173.*

<sup>20</sup> A glyweisti a gant Ciwg,  
Bardd cyweirddoeth Gwynhylwg:  
"Perchen pwyll pell ei olwg."

*Ibid. another MS. copy not yet printed.*

<sup>1</sup> A glyweisti cwedyl Ystyfan,  
Bardd Teilaw ateb bwan:  
"Dyn a cwennydd; Duw a ran."

*Ibid.*

<sup>2</sup> A glyweisti cwedyl Heinin,  
Vardd o vangor Llanveithin:  
"Gwrawl ni vydd ddysgethrin."

*Ibid.*

<sup>3</sup> See before, p. 516.

<sup>4</sup> A glyweisti cwedyl Cynllwg,  
Vardd llwyd, llydan ei olwg:  
"Cavas dda ni çavas ddrwg."

*Ibid.*

<sup>5</sup> A glyweisti cwedyl y Bardd Glas,  
Yn rhoi cyhghor cyweithas:  
"Gwell cariad y ci noi gas."

*Ibid.*

In the tenth century several bards have had their observations on life preserved to us.

Hast thou heard the saying of Myvenydd,  
A bard with a genius fond of books,  
"There is no good governor but God."<sup>6</sup>

Hast thou heard the saying of Divwg,  
The bard of old Morgan Morganwg:  
"Who seeks not good, may expect evil."<sup>7</sup>

Didst thou hear the saying of Idwallon,  
A hoary old man, resting on his staff:  
"With the ignorant hold no dispute."<sup>8</sup>

3. Nothing is more remarkable and often more lamentable in literary history, than the apparent capriciousness with which the ravages of time appear to have been exerted on ancient MSS. Many valuable works have perished, and some worthless ones have escaped. The books of some periods and of some countries have disappeared and others have survived, without any adequate reason for either event. No argument can therefore have less force than this. We may as well interrogate Time, why his production of human genius is so irregular as to exact critical demonstration, why his ravages upon its labours have been so inconstant and partial.

In every country this partial destruction of literature is apparent. What a chasm exists in the works of Grecian genius before Homer and after him. Such a perfect exhibition of human talent, must have been preceded by many productions of the poetic art. But where are they? and what has become of the works which followed? Homer stands sublime, like a towering island in an expansive ocean. Hesiod is a little islet near him, but there is scarce any thing else to connect him with his ancestors or successors. But because Homer and Hesiod shone in one age, and Eschylus, Sophocles, and Pin-

<sup>6</sup> A glyweisti çwedyl Myvenydd,  
Bardd llyvreugar ei wenydd:  
"Namyn Duw nid madlywydd."

*Englyn. y Clyweit.* W. A. 173.

<sup>7</sup> A glyweisti çwedyl Divwg,  
Bardd hên Vorgan Morganwg:  
"Na çais y da, aroed y drwg."

*Ibid.*

<sup>8</sup> Cambrian Biography, p. 195.

dar, in a later period, we are not so unjust as to brand the Iliad of the one, or the works and days of the others as surreptitious productions. In Judea, David, Solomon, and Isaiah, shone with excelling merit. But what a darkness between Moses and David, and Solomon and Isaiah? Another interval of gloom succeeded after the prophets, and the author of Ecclesiasticus appeared. After another interruption, came Josephus and Philo, and what a Cimmerian midnight since!

Where are the historians and poets of Phenicia, Carthage, and Egypt? We know that many existed and wrote; we know that two of these nations were the tutors of Greece, and the other the competitor of Rome; and yet all their literary compositions, however curious, or however meritorious, have passed away from human knowledge, like the clouds which dropped their treasures on their fields; like the myriads of population, which swarmed in their cities, and established their fame.

We have the Frankish poetry of Otfrid in 850, and we scarcely know the names of any other Frankish poets, who came after him in the centuries immediately following. Shall he be, therefore, discredited? What chasms exist in the literature of Persia, Arabia, and Hindustan?

The ebbs and flows of intellect and literature in every nation appear very capricious, and obey no fixed rules.

Our own country has abounded with these vicissitudes. While the Romans were with us, the national mind must have been ameliorated. The Saxons came, and mental darkness followed. The sun of intellect streaked the gloom with its orient rays, and Bede, Alcuin, and others adorned the Saxon name. The furies of the north shrouded the hemisphere with their tempests, and priests even forgot to read their services. ALFRED reigned, and the glorious beam burst through the stormy cloud, called forth by his magic voice, and irradiating his paths. A premature evening succeeded; the faint light which glimmered afterwards soon disappeared in the Norman midnight. But the dawn of reason again returned; it struggled with the interposing clouds; it increased; it diminished; it burst forth at last with new fervor, and a settled radiance has now spread around, which every century augments, and which the course of nature promises to perpetuate.

The same accidents have occurred to the British poetry. The Druids had, as Cæsar attests, a great quantity of verses, and of course had poets, whose names and productions have

perished for ever. Of all those who were afterwards distinguished, during the Roman residence, little else than a few names remain. In the sixth century, some poets of eminent genius shone, whose works have come down to us. Of those who flourished in the seventh, eighth, ninth, tenth, and eleventh centuries, we know little, and have very few remains; yet, we can ascertain, that bards then both lived and sang. At last, in the twelfth century, the genius of Welsh poetry broke out in new lustre, which increased through the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries. But, for the last two ages, what has become of it? Another chasm has taken place, like that between the sixth and the twelfth, of which we are living witnesses.

To complete the argument in behalf of these poems; there remains only to shew, that the forgery could not have been practised without detection; that there is nothing extraordinary in these poems being genuine; that they are attested by a stream of national belief, and that any scepticism about them has been of recent origin.

Of these four points, the two last are so notorious, that I shall only assert them without the fear of contradiction; very little need be added on the others. Whoever considers the nature of the bardic system; that no one was admitted to be a bard but after a regular initiation and tuition, and that so many bards, in every age, existed competitors for fame and distinction, must perceive that so much poetry, as to occupy 580 pages of double columns, could not be forged without speedy detection.

We have proved by undeniable evidence and reasoning, that the Welsh had bards in the sixth century, and in particular these individual bards. Is it then any thing extraordinary that poets should write poetry; and if poetry was written, is it a miracle that part of it should descend to us? Let us recollect, that the insignificant tract of Gildas has survived, and let us cease to be surprised that a nation, fond of its bards, should preserve some of their compositions.

END OF THE VINDICATION.

# ESSAY

ON THE

## ANTIQUITY OF RIME IN EUROPE.

---

IT has been lately asserted, that "the *only* opinions which now divide the learned on this subject, are, whether the use of rime originated from the Saracens, who took possession of Sicily in the year 828, or arose among the Italian monks in the eighth century."<sup>1</sup>

Both these opinions may be shewn to be incorrect; a few facts will prove that rime was much earlier in existence. It is also declared to be "*certain* that it was totally unknown to the ancient languages of Europe."<sup>2</sup> This opinion is as erroneous as the others.

The most important specimen of rime, between the years 800 and 900, is Otfrid's Paraphrase on the Gospels, written in the Franco-theotisc language. The author lived in the middle of the century. It occupies 380 folio pages, and is all in rime, generally very exact. The work will be found in the first volume of Schilter's Thesaurus. It was originally printed by Flacius, Basil, 1571. 8vo.

There is extant a letter of Otfrid to Leutbert, archbishop of Mentz, prefixed to his paraphrase, in which he explains his reasons for undertaking this work. He says, that some worthy persons, offended at the obscene songs of the laics, had particularly requested him to write part of the Gospels in the vernacular Theotisc language, that the singing of this might supersede the others. They told him that many heathen

---

<sup>1</sup> Critical Review, Jan. 1800., p. 22.

<sup>2</sup> Ib.

poets, as Virgil, Lucan, and others, had written much in their native language, while the Frankish nation had been very tardy in expressing the divine word in its own tongue. Otfrid adds, that, impelled by this importunity, he had composed a part of the Gospels in the Frankish language, that they, who had dreaded the difficulty of a foreign tongue, might read the sacred word in their own.

If these were the motives of Otfrid in this composition, is it not most probable that it was not only written in the vernacular language, but in the popular form of his nation? If rime had not been a great companion of Frankish poetry, is it likely that he who wrote a poetical work to supersede the use of their popular songs, would have composed it in rime? If rime had been then a novelty in France, would he not in this letter have apologized for introducing it into the Franco-theotisc language? Would he not have given his reasons for departing from its popular style? On the contrary, he expresses himself as if he had composed his work in the usual poetical form of his countrymen.

Indeed, that rime was the usual companion of their poetry seems to be clearly deducible from another of his phrases. In describing the peculiarities of the Franco-theotisc language, he says, "it perpetually seeks rime." "*Schæma omoeteleuton assidue quærit.*" This remarkable expression, seems to me to have the force that rime was much in use in its poetry; for certainly the Franco-theotisc language is not so peculiarly musical, as to seek or tend to rime more than any other.

Otfrid's aim was popularity. But if the Franks had not used rime, he could have reached his aim more certainly by using the ancient metres of his country, than by the difficult labour of writing so large a work in rime. I should also conceive, that if rime had then been a novelty in the Frankish language, Otfrid could have scarcely used it with so much ease and perfection. Yet, though his work has no fewer than 380 pages, it exhibits the use of Frankish rime in a remarkably easy, fluent, and harmonious manner.

There is another proof that rime was an appurtenance of ancient Frankish poetry. In the life of St. Faron, bishop of Meaux<sup>3</sup>, which was written by Hildegarius, another bishop, who lived in the same century with Otfrid, the successes of

---

<sup>3</sup> See it in Bouquet's Recueil, v. iii. p. 505.

Chlotarius the Second, against the Saxons in the year 622, are mentioned. The author adds, "on this victory a public song (*juxta rusticitatem*), in the rustic manner, was in every one's mouth, the women joining in the chorus."

He then gives this extract from the song which we shall find to be rime:

"De Chlotario est canere rege Franconum,  
Qui ivit pugnare in gentem Saxonum,  
Quam graviter provenisset missis Saxonum,  
Si non fuisset inclytus Faro de gente Burgundionum."

He adds, that at the end of the song was,

"Quando veniunt missi Saxonum in terra Francorum,  
Faro ubi erat princeps —  
Instinctu Dei transeunt per urbem Meldorum  
Ne interficiantur a rege Francorum."

After these quotations he says: "We choose to shew (*rustico carmine*), in rustic verse, how famous he was deemed."

This rustic verse we see was rimed verse. Does not this confirm the inference I have made from Otf rid, that rime was an appendage of the popular poetry of this people? This song was made in the year 622.<sup>4</sup>

Another instance tempts me to suspect that rime was not unknown to the ancient languages of Europe. The ancient song once so popular in Gothland, which narrates the emigration of the Lombards, and which ends with their humiliation by Charlemagne, is thus mentioned by Stephanus: "Among the inhabitants of Gothland, a very ancient song was formerly sung in rime in their vernacular language, in which the circumstances concerning the emigration of the *Lango-bardi* are celebrated more truly and accurately than by Paulus Diaconus." He afterwards says, "from the last verse it may be understood that this song was made after the close of the Lombard empire, while Charlemagne was reigning so extensively in Germany and Italy." Charlemagne died in 814. This poem is in exact riming couplets, of which the first may be adduced as a specimen:

"Ebbe oc Aage de Hellede fro  
Siden de for hunger aff skaane dro."<sup>5</sup>

<sup>4</sup> It was remarked by Pelloutier in his *History of the Celts*.

<sup>5</sup> Stephanus in *Saxonem*, 181.

If this song was written at the close of the eighth century, as Stephanus intimates, I presume it was in the customary style of the national poetry. The vernacular poetry of every country more commonly follows ancient rules and forms than it adopts new, unusual, and difficult modes.

That rime arose among the Italian monks of the eighth century, will be found an untenable opinion, if we inspect the works of those who wrote poetry in that and the preceding centuries.

The first that may be mentioned is Boniface, the Anglo-Saxon missionary, who went to convert the uncivilized Germans, and who perished about the year 755. He closes a letter to Nithard with fourteen riming couplets. I will cite the two first as a specimen : <sup>6</sup>

“ Vale fratres florentibus  
Juventutis cum viribus  
Ut floreas cum domino  
In sempiterno solio.”

One of his correspondents, Leobgytha, also uses them. She ends a letter to Boniface with four riming lines. She says she learnt the art from Eadburga, his pupil. <sup>7</sup> Cona, another of his correspondents, adds to a letter to Lullus, six hexameters, which rime in the middle. <sup>8</sup>

Before Boniface lived Aldhelm, one of the bishops of the West Saxons. He was most highly esteemed by his countrymen as a poet. His death is placed in 709, and therefore his works properly belong to the preceding century, because in that he must have principally lived. Lullus, the contemporary of Boniface, says to a friend, “ I pray you to direct to me some little works of bishop Aldhelm, either of prose, metre, or rime. (Seu prosarum, seu metrorum, seu rhythmicorum.) ” <sup>9</sup>

Whether either of the long riming poems annexed to Boniface's letters, and which have at the end the words “ finit carmen Aldhelmi,” <sup>10</sup> were written by Aldhelm, I will not determine ; but the three lines, which Simon of Durham quotes from him, rime in the middle. <sup>11</sup> The two lines which Ducange cites <sup>12</sup> from his treatise *De octo Vitiis*,

<sup>6</sup> 16 Magna Bib. Pat. p. 49.

<sup>7</sup> Ib. p. 62.

<sup>8</sup> Ib. p. 91.

<sup>9</sup> Ib. p. 51.

<sup>10</sup> Ib. p. 75. Edit, Paris, 1654.

<sup>11</sup> Twisden's

decem Script. p. 112.

<sup>12</sup> 1 Gloss. Med. Lat. p. 923.

are a rimed couplet. The verses which he made at Rome, and which are given by Malmsbury<sup>13</sup>, contain several rimes, as well as some lines which do not rime. I can only speak of his poems by these fragments, because I have not seen any of his whole poems, of which some are yet extant.

But we have Aldhelm's own evidence that rime was used in his time. On looking into his prose treatise on Virginité, I perceived that he had two riming couplets, which he expressly calls rime. His words are, "ut non inconvenientur CARMINE RYTHMICO dici queat," 'as may be expressed, not unsuitably, in rimed verse.'<sup>14</sup> The verses are:

" Christus passus patibulo  
Atque læti latibulo  
Virginem virgo virgini  
Commendabat tutamini."

Here is a very striking example of rime in an author, who chiefly lived in the seventh century. It may be suspected from the introductory words "dici queat," that they are of Aldhelm's own composition, written in a momentary whim of making a rime. The same caprice seems to have seized him in several other parts of this little treatise, for rimes often occur in it, as p. 342., p. 344., p. 362., and in other places. See also another specimen of his rime, quoted in p. 337. of this volume, on the Anglo-Saxons, which also exhibit a poem of BEDE, of which the first part is in rime, p. 352.

Other authors of the seventh century have rime. Eugenius was a Spanish bishop who died 657. His little poem on the inventors of letters is in rime.<sup>15</sup> In his poem on Old Age, rime is also frequent. Sometimes, as in the beginning of it, the rimes are alternate; sometimes they are triplets; sometimes couplets. It has also several middle rimes. His Monosticha on the Plagues of Egypt has also much rime.

Drepanius Florus was another poet of this century who used rime. He lived about 650. His Paraphrase of the

<sup>13</sup> 3 Gale's Script. p. 343.

<sup>14</sup> P. 297. Wharton's Edition. This use of rime by Aldhelm had not been remarked before.

<sup>15</sup> Published in Rivinius Pat. Hispan. Lips. 1656.

twenty-seventh Psalm consists of stanzas of four lines. Some of these are partly rimed.<sup>16</sup> The two following are wholly so:

" Audi precantis anxia  
Pater super me murmura  
Dum templa cœli ad ardua  
Elata tollo brachia.

" Hic namque virtus inclita  
Plebis beatæ premia:  
Hic ipse Christo proflua  
Servat salutis gaudia."

His poem *De Cereo Paschali* contains fifty lines of which seventeen rime at the end, and sixteen in the middle.<sup>17</sup>

To the beginning of this century belongs the rimed poem of another author, as he is placed by Usher<sup>18</sup> and Fabricius.<sup>19</sup> He is Columbanus the Irishman. There have been more than one either of the same name or of one very similar. But the person who was an abbot in Gaul, and afterwards in Italy, died in 615, according to Fabricius. He was the author of a few poems which have been oftentimes printed. The structure of some is singular and capricious. The one with which I am concerned consists of forty-one rimed couplets of Latin verse.

Leyser says, "it does not seem to be of this age." He gives no reasons for his opinion. I presume the rime was one cause of his doubt, and its not having appeared before Usher, and its being unknown to Goldastus, who published the poems of Columbanus, were other causes of scepticism. The rime, however, can be no objection, because I have already proved that rime was used in this age. As to Goldastus not knowing it, the facts are, that Goldastus did publish it, without knowing that he did so; I mean without knowing it to be a poem. After the poetry of Columbanus, Goldastus edited two of his letters, as he called and thought them; one of which is the rimed poem in question. It is curious, that neither Goldastus, Usher, Leyser, nor Fabricius, discerned that this letter of Columbanus was a poem. Usher says the

<sup>16</sup> 16 Mag. Bib. p. 738.

<sup>18</sup> Vet. Epist. Hib. p. 7.

<sup>17</sup> Ib. p. 729.

<sup>19</sup> Bib. Med. Lat. i. p. 1125.

bishop of Kilmore first remarked it to him. This is surprising, as it is very exactly rimed. Goldastus therefore actually published it in 1604, among his *Parænetici Veteres*.<sup>20</sup>

But where did Goldastus get it? He informs us: "We saw two copies of this in the library of our monastery: one of good antiquity (*bene antiquum*), but anonymous; another copy, not less ancient, but far preferable in this respect, that it expressed the author's name."<sup>21</sup>

Goldastus also published with it another short composition, which he says he took from a very old MSS. communicated to him by the superior of the Abbey of St. Gall, intitled, "*Incipit Epistula Sci. Columbani*." This, though not professedly in rime, yet, like Aldhelm's work, has much rime interspersed in it, as

" Quæ quotidie fugis  
Et quotidie venis:  
Quæ veniendo fugis,  
Et fugiendo venis;  
Dissimilis eventus  
Similis ortus  
Dissimilis luxu  
Similis fluxu."

In some other passages, words of like endings seem to be purposely placed together, which Aldhelm's example entitles us to say, was done by a mind acquainted with rime.<sup>22</sup>

It will be fair to say that this letter, the rimed poem, and the other poetry of Columbanus, have great identity of subject and thought, which favors the idea that they belong to one author.

Leyser places the death of Columbanus in 598, or 595; Fabricius in 615. On either computation he belongs more to the sixth century than the seventh.

But we can adduce another evidence that rime was used in the sixth century: I mean Venantius Fortunatus, the bishop of Poitou. He was a very fertile poet. In 565 he celebrated the nuptials of Sigebert and Brunecild, and died about 600. One of his poems is a Hymn to the Baptized,

<sup>20</sup> P. 146. It is in its poetic shape in Usher's *Sylloge Epist.* Hib. p. 9.

<sup>21</sup> Goldastus, p. 153.

<sup>22</sup> See it in Goldastus, p. 143.; in Usher, p. 7.

published by Martene in his *De Antiquis Ecclesiæ Ritibus*, from a MS. of the cathedral church of Poitou. Fabricius has reprinted it in his *Bibliotheca Mediæ Latinitatis*, t. ii. 544. As it belongs to a period so early, I will give the three first stanzas :

“ Tibi laus perennis auctor  
Baptismatis sacrator  
Qui sorte passionis  
Das præmium salutis.

“ Nox clara plus et alma  
Quam luna sol et astra  
Quæ luminum corona  
Reddis diem per umbram  
Tibi laus.

“ Dulcis, sacrata, blanda,  
Electa, pura, pulchra  
Sudans honore mella  
Rigans odore chrisma  
Tibi laus.”

There is also another poem of this author handed down to us, which is in rime. It is an *Elegy* on *Leontius*. I quote it from the *Bibliotheca Magna Patrum* of Paris, tom. 8. p. 776. it has twenty-three stanzas, of four lines each. The three first stanzas are :

“ Agnoscat omne seculum  
Antistitem Leontium  
Burdegalense præmium  
Dono superno redditum.

“ Bilinguis, ore callido  
Crimen fovebat invidum,  
Ferens acerbum nuncium,  
Hunc jam sepulcro conditum.

“ Celare se non pertulit,  
Qui triste funus edidit,  
Et si nocere desiit  
Insana vota prodidit.”

As this author usually affected the classical metres, which appear to have stood highest in estimation in all Latin poetry, we must not expect many of his poems to be rimed. He gives

us, however, abundant indications of a mind acquainted with rime, and occasionally indulging the propensity to use it. His Quatrain to bishop Felix is rimed.<sup>23</sup> In another poem of twenty-two lines, eight are rimed couplets.<sup>24</sup> In four others alternate lines are rimed, as in some of our stanzas, and five have middle rimes.

In one of his poems on Lupus, the first four lines have three rimes in *as*; the second four lines have three rimes in *us*; and the third four lines have three rimes in *is*. The rest of the poem contains also much rime in every four lines. Half of the lines of this poem are also rimed in the middle.

In several others of his poems, rimes apparently intentional and sought for may be noticed.

The use of rime has been now traced up to the middle of the sixth century. And in reaching this period, it is impossible I can forget that contemporary with Fortunatus were the Welsh Bards whom I have mentioned in the Anglo-Saxon History, Taliesin, Aneurin, Myrzin, and Llywarch Hen.

The works of these bards have been just printed in their original language in the *Archæology of Wales*, by some very public-spirited Welshmen. I understand that a copy has been presented to this society. On referring to them, gentlemen will find that these poems are also in rime.

When I first became acquainted with these valuable and venerable remains, I intimated that they made a new theory of the origin of rime necessary. I was answered, that their use of rime was a decisive proof that they were supposititious. This assertion was seconded by those I have already alluded to, that rime was unknown to the ancient languages of Europe, and that the *only* questions now were, whether the use of rime originated with the Saracens, who took possession of Sicily in 828, or among the Italian monks in the eighth century. If these assertions were just, of course the authenticity of the Welsh Bards was shaken. I had myself no desire to support them if they were forgeries, and therefore applied myself to examine ancient works, to discover when rime really began to be used in Europe. In this paper I have traced it to the very century in which the Welsh Bards lived. I will not pursue it higher now, that I

---

<sup>23</sup> P. 785

<sup>24</sup> P. 780.

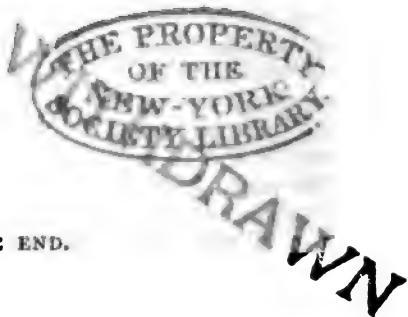
may not intrude too long on the patience of this indulgent society. At another opportunity I will beg permission to state what has occurred to me on the use of rime before the sixth century. It may be also curious to enquire if it was at all known to the Greeks and Romans, and what are the most reasonable conclusions as to its origin in Europe.<sup>25</sup>

---

<sup>25</sup> The essay on the last topics may be seen in the *Archæologia*, vol. xiv. p. 187.

These two essays were read before the Society of Antiquaries, on the 21st and 28th of January, and the 24th of June, 1802. In the last I quoted the poem of St. Austin, against the Donatists, which consists of 270 lines, all riming in *e*. He was born in 354, and died in 430. He states, that he wrote it to be remembered and sung among the vulgar. This makes it probable that the Romans used rimes in their vulgar ballads. This poem of St. Austin, and the preceding quotation from Aldhelm, overthrow the former opinions, that rime originated from the Arabs, or from the Italian monks of the eighth century.

THE END.



LONDON:  
Printed by A. & R. Spottiswoode,  
New Street-Square.

















13

